

THE SOUTH LONDON AND MAUDSLEY NHS FOUNDATION TRUST
OXLEAS NHS FOUNDATION TRUST

PRESCRIBING GUIDELINES

9th Edition

David Taylor
Carol Paton
Robert Kerwin

informa
healthcare

The Maudsley

The South London and Maudsley NHS Foundation Trust
&
Oxleas NHS Foundation Trust

PRESCRIBING GUIDELINES

9th Edition

David Taylor
Carol Paton
Robert Kerwin

informa
healthcare

First published in the United Kingdom in 2007 by Informa Healthcare, Telephone House, 69-77 Paul Street, London EC2A 4LQ. Informa Healthcare is a trading division of Informa UK Ltd. Registered Office, 37/41 Mortimer Street, London W1T 3JH. Registered in England and Wales number 1072954.

Tel: +44 (0)20 7017 5000
Fax: +44 (0)20 7017 6699
Email: info.medicine@tandf.co.uk
Website: www.informahealthcare.com

Third printing 2007

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without the prior permission of the publisher or in accordance with the provisions of the Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 or under the terms of any licence permitting limited copying issued by the Copyright Licensing Agency, 90 Tottenham Court Road, London W1P 0LP.

Although every effort has been made to ensure that all owners of copyright material have been acknowledged in this publication, we would be glad to acknowledge in subsequent reprints or editions any omissions brought to our attention.

Although every effort has been made to ensure that drug doses and other information are presented accurately in this publication, the ultimate responsibility rests with the prescribing physician. Neither the publishers nor the authors can be held responsible for errors or for any consequences arising from the use of information contained herein. For detailed prescribing information or instructions on the use of any product or procedure discussed herein, please consult the prescribing information or instructional material issued by the manufacturer.

A CIP record for this book is available from the British Library.
Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Data available on application

ISBN-10: 0 415 42416 X
ISBN-13: 978 0 415 42416 5

Distributed in North and South America by
Taylor & Francis
6000 Broken Sound Parkway, NW, (Suite 300)
Boca Raton, FL 33487, USA

Within Continental USA
Tel: 1 (800) 272 7737; Fax: 1 (800) 374 3401
Outside Continental USA
Tel: (561) 994 0555; Fax: (561) 361 6018
Email: orders@tandf.co.uk

Distributed in the rest of the world by
Thomson Publishing Services
Cheriton House
North Way
Andover, Hampshire SP10 5BE, UK
Tel: +44 (0)1264 332424
Email: tps.tandfsalesorder@thomson.com

Composition by Exeter Premedia Services Private Ltd, Chennai, India
Printed and bound in Great Britain by MPG Books, Bodmin, Cornwall, UK

26 NOV 2007

Contents

<i>Authors and editors</i>	xii
<i>Preface</i>	xiii
<i>Acknowledgements</i>	xiv
<i>Notes on using The Maudsley Prescribing Guidelines</i>	xv
<i>Notes on inclusion of drugs</i>	xv
<i>Notes on commonly used abbreviations</i>	xv
1 Plasma level monitoring of psychotropics and anticonvulsants	1
Introduction	1
Interpreting sample results	2
Clozapine	4
Olanzapine	4
Risperidone	5
2 Schizophrenia	8
General introduction to antipsychotics	8
Antipsychotics – equivalent doses	14
Antipsychotics – minimum effective doses	15
Antipsychotics – licensed maximum doses	17
New antipsychotics – costs	18
Choice of antipsychotic	19
New antipsychotics	25
Antipsychotics – general principles of prescribing	27
Atypical antipsychotics – summary of NICE guidance	28
1st episode schizophrenia	29
Relapse or acute exacerbation of schizophrenia	30
Switching antipsychotics because of poor tolerability – recommendations	33

First-generation antipsychotics – place in therapy	34
Antipsychotics – monitoring	38
Depot antipsychotics	42
Risperidone long-acting injection (RLAI)	45
Management of patients on long-term depots	49
Combined antipsychotics	50
High-dose antipsychotics: prescribing and monitoring	52
Negative symptoms	55
Antipsychotic prophylaxis	57
Refractory schizophrenia	61
Refractory schizophrenia – optimising clozapine treatment	63
Refractory schizophrenia – alternatives to clozapine	66
Clozapine – management of common adverse effects	70
Clozapine – uncommon or unusual adverse effects	73
Clozapine – serious haematological and cardiovascular adverse effects	75
Clozapine, neutropenia and lithium	77
Clozapine-related hypersalivation	81
Clozapine and cancer chemotherapy	84
Guidelines for the initiation of clozapine for patients based in the community	85
Fish oils in schizophrenia	89
Extrapyramidal side-effects	92
Hyperprolactinaemia	95
Algorithm for the treatment of antipsychotic-induced akathisia	97
Treatment of tardive dyskinesia (TD)	99
Neuroleptic malignant syndrome (NMS)	103
Catatonia	106
Antipsychotics and hypertension	108
Antipsychotic-induced weight gain	110
Treatment of drug-induced weight gain	112

Psychotropic-related QT prolongation	116
Antipsychotics, diabetes and impaired glucose tolerance	123
Antipsychotics and dyslipidaemia	128
Antipsychotics and sexual dysfunction	132
Antipsychotic-induced hyponatraemia	138
Antipsychotics: relative adverse effects – a rough guide	141
3 Bipolar disorder	142
Valproate	143
Lithium	147
Carbamazepine	153
Physical monitoring for people with bipolar disorder	156
Treatment of acute mania or hypomania	159
Antipsychotics in bipolar disorder	165
Bipolar depression	167
Rapid-cycling bipolar affective disorder	172
Prophylaxis in bipolar disorder	174
4 Depression and anxiety	177
Antidepressant drugs – tricyclics	178
Antidepressant drugs – SSRIs	180
Antidepressant drugs – MAOIs	182
Antidepressant drugs – others	184
Treatment of affective illness	186
Drug treatment of depression	187
Antidepressant prophylaxis	190
Treatment of refractory depression	193
Treatment of refractory depression – second choice	197
Treatment of refractory depression – other reported treatments	199
Psychotic depression	203
Electroconvulsive therapy (ECT) and psychotropics	204

Stimulants in depression	207	Melatonin in the treatment of insomnia in children and adolescents	295
Antidepressant-induced hyponatraemia	210	Rapid tranquillisation (RT) in children and adolescents	297
Post-stroke depression	213	Persistent aggression in children and adolescents	300
SSRIs and bleeding	215	Doses of commonly used psychotropic drugs in children and adolescents	301
Antidepressants and diabetes mellitus	218		
Treatment of depression in the elderly	220	6 Substance misuse	302
Cardiac effects of antidepressants	224	Introduction	302
Antidepressant-induced arrhythmia	228	Alcohol misuse	304
Antidepressants and sexual dysfunction	231	Opioid misuse	318
Antidepressants – swapping and stopping	235	Nicotine and smoking cessation	338
Antidepressant discontinuation symptoms	240	Cocaine and other stimulant use	343
St John's wort	244	Benzodiazepine use	344
Drug interactions with antidepressants	247	Drugs of misuse – a summary	345
Anxiety spectrum disorders	251	Interactions between 'street drugs' and prescribed psychotropic drugs	349
Benzodiazepines	259		
Benzodiazepines and disinhibition	262	7 Use of psychotropics in special patient groups	353
Benzodiazepines: dependence and detoxification	264	Depression and psychosis in epilepsy	353
Insomnia	267	Pharmacokinetic drug interactions between antiepileptic drugs and other psychotropic drugs	359
5 Children and adolescents	271	Withdrawing anticonvulsant drugs	363
Principles of prescribing practice in childhood and adolescence	272	Drug choice in pregnancy	365
Depression in children and adolescents	273	Psychotropics in breast feeding	377
Bipolar illness in children and adolescents	275	Renal impairment	388
Anxiety in children and adolescents	279	Hepatic impairment	403
Obsessive compulsive disorder (OCD) in children and adolescents	280	Prescribing in the elderly	412
Attention deficit hyperactivity disorder (ADHD)	281	Alzheimer's disease	415
Psychosis in children and adolescents	287	Parkinson's disease	425
Autism	289		
Tourette's syndrome	292		

Multiple sclerosis	
Eating disorders	433
Acutely disturbed or violent behaviour	437
Chronic behavioural disturbance in learning disability	444
Self-injurious behaviour in learning disability	445
Psychotropics and surgery	449
General principles of prescribing in HIV	454
Drug treatment of borderline personality disorder	462
Delirium	465
Pharmacological treatment of Huntington's disease	470
8 Miscellaneous conditions and substances	473
Psychotropics in overdose	473
Biochemical and haematological effects of psychotropics	479
Prescribing drugs outside their licensed indications	488
Observations on the placebo effect in mental illness	491
Drug interactions with alcohol	493
Nicotine	498
Smoking and psychotropic drugs	502
Caffeine	505
Complementary therapies	508
Enhancing medication adherence	512
Communication with patients/service users	515
Driving and psychotropic drugs	516
Use of antibiotics in psychiatry	524
Index	527

- Hoek HW et al. Review of the prevalence and incidence of eating disorders. *Int J Eat Disord* 2003;34:383-96.
- Steffen KJ et al. Emerging drugs for eating disorder treatment. *Expert Opin Emerg Drugs* 2006;11:315-36.
- National Institute for Clinical Excellence. Eating disorders: Core interventions in the treatment and management of anorexia nervosa, bulimia nervosa and related eating disorders. Clinical Guidance 9. <http://www.nice.org.uk>, 2004.
- American Psychiatric Association. Treatment of patients with eating disorders, third edition. *Am J Psychiatry* 2006;163:4-54.
- Connan F et al. Biochemical and endocrine complications. *Eur Eat Disord Rev* 2007;8:144-57.
- Claudino AM et al. Antidepressants for anorexia nervosa. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2006;CD004365.
- Barbarkh NC et al. Use of nutritional supplements to increase the efficacy of fluoxetine in the treatment of anorexia nervosa. *Int J Eat Disord* 2004;35:10-5.
- Malins A et al. Olanzapine treatment of anorexia nervosa: a retrospective study. *Int J Eat Disord* 2003;33:234-7.
- La Via MC et al. Case reports of olanzapine treatment of anorexia nervosa. *Int J Eat Disord* 2001;27:363-6.
- Su JC et al. Zinc supplementation in the treatment of anorexia nervosa. *Eat Weight Disord* 2002;7:20-2.
- Morrazzi MA et al. Naltrexone use in the treatment of anorexia nervosa and bulimia nervosa. *Int Clin Psychopharmacol* 1995;10:163-72.
- Halmi KA et al. Anorexia nervosa. Treatment efficacy of cyproheptadine and amitriptyline. *Arch Gen Psychiatry* 1986;43:177-81.
- Kaye WH et al. Double-blind placebo-controlled administration of fluoxetine in restricting- and restricting-purging-type anorexia nervosa. *Biol Psychiatry* 2001;49:644-52.
- Walsh BT et al. Fluoxetine after weight restoration in anorexia nervosa: a randomized controlled trial. *JAMA* 2006;295:2605-12.
- Fluoxetine Bulimia Nervosa Collaborative Study Group. Fluoxetine in the treatment of bulimia nervosa: A multicenter, placebo-controlled, double-blind trial. *Arch Gen Psychiatry* 1992;49: 139-47.
- Goldstein DJ et al. Long-term fluoxetine treatment of bulimia nervosa. Fluoxetine Bulimia Nervosa Research Group. *Br J Psychiatry* 1995;166:660-6.
- Romano SJ et al. A placebo-controlled study of fluoxetine in continued treatment of bulimia nervosa after successful acute fluoxetine treatment. *Am J Psychiatry* 2002;159:96-102.
- Bacaltchuk J et al. Antidepressants versus placebo for people with bulimia nervosa. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2003;CD003391.
- Loombrum P et al. A 12 to 24 weeks pilot study of sertraline treatment in obese women binge eaters. *Hum Psychopharmacol* 2006;21:181-8.

Acute behavioural disturbance may occur in the context of psychiatric illness, physical illness, substance abuse or personality disorder. Psychotic symptoms are common and the patient may be aggressive towards others secondary to persecutory delusions or auditory, visual or tactile hallucinations.

The clinical practice of rapid tranquillisation (RT) is used when appropriate psychological and behavioural approaches have failed to de-escalate acutely disturbed behaviour. It is, essentially, a treatment of last resort. RT is not underpinned by a strong evidence base. Patients who require RT are often too disturbed to give informed consent and therefore cannot participate in randomised controlled trials (RCTs). Recommendations are therefore based partly on research data, partly on theoretical considerations and partly on clinical experience.

Several studies supporting the efficacy of oral risperidone¹⁻³ and one observational study, each supporting the efficacy of quetiapine⁵ and olanzapine erodispersible tablets⁶ have been published. The level of behavioural disturbance exhibited by the patients in these studies was moderate at most, and all subjects accepted oral treatment (this degree of compliance would be unusual in clinical practice).

Larger, placebo-controlled RCTs support the efficacy of IM olanzapine^{7,8}, ziprasidone⁹ and aripiprazole¹⁰. Again, the level of behavioural disturbance in these studies was moderate at most. One small open study supports the effectiveness of IM ziprasidone in clinical emergencies (where disturbance was severe)¹¹.

Two large RCTs (the TREC studies^{12,13}) have investigated the efficacy of a benzodiazepine versus an antipsychotic/sedative combination (all administered IM) in 'real-life' acutely disturbed patients. TREC 1¹² found midazolam 7.5-15 mg to be more rapidly sedating than a combination of haloperidol 5-10 mg and promethazine 50 mg. TREC 2¹³ found haloperidol 10 mg combined with promethazine 25-50 mg to be more rapidly sedating than lorazepam 4 mg. Although these studies are undoubtedly the best available to date, UK psychiatrists rarely prescribe IM midazolam or promethazine, and have been increasingly reluctant to prescribe IM haloperidol due to its ability to cause EPSEs. Acute EPSEs may adversely affect longer-term compliance¹⁴. The SPC requirement for ECG with haloperidol also limits its use. Lorazepam IM is an established treatment and TREC 2¹³ supports its efficacy.

Plans for the management of individual patients should ideally be made in advance. The aim is to prevent disturbed behaviour and reduce risk of violence. Nursing interventions (de-escalation, time out), increased nursing levels, transfer of the patient to a psychiatric intensive care unit (PICU) and pharmacological management are options that may be employed. Care should be taken to avoid combinations and high cumulative doses of antipsychotic drugs. The monitoring of routine physical observations after RT is essential. Note that RT is often viewed as punitive by patients.

The aims of RT are threefold:

1. To reduce suffering for the patient: psychological or physical (through self-harm or accidents).
2. To reduce risk of harm to others by maintaining a safe environment.
3. To do no harm (by prescribing safe regimens and monitoring physical health).

Note: Despite the need for rapid and effective treatment, concomitant use of two or more antipsychotics (antipsychotic polypharmacy) should be avoided on the basis of risk associated with QT prolongation (common to almost all antipsychotics) (see page 115). This is a particularly important consideration in RT where the patient's physical state predisposes to cardiac arrhythmia.

In an emergency situation (NB: read attached notes carefully)

Step	Intervention						
1	De-escalation, time out, placement, etc., as appropriate						
2 ^{a,b}	<table border="0"> <tr> <td style="vertical-align: top;"> Offer oral treatment. Haloperidol 5 mg or Olanzapine⁶ 10 mg or Risperidone³⁻⁴ 1-2 mg </td> <td style="font-size: 3em; vertical-align: middle; padding: 0 10px;">}</td> <td style="vertical-align: top;"> with or without lorazepam 1-2 mg. Repeat every 45-60 min. Go to step 3 if three doses fail or sooner if the patient is placing themselves or others at significant risk. </td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="3" style="padding-top: 10px;"> Monotherapy with buccal midazolam, 10-20 mg may offer a useful alternative. Note that this preparation is unlicensed. </td> </tr> </table>	Offer oral treatment. Haloperidol 5 mg or Olanzapine ⁶ 10 mg or Risperidone ³⁻⁴ 1-2 mg	}	with or without lorazepam 1-2 mg. Repeat every 45-60 min. Go to step 3 if three doses fail or sooner if the patient is placing themselves or others at significant risk.	Monotherapy with buccal midazolam, 10-20 mg may offer a useful alternative. Note that this preparation is unlicensed.		
Offer oral treatment. Haloperidol 5 mg or Olanzapine ⁶ 10 mg or Risperidone ³⁻⁴ 1-2 mg	}	with or without lorazepam 1-2 mg. Repeat every 45-60 min. Go to step 3 if three doses fail or sooner if the patient is placing themselves or others at significant risk.					
Monotherapy with buccal midazolam, 10-20 mg may offer a useful alternative. Note that this preparation is unlicensed.							
3 ^{b,f}	<table border="0"> <tr> <td style="vertical-align: top;"> Consider IM treatment Lorazepam 1-2 mg^{13,10} or Midazolam 7.5-15 mg¹² or Haloperidol 5 mg^{12,11} or Olanzapine 5-10 mg^{8,2} or Ziprasidone 10-20 mg^{9,17} or Aripiprazole 10 mg¹⁰ </td> <td style="font-size: 3em; vertical-align: middle; padding: 0 10px;">}</td> <td style="vertical-align: top;"> IM olanzapine should not be combined with an IM benzodiazepine^{15,16}. The safety of other SGAs combined with benzodiazepines is unknown. </td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="3" style="padding-top: 10px;"> Repeat up to two times at 30-60 min intervals, if insufficient effect. Promethazine 50 mg IM is an alternative in benzodiazepine-tolerant patients. </td> </tr> </table>	Consider IM treatment Lorazepam 1-2 mg ^{13,10} or Midazolam 7.5-15 mg ¹² or Haloperidol 5 mg ^{12,11} or Olanzapine 5-10 mg ^{8,2} or Ziprasidone 10-20 mg ^{9,17} or Aripiprazole 10 mg ¹⁰	}	IM olanzapine should not be combined with an IM benzodiazepine ^{15,16} . The safety of other SGAs combined with benzodiazepines is unknown.	Repeat up to two times at 30-60 min intervals, if insufficient effect. Promethazine 50 mg IM is an alternative in benzodiazepine-tolerant patients.		
Consider IM treatment Lorazepam 1-2 mg ^{13,10} or Midazolam 7.5-15 mg ¹² or Haloperidol 5 mg ^{12,11} or Olanzapine 5-10 mg ^{8,2} or Ziprasidone 10-20 mg ^{9,17} or Aripiprazole 10 mg ¹⁰	}	IM olanzapine should not be combined with an IM benzodiazepine ^{15,16} . The safety of other SGAs combined with benzodiazepines is unknown.					
Repeat up to two times at 30-60 min intervals, if insufficient effect. Promethazine 50 mg IM is an alternative in benzodiazepine-tolerant patients.							
4	<table border="0"> <tr> <td style="vertical-align: top;"> Consider IV treatment </td> <td style="vertical-align: top;"> Diazepam^{h,m} 10 mg over at least 5 min. Repeat after 5-10 min if insufficient effect (up to three times). </td> </tr> </table>	Consider IV treatment	Diazepam ^{h,m} 10 mg over at least 5 min. Repeat after 5-10 min if insufficient effect (up to three times).				
Consider IV treatment	Diazepam ^{h,m} 10 mg over at least 5 min. Repeat after 5-10 min if insufficient effect (up to three times).						
5	<table border="0"> <tr> <td style="vertical-align: top;"> Seek expert advice. </td> <td style="vertical-align: top;"> Amylobarbitalⁿ 250 mg IM or paraldehyde^e 5-10 ml IM are options. Very, very few episodes of RT should reach this point. </td> </tr> </table>	Seek expert advice.	Amylobarbital ⁿ 250 mg IM or paraldehyde ^e 5-10 ml IM are options. Very, very few episodes of RT should reach this point.				
Seek expert advice.	Amylobarbital ⁿ 250 mg IM or paraldehyde ^e 5-10 ml IM are options. Very, very few episodes of RT should reach this point.						

- a. Choice depends on current treatment. If the patient is established on antipsychotics, lorazepam may be used alone. If the patient uses street drugs or is already receiving benzodiazepines regularly, an antipsychotic may be used alone. For the majority of patients, the best response will be obtained with a combination of an antipsychotic and lorazepam.
- b. Ensure that parenteral anticholinergics are available. Procyclidine 5-10 mg IM or benztropine 1-2 mg IM may be required to reverse acute dystonic reactions (most likely with haloperidol).
- c. Either an antipsychotic or benzodiazepine can be used alone as in (a), but for the majority of patients the best response will be obtained with a combination of an antipsychotic and lorazepam.
- d. Have flumazenil available to reverse the effects of lorazepam or midazolam. (Monitor respiratory rate - give flumazenil if rate falls below 10/min.)
- e. From this point onwards, review the patient's legal status. The requirement for enforced IM medication in informal patients should prompt the use of the Mental Health Act.
 - i. From this point onwards, consider consulting a senior colleague.
 - g. Mix lorazepam 1:1 with water for injections before injecting. Some centres use 2-4 mg.
 - h. Recommended by NICE only for moderate behavioural disturbance.
 - l. Ziprasidone is unlikely to be licensed in the UK, but is available in the USA and other countries.
 - k. Promethazine has a slow onset of action but is often an effective sedative. Dilution is not required before IM injection. May be repeated up to a maximum of 100 mg/day. Wait 1-2 hours after injection to assess response. Note that promethazine alone has been reported to cause NMS¹⁸ although it is an extremely weak dopamine antagonist.
 - l. Use Diazemuls to avoid injection site reactions. IV therapy may be used instead of IM when a very rapid effect is required. IV therapy also ensures near immediate delivery of the drug to its site of action and effectively avoids the danger of inadvertent accumulation of slowly absorbed IM doses. Note also that IV doses can be repeated after only 5-10 min if no effect is observed.
 - i. Have flumazenil available to reverse the effects of diazepam. (Monitor respiratory rate - give flumazenil if rate falls below 10/min.)
 - m. Caution in the very young and elderly and those with pre-existing brain damage or impulse control problems, as disinhibition reactions are more likely¹⁹.
 - n. Amylobarbital is a powerful respiratory depressant with no pharmacological antagonist. Have facilities for mechanical ventilation available.
 - o. Paraldehyde is now used extremely rarely and is difficult to obtain. It should only be used when all else has failed. In many cases, ECT may be more appropriate. Note that paraldehyde is associated with a high incidence of tachycardia and tachypnea²¹. IV diazepam may be more effective and is certainly better tolerated²⁰.

Rapid tranquillisation - physical monitoring

After any parenteral drug administration, monitor as follows:

- Temperature**
- Pulse**
- Blood pressure**
- Respiratory rate**

Every 5-10 min for 1 hour, and then half-hourly until patient is ambulatory. Patients who refuse to have their vital signs monitored should be observed for signs/symptoms of pyrexia, hypotension, oversedation and general physical well-being.

If the patient is asleep or **unconscious**, the use of pulse oximetry to measure oxygen saturation continuously is desirable. A nurse should remain with the patient until the patient is ambulatory again.

ECG and haematological monitoring are also strongly recommended when parenteral antipsychotics are given, especially when higher doses are used^{21,22}. Hypokalaemia, stress and agitation place the patient at risk of cardiac arrhythmia²³ (see page 115). ECG monitoring is formally recommended for all patients receiving haloperidol in any formulation²⁴.

Remedial measures in rapid tranquillisation

Problem	Remedial measures
Acute dystonia (including oculogyric crises)	Give procyclidine 5–10 mg IM or IV or benzatropine 1–2 mg IM.
Reduced respiratory rate (<10/min) or oxygen saturation (<90%)	Give oxygen, raise legs, ensure patient is not lying face down. Give flumazenil if benzodiazepine-induced respiratory depression suspected (see protocol). If induced by any other sedative agent: transfer to a medical bed and ventilate mechanically.
Irregular or slow (<50/min) pulse	Refer to specialist medical care immediately.
Fall in blood pressure (>30 mmHg orthostatic drop or <50 mmHg diastolic)	Have patient lie flat , tilt bed towards head. Monitor closely.
Increased temperature	Withhold antipsychotics: (risk of NMS and perhaps arrhythmia). Check creatinine kinase urgently.

Guidelines for the use of flumazenil

Indication for use	If, after the administration of lorazepam or diazepam, respiratory rate falls below 10/min.
Contraindications	Patients with epilepsy who have been receiving long-term benzodiazepines.
Caution	Dose should be carefully titrated in hepatic impairment.
Dose and route of administration	Initial: 200 µg intravenously over 15 seconds – if required level of consciousness not achieved after 60 seconds, then, Subsequent dose: 100 µg over 10 seconds.
Time before dose can be repeated	60 seconds.
Maximum dose	1 mg in 24 hours (one initial dose and eight subsequent doses).
Side-effects	Patients may become agitated, anxious or fearful on awakening. Seizures may occur in regular benzodiazepine users.
Management	Side-effects usually subside.
Monitoring	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • What to monitor? Respiratory rate. • How often? Continuously until respiratory rate returns to baseline level. Flumazenil has a short half-life (much shorter than diazepam) and respiratory function may recover and then deteriorate again. <p>Note: If respiratory rate does not return to normal or patient is not alert after initial doses given, assume that sedation is due to some other cause.</p>

Guidelines for the use of Clopixol Acuphase (zuclopenthixol acetate)

Acuphase should be used only after an acutely psychotic patient has required repeated injections of short-acting antipsychotic drugs such as haloperidol or olanzapine, or sedative drugs such as lorazepam.

Acuphase should be given only when enough time has elapsed to assess the full response to previously injected drugs: allow 15 min after IV injections; 60 min after IM.

Acuphase should never be administered:

- in an attempt to 'hasten' the antipsychotic effect of other antipsychotic therapy
- for rapid tranquillisation (onset of effect is too slow)
- at the same time as other parenteral antipsychotics or benzodiazepines (may lead to oversedation which is difficult to reverse)
- as a 'test dose' for zuclopenthixol decanoate depot
- to a patient who is physically resistant (risk of intravasation and oil embolus).

Acuphase should never be used for, or in, the following:

- patients who accept oral medication
- patients who are neuroleptic naive
- patients who are sensitive to EPSE
- patients who are unconscious
- patients who are pregnant
- those with hepatic or renal impairment
- those with cardiac disease.

Onset and duration of action

Sedative effects usually begin to be seen 2 hours after injection and peak after 12 hours. The effects may last for up to 72 hours. Note: Acuphase has no place in rapid tranquillisation: *its action is not rapid.*

Dose

Acuphase should be given in a dose of 50–150 mg, up to a maximum of 400 mg over a 2-week period. This maximum duration ensures that a treatment plan is put in place. It does not indicate that there are known harmful effects from more prolonged administration, although such use should be very exceptional. There is no such thing as a 'course of Acuphase'. The patient should be assessed before each administration.

Injections should be spaced at least 24 hours apart.

Note: zuclopenthixol acetate is widely misused as a sort of 'chemical straitjacket'. In reality, it is a potentially toxic preparation with very little published information to support its use²⁵. It is perhaps best reserved for those few patients who have a prior history of good response to Acuphase.

1. Lejeune J et al. Oral risperidone plus oral lorazepam versus standard care with intramuscular conventional neuroleptics in the initial phase of treating individuals with acute psychosis. *Int Clin Psychopharmacol* 2004;19:259–69.
2. Currier GW et al. Acute treatment of psychotic agitation: a randomized comparison of oral treatment with risperidone and lorazepam versus intramuscular treatment with haloperidol and lorazepam. *J Clin Psychiatry* 2004;65:386–94.
3. Yildiz A et al. Observational data on the antiagitation effect of risperidone tablets in emergency settings: a preliminary report. *Int J Psychiatry Clin Pract* 2003;7:217–21.
4. Currier GW et al. Risperidone liquid concentrate and oral lorazepam versus intramuscular haloperidol and intramuscular lorazepam for treatment of psychotic agitation. *J Clin Psychiatry* 2001;62:153–7.
5. Ganesan S et al. Effectiveness of quetiapine for the management of aggressive psychosis in the emergency psychiatric setting: a naturalistic uncontrolled trial. *Int J Psychiatry Clin Pract* 2005;9:199–203.
6. Simpson JR Jr et al. Impact of orally disintegrating olanzapine on use of intramuscular antipsychotics, seclusion, and restraint in an acute inpatient psychiatric setting. *J Clin Psychopharmacol* 2006;26:333–5.
7. Wright P et al. Double-blind, placebo-controlled comparison of intramuscular olanzapine and intramuscular haloperidol in the treatment of acute agitation in schizophrenia. *Am J Psychiatry* 2001;158:1149–51.
8. Breier A et al. A double-blind, placebo-controlled dose-response comparison of intramuscular olanzapine and haloperidol in the treatment of acute agitation in schizophrenia. *Arch Gen Psychiatry* 2002;59:441–8.
9. Brook S et al. Intramuscular ziprasidone compared with intramuscular haloperidol in the treatment of acute psychosis. Ziprasidone I.M. Study Group. *J Clin Psychiatry* 2000;61:933–41.
10. Andrezina R et al. Intramuscular aripiprazole for the treatment of acute agitation in patients with schizophrenia or schizoaffective disorder: a double-blind, placebo-controlled comparison with intramuscular haloperidol. *Psychopharmacology* 2006;188:281–92.
11. Fulton JA et al. Intramuscular ziprasidone: an effective agent for sedation of the agitated ED patient. *Am J Emerg Med* 2006;24:254–5.
12. TREC Collaborative Group. Rapid tranquillisation for agitated patients in emergency psychiatric rooms: a randomised trial of midazolam versus haloperidol plus promethazine. *BMJ* 2003;327:708–13.
13. Alexander J et al. Rapid tranquillisation of violent or agitated patients in a psychiatric emergency setting. Pragmatic randomised trial of intramuscular lorazepam v. haloperidol plus promethazine. *Br J Psychiatry* 2004;185:63–9.
14. van Harten PN et al. Acute dystonia induced by drug treatment. *BMJ* 1999;319:623–6.
15. Eli Lilly and Company Limited. Letter to Healthcare Professionals. 2004.
16. Zacher JL et al. Hypotension secondary to the combination of intramuscular olanzapine and intramuscular lorazepam. *J Clin Psychiatry* 2005;66:1614–15.
17. Brook S et al. Ziprasidone and haloperidol in the treatment of acute exacerbation of schizophrenia and schizoaffective disorder: comparison of intramuscular and oral formulations in a 6-week, randomized, blinded-assessment study. *Psychopharmacology* 2005;178:514–23.
18. Chan-Tark KM. Neuroleptic malignant syndrome due to promethazine. *South Med J* 1999;92:1017–18.
19. Paton C. Benzodiazepines and disinhibition: a review. *Psychiatr Bull* 2002;26:460–2.
20. Thompson WL et al. Diazepam and paraldehyde for treatment of severe delirium tremens. A controlled trial. *Ann Intern Med* 1975;82:175–80.
21. Appleby L et al. Sudden unexplained death in psychiatric in-patients. *Br J Psychiatry* 2000;176:405–6.
22. Yap YG et al. Risk of torsades de pointes with non-cardiac drugs. Doctors need to be aware that many drugs can cause QT prolongation. *BMJ* 2000;320:1158–9.
23. Taylor DM. Antipsychotics and QT prolongation. *Acta Psychiatr Scand* 2003;107:85–95.
24. Janssen-Cilag Ltd. Halidol injection. <http://emc.medicines.org.uk/>, 2006.
25. Gibson RC et al. Zuclopenthixol acetate for acute schizophrenia and similar serious mental illnesses. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2004;CD000525.

Further reading

- Currier GW et al. Orally versus intramuscularly administered antipsychotic drugs in psychiatric emergencies. *J Psychiatr Pract* 2006;12:30–40.
- McAllister Williams RH et al. Rapid tranquillisation: time for a reappraisal of options for parenteral therapy. *Br J Psychiatry* 2002;180:485–9.
- Macpherson R et al. A growing evidence base for management guidelines: revisiting... guidelines for the management of acutely disturbed psychiatric patients. *Adv Psychiatr Treat* 2005;11:404–15.
- National Institute for Clinical Excellence. Violence - The short-term management of disturbed/violent behaviour in in-patient psychiatric settings and emergency departments. Guideline No 25, 2005. www.nice.org.uk.
- Pilowsky LS et al. Rapid tranquillisation. A survey of emergency prescribing in a general psychiatric hospital. *Br J Psychiatry* 1992;160:831–5.

The Maudsley

THE SOUTH LONDON AND MAUDSLEY NHS FOUNDATION TRUST
OXLEAS NHS FOUNDATION TRUST

PRESCRIBING GUIDELINES

10th Edition

David Taylor
Carol Paton
Shitij Kapur

informa
healthcare

MAHI - STM - 122 - 350

© Taylor, Paton, Kapur 2009

First published in the United Kingdom in 2009 by Informa Healthcare, Telephone House, 69-77 Paul Street, London EC2A 4LQ. Informa Healthcare is a trading division of Informa UK Ltd. Registered Office: 37/41 Mortimer Street, London W1T 3TH. Registered in England and Wales number 1072954.

www.informahc.com

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without the prior permission of the publisher or in accordance with the provisions of the Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 or under the terms of any licence permitting limited copying issued by the Copyright Licensing Agency, 90 Tottenham Court Road, London W1P 0LP.

Although every effort has been made to ensure that all owners of copyright material have been acknowledged in this publication, we would be glad to acknowledge in subsequent reprints or editions any omissions brought to our attention.

A CIP record for this book is available from the British Library,
Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Data available on application

ISBN-13: 978 1 84184 699 6

Distributed in North and South America by
Taylor & Francis
6000 Broken Sound Parkway, NW, (Suite 300)
Boca Raton, FL 33487, USA

Within Continental USA

Tel: 1 (800) 272 7737; Fax: 1 (800) 374 3401

Outside Continental USA

Tel: (561) 994 0555; Fax: (561) 361 6018

email: orders@taylorandfrancis.com

Book orders in the rest of the world

Telephone: +44 (0)20 7017 5540

Email: CSDhealthcarebooks@informa.com

Composition by Exeter Pressmedia Services Pvt Ltd, Chennai, India

Printed and bound in India by Replika Press Pvt. Ltd.

Authors and editors

David Taylor

Chief Pharmacist, South London and Maudsley NHS Foundation Trust
Professor of Psychopharmacology, King's College, London

Carol Paton

Chief Pharmacist, Oxleas NHS Foundation Trust
Honorary Research Fellow, Imperial College, London

Shitij Kapur

Vice Dean and Professor, Institute of Psychiatry, London

MAHJ STM 122 - 351

29 NOV 2010

Notes on using *The Maudsley Prescribing Guidelines*

The main aim of *The Guidelines* is to provide clinicians with practically useful advice on the prescribing of psychotropic agents in commonly encountered clinical situations. The advice contained in this handbook is based on a combination of literature review, clinical experience and expert contribution. We do not claim that this advice is necessarily 'correct' or that it deserves greater prominence than guidance provided by other professional bodies or special interest groups. We hope, however, to have provided guidance that helps to assure the safe, effective and economic use of medicines in mental health. We hope also to have made clear the sources of information used to inform the guidance given.

Please note that many of the recommendations provided here go beyond the licensed or labelled indications of many drugs, both in the UK and elsewhere. Note also that, while we have endeavoured to make sure all quoted doses are correct, clinicians should always consult statutory texts before prescribing. Users of *The Guidelines* should also bear in mind that the contents of this handbook are based on information available to us up to June 2009. Much of the advice contained here will become outdated as more research is conducted and published.

No liability is accepted for any injury, loss or damage, however caused.

Notes on inclusion of drugs

The Guidelines are used in many other countries outside the UK. With this in mind, we have included in this edition those drugs in widespread use throughout the western world in June 2009. Thus we have included, for example, ziprasidone and iloperidone, even though these drugs are not marketed in the UK at this time. Their inclusion gives *The Guidelines* relevance in those countries where ziprasidone and iloperidone are marketed and may also be of benefit to UK readers, as many unlicensed drugs can be obtained through formal pharmaceutical importers. We have tried to include information on drugs likely to be introduced into practice in the next two years. Many older drugs (methotrimeprazine, pericyazine, miprotiline, etc.) are either only briefly mentioned or not included on the basis that these drugs are not in widespread use at the time of writing.

Notes on commonly used abbreviations

Throughout this text we have abbreviated *British National Formulary* to *BNF* and extrapyramidal side-effects to *EPS*. We have also used *FGA* for first generation antipsychotics and *SGA* for second generation antipsychotics (broadly speaking, those antipsychotics marketed in the UK since 1990). *SPC* refers to the UK Summary of Product Characteristics for the drug in question.

All other abbreviations are explained in the text itself.

Contents

<i>Authors and editors</i>	v
<i>Preface</i>	vi
<i>Acknowledgements</i>	vii
<i>Notes on using The Maudsley Prescribing Guidelines</i>	viii
<i>Notes on inclusion of drugs</i>	viii
<i>Notes on commonly used abbreviations</i>	viii
1 Plasma level monitoring of psychotropics and anticonvulsants	
Introduction	1
Interpreting sample results	2
Amisulpride	4
Aripiprazole	4
Clozapine	4
Olanzapine	5
Quetiapine	5
Risperidone	6
2 Schizophrenia	
Antipsychotics – general introduction	9
Antipsychotics – equivalent doses	11
Antipsychotics – minimum effective doses	12
Antipsychotics – licensed maximum doses	14
New antipsychotics	15
New antipsychotics – costs	17
Antipsychotics – general principles of prescribing	18
NICE Guidelines – Schizophrenia	19
First-episode schizophrenia	21
Relapse or acute exacerbation of schizophrenia	22

Switching antipsychotics because of poor tolerability – recommendations	24	Algorithm for the treatment of antipsychotic-induced akathisia	85
Antipsychotic response to increase the dose, to switch, to add or just wait – what is the right move?	26	Treatment of tardive dyskinesia (TD)	87
Speed and onset of antipsychotic action	29	Neuroleptic malignant syndrome (NMS)	90
First-generation antipsychotics – place in therapy	31	Catatonia	92
Antipsychotics – monitoring	32	Antipsychotics and hypertension	94
Depot antipsychotics	35	Antipsychotic-induced weight gain	96
Risperidone long-acting injection	38	Treatment of drug-induced weight gain	97
Management of patients on long-term depots – dose reduction	41	Psychotropic-related QT prolongation	101
Combined antipsychotics	42	Antipsychotics, diabetes and impaired glucose tolerance	107
High-dose antipsychotics: prescribing and monitoring	44	Antipsychotics and dyslipidaemia	111
Negative symptoms	47	Antipsychotics and sexual dysfunction	114
Antipsychotic prophylaxis	49	Antipsychotic-induced hyponatraemia	119
Refractory schizophrenia	53	Antipsychotics: relative adverse effects – a rough guide	122
Optimising clozapine treatment	55	3 Bipolar disorder	
Alternatives to clozapine	58	Valproate	123
Clozapine – management of common adverse effects	62	Lithium	128
Clozapine – uncommon or unusual adverse effects	64	Carbamazepine	134
Clozapine – serious haematological and cardiovascular adverse effects	66	Treatment of acute mania or hypomania	140
Clozapine, neutropenia and lithium	68	Antipsychotics in bipolar disorder	145
Clozapine-related hypersalivation	71	Bipolar depression	147
Clozapine and chemotherapy	74	Rapid-cycling bipolar affective disorder	151
Guidelines for the initiation of clozapine for patients based in the community	75	Prophylaxis in bipolar disorder	153
Omega-3 fatty acid (fish oils) in schizophrenia	78	4 Depression and anxiety	
Extrapyramidal side-effects	80	Antidepressants	155
Hyperprolactinaemia	83	Antidepressant drugs – tricyclics	158
		Antidepressant drugs – SSRIs	160
		Antidepressant drugs – MAOIs	164
		Antidepressant drugs – others	166
		Treatment of affective illness	170

Drug treatment of depression	171
Recognised minimum effective doses – antidepressants	173
Antidepressant prophylaxis	174
Treatment of refractory depression – first choice	177
Treatment of refractory depression – second choice	181
Treatment of refractory depression – other reported treatments	182
Psychotic depression	185
Electroconvulsive therapy (ECT) and psychotropics	187
Stimulants in depression	190
Antidepressant-induced hyponatraemia	193
Post-stroke depression	195
SSRIs and bleeding	197
Antidepressants and diabetes mellitus	199
Treatment of depression in the elderly	201
Cardiac effects of antidepressants	204
Antidepressant-induced arrhythmia	207
Antidepressants and sexual dysfunction	209
Antidepressants and hyperprolactinaemia	212
Antidepressants – swapping and stopping	214
Antidepressant discontinuation symptoms	220
St John's Wort	223
Drug interactions with antidepressants	226
Antidepressants: relative adverse effects – a rough guide	229
Antidepressants – alternative routes of administration	230
Anxiety spectrum disorders	234
Benzodiazepines	240
Benzodiazepines and disinhibition	243
Benzodiazepines: dependence and detoxification	245
Insomnia	248

5 Children and adolescents	
Principles of prescribing practice in childhood and adolescence	252
Depression in children and adolescents	253
Bipolar illness in children and adolescents	256
Anxiety in children and adolescents	259
Obsessive compulsive disorder (OCD) in children and adolescents	260
Attention deficit hyperactivity disorder (ADHD)	263
Prescribing in ADHD – a summary	266
Psychosis in children and adolescents	269
Autism spectrum disorders	270
Tics and Tourette syndrome	276
Melatonin in the treatment of insomnia in children and adolescents	279
Rapid tranquillisation (RT) in children and adolescents	281
Doses of commonly used psychotropic drugs in children and adolescents	283
6 Substance misuse	
Introduction	284
Alcohol dependence	286
Opioid misuse and dependence	299
Nicotine and smoking cessation	321
Pharmacological treatment of dependence on stimulant drugs	325
Benzodiazepine use	326
Drugs of misuse – a summary	327
Interactions between ‘street drugs’ and prescribed psychotropic drugs	331

7	Use of psychotropics in special patient groups	
	Depression and psychosis in epilepsy	335
	Pharmacokinetic drug interactions between antiepileptic drugs and other psychotropic drugs	339
	Withdrawing anticonvulsant drugs	342
	Drug choice in pregnancy	344
	Psychotropics in breast-feeding	357
	Renal impairment	367
	Hepatic impairment	380
	Prescribing in the elderly	386
	Dementia	388
	Behavioural and psychological symptoms of dementia	400
	Covert administration of medicines within food and drink	405
	Parkinson's disease	407
	Multiple sclerosis	410
	Eating disorders	414
	Acutely disturbed or violent behaviour	417
	Chronic behavioural disturbance (challenging behaviour) in learning disability (LD)	423
	Self-injurious behaviour in learning disability	425
	Psychotropics and surgery	428
	Atrial fibrillation – using psychotropics	433
	General principles of prescribing in HIV	435
	Drug treatment of borderline personality disorder	443
	Delirium	445
	Huntington's disease – pharmacological treatment	451
	Velo-cardio-facial syndrome (VCFS)	454
	Summary of commonly reported physical side effects of psychotropics	456
	Summary of commonly reported behavioural, cognitive, and psychiatric side effects of psychotropics	462

8	Miscellaneous conditions and substances	
	Psychotropics in overdose	464
	Biochemical and haematological effects of psychotropics	470
	Prescribing drugs outside their licensed indications	480
	Observations on the placebo effect in mental illness	482
	Drug interactions with alcohol	484
	Nicotine	488
	Smoking and psychotropic drugs	491
	Caffeine	495
	Complementary therapies	498
	Enhancing medication adherence	502
	Driving and psychotropic drugs	506
	Use of antibiotics in psychiatry	515
	Index	517

Summary of NICE guidance in eating disorders³

Anorexia nervosa

- Psychological interventions are the treatments of choice and should be accompanied by monitoring of the patient's physical state
- No particular medication is recommended. A range of drugs may be used in the treatment of co-morbid conditions

Bulimia nervosa

- An evidence based self-help programme or cognitive behaviour therapy for bulimia nervosa should be the first choice of treatment
- A trial of fluoxetine may be offered as an alternative or additional first step

Binge eating disorder

- An evidence based self-help programme of cognitive behavioural therapy for binge eating disorder should be the first choice of treatment
- A trial of an SSRI can be considered as an alternative or additional first step

References

1. Hoek HW et al. Review of the prevalence and incidence of eating disorders. *Int J Eat Disord* 2003; 34:303-306.
2. Sofka EJ et al. Emerging drugs for eating disorder treatment. *Expert Opin Emerg Drugs* 2006; 7:315-326.
3. National Institute for Clinical Excellence. Eating disorders. *Case interventions in the treatment and management of anorexia nervosa, bulimia nervosa and related eating disorders. Clinical Guidance 9*. <http://www.nice.org.uk>. 2004.
4. American Psychiatric Association. Treatment of patients with eating disorders. *Third edition*. *Am J Psychiatry* 2006; 163:34-34.
5. Cirio S et al. What potential role is there for medication treatment in anorexia nervosa? *Int J Eat Disord* 2009; 42:1-8.
6. Duncan KE et al. The role of olanzapine in the treatment of anorexia nervosa. *Ann Pharmacother* 2007; 41:114-115.
7. Bussell H et al. Olanzapine in the treatment of low body weight and obsessive thinking in women with anorexia nervosa: a randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. *Am J Psychiatry* 2009; 165:1281-1288.
8. Cottani F et al. Biochemical and endocrine complications. *Eur Eat Disord Rev* 2007; 9:144-157.
9. Ciavolino AM et al. Antidepressants for anorexia nervosa. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2006; CD60405.
10. Barbault NC et al. Use of nutritional supplements to increase the efficacy of fluoxetine in the treatment of anorexia nervosa. *Int J Eat Disord* 2004; 35:10-15.
11. Mjimi A et al. Olanzapine treatment of anorexia nervosa: a retrospective study. *Int J Eat Disord* 2004; 33:234-237.
12. La Via MC et al. Case reports of olanzapine treatment of anorexia nervosa. *Int J Eat Disord* 2000; 27:363-364.
13. Su JC et al. Zinc supplementation in the treatment of anorexia nervosa. *Eat Weight Disord* 2002; 7:20-22.
14. Myerazi MA et al. Naltrexone use in the treatment of anorexia nervosa and bulimia nervosa. *Int Clin Psychopharmacol* 1999; 10:163-172.
15. Hahn KA et al. Anorexia nervosa. Treatment efficacy of cyproheptadine and amitriptyline. *Arch Gen Psychiatry* 1986; 43:177-181.
16. Kaye WH et al. Double-blind placebo-controlled administration of fluoxetine in restricting- and bingeing-purging-type anorexia nervosa. *Arch Psychiatry* 2001; 158:44-52.
17. Walsh BT et al. Fluoxetine after weight restoration in anorexia nervosa: a randomized controlled trial. *JAMA* 2006; 295:2602-2612.
18. Fluoxetine Bulimia Nervosa Collaborative Study Group. Fluoxetine in the treatment of bulimia nervosa. A multicenter, placebo-controlled, double-blind trial. *Arch Gen Psychiatry* 1992; 49:139-147.
19. Goldstein DJ et al. Long-term fluoxetine treatment of bulimia nervosa. *Thiazapine Bulimia Nervosa Research Group*. *Br J Psychiatry* 1999; 166: 662-666.
20. Romano SI et al. A placebo-controlled study of fluoxetine as continued treatment of bulimia nervosa after successful acute fluoxetine treatment. *Am J Psychiatry* 2002; 159:96-101.
21. Bacalchini L et al. Antidepressants versus placebo for people with bulimia nervosa. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2005; CD001291.
22. Arbuluar B et al. Efficacy of imipramine in bulimia nervosa and binge-eating disorder: a systematic review. *Gen Hosp Psychiatry* 2008; 30:471-475.
23. Zandbergen P et al. A 12 to 24 weeks pilot study of sexualav treatment in obese women binge eaters. *Hann Psychopharmacol* 2006; 21:181-188.

Acutely disturbed or violent behaviour

Acute behavioural disturbance can occur in the context of psychiatric illness, physical illness, substance abuse, or personality disorder. Psychotic symptoms are common and the patient may be aggressive towards others secondary to persecutory delusions or auditory, visual or tactile hallucinations.

The clinical practice of rapid tranquillisation (RT) is used when appropriate psychological and behavioural approaches have failed to de-escalate acutely disturbed behaviour. It is, essentially, a treatment of last resort. RT is not underpinned by a strong evidence base. Patients who require RT are often too disturbed to give informed consent and therefore cannot participate in randomised controlled trials (RCTs). Recommendations are therefore based partly on research data, partly on theoretical considerations and partly on clinical experience.

Several studies supporting the efficacy of oral atypicals¹⁻³ have been published. The level of behavioural disturbance exhibited by the patients in these studies was moderate at most, and all subjects accepted oral treatment (this degree of compliance would be unusual in clinical practice). Note too that patients recruited to these studies received the atypical as antipsychotic monotherapy; the efficacy and safety of adding a second antipsychotic as 'PRN' has not been tested in formal RCTs.

Larger, placebo-controlled RCTs support the efficacy of IM olanzapine, ziprasidone, and aripiprazole⁴. When considered together these trials suggested that IM olanzapine is more effective than IM haloperidol which in turn is more effective than IM aripiprazole⁴. Again, the level of behavioural disturbance in these studies was moderate at most. Two small open studies support the effectiveness of IM ziprasidone and IM olanzapine in clinical emergencies (where disturbance was severe)^{10,11}.

Four large RCTs (the TREC studies¹²⁻¹⁵) have investigated the effectiveness of parenteral medication in 'real-life' acutely disturbed patients. Overall:

- IM midazolam 7.5-15 mg was more rapidly sedating than a combination of haloperidol 5-10 mg and promethazine 50 mg (TREC 1)¹²
- Olanzapine 10 mg was as effective as a combination of haloperidol 10 mg and promethazine 25-50 mg in the short term, but the effect did not last as long (TREC 4)¹³
- A combination of haloperidol 5-10 mg and promethazine 50 mg was more effective and better tolerated than haloperidol 5-10 mg alone (TREC 3)¹⁴
- A combination of haloperidol 10 mg and promethazine 25-50 mg was more effective than lorazepam 4 mg (TREC 2)¹⁵.

Note that TREC 3¹⁴ found IM haloperidol alone to be poorly tolerated; 6% of patients had an acute dystonic reaction. Acute EPS may adversely affect longer-term compliance¹⁶. In addition, the SPC for haloperidol requires a pre-treatment ECG^{17,18} and recommends that concomitant antipsychotics are not prescribed. A small observational study supports the effectiveness of buccal midazolam in a PICU setting¹⁹. Lorazepam IM is an established treatment and TREC 2¹⁵ supports its efficacy.

Plans for the management of individual patients should ideally be made in advance. The aim is to prevent disturbed behaviour and reduce risk of violence. Nursing interventions (de-escalation, time out), increased nursing levels, transfer of the patient to a psychiatric intensive care unit (PICU) and pharmacological management are options that may be employed. Care should be taken to avoid combinations and high cumulative doses of antipsychotic drugs. The monitoring of routine physical observations after RT is essential. Note that RT is often viewed as punitive by patients.

The aims of RT are threefold:

1. To reduce suffering for the patient: psychological or physical (through self-harm or accidents)
2. To reduce risk of harm to others by maintaining a safe environment
3. To do no harm (by prescribing safe regimes and monitoring physical health).

Note: Despite the need for rapid and effective treatment, concomitant use of two or more antipsychotics (antipsychotic polypharmacy) should be avoided on the basis of risk associated with QT prolongation (common to almost all antipsychotics). This is a particularly important consideration in RT where the patient's physical state predisposes to cardiac arrhythmia.

In an emergency situation	
Step	Intervention
1	De-escalation, time out, placement, etc., as appropriate
2	<p>Offer oral treatment</p> <p>If the patient is prescribed a regular antipsychotic, lorazepam 1–2 mg or promethazine 25–50 mg avoids the risks associated with combining antipsychotics</p> <p>Repeat after 45–60 min</p> <p>Monotherapy with buccal midazolam, 10–20 mg, may avoid the need for IM treatment. Note that this preparation is unlicensed</p> <p>Go to step 3 if two doses fail or sooner if the patient is placing themselves or others at significant risk</p>
3	<p>Consider IM treatment</p> <p>From this point on: Consider</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The patient's legal status • Consulting a senior colleague <p>Lorazepam 1–2 mg^a or Promethazine 50 mg^c or Olanzapine 10 mg^d or Aripiprazole 9.75 mg or Haloperidol 5 mg</p> <p>Repeat after 30–60 min if insufficient effect</p> <p>Have flumazenil to hand in case of benzodiazepine-induced respiratory depression.</p> <p>IM promethazine is a useful option in a benzodiazepine-tolerant patient</p> <p>IM olanzapine should NOT be combined with an IM benzodiazepine</p> <p>Less hypotension than olanzapine but possibly less effective^e</p> <p>Haloperidol should be the last drug considered</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The incidence of acute dystonia is high: ensure IM procyclidine is available • The SPC recommends a pre-treatment ECG
4	<p>Consider IV treatment</p> <p>Diazepam 10 mg over at least 5 minutes^f</p> <p>Repeat after 5–10 minutes if insufficient effect (up to 3 times)</p> <p>Have flumazenil to hand</p>
5	Seek expert advice from the consultant or senior clinical pharmacist on call ^g

Notes

- Mix lorazepam 1:1 with water for injections before injecting. Some centres use 2–4 mg.
- Caution in the very young and elderly and those with pre-existing brain damage or impulse control problems, as disinhibition reactions are more likely²⁰.
- Promethazine has a slow onset of action but is often an effective sedative. Dilution is not required before IM injection. May be repeated up to a maximum of 100 mg/day. Wait 1–2 hours after injection to assess response. Note that promethazine alone has been reported to cause NMS²¹ although it is an extremely weak dopamine antagonist.
- Recommended by NICE only for moderate behavioural disturbance.
- Use Diazemuls to avoid injection site reactions. IV therapy may be used instead of IM when a very rapid effect is required. IV therapy also ensures near immediate delivery of the drug to its site of action and effectively avoids the danger of inadvertent accumulation of slowly absorbed IM doses. Note also that IV doses can be repeated after only 5–10 min if no effect is observed.
- Options at this point are limited. IM amylobarbitone and paraldehyde have been used in the past but are used now only extremely rarely. ECT is probably a better option.

Rapid tranquillisation – physical monitoring

After any parenteral drug administration, monitor as follows:

Temperature

Pulse

Blood pressure

Respiratory rate

Every 5–10 min for 1 hour, and then half-hourly until patient is ambulatory. Patients who refuse to have their vital signs monitored or who remain too behaviourally disturbed to be approached should be observed for signs/symptoms of pyrexia, hypotension, oversedation, and general physical wellbeing.

If the patient is asleep or **unconscious**, the continuous use of pulse oximetry to measure oxygen saturation is desirable. A nurse should remain with the patient until ambulatory.

ECG and haematological monitoring are also strongly recommended when parenteral antipsychotics are given, especially when higher doses are used^{22,23}. Hypokalaemia, stress and agitation place the patient at risk of cardiac arrhythmia²⁴ (see section on 'QT prolongation'). ECG monitoring is formally recommended for all patients who receive haloperidol.

Remedial measures in rapid tranquillisation	
Problem	Remedial measures
Acute dystonia (including oculogyric crises)	Give procyclidine 5–10 mg IM or IV or benzotropine 1–2 mg IM
Reduced respiratory rate (<10/min) or oxygen saturation (<90%)	Give oxygen, raise legs, ensure patient is not lying face down Give flumazenil if benzodiazepine-induced respiratory depression suspected (see protocol) If induced by any other sedative agent: transfer to a medical bed and ventilate mechanically
Irregular or slow (<50/min) pulse	Refer to specialist medical care immediately
Fall in blood pressure (>30 mmHg orthostatic drop or <50 mmHg diastolic)	Have patient lie flat, tilt bed towards head. Monitor closely.
Increased temperature	Check creatinine kinase urgently (risk of NMS and perhaps arrhythmia).

Guidelines for the use of flumazenil	
Indication for use	If, after the administration of lorazepam or diazepam, respiratory rate falls below 10/min
Contra-indications	Patients with epilepsy who have been receiving long-term benzodiazepines
Caution	Dose should be carefully titrated in hepatic impairment
Dose and route of administration	Initial: 200 µg <i>intravenously</i> over 15 seconds – if required level of consciousness not achieved after 60 seconds, then, Subsequent dose: 100 µg over 10 seconds
Time before dose can be repeated	60 seconds
Maximum dose	1 mg in 24 hours (one initial dose and eight subsequent doses)
Side-effects	Patients may become agitated, anxious or fearful on awakening Seizures may occur in regular benzodiazepine users
Management	Side-effects usually subside
Monitoring	Respiratory rate Continuously until respiratory rate returns to baseline level Flumazenil has a short half-life (much shorter than diazepam) and respiratory function may recover and then deteriorate again Note: If respiratory rate does not return to normal or patient is not alert after initial doses given, assume that sedation is due to some other cause.

Guidelines for the use of Clopixol Acuphase (zuclopenthixol acetate)

Acuphase should be used only after an acutely psychotic patient has required *repeated* injections of short-acting antipsychotic drugs such as haloperidol or olanzapine, or sedative drugs such as lorazepam.

Acuphase should be given only when enough time has elapsed to assess the full response to previously injected drugs: allow 15 min after IV injections; 60 min after IM.

Acuphase is sometimes appropriately used in patients known to respond to it or in physically violent patients for whom repeated attempts at injection would be dangerous for all parties.

Acuphase should never be administered:

- in an attempt to 'hasten' the antipsychotic effect of other antipsychotic therapy
- for rapid tranquillisation (onset of effect is too slow)
- at the same time as other parenteral antipsychotics or benzodiazepines (may lead to oversedation which is difficult to reverse)
- as a 'test dose' for zuclopenthixol decanoate depot
- to a patient who is physically resistant (risk of intravasation and oil embolus).

Acuphase should never be used for, or in, the following:

- patients who accept oral medication
- patients who are neuroleptic naïve
- patients who are sensitive to EPS
- patients who are unconscious
- patients who are pregnant
- those with hepatic or renal impairment
- those with cardiac disease.

Onset and duration of action

Sedative effects usually begin to be seen 2 hours after injection and peak after 12 hours. The effects may last for up to 72 hours. Note: Acuphase has no place in rapid tranquillisation: *its action is not rapid.*

Dose

Acuphase should be given in a dose of 50–150 mg, up to a maximum of 400 mg over a 2-week period. This maximum duration ensures that a treatment plan is put in place. It does not indicate that there are known harmful effects from more prolonged administration, although such use should be very exceptional. There is no such thing as a 'course of Acuphase'. The patient should be assessed before each administration.

Injections should be spaced at least 24 hours apart.

Note: zuclopenthixol acetate is widely misused as a sort of 'chemical straitjacket'. In reality, it is a potentially toxic preparation with very little published information to support its use²³. It is perhaps best reserved for those few patients who have a prior history of good response to Acuphase.

References

1. Citrome L. Comparison of intramuscular ziprasidone, olanzapine, or aripiprazole for agitation: a quantitative review of efficacy and safety. *J Clin Psychiatry* 2007; 68:1876-1883.
2. Lejeune J et al. Oral risperidone plus oral lorazepam versus oral lorazepam versus oral lorazepam plus oral intramuscular conventional neuroleptics in the initial phase of treating individuals with acute psychosis. *Int Clin Psychopharmacol* 2006; 14:279-306.
3. Currier GW et al. Acute treatment of psychotic agitation: a randomized comparison of oral treatment with olanzapine and lorazepam versus intramuscular treatment with haloperidol and lorazepam. *J Clin Psychiatry* 2004; 65:306-304.
4. Yildiz A et al. Observational data on the antipsychotic effect of olanzapine tablets in emergency settings: a preliminary report. *Int J Psychiatry Clin Pract* 2004; 7:217-221.
5. Currier GW et al. Risperidone liquid concentrate and oral lorazepam versus intramuscular haloperidol and intramuscular lorazepam for treatment of psychotic agitation. *J Clin Psychiatry* 2001; 62:153-157.
6. Gajwani S et al. Effectiveness of quetiapine for the management of aggressive psychosis in the emergency psychiatric setting: a non-randomized controlled trial. *Int J Psychiatry Clin Pract* 2003; 9:199-203.
7. Simpson LR, Jr et al. Impact of orally disintegrating olanzapine on use of intramuscular antipsychotics, seclusion, and restraint in an acute inpatient psychiatric setting. *J Clin Psychopharmacol* 2006; 26:533-535.
8. Villao V et al. Oral risperidone, olanzapine and quetiapine versus haloperidol in psychotic agitation. *Prog Neuropsychopharmacol Biol Psychiatry* 2006; 32:405-413.
9. Andrietta B et al. Intramuscular aripiprazole for the treatment of acute agitation in patients with schizophrenia or schizoaffective disorder: a double-blind, placebo-controlled comparison with intramuscular haloperidol. *Psychopharmacology* 2006; 190:281-292.
10. Sui L et al. A non-randomized multicentre study of intramuscular olanzapine in the treatment of acutely agitated manic or schizophrenic patients. *Int J Psychiatry* 2006; 21:539-545.
11. Fulton JA et al. Intramuscular ziprasidone: an effective agent for sedation of the agitated ED patient. *Am J Emerg Med* 2006; 20:254-257.
12. TREC Collaborative Group. Rapid tranquillisation for agitated patients in emergency psychiatric settings: a randomized trial of olanzapine versus haloperidol plus promethazine. *BMJ* 2003; 327:706-713.
13. Alexander C et al. Rapid tranquillisation of violent or agitated patients in a psychiatric emergency setting. Pragmatic randomised trial of intramuscular lorazepam + haloperidol plus promethazine. *Br J Psychiatry* 2004; 185:63-68.
14. Huf G et al. Rapid tranquillisation in psychiatric emergency settings in Austria: pragmatic randomised controlled trial of intramuscular haloperidol versus intramuscular haloperidol plus promethazine. *BMJ* 2007; 335:2089.
15. Ravindran NS et al. Rapid tranquillisation in psychiatric emergency settings in India: pragmatic randomised controlled trial of intramuscular olanzapine versus intramuscular haloperidol plus promethazine. *BMJ* 2007; 335:2095.
16. van Harten FN et al. Acute dystonia induced by ibuprofen treatment. *Br Med J* 1989; 319:623-626.
17. Kaiser-Craig Ltd. Summary of Product Characteristics. Hallool Injection. 2008. <http://www.medicines.org.uk/>
18. MPRSA. Pharmacovigilance Working Party. Public consultation report on re-examination and cardiac safety. <http://www.mhra.gov.uk>. 2008.
19. Taylor D et al. Buccal midazolam for rapid tranquillisation. *Int J Psychiatry Clin Pract* 2008; 14:309-311.
20. Paton C. Benzodiazepines and disinhibition: a review. *Psychiatr Bull* 2002; 36:466-467.
21. Cline-Track EA. Neuroleptic malignant syndrome due to promethazine. *South Med J* 1999; 92:1017-1018.
22. Appleby L et al. Sudden unexpected death in psychiatric in-patients. *Br J Psychiatry* 2000; 176:485-490.
23. Yap YG et al. Risk of torsades de pointes with non-cardiac drugs. Olanzapine used to be aware that many drugs can cause QT prolongation. *BMJ* 2003; 340:1138-1139.
24. Taylor DM. Antipsychotics and QT prolongation. *Acta Psychiatr Scand* 2003; 107:85-95.
25. Gómez RC et al. Zuclopentixol acetate for acute schizophrenia and similar serious mental illnesses. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2004; CD000922.

Further reading

- Currier GW et al. Orally versus intramuscularly administered antipsychotic drugs in psychiatric emergencies. *J Psychiatr Pract* 2006; 12:30-40.
- Macpherson H et al. A growing evidence base for management guidelines revisiting... guidelines for the management of acutely disturbed psychiatric patients. *Adv Psychiatr Treat* 2007; 11:404-415.
- McAlister Williams DH et al. Rapid tranquillisation: time for a reappraisal of options for parenteral therapy. *Br J Psychiatry* 2002; 180:485-489.
- National Institute for Clinical Excellence, Violence. The short-term management of disturbed/violent behaviour in in-patient psychiatric settings and emergency departments. Guideline No 25, 2005. www.nice.org.uk
- Pratt JF et al. Establishing gold standard approaches to rapid tranquillisation: a review and discussion of the evidence on the safety and efficacy of medications currently used. *J Psych Invest Care* 2008; 4: 43-57.

Chronic behavioural disturbance (challenging behaviour) in learning disability (LD)

Behavioural disturbance is common in those with a learning disability; 16-50% exhibit aggression or a related challenging behaviour¹. Those who are aggressive are more likely to be young, male, and have more severe cognitive impairment². Up to a third of adults with LD who do not have a comorbid mental illness are prescribed psychotropic medication, mostly for the management of challenging behaviour³.

It is often very difficult to determine the aetiology of behavioural disturbance. For example, stereotypical behaviour and irritability could be manifestations of a psychiatric illness or epilepsy (which is common in this patient group⁴). Some anticonvulsant drugs have marked behavioural side effects, most notably topiramate⁵. Stopping drugs such as benzodiazepines and SSRIs can also lead to problems (see Chapter 4).

The following may be useful prompts:

- Is there or could there be an underlying physical illness? (look for and treat)
- Could the behaviour be ictal in origin or a side effect of anticonvulsant drugs? (consider altering)
- Could environmental factors be contributing either as precipitants or reinforcers? (consider and alter if possible)
- Is there an underlying psychiatric illness? (consider and treat if applicable)

Antipsychotic drugs are frequently used to manage persistent aggression towards self or others; it is hoped that they will reduce arousal and treat any underlying psychotic symptoms. The NACHBID study⁶ demonstrated that antipsychotics are probably no more effective than placebo for this indication (in patients who do not have a comorbid psychiatric illness); antipsychotics should therefore not be used routinely as a first-line treatment for the management of persistent aggression alone.

Also consider:

- + Does the patient have a history of mood disturbance? (consider a trial of an antidepressant/mood-stabiliser)
- + Is the disturbance cyclical? (consider a trial of a mood-stabiliser)
- + Is the patient aggressive? (consider a trial of carbamazepine or a β -blocker)
- + Are there any signs of adrenergic overactivity such as tachycardia or tremor? (consider a trial of a β -blocker)
- + Is the patient impulsive? (consider a trial of an SSRI)
- + Is the patient self-injurious? (consider a trial of an antipsychotic, SSRI or naltrexone)
- + Could the behaviour be driven by psychosis? (consider a trial of an antipsychotic)

If medication is prescribed it should be as part of a co-ordinated multidisciplinary care plan. Efficacy against target symptoms should be monitored and particular attention paid to screening for side effects. Try, if possible, to avoid drugs with anticholinergic effects and the use of antipsychotics on a PRN basis.

Table Use of antibiotics in psychiatry		
Infection/condition	First-line treatment	Second-line treatment
Ears - e.g. otitis externa, otitis media	Consult microbiologist if otitis media suspected Chloramphenicol 0.5% drops, four times daily	Neomycin or polymyxin drops
Fungal infections	Mouth/pharynx - Nystatin suspension (100 000 iu/ml), 1 ml four times daily Skin - Clotrimazole 1% cream three times daily Systemic or resistant skin infection - fluconazole 50 mg daily for 7-14 days Nail - terbinafine 250mg daily (see BNF for duration)	Fluconazole Fluconazole Consult microbiology Consult microbiology
Gastro-enteritis	Not usually indicated - consult microbiology	
Pelvic inflammatory disease	Collect high vaginal swab; if <i>Neisseria gonococcus</i> excluded: Metronidazole 400 mg three times daily for seven days plus doxycycline 100 mg twice daily for 2 weeks. Give after food	Consult microbiology
Respiratory tract infections	Amoxicillin 250 mg three times daily or Erythromycin 500 mg three times daily	Co-amoxiclav 375 mg three times daily or Clarithromycin 250 mg twice daily
Throat infection	Usually has viral cause. Consult microbiology; if <i>Streptococcus</i> confirmed: Phenoxymethylpenicillin 250 mg four times daily or cefadroxil 500 mg twice daily or erythromycin 500 mg three times daily	Consult microbiology
Tuberculosis	Consult microbiology	
Urinary tract infections	Trimethoprim 200 mg twice daily or amoxicillin 250 mg three times daily	Nalidixic acid 1 g four times daily or co-amoxiclav 375 mg three times daily or ciprofloxacin 250 mg twice daily
Vaginal candidiasis	Oral fluconazole 150 mg as a single dose or clotrimazole 500 mg vaginal pessary	Consult microbiology
Wounds, ulcers, pressure sores	Do not use topical agents If cellulitis present - consult microbiology	

Index

- abacavir 440
 acamprosate 297
 ACE inhibitors, lithium interactions 131-2
 acetylcholinesterase (AChE) inhibitors 388
 drug interactions 133, 393
 NICE recommendations 395
 Parkinson's disease 407
 acute behavioural disturbance 417-21
 Clopixol Acuphase 421
 intoxication with street drugs 331
 rapid tranquillisation 417, 419-20
 acute mania *see* mania, acute
 5-adenosyl-L-methionine, refractory depression 183
 ADHD *see* attention deficit hyperactivity disorder
 adherence therapy 504
 adherence, medication 502-5
 adolescents *see* children and adolescents
 ADROIT data 207
 affective disorders
 anticonvulsant withdrawal 343
 caffeine consumption 495-6
see also bipolar disorder; depression; mania
- Afro-Caribbeans, clozapine-induced neutropenia 68
 age, clozapine-induced neutropenia and 68
 ageing *see* elderly
 aggressive behaviour 417-21
 benzodiazepines and 243-4
 carbamazepine 134
 lithium 128
 valproate 124
see also acutely disturbed behaviour
 agranulocytosis
 clozapine-induced 63, 64, 66, 68-70, 74
see also neutropenia
 AIDS *see* HIV infection/AIDS
 akathisia, antipsychotic-induced 85-6
 signs and symptoms 86
 treatment 86
 alcohol
 driving and 506
 drug interactions 340-1, 484-7
 metabolism 484
 alcohol dehydrogenase (ADH) 484
 drugs inhibiting 485
 alcohol intoxication
 drug interactions 484, 486
 opioid substitution and 312, 316
- alcohol misuse
 DVLA regulations 512
 pregnancy and 298
 psychotropic drug prescribing 487
 treatment *see* alcohol withdrawal
 alcohol withdrawal 286-98
 assessment 287-8
 benzodiazepines 289, 294
 community 289
 hallucinations 296
 in-patient protocol 291
 liver disease 296
 management 286
 relapse prevention 297-8
 risk assessment 286, 287
 seizure prophylaxis 296
 severe dependence 291-2
 symptomatic therapy 297
 syndrome 286-7, 297
 treatment interventions 293
 vitamin supplementation 294-5
 aldehyde dehydrogenase 484
 drugs inhibiting 485
 allopurinol 58
 alprostadil 116, 117
 Alzheimer's disease 388
 acetylcholinesterase (AChE) inhibitors 388
 combination treatment 395

- benzodiazepines (Cont.)
borderline personality disorder 443
breastfeeding 364
catatonia 92
childhood and adolescent anxiety 259
dependence 245-6
depression 240
detoxification 245-6
disinhibitory reactions 243-4, 259
driving and 507
drug interactions 136, 241
ECT seizure threshold and 187
HIV infection 436
hypnotics 240, 245, 249
misuse 327, 328
overdose 467
pregnancy 326, 353
psychosis 241
rapid tranquillisation 418, 420
side-effects 241
smoking and 492
street drug interactions 331, 334
surgery and 431
tardive dyskinesia 87
tolerance test 245
withdrawal symptoms 245
- beta-blockers 66
beta interferon 419
bethanechol 115, 116
fepronyl 15
unge eating disorder 415, 416
- bipolar disorder 123-53
antipsychotics 145
carbamazepine 134-6
children and adolescents 254, 256-7
HIV infection 436
lithium 128-33
in multiple sclerosis 411
physical monitoring 138-9
pregnancy 350
prophylaxis 124, 128, 129, 134, 141, 145, 147, 153
rapid-cycling 124, 151
valproate 123-6
withdrawing
anticonvulsants 343
see also mania
bleeding, selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors and 197-8
blood pressure (BP)
after rapid tranquillisation 419
antidepressants and 204
starting clozapine 53, 77
see also hypotension, postural
- Bolam test 480
Bolitho test 480
borderline personality disorder (BPD) 443-4
botulinum toxin 72, 88
bradykinesia 80
breast cancer 83
breastfeeding 357-64
antidepressants 358-60
antipsychotics 361-2
buprenorphine 317
methadone 316
mood stabilisers 363
nicotine replacement therapy 371
prescribing principles 357
sedatives 364
see also postpartum period
bromocriptine 83, 116
bulimia nervosa 414, 415
- buprenorphine
analgesia 311
breastfeeding 317
cautions 311
clinical effectiveness 308
detoxification and reduction regimes 312, 313
dosing regimes 326-30
NICE guidance 312
opioid dependence 310, 312, 316-17
overdose 311
precipitated withdrawal 309
- bupropion
(amfebutamone) 115
arrhythmia and 207
clinical effectiveness 323
dose 323
drug-induced weight gain 98
epilepsy 337
pregnancy 349
renal impairment 372
sexual dysfunction and 116, 210
side-effects 323
smoking cessation 321, 323
- bupropion 115
renal impairment 376
self-injurious behaviour in learning disability 426
sexual dysfunction and 116
butyrophenones
- breastfeeding 361
overdose 466
- carbergoline 83, 182
caffeine 495-6
intoxication (caffeinism) 495
psychotropic effects 495
calcium antagonists, tardive dyskinesia 88
cancer chemotherapy 74
candidiasis, vaginal 516
cannabis 328-9
psychotropic drug interactions 333-4
Tourette's syndrome 277
- carbamazepine
acute mania/hypomania 144
adverse effects 135
alcohol withdrawal 134, 296
antidepressant/antipsychotic interactions 339
antiretroviral drug interactions 436
attention deficit hyperactivity disorder 263
bipolar depression 148
bipolar disorder 134-5, 153
physical monitoring 138-9
breastfeeding 363
childhood and adolescent bipolar illness 257
costs 144
hepatic impairment 383
lithium interaction 132
overdose 467
plasma levels 3, 135
pregnancy 352
psychotropic drug interactions 339
renal impairment 375, 377
smoking and 492
street drug interactions 334
- cardiac arrhythmias *see* arrhythmias
cardiac effects, antidepressants 204-5
cardiomyopathy, clozapine-induced 66, 77
cardiovascular risk factors 105, 108, 111
catatonia 92-3
CBT *see* cognitive behavioural therapy
cefadroxil 516
celecoxib, lithium interactions 132
cerebrovascular accident (CVA)

- nicotine replacement therapy 322
chemotherapy, cancer 74
children and adolescents 251-81
anxiety 259
attention deficit hyperactivity disorder 263-4
autism 270-4
bipolar illness 256-7
depression 253-4
insomnia 279-80
obsessive compulsive disorder 260-2
prescribing principles 252
psychosis 269
rapid tranquillisation 281
Tourette's syndrome 276-7
- chloramphenicol 516
chlordiazepoxide
alcohol use, pregnancy and 298
alcohol withdrawal 290-2
diazepam equivalent dose 245
renal impairment 376
- chlorpromazine 11
adverse effects 122
breastfeeding 361
epilepsy 337
equivalent dose 11
maximum dose 14
minimum effective dose 12
overdose 466
pregnancy 348
renal impairment 369
smoking and 492
- cholesterol, blood 111, 112
cholinesterase inhibitors *see* acetylcholinesterase inhibitors
cimetidine 126
ciprofloxacin 516
citalopram 160
anxiety disorders 234
arrhythmia and 207
breastfeeding 358
cardiac effects 204
elderly 203
hepatic impairment 382, 384
HIV infection 435
minimum effective dose 173
relative adverse effects 229
renal impairment 372, 377
sexual dysfunction and 210
swapping/stopping 214, 216, 218
- clarithromycin 516
- Clinical Institute Withdrawal Assessment for Alcohol—Revised Version (CIWA-Ar) 287-8, 292
- clomethiazole (chloromethiazole), renal impairment 376
- clomipramine 277
- clomipramine 158
anxiety disorders 234
epilepsy 337
refractory depression 183
relative adverse effects 229
renal impairment 372
- clonazepam
acute mania/hypomania 141
akathisia 85
breastfeeding 364
diazepam equivalent dose 246
psychosis 237
refractory depression 182
renal impairment 376
tardive dyskinesia 87
- clonidine
akathisia 85
attention deficit hyperactivity disorder 263
autism 271
clozapine-related hypersalivation 72
Tourette's syndrome 276
- Cloxisol *see* zuclopenthixol
clotrimazole 516
- clozapine
acute mania/hypomania 141
adverse effects 62-3, 64, 66
community-based patients 77
comparative table 122
management 62-3
serious 66
uncommon or unusual 64
see also specific adverse effects
alternatives to 58-9
augmentation 55-6
bipolar disorder 145, 151
blood lipids and 111-12
breastfeeding 361
caffeine interaction 496
cancer chemotherapy and 74
catatonia 92
children and adolescents 269
community-based patients 75-7
adverse effects 77
dosing 75
monitoring 77
- switching regimen 76
diabetes association 108
dose
maximum licensed 14
starting regime 54
target 55
titration in community 75, 76
- epilepsy 337
fish oils with 78
hepatic impairment 381
HIV infection 435
hypertension and 94
hyponatraemia 119, 120
lithium combinations 69-70
monitoring 32-3
NICE guidance 19-20
optimising treatment 55
overdose 466
Parkinson's disease 408
plasma levels 3, 4, 53
pregnancy 354
refractory schizophrenia 58-9
renal impairment 369
sexual adverse effects 115
smoking and 492
switching to 76
tardive dyskinesia and 87
co-amoxiclav 516
- cocaine 325
psychotropic drug interactions 333-4
- Cockcroft and Gault equation 367-8
- cognitive behavioural therapy (CBT)
anxiety disorders 235-7, 259
children and adolescents 260
depression in multiple sclerosis 411
refractory schizophrenia 58
sleep disorder and 250
cognitive impairment
HIV infection 436
in multiple sclerosis 411-12
see also dementia
- complementary therapies (CTs) 498
compliance aids 504-5
conduction disturbances, antidepressant-induced 205
confusion, post-ECT 188
constipation, clozapine-induced 62
- costs
antidepressants 158-60
antimanic drugs 144

- costs (Cont.)
 newer antidepressants 17
 COX 2 inhibitors, lithium
 interactions 132
 creatinine clearance
 (CrCl) 367
 creatinine phosphokinase
 (CPK), monitoring 33
 CYP1A2
 alcohol metabolism 484
 antidepressants and 156,
 162, 166
 caffeine and 495, 496
 cigarette smoke and 491
 smoking cessation and
 CYP2D6, antidepressants
 and 156, 161-3,
 166-8, 203
 CYP2E1, alcohol and 484, 485
 CYP3A4
 alcohol and 484, 487
 antidepressants and 161,
 167, 223
 1 benzodiazepines and 241
 N carbamazepine and 136
 N methadone and 306
 cyproheptadine
 1
 diarrhea 85
 product license 491
 sexual dysfunction 115, 116
 tryptophan P450 (CYP450)
 01
 enzymes
 1
 antidepressant interactions
 and 336
 H antidepressant interactions
 and 226
 M valproate interactions
 and 136
 see also specific enzymes
- D-alanine 30
 D-serine 30
 death, sudden see sudden death
 dehydration, alcohol
 withdrawal 297
 delirium 437
 delirium 445-6
 dopamine-induced 64
 diagnostic criteria 445
 general principles 446
 HIV infection 454
 outcome 445
 prevalence 445
 risk factors 445
 treatment 446, 447-9
 delirium tremens (DTs) 286-7
 demethylcysteine 120
 dementia 380-97
- administering medicines in
 Foodstuffs 387
 behaviour
 delirium 400-2
 DYLA regulations 511
 HIV infection 436
 Huntington's disease 451
 Parkinson's disease 409
 vascular 386-7
 see also Alzheimer's disease
 depot antidepressants 35-7
 differences between 35-6
 doses and frequencies 36
 epilepsy 337
 equivalent doses 11
 intramuscular anticholinergics
 and 37
 management of patients 36
 maximum doses 14
 prescribing advice 35
 switching to risperidone
 Long-acting 36
 antidepressant 155
 anticonvulsant-associated 336
 anticholinergic drug-
 induced 441
 benzodiazepines 240
 bipolar 147-8
 carbamazepine 134, 148
 lithium prophylaxis 147, 148
 treatment 147-8
 valproate 124, 148
 children and
 adolescents 233-4
 diabetes and 199
 DYLA regulations 509
 elderly 201-3
 epilepsy 337
 Eler episode 174
 HIV infection 435-6
 Huntington's disease 451
 multiple sclerosis 410
 nicotine use 488-9
 Parkinson's disease 407
 postpartum 346
 post-stroke 195
 pregnancy 348
 prescribing principles 170
 prophylaxis of recurrent 124,
 174-5
 recurrent 174-5
 refractory 177-9
 Le. choice treatment
 177-9
 2nd choice treatment 181
 carbamazepine 134
 other treatments 182-3
 remission rates 177
- sexual dysfunction 209
 St John's wort 223, 224
 stimulants 190-1
 treatment 170-2
 algorithm 171
 see also antidepressants
 dermatological reactions,
 carbamazepine 135
 desipramine
 pregnancy 349
 desmopressin 63
 dermatitis, refractory
 depression 182
 dermatitis
 (desamphenamine)
 263, 267
 in depression 191
 diabetes insipidus, nephrogenic,
 lithium-induced 129
 diabetes mellitus
 antidepressants and 199
 antipsychotic-
 associated 107-9
 depression and 199
 gestational 347
 monitoring 108-9
 nicotine replacement
 therapy 372
 schizophrenia and 107
 diabetic ketoacidosis 107
 diazepam see heroin
 diarrhoea, alcohol
 withdrawal 297
 diazepam
 absorption 85
 alcohol withdrawal 291, 294
 breastfeeding 364
 emulsion (Diazemul) 241
 equivalent doses 245
 Huntington's disease 451
 rapid tranquilisation 418
 children and
 adolescents 281
 renal impairment 376
 switching to 245-6
 tartrate dihydroate 87
 tolerance test 245
 diazepam 441
 diphenhydramine 250
 discontinuation syndrome 220
 antidepressants 220-2
 disulfiram, benzodiazepines
 and 243-4, 259
 diuretics, lithium
 interactions 132
 docosahexaenoic acid (DHA) 78
- doxepin
 Alzheimer's disease 388,
 390, 395
 behavioural problems in
 dementia 401
 mania 141
 narcolepsy 88
 vascular dementia 397
 dopamine agonists 83
 donepezil (Donepilin) 150
 elderly 201, 202-3
 epilepsy 337
 relative adverse effects 229
 renal impairment 372
 withdrawal 214
 dothiepin see desipramine
 doxepin 159
 breastfeeding 358
 relative adverse effects 229
 renal impairment 372
 doxycycline 516
 dream, vivid, anticholinergic
 drug-induced 441
 driving 506-13
 drug-induced sedation 507
 DYLA regulations 509-13
 effects of psychiatric
 drugs 507
 in epilepsy 337
 GMC guidance on
 confidentiality 508
 flooding see hyperalgesia
 drugs of misuse 327-9
 acute intoxication 331
 DYLA regulations 513
 interactions with
 psychotropics 331,
 333-4
 see also opioid dependence;
 'street drugs'
- 'street drugs'
 dual diagnosis 327
 duloxetine 166
 cardiac effects 204
 diabetes and 189
 elderly 202-3
 epilepsy 337
 hepatic impairment 383
 minimum effective
 dose 173
 relative adverse effects 229
 renal impairment 372
 sexual dysfunction and 210
 smoking and 492
 switching/dropping 217, 218
 DYLA regulations 509-13
 dipyrone, switching
 antipsychotics 24
 dyslexia
- acute, after rapid
 tranquilisation 440
 antipsychotic-induced 80-1
 car infections 516
 eating disorders 414-15
 Blount's anomaly 351
 ECG see electrocardiograph
 essay, psychotropic drug
 interactions 333-4
 ECT see electroconvulsive therapy
 efficacy 437, 440
 electroencephalogram (EEG)
 refractory depression 189
 schizophrenia 78-9
 schizophrenic disorders 115
 elderly 586-7
 administering medicines in
 Foodstuffs 387
 antidepressants 166, 201-3
 benzodiazepines 241
 depression 201-3
 drug interactions 387
 prescribing principles 386-7
 reducing drug-related risk 387
 see also dementia
 electrocardiogram (ECG)
 anorexia nervosa 414
 antipsychotics and 33,
 101, 102
 arrhythmia and 207
 drug-induced changes 102
 methadone and 306, 307
 electroconvulsive therapy (ECT)
 antidepressant prophylaxis
 after 175
 catatonia 92-3
 childhood and adolescent
 depression 254
 epilepsy 337
 Parkinson's disease 407, 408
 pregnancy 350
 psychotic depression 185
 psychotropic and 187-8
 refractory depression 178
 electroencephalogram (EEG)
 monitoring 33
 electrolytes
 anorexia nervosa 414
 eosinophilia,
 drug-induced 64
 epilepsy 335-7
 anticonvulsant
 withdrawal 342
 autism comorbidity 270
 depression and
 psychotic 335-7
 driving 336
- pregnancy 352
 see also anticonvulsants;
 seizures
 BPGs see extra-pyramidal
 side-effects
 erectile dysfunction 116, 117
 cytochrome P450 3C4
 escitalopram 161
 breastfeeding 338
 minimum effective dose 173
 relative adverse effects 229
 renal impairment 372
 switching/dropping 216, 218
 estimated GFR (eGFR) 367, 368
 ethanol see alcohol
 ethanolamide, drug
 interactions 336
 euphoric in multiple
 sclerosis 410
 extra-pyramidal side-effects
 (EPSs) 80-1
 comparative table 122
 depot antipsychotics 35
 nicotine use and 488, 489
 switching antipsychotics 26
 treatment 80-2
 typical vs. atypical generation
 antipsychotics 31
- emoticon 98
 fasting plasma glucose (FPG)
 108
 Fatal Toxicity Index (FTI) 207
 fatty acids, omega-3 see
 omega-3 triglycerides
 fever, clozapine-induced 62, 66
 fish oils see omega-3
 triglycerides
 fluconazole 516
 fluhydrocortisone 62
 fluid restriction,
 hypovolaemia 120
 fluoxetine 241
 guidelines on use 420
 rapid tranquilisation and 420
 fluoxetine 161
 anorexia nervosa 415
 antidepressant discontinuation
 syndrome 221
 bipolar depression 147-8
 breastfeeding 359
 bulimia nervosa 415
 cardiac effects 204-5
 childhood and adolescent
 depression 283
 anxiety 259
 depression 259

lithium (Cont.)
 overdose 466
 plasma levels 3, 129, 132
 pregnancy 351, 352
 preoperative 130, 131
 refractory depression 177, 178
 renal impairment 375, 377
 self-injurious behaviour in
 learning disability
 128, 426
 stopping 131
 surgery and 431
 toxicity 130
 use 128
 lithium carbonate 128
 lithium citrate 129
 liver disease *see* hepatic
 impairment
 liver function tests (LFTs) 403
 carbamazepine-induced
 changes 135
 monitoring 33, 77
 leprogamine 159
 arrhythmia and 207
 cardiac effects 204
 elderly 202
 molarium effective dose 173
 overdose 465
 relative adverse effects 229
 renal impairment 373
 lorazepam
 disruptive-related
 hypersalivation 72
 opiate withdrawal 313
 lorsepam 496
 acute mania/hypomania 140
 cataplexy 92-3
 delirium 448
 diazepam equivalent dose 246
 hepatic impairment 384
 rapid tranquilisation 417, 418
 children and adolescents 281
 renal impairment 376
 lorazepam
 disseminated equivalent
 dose 246
 hypnotic use 249
 lorsepam
 adverse effects 122
 diabetes risk 107
 epilepsy 337
 equivalent dose 11
 maximum dose 14
 mania
 carbamazepine 134, 136
 drug costs 144
 lithium 128, 140, 141
 treatment 140-1
 valproate 123, 140, 141
 antiretroviral drug-
 induced 441
 bipolar disorder 145
 DVT/A regimens 511
 HIV infection 436
 lithium prophylaxis 128
 MAOIs *see* monoamine
 oxidase inhibitors
 in multiple sclerosis 411
 Medicines and Healthcare
 products Regulatory
 Agency (MHRA)
 Joint CSM Expert Working
 Group on SSRIs 170
 melatonin
 childhood and adolescent
 isoxonia 279-80
 product licence 481
 herald psychosis 88
 menstruation
 Abraham's disease 388, 389
 vascular dementia 397
 methadone 303
 abuse 327-8
 analgetic prescribing and 306
 carbamazepine
 interaction 136
 chemical effectiveness 303
 decontamination and reduction
 regimes 312-13
 dose 304-5
 BCG monitoring 306, 307
 hepato/renal dysfunction 305
 intoxication 305
 NICE guidance 319
 opioid dependence
 overdose 305, 467
 pregnancy and
 breastfeeding 316
 prescribing information 303
 psychotropic drug
 interactions 331
 surgery and 431
 torazepam de pointe/QT
 prolongation 306
 transfer from
 bupropion 310
 transfer to
 bupropion 308-10
 methylphenidate 98
 methylphenidate
 acute
 attention deficit hyperactivity
 disorder 263, 266
 subsin 270
 in depression 190
 product licence 481
 metoclopramide
 abuse withdrawal 297
 Tourette's syndrome 277
 metirazepam 516
 metyprone, refractory
 depression 182
 MHRA *see* Medicines and
 Healthcare products
 Regulatory Agency
 mianserin 166
 amitriptyline 85
 breastfeeding 360
 overdose 466
 post-stroke depression 195
 refractory depression 179
 refractory schizophrenia, 58
 relative adverse effects 229
 risperidone, rapid
 tranquilisation 417, 418
 children and adolescents 281
 mirtazapine
 bipolar depression 148
 psychotic depression 185
 risperidone 167
 breastfeeding 360
 cardiac effects 204
 diabetes and 199
 elderly 202-3
 epilepsy 337
 hepatic impairment 383
 minimum effective dose 173
 overdose 465
 pregnancy 349
 refractory depression 177
 relative adverse effects 229
 renal impairment 373
 sexual adverse effects 210
 smoking and 493
 swapping/stopping 217-18
 modobemide 62, 165
 arrhythmia and 207
 breastfeeding 360
 cardiac effects 204
 epilepsy 337
 hepatic impairment 382
 minimum effective dose 173
 overdose 465
 relative adverse effects 229
 renal impairment 373
 sexual dysfunction and 210
 swapping/stopping 217-19
 modafinil
 in depression 190, 191
 refractory depression 182
 Modification of diet in renal
 disease (MDDR)
 formula 367, 368
 mono-amine oxidase-A
 (MAO-A), reversible
 inhibitor 156
 see also modobemide
 monomelic arabis inhibitors
 (MAOIs) 164-5
 breastfeeding 360
 cardiac effects 204
 in depression 191
 diabetes and 199, 200
 discontinuation
 pregnancy 280-1
 drug interactions 136, 228
 BCI seizure threshold
 and 187
 hepatic impairment 382
 overdose 466
 pregnancy 350
 refractory depression 182
 relative adverse effects 229
 sexual adverse effects 210
 surgery and 428
 swapping/stopping 216, 218
 mood disorders *see* affective
 disorders
 mood stabilisers
 alcohol withdrawal 497
 antipsy 271
 bipolar disorder 145
 borderline personality
 disorder 444
 breastfeeding mothers
 357, 363
 children and adolescents 256
 efficacy 153
 hepatic impairment 383
 HIV infection 436
 overdose 466
 pregnancy 350, 352
 rapid-cycling bipolar
 disorder 151
 renal impairment 373, 377
 withdrawing 343
 see also anticonvulsants;
 carbamazepine; lithium;
 valproate
 movement disorders, nicotine
 use 489
 multiple sclerosis 410-12
 myocardial infarction (MI)
 antidepressant prescribing
 after 205
 nicotine replacement
 therapy 322
 SSRIs and 216
 hypocretin
 clozapine-induced
 63, 66
 naltrexone
 bupropion 125
 bupropion 311
 methadone overdose 305
 NICE guidance 312
 opioid dependence 316
 opioid overdose 317
 'take-home' 317
 nashidone
 alcohol dependence 297
 dose 315
 opioid dependence 320
 product licence 481
 reluctant behaviour in
 learning disability 426
 ractive dyskinesia 88
 National Institute for Clinical
 Excellence (NICE)
 anorexia nervosa 416
 anticholinergics 395
 anticholinergics in
 women 125
 antipsychotic
 pediatrics 42
 anxiety spectrum
 disorders 234
 second-generation
 antipsychotics 19
 bipolar disorder 138-9
 bulimia nervosa 416
 bupropion 310
 depression 170
 hypnotics 249
 methadone 320
 naltrexone 320
 smoking cessation 321
 nausea
 alcohol withdrawal 297
 clozapine-induced 62
 nefarivir 439
 neonates
 antidepressant withdrawal
 effects 349, 350
 antipsychotic discontinuation
 symptoms 347
 see also breastfeeding
 psychotropic effects 489
 'neuroleptic equivalents' 11
 neuroleptic malignant syndrome
 (NMS) 90, 92
 neuroleptics 11
 see also antipsychotics
 neurotoxicity, lithium 128
 nortriptyline
 benign ethnic 68, 69
 carbamazepine-induced 138
 clozapine-induced 63, 64,
 68-70, 74
 management 68-9
 see also agranulocytosis
 neutrophil counts 68
 nortriptyline 439, 440
 NICE *see* National Institute for
 Clinical Excellence
 nicotine 486-9
 drug interactions 489
 pregnancy and 322
 psychotropic effects 489
 Tourette's syndrome 277
 withdrawal symptoms 489
 nicotine replacement therapy
 (NRT) 321-3
 nintedanib, bipolar
 disorder 151
 nitrazepam
 diazepam equivalent dose 246
 hypnotic use 249
 renal impairment 376
 nifedipine 98
 NMS *see* neuroleptic malignant
 syndrome
 oppramide
 nocturnal enuresis
 chlorzaphate-induced 63
 non-steroidal anti-inflammatory
 drugs (NSAIDs)
 lithium interactions 132
 SSRIs interaction 197-8
 nortriptyline 159
 childhood and adolescent
 depression 234
 diabetes and 199
 plasma level monitoring 3
 post-stroke depression 195
 pregnancy 354
 refractory depression 177
 relative adverse effects 229
 renal impairment 373
 nystatin 516
 obesity
 antipsychotic-induced 32
 treatment and
 prevention 97-8
 obstructive compulsive disorder
 (OCD) 234
 children and adolescents 260

OCD see obsessive compulsive disorder
 oculogyric spasms (crisis) 80, 420
 oestrogen
 carbamazepine
 interaction 136
 refractory depression 183
 clonazepam 5
 acute mania/hypomania 140
 adverse effects 122
 autorexia nervosa 414
 augmentation 56
 behaviour problems in
 dementia 400
 bipolar depression 147
 bipolar disorder 145,
 151, 153
 blood lipids and 111-12
 breastfeeding 362
 childhood and adolescent
 bipolar illness 256-7
 psychosis 269
 clonazepam augmentation 56
 costs 17, 144
 delirium 447
 diabetes association 107
 epilepsy 337
 hepatic impairment 381
 Huntington's disease 451
 maximum dose 14
 minimum effective dose 12
 monitoring 32-3
 overdose 466
 plasma level monitoring
 3, 4-5
 pregnancy 349
 psychotic depression 185
 rapid tranquilisation
 417, 418
 children and
 adolescents 201
 refractory depression 178
 refractory schizophrenia
 54, 59
 renal impairment 370, 377
 sexual adverse effects 115
 smoking and 493
 street drug interactions 331
 valvular dysfunction and 87
 therapeutic index 31
 Tourette's syndrome 277
 omega-3 triglycerides (fish oils)
 disruptive augmentation 56, 78
 refractory depression 189
 refractory schizophrenia 59
 schizophrenia 78-9
 sedative dysfunction and 89

oculovertiginous
 parietal dysfunction 88
 Tourette's syndrome 277
 gamma aminobutyric
 acid-injurious behaviour in
 learning disability 426
 see also valproate; valproic
 acid dependence 299
 bupropion
 substitution 300-2
 denitrobenzoyl and reduction
 regimes 312-13
 methadone
 substitution 300-2
 overdose 317
 prescribing for 299-300
 relapse prevention 314-15
 subacute prescribing 300
 withdrawal syndrome 300
 organic brain syndrome, DVLA
 regulations 511
 organism 114, 115
 disorders 209
 oligohal 90
 oseriporosis 414-15
 overdose, psychotropic
 drug 464-7
 oxazepam
 alcohol withdrawal 294
 diets 246
 hepatic impairment 384
 hypnotic use 249
 renal impairment 376
 oxcarbazepine
 acute mania/hypomania 141
 psychotropic drug
 interactions 341
 palliperone 15
 paracetamol
 doxepine-induced 64
 paroxetine
 benzodiazepines 234
 MIBG guidance 235
 SSRIs 234
 paraldehyde, rigid
 tranquilisation 419
 Parkinson's disease 407-9
 nicotine use 489
 paroxetine 162
 breastfeeding 359
 cardiac effects 304
 childhood and adolescent
 depression 259
 elderly 203-3
 hepatic impairment 382, 384

minimum effective dose 173
 OCD 260
 pregnancy 350
 relative adverse effects 229
 renal impairment 373
 sexual dysfunction and 210
 swapping/switching 216, 218
 pathological laughter and crying
 (PLC) in multiple
 sclerosis 411
 pelvic inflammatory
 disease 516
 peripartum, Tourette's
 syndrome 277
 pericaine 14
 peripheral
 adverse effects 122
 maximum licensed dose 14
 personality disorder
 antipsychotic 264
 borderline 449-4
 pharmacodynamic
 interactions 226
 alcohol 486-7
 antidepressants 226-8
 carbamazepine 136
 valproate 126
 pharmacodynamic, ageing
 changes 386
 pharmacokinetic
 interactions 227
 alcohol 484-5
 antidepressants 227
 pharmacokinetics, ageing
 changes 386
 phenelzine 164
 overdose 466
 relative adverse effects 229
 renal impairment 373
 phenothiazine (phenothiazine)
 anticholinergic drug
 interactions 434
 psychotropic drug
 interactions 126, 341
 phosphazenes
 blood lipids and 111-12
 breastfeeding 361
 diabetes risk 107
 hepatic impairment 381
 overdose 466
 sexual adverse effects 115
 phenoxymethylpenicillin 516
 phenylpropanolamine 98
 phenylalanine
 acute mania/hypomania 141
 anticholinergic drug
 interactions 434

plasma level monitoring 3
 psychotropic drug
 interactions 334,
 339-40
 prochlorperazine
 adverse effects 122
 doxepine augmentation 56
 equivalent dose 11
 maximum dose 14
 renal impairment 370
 Tourette's syndrome 277
 paraldehyde, refractory
 depression 181
 propofol (Dopon)
 adverse effects 122
 dose and frequency 36
 equivalent dose 11
 maximum dose 14
 vs. other drugs 35
 propylthiouracil
 depression-related
 hypernatremia 62, 72
 product licence 481
 pseudo effect 482
 plasma drug levels
 measuring 2
 steady state 1
 plasma level monitoring 1-6
 criteria 1-2
 interpreting results 2-3
 new antidepressants 15-17
 reasons 2
 sampling time 1-2
 premenstrual
 depression-related 64
 polydipsia 120
 polypharmacy, antipsychotic
 18, 42
 polyuria, lithium-induced 129
 postpartum period
 bipolar illness 350
 depression 348
 epilepsy 3
 psychosis 346
 see also breastfeeding
 post-stroke depression 195
 post-traumatic stress disorder
 (PTSD) 254
 anticholinergic drug-
 induced 441
 benzodiazepines 124
 SSRIs 234
 pramipexole
 bipolar depression 148
 refractory depression 183
 pregnancy 344
 alcohol use and 298

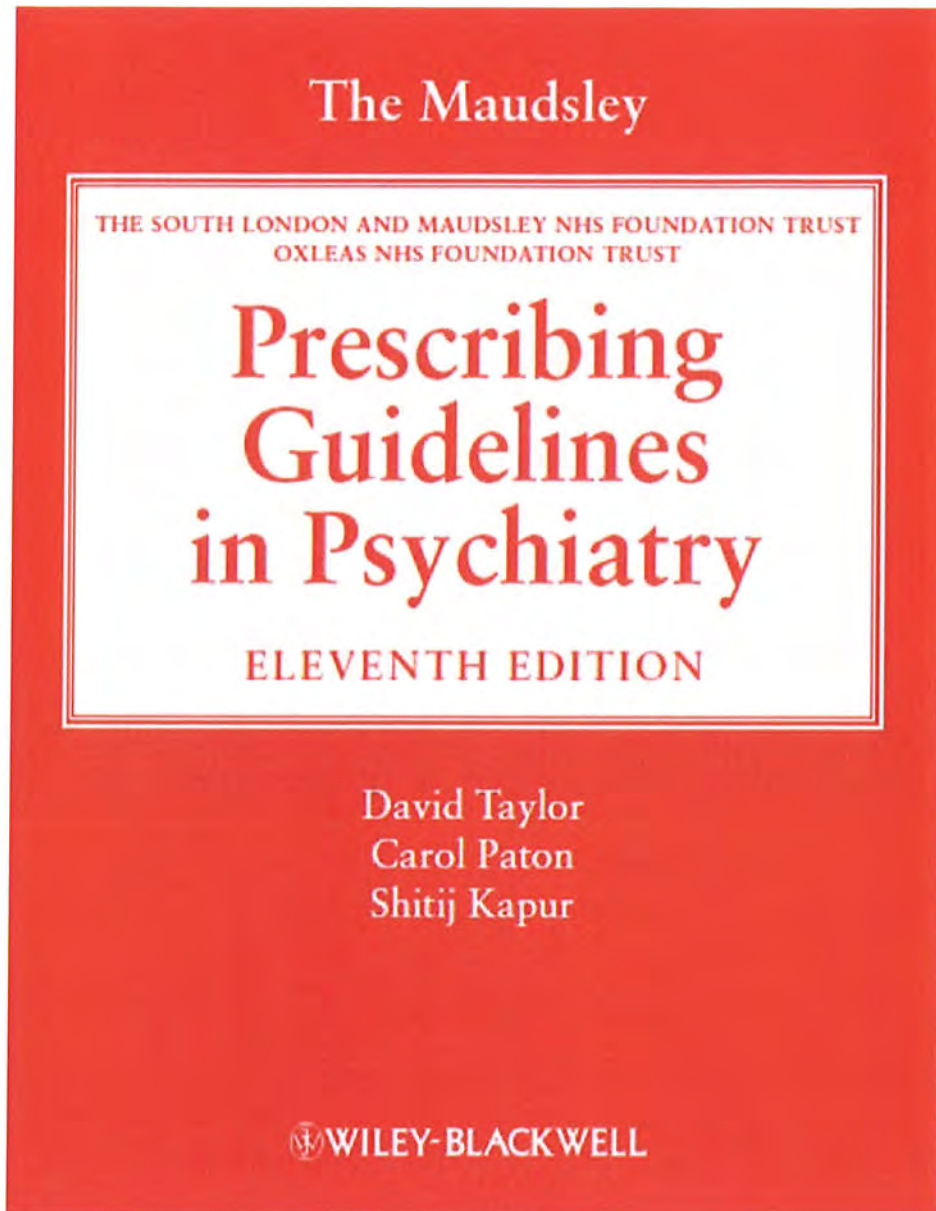
antidepressants 348-50
 antipsychotics 346-7
 benzodiazepine use 317
 bipolar illness 350
 bupropion 334
 depression 348
 epilepsy 352
 methadone 316
 mood-stabilisers 350-1
 nicotine and 324
 nicotine replacement
 therapy 321, 322
 optimal use 316-17
 prescribing principles 345
 psychosis 346
 sedatives 353
 stimulant use and 326
 valproate and 126, 351
 prescribing principles
 antipsychotics 18
 children and adolescents 252
 depression 170
 elderly 386-7
 HIV infection 435-4
 pregnancy 345
 renal impairment 367-9
 pressure sores 516
 prepsym 115
 primidone, anticholinergic drug
 interactions 436
 prochlorperazine 62
 alcohol withdrawal 297
 propranolol
 with depot antipsychotics 37
 rapid tranquilisation and 418
 product licence 480-1
 prolactin, serum
 antipsychotics not
 affecting 83
 elevated see
 hyperprolactinaemia
 monitoring 33
 promazine
 adverse effects 122
 see also breastfeeding
 propranolol 415
 breastfeeding 364
 pregnancy 353
 rapid tranquilisation 417,
 418
 renal impairment 376
 propylthiouracil, doxepine-related
 hypernatremia 72
 propylthiouracil
 antipsychotic-induced
 ataxia 85

lithium-induced tremor 129
 pseudohyponatremia 119
 pseudotumor cerebri
 antipsychotic-induced 80
 psychological therapies
 anticholinergic
 disorders 245
 children and adolescents 253
 self-injurious behaviour in
 learning disability 425
 psychosis
 anticholinergic
 drug-induced 441
 benzodiazepines 241
 children and
 adolescents 269
 DVLA regulations 513
 epilepsy 335-7
 first episode 49
 HIV infection 435
 in multiple sclerosis 410
 Parkinson's disease 407-8
 perinatal 346
 postpartum 346
 see also schizophrenia
 psychotropic
 biological changes 471-5
 driving and 506-8
 ECG seizure threshold
 and 187-8
 in epilepsy 337
 haematological effects 476-8
 HIV infection 435-6
 interactions with street
 drugs 331, 333-4
 overdose 464-7
 plasma level monitoring 1-6
 QT prolongation 101-5
 smoking and 491-3
 special patient groups 335-43
 surgery and 428-31
 PTSD see post-traumatic stress
 disorder
 pulmonary embolism,
 doxepine-induced 66
 pulse monitoring
 rapid tranquilisation 418
 saccharin, clonazepam
 pyridoxine, lisdopa-
 kinase 100

QTc prolongation 101-5
 actions to be taken 104
 antidepressant-induced 203
 cocaine use 333
 ECG monitoring
 recommendations 104

- QTc prolongation (Cont.)
- infarction-associated 313
 - metabolic inhibition 104
 - metabolite-associated 306
 - non-pharmacologic
 - inducing 104
 - risk factors 103
 - seriating antipsychotics 24
 - seriating, cardiac dysrhythmias 88
 - gingivitis
 - acute mania/hypomania 140
 - adverse effects 122
 - behaviour problems in
 - dementia 400
 - bipolar depression 147
 - bipolar disorder 145, 151, 153
 - children and adolescents 257
 - blood levels and 111-12
 - breastfeeding 362
 - catastonia 92
 - clozapine-related
 - hypersensitivity 72
 - costs 17, 144
 - delirium 448
 - diabetes association 124
 - diagnosis 337
 - hepatic impairment 381
 - Huntington's disease 451
 - maximum dose 14
 - minimum effective dose 12
 - monitoring 32-3
 - overdose 465
 - Parkinson's disease 408
 - plasma level monitoring 3
 - pregnancy 347
 - rapid tranquilisation 418
 - refractory depression 178
 - refractory schizophrenia 59
 - sexual adverse effects 115
 - sexual dysplasia and 87
 - Tourette's syndrome 277
 - transtion 248
 - rapid tranquilisation (RT)
 - 417-19
 - children and adolescents 281
 - monitoring 419
 - removal measures 420
 - rebound 167
 - respiratory 360
 - cardiac effects 204
 - diabetes and 199
 - drug-induced weight gain 98
 - epilepsy 337
 - hepatic impairment 383
 - minimum effective dose 173
 - overdose 465
 - pregnancy 349
 - relative adverse effects 229
 - renal impairment 374
 - sexual adverse effects 210
 - swapping/switching 217-19
 - renal impairment 367
 - antidepressants 372-4
 - antipsychotics 369-71
 - metabolic 305
 - nicotine replacement
 - therapy 372
 - mood stabilisers 375
 - prescribing principles 367-9
 - respiratory rate, after rapid tranquilisation 419, 420
 - respiratory tract infections 516
 - restlessness *see* akathisia
 - reversible inhibitor of monoamine oxidase A (RIMA) 165
 - see also* modafinil
 - ritonavir
 - bipolar depression 149
 - refractory depression 183
 - ritonavir 98
 - tripsicane
 - acute mania/hypomania 140
 - adverse effects 122
 - autism 270, 272
 - behaviour problems in dementia 400
 - bipolar disorder 145, 151
 - breastfeeding 362
 - catastonia 92
 - children and adolescents
 - psychosis 269
 - clozapine augmentation 56
 - costs 17, 144
 - delirium 448
 - diabetes association 108
 - epilepsy 337
 - hepatic impairment 382
 - HIV infection 435
 - Huntington's disease 451
 - long-acting injection (LAI)
 - 38-9
 - maximum dose 14
 - minimum effective dose 12
 - overdose 465
 - plasma level monitoring 3, 5
 - pregnancy 347
 - rapid tranquilisation 418
 - refractory depression 178
 - refractory schizophrenia 56
 - renal impairment 370
 - sexual adverse effects 115
 - Tourette's syndrome 277
 - maximum dose 14
 - minimum effective dose 12
 - overdose 465
 - plasma level monitoring 3, 5
 - pregnancy 347
 - rapid tranquilisation 418
 - refractory depression 178
 - refractory schizophrenia 56
 - renal impairment 370
 - sexual adverse effects 115
 - Tourette's syndrome 277
 - transient, acute mania/ hypomania 141
 - ritonavir 435, 436
 - ritonavir
 - Alzheimer's disease 390, 392, 393
 - behaviour problems in dementia 401
 - delirium 449
 - vascular dementia 396
 - RT *see* rapid tranquilisation
 - sagivirus 440
 - serotonergic 59
 - schizophrenia 9-122
 - acute exacerbation 22-3
 - caffeine consumption 496
 - cardiovascular risk
 - factors 105
 - catastonia and 92
 - children and adolescents 269
 - diabetes association 107
 - DVT/A regulations 511
 - first episode 12, 21, 49
 - fish oil 78
 - multi-episode 48-50
 - negative symptoms 47
 - nicotine use 498
 - pregnancy 346
 - refractory 53, 58-9
 - refugee 12, 22-3, 49-51
 - sexual dysfunction 114
 - second-generation antipsychotics
 - adverse effects 44
 - attention deficit hyperactivity disorder 263
 - bipolar disorder 145, 152
 - blood lipid effects 111
 - costs 17
 - delirium 447
 - diabetes risk 107-8
 - equivalent doses 11
 - HIV infection 436
 - monitoring 32-3
 - negative symptoms 47
 - NICE guidance 19
 - Parkinson's disease 408
 - pregnancy 347
 - product license 481
 - prophylaxis 49
 - psychotic depression 185
 - rapid tranquilisation 417, 419
 - street drug interactions 283
 - switching to 27
 - tartrate dyskinesia and 87
 - vs. typical 31
 - sedation
 - alcohol-induced 466
 - antidepressant-induced
 - 202, 229
 - antipsychotic-induced 18, 115
 - drug-induced, fitness to drive 306
 - switching antipsychotics 24
 - see also* rapid tranquilisation
 - sedatives
 - breastfeeding mothers 364
 - hepatic impairment 384
 - pregnancy 353
 - alcohol withdrawal 287, 296
 - antidepressant-induced 226, 335
 - antipsychotic-induced 335
 - bupropion (amfevunamone)-induced 323
 - cholinergic-induced 62
 - see also* epilepsy
 - selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs)
 - 160-1
 - anxiety disorders 234-5, 237
 - children and adolescents 259
 - ritonavir 270
 - Warding and 197-8
 - borderline personality disorder 444
 - breastfeeding 359
 - inhibin nervous 415
 - cardiac effects 204-5
 - depression 181
 - children and adolescents 253-4
 - minimum effective dose 173
 - official guidance 170
 - halberst and 199, 200
 - discontinuation
 - symptoms 220-1, 228
 - drug interactions 226
 - BCT seizure threshold and 187
 - elderly 202
 - epilepsy 337
 - hepatic impairment 382
 - HIV infection 435
 - ibuprofen interactions 132
 - obese-computer disorder in children and adolescents 260
 - overdose 465
 - Parkinson's disease 407
 - post-stroke depression 195
 - pregnancy 349
 - refractory depression 178, 181
 - retire adverse effects 229
 - self-injurious behaviour in hearing disability 426
 - sexual adverse effects
 - 115, 210
 - urgent and 428
 - retagline 115
 - self-injurious behaviour (SIB)
 - drug treatment options 426
 - in learning disability 425-6
 - lithium therapy 128, 426
 - prescribing and monitoring 426
 - semisodium valproate *see* valproate
 - serotonin antagonists
 - abuse 85
 - sexual dysfunction 114
 - serotonin syndrome
 - antidepressant
 - interactions 214, 229
 - HIV infection and 429
 - urgent-related risk 436
 - symptoms 214
 - sertraline
 - adverse effects 122
 - breastfeeding 362
 - cost 17
 - maximum licensed dose 14
 - minimum effective dose 12
 - renal impairment 371
 - retagline 163
 - anxiety disorders 234
 - atriphobia and 207
 - breastfeeding 359-60
 - cardiac effects 204
 - minimum effective dose 173
 - OCD in children and adolescents 260
 - post-stroke depression 195
 - pregnancy 349
 - relative adverse effects 228
 - renal impairment 374, 377
 - swapping/switching 217-19
 - sexual arousal 114
 - disorders 114, 209
 - sexual desire *see* libido
 - sexual dysfunction 114-17
 - antidepressants and 209-11
 - antipsychotic-induced 114-15
 - depression and 209
 - hyperreflexia and 31, 83, 115
 - schizophrenia 114
 - switching antipsychotics 24
 - treatment 115-16
 - sexual response, human 114
 - Short Alcohol Withdrawal Scale (SAWS) 290
 - SLADH 119, 120, 193
 - sirolimus *see* hypersensitivity
 - shuntum 98
 - sildenafil 116, 117
 - sexual dysfunction and 211
 - sleep disturbance 272
 - sleep hygiene 248
 - smoking, cigarette 498-9
 - cessation 321, 489
 - psychotropic drugs
 - and 491-3
 - see also* elotriptan
 - SNRIs, diabetes and 199, 200
 - social phobia 235, 237
 - sodium, serum, monitoring 193
 - sodium valproate *see* valproate
 - SSRIs *see* selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors
 - steroid-induced psychosis, lithium 128
 - stimulant drugs
 - attention deficit hyperactivity disorder 263, 267
 - In depression 190-1
 - pregnancy and 325
 - St John's wort (SJTW) 223-4
 - adverse effects 223
 - antitubercular drug interactions 436
 - drug interactions 223
 - patient information 224
 - 'street drugs'
 - scaric immunisation 331
 - interactions with prescribed psychotropics 331-4
 - see also* drugs of misuse
 - stroke
 - depression after 191
 - SSRIs and 195
 - substance misuse 284
 - definition 284
 - attention deficit hyperactivity disorder and 263
 - psychotropic drug interactions 331-4
 - Suhnerz *see* bupropion
 - sudden death
 - subtypic-associated 22, 101
 - disruptive-related 66
 - suicidal ideation, antitubercular drug-induced 440
 - suicide
 - bipolar disorder 128, 147
 - elderly 201
 - epilepsy 337
 - psychotropic overdose 464

- adipic acid 122
 - adverse effects 122
 - breastfeeding 361
 - clozapine augmentation 96
 - epilepsy 337
 - equivalent dose 11
 - hepatic impairment 380, 382
 - maximum dose 14
 - metabolism (Cont.)
 - minimum effective dose 12
 - obstetric examination 59
 - renal impairment 371
 - sexual adverse effects 115
 - Tourette's syndrome 277
 - surgery, psychotropics and 428-31
 - syndrome of longpropranolol and antidepressant hormone (SIADH) 119, 120, 193, 194
 - VO
 - oxytocin, clozapine-induced 64, 77
 - halal 211
 - nerve dykinesia (TD) 31
 - N switching antidepressants 24, 87
 - 1 treatment 87-8
 - TCAs see tricyclic antidepressants
 - Stimulants
 - Et diazepam equivalent dose 246
 - 1 hepatic impairment 384
 - 1 hypnotic use 249
 - 1 renal impairment 376
 - 1 temperature, body
 - 21 clozapine-induced increase 77
 - 21 rapid tranquilisation and 419
 - 21 venous, refractory depression 183
 - 21 vestibular
 - 21 Huntington's disease 451
 - 21 tardive dyskinesia 87
 - 21 theophylline, carbamazepine interaction 136
 - 21 therapeutic index, antidepressants 31
 - 21 thiazine
 - 21 alcohol withdrawal 287, 294
 - 21 post-BCT confusion 188
 - 21 thiazide diuretics, lithium interaction 132
 - 21 thioamides
 - 21 breastfeeding 361
 - 21 sexual adverse effects 115
- throat infections 516
 - thrombocytopenia, clozapine-induced 64
 - thrombocytopenia, clozapine-induced 66
 - thymoxine
 - 21 bipolar depression 148
 - 21 carbamazepine interaction 136
 - 21 rapid-cycling bipolar disorder 151
 - 21 bupropion, psychotropic drug interactions 341
 - 21 TMS see transcranial magnetic stimulation
 - 21 topiramate
 - 21 acute mania/hypomania 141
 - 21 diazepam augmentation 56
 - 21 drug-induced weight gain 98
 - 21 psychotropic drug interactions 341
 - 21 rapid-cycling bipolar disorder 151
 - 21 refractory schizophrenia 59
 - 21 Tourette's syndrome 277
 - 21 overdose de potentia 101, 306
 - 21 vertigo 80
 - 21 Tourette syndrome 264, 276-7
 - 21 tramadol 277
 - 21 tranquillisation, rapid see rapid tranquilisation
 - 21 transcranial magnetic stimulation (TMS)
 - 21 refractory depression 183
 - 21 schizophrenia 99, 88
 - 21 tranylcypromine 165
 - 21 overdose 465
 - 21 relative adverse effects 229
 - 21 switching/deeping 216, 218
 - 21 withdrawal 220-1
 - 21 trazodone 167
 - 21 behavioural symptoms in dementia 402
 - 21 breastfeeding 360
 - 21 cardiac effects 204
 - 21 delirium 449
 - 21 diabetes and 199
 - 21 minimum effective dose 173
 - 21 overdose 465
 - 21 pregnancy 349
 - 21 relative adverse effects 229
 - 21 renal impairment 374
 - 21 sexual adverse effects 210
 - 21 switching/deeping 216, 219
 - 21 tremor
 - 21 antidepressant-induced 80
 - 21 lithium-induced 129
- tricyclic antidepressants (TCAs)
 - 158-9
 - arithmetic and 207
 - attention deficit hyperactivity disorder 263
 - breastfeeding 358
 - cardiac effects 204
 - childhood and adolescent anxiety 259
 - childhood and adolescent depression 254
 - in depression 195
 - discontinuation
 - 21 symptoms 221
 - 21 drug interactions 126, 226-8
 - 21 ECT seizure threshold and 187
 - 21 elderly 202-3
 - 21 hepatic impairment 382
 - 21 minimum effective doses 173
 - 21 overdose 465
 - 21 plasma level monitoring 3
 - 21 pregnancy 349
 - 21 psychotic depression 185
 - 21 refractory depression
 - 21 178, 182
 - 21 relative adverse effects 229
 - 21 sexual adverse effects 210
 - 21 smoking and 493
 - 21 surgery and 428-30
 - 21 switching/deeping 214, 216, 218
 - 21 trifuoperazine
 - 21 adverse effects 122
 - 21 epilepsy 337
 - 21 equivalent dose 11
 - 21 maximum dose 14
 - 21 minimum effective dose 12
 - 21 pregnancy 348
 - 21 renal impairment 371
 - 21 high-dose, plasma 111, 112
 - 21 tricyclic antidepressants, refractory hyperactivation 72
 - 21 tri-iodothyronine, refractory depression 178
 - 21 trimethoprim 516
 - 21 trimeperidine 150
 - 21 relative adverse effects 229
 - 21 renal impairment 374
 - 21 tryptophan, refractory depression 182
 - 21 tuberculous 516
 - 21 ulcers, infected 516
 - 21 urea and electrolytes (UREAs), monitoring 32
 - 21 urinary tract infections 516
- vagus nerve stimulation 183
 - valerian 498
 - acute mania/hypomania
 - 140, 141
 - adverse effects 125
 - behavioural symptoms in dementia 402
 - bipolar disorder 145
 - bipolar depression 148
 - bipolar disorder 123-6, 153
 - physical monitoring
 - 138-9
 - children and adolescents 257
 - breastfeeding 361
 - clozapine-induced seizures 4, 62
 - costs 144
 - delirium 449
 - drug interactions 126, 340
 - hepatic impairment 383
 - overdose 467
 - plasma levels 3, 124-5
 - pregnancy 351
 - product licence 481
 - refractory schizophrenia 99
 - renal impairment 375, 377
 - attract drug interactions 334
 - women of childbearing age 175-30
 - vasodilator, smoking cessation 321, 323
 - vascular dementia 396-7
 - vascular, clozapine-induced 64
 - vesalazine 168
 - anticholinergic and 207
 - breastfeeding 360
 - cardiac effects 204
 - children and adolescents
 - 253, 259
 - diabetes and 199
 - ECT seizure threshold and 187
 - elderly 202-3
 - epilepsy 337
 - hepatic impairment 382
 - Huntington's disease 451
 - minimum effective dose 173
 - overdose 465
 - pregnancy 350
 - refractory depression
 - 181, 183
 - relative adverse effects 229
 - renal impairment 374
 - sexual adverse effects 210
 - switching/deeping 217-19
 - vigilantia, drug interactions 341
 - violent behaviour 417-21
 - see also aggressive behaviour
 - vitamin B complex (Pabonol), alcohol withdrawal 294
 - vitamin E, tardive dyskinesia 67
 - vitamin K 351
 - vitamin supplementation
 - alcohol withdrawal 294
 - anorexia nervosa 414
 - vomiting, alcohol withdrawal 297
 - warfarin, interactions 126
 - water intoxication 119, 120
 - WCC see white cell count
 - weight, monitoring 32, 77, 97
 - weight gain
 - antidepressant-induced 203
 - antipsychotic-induced 96
 - clozapine-induced 62
 - hypertlipidaemia and 112
 - switching antidepressants
 - 24, 97
 - treatment and prevention 97-8
 - valproate-induced 125
 - Wernicke's
 - encephalopathy 295-6
 - white cell count (WCC)
 - carbamazepine effects 135
 - effect of lithium 68
 - low, lithium treatment 68, 69-70
 - see also neutropenia
 - withdrawal symptoms 220
 - women of childbearing age, anticonvulsants 125
 - wound infections 516
 - Yellow Card data 207
 - zalcitabine
 - refractory depression 182
 - sexual dysfunction 115, 116
 - young people see children and adolescents
 - zidovudine
 - zidovudine 440
- zipsiprone
 - acute mania/hypomania 141
 - adverse effects 122
 - breastfeeding 362
 - catatonias 92
 - children and adolescents
 - psychosis 269
 - rapid tranquilisation 281
 - clozapine augmentation 56
 - delirium 448
 - diabetes and 108
 - maximum dose 14
 - minimum effective dose 12
 - monitoring 32-3
 - overdose 466
 - rapid tranquilisation 417
 - refractory depression 182
 - renal impairment 371
 - Tourette's syndrome 277
 - zidovudine
 - breastfeeding 364
 - as hypnotic 249, 250
 - overdose 467
 - renal impairment 377
 - zonisamide 98
 - bipolar depression 148
 - zopiclone
 - as hypnotic 249, 250
 - breastfeeding 364
 - hepatic impairment 384
 - overdose 467
 - renal impairment 377
 - zotepine
 - adverse effects 122
 - bipolar disorder 145
 - cost 17
 - epilepsy 337
 - maximum dose 14
 - minimum effective dose 12
 - monitoring 39
 - renal impairment 371
 - zuclopentixol (Clopixol)
 - acetate (Acuphase), propofol 421
 - adverse effects 122
 - depot dose and frequency 36
 - equivalent dose 11
 - maximum dose 14
 - va. other drugs 35
 - equivalent dose 11
 - hepatic impairment 381
 - maximum dose 14
 - smoking and 493



The Maudsley Prescribing Guidelines in Psychiatry

11th Edition

David Taylor

Director of Pharmacy and Pathology
South London and Maudsley NHS Foundation Trust;
Professor of Psychopharmacology, King's College London, London, UK

Carol Paton

Chief Pharmacist, Oxleas NHS Foundation Trust
Honorary Research Fellow, Imperial College, London, UK

Shitij Kapur

Dean and Professor, Institute of Psychiatry
King's College London, London, UK

 **WILEY-BLACKWELL**

A John Wiley & Sons, Ltd, Publication

Contents

[Cover](#)

[Frontpiece](#)

[Title Page](#)

[Copyright](#)

[Preface](#)

[Acknowledgements](#)

[Notes on using The Maudsley Prescribing Guidelines](#)

[Notes on inclusion of drugs](#)

[List of abbreviations](#)

[Chapter 1: Plasma level monitoring of psychotropic drugs and anticonvulsants](#)

[Interpreting sample results](#)

[Chapter 2: Schizophrenia](#)

[Antipsychotic drugs](#)

[Antipsychotic drugs: equivalent doses](#)

[Antipsychotic drugs: minimum effective doses](#)

[Antipsychotic drugs: licensed maximum doses](#)

[New antipsychotic drugs](#)

[Antipsychotic drugs: general principles of prescribing](#)

[National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence guidelines for the treatment of schizophrenia](#)
[Treatment algorithms for schizophrenia](#)
[Antipsychotic drugs: monitoring of metabolic effects](#)
[Switching antipsychotic drugs because of poor tolerability](#)
[Antipsychotic response: to increase the dose, to switch, to add or just wait – what is the right move?](#)
[Speed and onset of antipsychotic drug action](#)
[First-generation antipsychotic drugs: place in therapy](#)
[Antipsychotic drugs: long-acting injections](#)
[Risperidone long-acting injection](#)
[Paliperidone palmitate long-acting injection](#)
[Management of patients on long-term depots: dose reduction](#)
[Combined antipsychotic drugs](#)
[High-dose antipsychotic drugs: prescribing and monitoring](#)
[Negative symptoms in schizophrenia](#)
[Antipsychotic prophylaxis](#)
[Refractory schizophrenia and clozapine](#)
[Clozapine augmentation](#)
[Refractory schizophrenia: alternatives to clozapine](#)
[Clozapine: management of common adverse effects](#)
[Clozapine: uncommon or unusual adverse effects](#)
[Clozapine: serious haematological and cardiovascular adverse effects](#)
[Clozapine, neutropenia and lithium](#)
[Clozapine and chemotherapy](#)

[Clozapine-related hypersalivation](#)

[Guidelines for the initiation of clozapine for patients based in the community](#)

[Omega-3 fatty acids \(fish oils\) in schizophrenia](#)

[Extrapyramidal side-effects of antipsychotic drug treatment](#)

[Treatment of antipsychotic-induced akathisia](#)

[Treatment of tardive dyskinesia](#)

[Neuroleptic malignant syndrome](#)

[Catatonia](#)

[Cardiovascular effects of antipsychotic drug treatment](#)

[Antipsychotic drugs and hypertension](#)

[Hyperprolactinaemia](#)

[Antipsychotic-induced weight gain](#)

[Treatment of drug-induced weight gain](#)

[Antipsychotic drugs, diabetes and impaired glucose tolerance](#)

[Antipsychotic drugs and dyslipidaemia](#)

[Antipsychotic drugs and sexual dysfunction](#)

[Antipsychotic-associated hyponatraemia](#)

[Antipsychotics and pneumonia](#)

[Relative adverse effects of antipsychotic drugs: a rough guide](#)

[Chapter 3: Bipolar disorder](#)

[Valproate](#)

[Lithium](#)

[Carbamazepine](#)

[Physical monitoring of people with bipolar disorder](#)

Treatment of acute mania or hypomania

Antipsychotic drugs in bipolar disorder

Bipolar depression

Rapid cycling bipolar disorder

Prophylaxis in bipolar disorder

Chapter 4: Depression and anxiety

Depression

Antidepressants

Treatment of resistant depression

Treatment of psychotic depression

Electroconvulsive therapy and psychotropic drugs

Psychostimulants in depression

Treatment of depression in the elderly

Treatment of depression in stroke

Adverse effects of antidepressants

Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors and bleeding

Depression and diabetes

Cardiac effects of antidepressants

Antidepressants and sexual dysfunction

Antidepressants and hyperprolactinaemia

Antidepressants: swapping and stopping

St John's wort in the treatment of depression

Drug interactions with antidepressants

Alternative routes of administration for antidepressants

Anxiety spectrum disorders

Benzodiazepines in the treatment of psychiatric disorders

Benzodiazepines and disinhibition

Benzodiazepines: dependence and detoxification
Insomnia

Chapter 5: Children and adolescents

Principles of prescribing practice in childhood and adolescence

Depression in children and adolescents

Bipolar illness in children and adolescents

Psychosis in children and adolescents

Anxiety in children and adolescents

Obsessive compulsive disorder in children and adolescents

Attention deficit hyperactivity disorder

Autism spectrum disorders

Tics and Tourette's syndrome

Melatonin in the treatment of insomnia in children and adolescents

Rapid tranquillisation in children and adolescents

Doses of commonly used psychotropic drugs in children and adolescents

Chapter 6: Substance misuse

Alcohol dependence

Opioid misuse and dependence

Nicotine and smoking cessation

Stimulant drugs of dependence

Benzodiazepine misuse

γ -Butyryl-lactone and γ -hydroxybutyrate dependence

Drugs of misuse: a summary

Interactions between 'street drugs' and prescribed

psychotropic drugs

Chapter 7: Use of psychotropic drugs in special patient groups

Epilepsy

Pregnancy

Breast feeding

Renal impairment

Hepatic impairment

Prescribing in the elderly

Dementia

Behavioural and psychological symptoms of dementia

Parkinson's disease

Multiple sclerosis

Eating disorders

Acutely disturbed or violent behaviour

Psychotropic medications for adults with learning disabilities

Borderline personality disorder

Delirium

Huntington's disease

Psychotropic drugs and surgery

Prescribing psychotropic drugs for patients with HIV infection

Psychotropic drugs and cytochrome (CYP) function

Summary of psychiatric side-effects of non-psychotropic drugs

Chapter 8: Miscellaneous conditions and substances

Psychotropic drugs in overdose

Biochemical and haematological effects of psychotropic drugs

Prescribing drugs outside their licensed indications

Observations on the placebo effect in mental illness

Drug interactions with alcohol

Nicotine

Smoking and psychotropic drugs

Caffeine

Complementary therapies

Enhancing medication adherence

Driving and psychotropic medicines

Covert administration of medicines within food and drink

Index

2009; 24:150–158.

29. Ricca V et al. Zonisamide combined with cognitive behavioral therapy in binge eating disorder: a one-year follow-up study. *Psychiatry (Edgmont)* 2009; 6:23–28.

30. McElroy SL et al. Acamprosate in the treatment of binge eating disorder: a placebo-controlled trial. *Int J Eat Disord* 2011; 44:81–90.

31. McElroy SL et al. Sodium oxybate in the treatment of binge eating disorder: an open-label, prospective study. *Int J Eat Disord* 2011; 44:262–268.

32. Leombruni P et al. A 12 to 24 weeks pilot study of sertraline treatment in obese women binge eaters. *Hum Psychopharmacol* 2006; 21:181–188.

Further reading

Jackson CW et al. Pharmacotherapy of eating disorders. *Nutr Clin Pract* 2010; 25:143–159.

Reas DL et al. Review and meta-analysis of pharmacotherapy for binge-eating disorder. *Obesity (Silver Spring)* 2008; 16:2024–2038.

Acutely disturbed or violent behaviour

Acute behavioural disturbance can occur in the context of psychiatric illness, physical illness, substance abuse or personality disorder. Psychotic symptoms are common and the patient may be aggressive towards others secondary to persecutory delusions or auditory, visual or tactile hallucinations.

The clinical practice of rapid tranquillisation is used when appropriate psychological and behavioural approaches have failed to de-escalate acutely disturbed behaviour. It is, essentially, a treatment of last resort. Rapid tranquillisation is not underpinned by a strong evidence base. Patients who require this treatment are often too disturbed to give informed consent and therefore cannot participate in RCTs. Recommendations are therefore based partly on research data, partly on theoretical considerations and partly on clinical experience.

Several studies supporting the efficacy of oral atypicals have been published.^{1–4} The level of behavioural disturbance exhibited by the patients in these studies was moderate at most, and all subjects accepted oral treatment (this degree of compliance would be unusual in clinical practice). Note too that patients recruited to these studies received the atypical as antipsychotic monotherapy. The efficacy and safety of adding a second antipsychotic as ‘prn’ have not been tested in formal RCTs.

Larger, placebo-controlled RCTs support the efficacy of intramuscular (IM) olanzapine, ziprasidone and aripiprazole. When considered together, these trials suggested that IM olanzapine is more effective than IM haloperidol which in turn is more effective than IM

aripiprazole.⁵ Again, the level of behavioural disturbance in these studies was moderate at most. Two small open studies support the effectiveness of IM ziprasidone and IM olanzapine in clinical emergencies (where disturbance was severe).^{6,7}

Four large RCTs (the TREC studies^{8–11}) have investigated the effectiveness of parenteral medication in 'real-life' acutely disturbed patients. Overall:

- IM midazolam 7.5–15 mg was more rapidly sedating than a combination of haloperidol 5–10 mg and promethazine 50 mg (TREC 1)⁸
- olanzapine 10 mg was as effective as a combination of haloperidol 10 mg and promethazine 25–50 mg in the short term, but the effect did not last as long (TREC 4)¹¹
- a combination of haloperidol 5–10 mg and promethazine 50 mg was more effective and better tolerated than haloperidol 5–10 mg alone (TREC 3)¹⁰
- a combination of haloperidol 10 mg and promethazine 25–50 mg was more effective than lorazepam 4 mg (TREC 2).⁹

Note that TREC 3¹⁰ found IM haloperidol alone to be poorly tolerated; 6% of patients had an acute dystonic reaction. In a meta-analysis that examined the tolerability of IM antipsychotics when used for the treatment of agitation, the incidence of acute dystonia with haloperidol was reported to be 5%, with SGAs faring considerably better.¹² Acute EPS may adversely affect longer-term compliance.¹³ In addition, the SPC for haloperidol requires a pretreatment ECG^{14,15} and recommends that concomitant antipsychotics are not prescribed. The mean increase in QTc after 10 mg IM haloperidol has been administered has been reported to be 15 ms but the range is wide.¹⁶

A small observational study supports the effectiveness of buccal midazolam in the setting of a psychiatric intensive care unit setting.¹⁷ Parenteral administration of midazolam, particularly in higher doses, may cause oversedation accompanied by respiratory depression.¹⁸ Lorazepam IM is an established treatment and TREC 2⁹ supports its efficacy, although combining all results from the TREC studies suggests that midazolam 7.5–15 mg is probably more effective.

Plans for the management of individual patients should ideally be made in advance. The aim is to prevent disturbed behaviour and reduce risk of violence. Nursing interventions (de-escalation, time out), increased nursing levels, transfer of the patient to a psychiatric intensive care unit and pharmacological management are options that may be employed. Care should be taken to avoid combinations and high cumulative doses of antipsychotic drugs. The monitoring of routine physical observations after rapid tranquillisation is essential (see Box 7.10). Note that rapid tranquillisation is often viewed as punitive by patients. There is little research into the patient experience of rapid tranquillisation.

The aims of rapid tranquillisation are threefold.

- To reduce suffering for the patient: psychological or physical (through self-harm or accidents).
- To reduce risk of harm to others by maintaining a safe environment.

- To do no harm (by prescribing safe regimens and monitoring physical health).

NB: Despite the need for rapid and effective treatment, concomitant use of two or more antipsychotics should be avoided on the basis of risk associated with QT prolongation (common to almost all antipsychotics). This is a particularly important consideration in rapid tranquillisation where the patient’s physical state predisposes to cardiac arrhythmia.

Table 7.26 outlines the interventions to use in an emergency situation. Remedial measures are shown in Table 7.27. Box 7.10 describes physical monitoring requirements; Box 7.11 the use of flumazenil; and Box 7.12 shows guidelines for the use of zuclopenthixol acetate.

Table 7.26 Recommended interventions for patients showing acutely disturbed or violent behaviour

Step	Intervention	Comment
1	De-escalation, time out, placement, etc., as appropriate	
2	Offer oral treatment	
	If the patient is prescribed a regular antipsychotic, lorazepam 1-2 mg alone avoids the risks associated with combining antipsychotics. Repeat after 45–60 min Monotherapy with buccal midazolam, 10-20 mg may avoid the need for IM treatment	An oral antipsychotic is an option in patients not already taking a regular oral or depot antipsychotic • Olanzapine 10 mg or • Risperidone 1–2 mg or • Haloperidol 5 mg (best with promethazine 25 mg)
	Go to Step 3 if two doses fail or sooner if the patient is placing themselves or others at significant risk	Note that the SPC for haloperidol recommends: Avoiding concomitant antipsychotics A pretreatment ECG
3	Consider IM treatment	
	lorazepam 1-2 mg^{ab}	Have flumazenil to hand in case of benzodiazepine-induced respiratory depression
	promethazine 50 mg^c	IM promethazine is a useful option in a benzodiazepine-tolerant patient
	olanzapine 10 mg^d	IM olanzapine should NOT be combined with an IM benzodiazepine
	aripiprazole 9.75 mg	Less hypotension than olanzapine, but possibly less effective ^{3,5,19}
	haloperidol 5 mg Repeat after 30–60 min if insufficient effect	Haloperidol should be the last drug considered. Note: The incidence of acute dystonia is high; combine with IM promethazine and ensure IM procyclidine is available The SPC recommends a pretreatment ECG
4	Consider IV treatment	
	Diazepam 10 mg over at least 5 min ^{be} Repeat after 5–10 min if insufficient effect (up to 3 times) Have flumazenil to hand	
5	Seek expert advice from the consultant or senior clinical pharmacist on call ^f	

ECG, electrocardiogram; IM, intramuscular; IV, intravenous; SPC, Summary of Product Characteristics.
^aMix lorazepam 1:1 with water for injections before injecting. Some centres use 2–4 mg. An alternative is midazolam 7.5–15 mg, but this is more sedative.
^bCaution in the very young and elderly and those with pre-existing brain damage or impulse control problems, as disinhibition reactions are more likely.²⁰
^cPromethazine has a slow onset of action but is often an effective sedative. Dilution is not required before IM injection. May be repeated up to a maximum of 100 mg/day. Wait 1–2 h after injection to assess response. Note that promethazine alone has been reported, albeit very rarely, to cause neuroleptic malignant syndrome²¹ although it is an extremely weak dopamine antagonist.
^dRecommended by NICE only for moderate behavioural disturbance.
^eUse Diazemuls to avoid injection site reactions. IV therapy may be used instead of IM when a very rapid effect is required. IV therapy also ensures near immediate delivery of the drug to its site of action and effectively avoids the danger of inadvertent accumulation of slowly absorbed IM doses. Note also that IV doses can be repeated after only 5–10 min, if no effect is observed.
^fOptions at this point are limited. IM amylobarbitone and paraldehyde have been used in the past but are used now only extremely rarely. ECT is probably a better option.

Table 7.27 Rapid tranquillisation: remedial measures

--

Problem	Remedial measures
Acute dystonia (including oculogyric crises)	Give procyclidine 5–10 mg IM or IV
Reduced respiratory rate (<10/min) or oxygen saturation <90%	Give oxygen, raise legs, ensure patient is not lying face down
	Give flumazenil if benzodiazepine-induced respiratory depression suspected (see Table 7.11)
	If induced by any other sedative agent: transfer to a medical bed and ventilate mechanically
Irregular or slow (<50/min) pulse	Refer to specialist medical care immediately
Fall in blood pressure (>30 mmHg orthostatic drop or <50 mmHg diastolic)	Have patient lie flat, tilt bed towards head. Monitor closely
Increased temperature	Withhold antipsychotics (risk of NMS and perhaps arrhythmia). Check creatinine kinase urgently

IM, intramuscular; IV, intravenous; NMS, neuroleptic malignant syndrome.

Box 7.10 Rapid tranquillisation: physical monitoring

After any parenteral drug administration, monitor as follows.

- Temperature
- Pulse
- Blood pressure
- Respiratory rate

Every 5–10 min for 1 h, then half-hourly until patient is ambulatory. Patients who refuse to have their vital signs monitored or who remain too behaviourally disturbed to be approached should be observed for signs/symptoms of pyrexia, hypotension, oversedation and general physical well-being.

If the patient is asleep or **unconscious**, the continuous use of pulse oximetry to measure oxygen saturation is desirable. A nurse should remain with the patient until ambulatory.

Electrocardiogram and haematological monitoring are also strongly recommended when parenteral antipsychotics are given, especially when higher doses are used.^{22,23} Hypokalaemia, stress and agitation place the patient at risk of cardiac arrhythmia²⁴ (see section on ‘QT prolongation’ in Chapter). ECG monitoring is formally recommended for all patients who receive haloperidol.

Box 7.11 Guidelines for the use of flumazenil

Indication for use	If, after the administration of lorazepam, midazolam or diazepam, respiratory rate falls below 10/min.
Contraindications	Patients with epilepsy who have been receiving long-term benzodiazepines.
Caution	Dose should be carefully titrated in hepatic impairment.
Dose and route of administration	Initial: 200 µg intravenously over 15 sec. If required level of consciousness not achieved after 60 sec, then, Subsequent dose: 100 µg over 10 sec.
Time before dose can be repeated	60 sec.
Maximum dose	1 mg in 24 h (one initial dose and eight subsequent doses).
Side-effects	Patients may become agitated, anxious or fearful on awakening. Seizures may occur in regular benzodiazepine users.
Management	Side-effects usually subside.

Monitoring

What to monitor?	Respiratory rate.
How often?	Continuously until respiratory rate returns to baseline level.
	Flumazenil has a short half-life (much shorter than diazepam) and respiratory function may recover and then deteriorate again.

NB: If respiratory rate does not return to normal or patient is not alert after initial doses given, assume that sedation is due to some other cause.

Box 7.12 Guidelines for the use of Clopixol Acuphase (zuclopenthixol acetate)

Acuphase should be used only after an acutely psychotic patient has required *repeated* injections of short-acting antipsychotic drugs, such as haloperidol or olanzapine, or sedative drugs such as lorazepam. It is perhaps best reserved for those few patients who have a prior history of good response to Acuphase.

Acuphase should be given only when enough time has elapsed to assess the full response to previously injected drugs: allow 15 min after IV injections, 60 min after IM.

Acuphase should never be administered:

- in an attempt to 'hasten' the antipsychotic effect of other antipsychotic therapy
- for rapid tranquillisation (onset of effect is too slow)
- at the same time as other parenteral antipsychotics or benzodiazepines (may lead to oversedation which is difficult to reverse)
- as a 'test dose' for zuclopenthixol decanoate depot
- to a patient who is physically resistant (risk of intravasation and oil embolus).

Acuphase should never be used for, or in, the following:

- patients who accept oral medication
- patients who are neuroleptic naïve
- patients who are sensitive to EPS
- patients who are unconscious
- patients who are pregnant
- those with hepatic or renal impairment
- those with cardiac disease.

Onset and duration of action

Sedative effects usually begin to be seen 2 h after injection and peak after 12 h. The effects may last for up to 72 h. Note: Acuphase has no place in rapid tranquillisation: *its action is not rapid.*

Dose

Acuphase should be given in a dose of 50–150 mg, up to a maximum of 400 mg over a 2-week period. This maximum duration ensures that a treatment plan is put in place. It does not indicate that there are known harmful effects from more prolonged administration, although such use should be very exceptional. There is no such thing as a 'course of Acuphase'. The patient should be assessed before each administration. Injections should be spaced at least 24 h apart.

EPS, extrapyramidal side-effects; IM, intramuscular; IV, intravenous.

NB: zuclopenthixol acetate was formerly widely misused as a sort of 'chemical straitjacket'. In reality, it is a potentially toxic preparation with very little published information to support its use.²⁵

References

1. Currier GW et al. Acute treatment of psychotic agitation: a randomized comparison of oral treatment with risperidone and lorazepam versus intramuscular treatment with haloperidol and lorazepam. *J Clin Psychiatry* 2004; 65:386–394.

2. Ganesan S et al. Effectiveness of quetiapine for the management of aggressive psychosis in the emergency psychiatric setting: a naturalistic uncontrolled trial. *Int J Psychiatry Clin Pract* 2005; 9:199–203.
3. Simpson JR Jr et al. Impact of orally disintegrating olanzapine on use of intramuscular antipsychotics, seclusion, and restraint in an acute inpatient psychiatric setting. *J Clin Psychopharmacol* 2006; 26:333–335.
4. Hsu WY et al. Comparison of intramuscular olanzapine, orally disintegrating olanzapine tablets, oral risperidone solution, and intramuscular haloperidol in the management of acute agitation in an acute care psychiatric ward in Taiwan. *J Clin Psychopharmacol* 2010; 30:230–234.
5. Citrome L. Comparison of intramuscular ziprasidone, olanzapine, or aripiprazole for agitation: a quantitative review of efficacy and safety. *J Clin Psychiatry* 2007; 68:1876–1885.
6. San L et al. A naturalistic multicenter study of intramuscular olanzapine in the treatment of acutely agitated manic or schizophrenic patients. *Eur Psychiatry* 2006; 21:539–543.
7. Fulton JA et al. Intramuscular ziprasidone: an effective agent for sedation of the agitated ED patient. *Am J Emerg Med* 2006; 24:254–255.
8. TREC Collaborative Group. Rapid tranquillisation for agitated patients in emergency psychiatric rooms: a randomised trial of midazolam versus haloperidol plus promethazine. *BMJ* 2003; 327:708–713.
9. Alexander J et al. Rapid tranquillisation of violent or agitated patients in a psychiatric emergency setting. Pragmatic randomised trial of intramuscular lorazepam v. haloperidol plus promethazine. *Br J Psychiatry* 2004; 185:63–69.
10. Huf G et al. Rapid tranquillisation in psychiatric emergency settings in Brazil: pragmatic randomised controlled trial of intramuscular haloperidol versus intramuscular haloperidol plus promethazine. *BMJ* 2007; 335:869.
11. Raveendran NS et al. Rapid tranquillisation in psychiatric emergency settings in India: pragmatic randomised controlled trial of intramuscular olanzapine versus intramuscular haloperidol plus promethazine. *BMJ* 2007; 335:865.
12. Satterthwaite TD et al. A meta-analysis of the risk of acute extrapyramidal symptoms with intramuscular antipsychotics for the treatment of agitation. *J Clin Psychiatry* 2008; 69:1869–1879.
13. Van Harten PN et al. Acute dystonia induced by drug treatment. *BMJ* 1999; 319:623–626.
14. Janssen-Cilag Ltd. Summary of Product Characteristics. Haldol Injection. www.medicines.org.uk/.
15. Pharmacovigilance Working Party. Public assessment report on neuroleptics and cardiac safety, in particular QT prolongation, cardiac arrhythmias, ventricular tachycardia

Index

abacavir
 acamprosate
 acetylcholinesterase (AChE) inhibitors
 adverse effects
 Alzheimer's disease
 behavioural and psychological symptoms
 combination therapy
 delirium
 dementia with Lewy bodies
 dosing
 drug interactions
 efficacy in dementia
 Huntington's disease
 mechanism of action
 NICE guidance
 Parkinson's disease
 switching
 tolerability
 vascular dementia
 see also donepezil; galantamine; rivastigmine
 N-acetylcysteine, refractory schizophrenia
 activated partial thromboplastin time
 acutely disturbed behaviour
 Clonidine
 intoxication with street drugs
 rapid tranquillisation
 recommended interventions
 acute mania *see* mania, acute
 S-adenosyl-L-methionine
 ADHD *see* attention deficit hyperactivity disorder
 adherence (to medication)
 assessment
 factors affecting
 rates

schizophrenia
 strategies for improving
 adolescents *see* children and adolescents
 affective disorders
 anticonvulsant withdrawal
 caffeine consumption
 see also bipolar disorder; depression; mania
 Afro-Caribbeans, clozapine-induced neutropenia
 ageing *see* elderly
 aggressive behaviour
 adults with learning disabilities
 autism spectrum disorders
 carbamazepine
 dementia *see* behavioural and psychological symptoms (BPSD) of dementia
 drug-induced
 lithium
 pathological, children and adolescents
 valproate
 see also acutely disturbed behaviour
 agitation
 dementia *see* behavioural and psychological symptoms (BPSD) of dementia
 non-psychotropics causing
 agomelatine
 cardiac effects
 discontinuation symptoms
 elderly
 hepatic impairment
 minimum effective dose
 overdose
 relative adverse effects
 renal impairment
 sexual adverse effects
 swapping/stopping
 agranulocytosis
 clozapine-induced
 psychotropics causing
 see also neutropenia
 AIDS *see* HIV infection/AIDS

- akathisia, antipsychotic-induced
 - treatment
- D-alanine, refractory schizophrenia
- alanine transferase
- albumin, plasma
- alcohol
 - buprenorphine and
 - driving and
 - drug interactions
 - metabolism
 - methadone interaction
 - during pregnancy
- alcohol dehydrogenase (ADH)
 - drugs inhibiting
- alcohol dependence/misuse
 - driving regulations
 - drug interactions
 - mild, assisted withdrawal
 - moderate, assisted withdrawal
 - pregnancy
 - psychotropic drug choice
 - relapse prevention
 - severe, assisted withdrawal
 - treatment *see* alcohol withdrawal
- alcohol withdrawal
 - assessment
 - benzodiazepines
 - combined fixed-dose and symptom-triggered regimen
 - community-based
 - fixed-dose regimen
 - front-loading regimen
 - hallucinations
 - inpatient protocol
 - management
 - medically compromised patients
 - pregnancy
 - seizure prophylaxis
 - symptomatic therapy

symptom-triggered regimen
 syndrome
 vitamin supplementation
 aldehyde dehydrogenase
 drugs inhibiting
 alkaline phosphatase
 allopurinol
 α -2 adrenergic agonists
 alprostadil
 Alzheimer's disease
 antidepressants
 behavioural and psychological symptoms (BPSD)
 combination treatment
 efficacy of drug treatment
 mechanism of drug action
 NICE guidance
 other treatments
 quantifying drug effects
 switching between drugs
 see also acetylcholinesterase inhibitors; antimentia drugs; memantine
 amantadine
 antipsychotic-induced weight gain
 catatonia
 Huntington's disease
 hyperprolactinaemia
 multiple sclerosis
 resistant depression
 sexual dysfunction
 tardive dyskinesia
 amfebutamone *see* bupropion
 amphetamine
 depression
 drug interactions
 misuse
 resistant depression
 see also dexamphetamine
 amino acids, tardive dyskinesia
 6-(2-aminopropyl)benzofuran) (6-APB)

amisulpride
 adverse effects
 breast feeding
 clozapine augmentation
 clozapine-related hypersalivation
 cost
 delirium
 dementia
 diabetes and
 epilepsy
 hepatic impairment
 Huntington's disease
 maximum licensed dose
 minimum effective dose
 negative symptoms
 overdose
 plasma level monitoring
 psychotic depression
 refractory schizophrenia
 relative efficacy
 renal impairment
 sexual adverse effects
 amitriptyline
 adverse effects
 child and adolescent depression
 clozapine-related hypersalivation
 epilepsy
 gel
 intramuscular
 intravenous
 plasma level monitoring
 pregnancy
 rectal
 renal impairment
 surgical patients
 amnesia, alcohol-induced
 amoxapine, epilepsy
 amphetamine *see* amfetamine

amylase, serum
 anaesthesia, psychotropics and
 analgesia, opioid-dependent patients
 angiotensin II antagonists, lithium interactions
 angiotensin converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitors, lithium interactions
 anorexia nervosa
 Antabuse *see* disulfiram
 'Antabuse reaction'
 anticholinergic drugs
 extrapyramidal side-effects
 with long-acting injection antipsychotics
 street drug interactions
 anticholinergic side-effects
 antidepressants
 antipsychotics
 renal impairment and
 anticholinesterases *see* acetylcholinesterase (AChE) inhibitors
 anticonvulsants
 adults with learning disabilities
 alcohol withdrawal
 autism spectrum disorders
 clozapine-induced seizures
 dementia
 depression/psychosis and
 driving and
 drug interactions
 ECT seizure threshold and
 plasma level monitoring
 pregnancy
 surgery and
 withdrawing
 women of childbearing age
 see also mood stabilisers; *specific agents*
 antidementia drugs
 adverse effects
 behavioural and psychological symptoms
 combinations
 dosing

drug interactions
 efficacy
 Huntington's disease
 mechanisms of action
 NICE guidance
 Parkinson's disease
 quantifying effects
 renal impairment
 switching between
 tolerability
see also acetylcholinesterase (AChE) inhibitors; memantine
 antidepressants
 adverse effects

- comparison table
- elderly
- relative

 alcohol misusers
 alternative routes of administration
 anxiety spectrum disorders

- children and adolescents

 benzodiazepine withdrawal
 biochemical side-effects
 bipolar depression
 bipolar disorder
 borderline personality disorder
 breast feeding
 cardiac effects
 children and adolescents
 costs
 cross-tapering
 dementia
 depression

- algorithm
- children and adolescents
- choice of agent
- duration of treatment
- effectiveness
- minimum effective doses

next-step treatments
 official guidance
 onset of action
 prescribing principles
 prophylaxis
 diabetes and
 discontinuation symptoms
 driving and
 drug interactions
 eating disorders
 ECT seizure threshold and
 elderly
 epilepsy and
 hepatic impairment
 HIV infection
 Huntington's disease
 hyperprolactinaemia and
 hyponatraemic effects
 indications
 intramuscular
 intravenous
 lithium augmentation
 multiple sclerosis
 overdose
 Parkinson's disease
 patient information
 post-stroke depression
 pregnancy
 psychotic depression
 rectal
 renal impairment
 resistant depression
 schizophrenia negative symptoms
 sexual dysfunction and
 street drug interactions
 sublingual
 suicidality and
 surgical patients

swapping/stopping
 transdermal
see also specific agents
 antidiuretic hormone, syndrome of inappropriate secretion (SIADH)
 antiepileptics *see* anticonvulsants
 antimuscarinic drugs
 akathisia
see also anticholinergic drugs
 antipsychotics
 acute mania/hypomania
 adherence
 adults with learning disabilities
 adverse effects
 combination therapy
 dose-related
 first- vs second-generation agents
 relative
 see also specific adverse effects
 alcohol misusers
 anorexia nervosa
 atypical *see* second-generation antipsychotics
 biochemical side-effects
 bipolar disorder
 borderline personality disorder
 breast feeding
 cardiovascular effects
 catatonia
 children and adolescents
 attention deficit hyperactivity disorder
 autism spectrum disorders
 bipolar disorder
 pathological aggression
 psychosis
 tics and Tourette's syndrome
 combination therapy
 costs
 delirium
 dementia

depot *see* long-acting injection (LAI) antipsychotics
 diabetes association
 dose-response observations
 doses

- equivalent
- loading
- maximum licensed
- minimum effective
- when to increase

 driving and
 drug interactions
 ECT seizure threshold and
 epilepsy and
 first-episode schizophrenia
 first generation *see* first-generation antipsychotics
 hepatic impairment
 high-dose
 HIV infection
 Huntington's disease
 inadequate response
 long-acting injections *see* long-acting injection (LAI) antipsychotics
 monitoring metabolic effects
 multiple sclerosis
 negative symptoms
 new

- costs

 NICE guidelines
 overdose
 Parkinson's disease
 plasma level variations
 pregnancy
 prescribing principles
 prophylaxis
 psychotic depression
 rapid tranquillisation
 relapse or acute exacerbation
 relative efficacy
 renal impairment

resistant depression
 second generation *see* second-generation antipsychotics
 speed and onset of action
 street drug interactions
 surgical patients
 switching
 therapeutic index
 typical *see* first-generation antipsychotics
 withdrawal
see also specific agents
 antiretroviral drugs
 adverse psychiatric effects
 drug interactions
 antisocial personality disorder, attention deficit hyperactivity disorder and
 anxiety
 children and adolescents
 multiple sclerosis
 nicotine use
 non-psychotropics causing
 anxiety spectrum disorders
 antidepressants
 benzodiazepines
 caffeine consumption
 children and adolescents
 driving regulations
 HIV infection
 NICE guidance
 pregabalin
 pregnancy
 psychological approaches
 SSRIs/SNRIs
 anxiolytics
 biochemical side-effects
 driving and
 renal impairment
 see also benzodiazepines
 6-APB (6-(2-aminopropyl)benzofuran)
 aquaretics

aripiprazole
 acute mania/hypomania
 adults with learning disabilities
 adverse effects
 augmentation
 autism spectrum disorders
 bipolar depression
 bipolar disorder
 children and adolescents
 blood lipids and
 breast feeding
 children and adolescents
 clozapine augmentation
 cost
 delirium
 dementia
 diabetes and
 dose-response observations
 epilepsy
 hepatic impairment
 Huntington's disease
 hyperprolactinaemia
 maximum licensed dose
 minimum effective dose
 overdose
 plasma level monitoring
 psychotic depression
 rapid tranquillisation
 children and adolescents
 refractory schizophrenia
 relative efficacy
 renal impairment
 resistant depression
 sexual function and
 switching to
 tardive dyskinesia and
 armodafinil, depression
 aromatherapy

dementia
 arrhythmias
 antidepressant-induced
 psychotropic-induced
 QTc prolongation and
 renal impairment
 risk factors
 asenapine
 acute mania/hypomania
 adverse effects
 cost
 maximum licensed dose
 minimum effective dose
 aspartate aminotransferase
 Asperger's syndrome
 aspirin, multiple sclerosis
 assays, drug
 asthenia, non-psychotropics causing
 ataxia, alcohol-induced
 atazanavir
 atenolol
 atomoxetine
 attention deficit hyperactivity disorder
 autism spectrum disorders
 hepatic impairment
 atropine
 attention deficit hyperactivity disorder (ADHD)
 adult
 autism spectrum disorders
 bipolar disorder and
 driving regulations
 NICE guidance
 prescribing
 attitudes to medication, assessing
 atypical antipsychotics *see* second-generation antipsychotics
 autism
 autism spectrum disorders (ASD)
 co-morbid problem behaviours

core symptoms
 driving regulations
 fluoxetine prescribing
 learning disability with
 risperidone prescribing

baclofen
 BALANCE study
 barbiturates
 ECT seizure threshold and
 misuse
 basophils
 behavioural and psychological symptoms (BPSD) of dementia
 behavioural disorders
 acute *see* acutely disturbed behaviour
 driving regulations
 learning disabilities
 non-psychotropics causing
 behavioural therapies
 dementia
 drug-induced weight gain
 opioid dependence
 tics
 benperidol, adverse effects
 benzhexol
 benzodiazepines
 acute mania/hypomania
 alcohol withdrawal
 antagonism *see* flumazenil
 antipsychotic-induced akathisia
 anxiety disorders
 anxiolytic
 breast feeding
 caffeine interaction
 catatonia
 children and adolescents
 delirium
 dementia

dependence
 depression
 detoxification
 disinhibitory reactions
 dosage reduction
 driving and
 drug interactions
 ECT seizure threshold and
 HIV infection
 hypnotic
 misuse
 multiple sclerosis
 overdose
 pregnancy
 psychosis
 rapid tranquillisation
 renal impairment
 side-effects
 smoking and
 street drug interactions
 surgery and
 tardive dyskinesia
 tolerance test
 withdrawal symptoms
 benztropine
 β -blockers
 bethanechol, sexual dysfunction
 bicarbonate, plasma
 bilirubin, serum
 binge eating disorder
 biochemical side-effects, psychotropic drugs
 bipolar disorder
 antipsychotics
 carbamazepine
 children and adolescents
 HIV infection
 lithium
 multiple sclerosis

physical monitoring
 pregnancy and postpartum
 prophylaxis
 rapid-cycling
 valproate
 withdrawing anticonvulsants
see also depression, bipolar; mania
 bleeding, SSRI-related
 blood pressure (BP)
 after rapid tranquillisation
 antidepressants and
 monitoring, schizophrenia
 starting clozapine
 see also hypertension; hypotension
 body dysmorphic disorder
 borderline personality disorder (BPD)
 botulinum toxin
 clozapine-related hypersalivation
 tardive dyskinesia
 tics
 bradykinesia
 bradyphrenia
 breast feeding
 antidepressants
 antipsychotics
 mood stabilisers
 nicotine replacement therapy
 opioid dependence
 prescribing principles
 sedatives
 see also postpartum period
 bromocriptine
 bulimia nervosa
 buprenorphine
 cautions
 dose
 dose reduction regimens
 methadone vs

NICE guidance
 overdose
 pregnancy and breast feeding
 transferring from methadone to
 withdrawal syndrome
 buprenorphine/naloxone (Suboxone)
 bupropion (amfebutamone)
 antipsychotic-induced weight gain
 attention deficit hyperactivity disorder
 bipolar depression
 breast feeding
 clozapine-related hypersalivation
 discontinuation symptoms
 epilepsy
 hyperprolactinaemia and
 overdose
 pregnancy
 renal impairment
 resistant depression
 sexual dysfunction
 smoking cessation
 buspirone
 adults with learning disabilities
 children and adolescents
 renal impairment
 resistant depression
 sexual dysfunction
 γ-butyryl-lactone (GBL)
 butyrophenones
 breast feeding
 overdose
 cabergoline
 hyperprolactinaemia
 resistant depression
 caffeine
 consumption in mental illness
 content of drinks

interactions
 intoxication (caffeinism)
 psychotropic effects
 calcium, plasma
 calcium antagonists, tardive dyskinesia
 cancer, psychostimulants for depression
 cannabinoids, Tourette's syndrome
 cannabis
 drug interactions
 capacity, mental
 assessment
 learning disabilities
 to refuse medication
 carbamazepine
 acute mania/hypomania
 adults with learning disabilities
 adverse effects
 alcohol withdrawal
 attention deficit hyperactivity disorder
 bipolar depression
 bipolar disorder
 breast feeding
 children and adolescents
 costs
 discontinuation
 drug interactions
 formulations
 hepatic impairment
 HIV infection
 indications
 lithium interaction
 mechanism of action
 monitoring
 overdose
 plasma levels
 pregnancy
 prescribing
 renal impairment

smoking and
 street drug interactions
 surgical patients
 women of child-bearing age
 cardiac arrhythmias *see* arrhythmias
 cardiomyopathy, clozapine-induced
 cardiovascular adverse effects
 acetylcholinesterase inhibitors
 antidepressants
 antipsychotics
 clozapine
 cardiovascular disease
 prevention, dyslipidaemia
 risk factors in schizophrenia
 smoking cessation
 catatonia
 malignant
 management
 CATIE-AD study
 CATIE study
 CBT *see* cognitive behavioural therapy
 CCR5 antagonists
 celecoxib, refractory schizophrenia
 cerebrolysin
 chemotherapy, clozapine and
 children and adolescents
 anxiety disorders
 attention deficit hyperactivity disorder
 autism spectrum disorders
 bipolar illness
 depression
 drug doses
 insomnia
 obsessive compulsive disorder
 pathological aggression
 prescribing principles
 psychosis
 rapid tranquillisation

smoking cessation
 tics and Tourette's syndrome
 Chinese herbal medicine
 chlordiazepoxide
 alcohol withdrawal
 diazepam equivalent dose
 renal impairment
 chloride, serum
 chlorpromazine
 adverse effects
 breast feeding
 epilepsy
 equivalent doses
 high-dose
 maximum licensed dose
 minimum effective dose
 NICE guidance
 overdose
 pregnancy
 renal impairment
 sexual adverse effects
 smoking and
 speed and onset of action
 cholesterol, blood
 cholinergic side-effects, acetylcholinesterase inhibitors
 cholinesterase inhibitors *see* acetylcholinesterase inhibitors
 cigarettes
 smoking *see* smoking, cigarette
 citalopram
 adverse effects
 anxiety disorders
 breast feeding
 cardiac effects
 child and adolescent depression
 dementia
 hepatic impairment
 intravenous
 minimum effective dose

post-stroke depression
 renal impairment
 resistant depression
 swapping/stopping

Clinical Institute Withdrawal Assessment for Alcohol, Revised Version (CIWA-Ar)

clomethiazole (chlormethiazole), renal impairment

clomipramine

adverse effects
 anxiety disorders
 breast feeding
 childhood obsessive compulsive disorder

epilepsy
 intravenous

rectal
 renal impairment
 resistant depression

clonazepam

acute mania/hypomania
 antipsychotic-induced akathisia
 breast feeding
 diazepam equivalent dose
 renal impairment
 tardive dyskinesia

clonidine

antipsychotic-induced akathisia
 attention deficit hyperactivity disorder
 autism spectrum disorders
 clozapine-related hypersalivation
 tics and Tourette's syndrome

Clopixol *see* zuclopenthixol

clozapine

acute mania
 adults with learning disabilities
 adverse effects
 common
 community-based patients
 management
 serious

Copyright © 2012, Wiley. All rights reserved.

uncommon or unusual
see also specific adverse effects
 alternatives to
 augmentation
 bipolar disorder
 blood lipids and
 borderline personality disorder
 breast feeding
 caffeine interaction
 chemotherapy and
 children and adolescents
 community-based patients
 adverse effects
 initiation guidelines
 monitoring
 dementia
 diabetes association
 dose
 maximum licensed
 starting regimen
 target
 titration in community
 ECT seizure threshold and
 epilepsy
 hepatic impairment
 HIV infection
 hyponatraemia
 lithium combinations
 NICE guidance
 overdose
 Parkinson's disease
 plasma levels
 pregnancy
 recommended use
 renal impairment
 sexual adverse effects
 smoking and
 surgical patients

switching to
 tardive dyskinesia and
 cocaine
 drug interactions
 Cockcroft and Gault equation
 cognitive behavioural therapy (CBT)
 bipolar disorder
 child and adolescent anxiety disorders
 child and adolescent depression
 depression in multiple sclerosis
 insomnia
 refractory schizophrenia
 cognitive enhancing drugs *see* antidementia drugs
 cognitive impairment
 HIV infection
 multiple sclerosis
 non-psychotropics causing
see also dementia
 colitis, clozapine-induced
 Committee on Safety of Medicines Expert Working Group, on SSRIs
 complementary therapies (CTs)
 dementia
 compliance *see* adherence
 compliance aids
 compliance therapy, schizophrenia
 concentration problems, non-psychotropics causing
 Concerta XL
 attention deficit hyperactivity disorder
see also methylphenidate
 confusion, non-psychotropics causing
 Confusion Assessment Method
 consent, capacity to give
 constipation, clozapine-induced
 contingency management, drug misuse
 costs
 antidementia drugs
 antidepressants
 antimanic drugs

new antipsychotics
 covert administration of medicines
 C-reactive protein
 creatine (phospho)kinase
 creatinine, plasma
 creatinine clearance (CrCl)
Crocus sativus
 crying, pathological, in multiple sclerosis
 CUtLASS trial
 cyclo-oxygenase (COX)-2 inhibitors, lithium interaction
 D-cycloserine
 childhood obsessive compulsive disorder
 refractory schizophrenia
 CYP1A2
 antidepressants and
 caffeine metabolism
 smoking and
 CYP2A6
 CYP2B6
 CYP2B7
 CYP2C8
 CYP2C9
 CYP2C19
 CYP2D6
 CYP2E1
 CYP3A4
 alcohol and
 antidepressants and
 benzodiazepines and
 carbamazepine and
 cyproheptadine
 antipsychotic-induced akathisia
 sexual dysfunction
 unlicensed use
 cytochrome P450 (CYP450) enzymes
 alcohol and
 psychotropic drugs and
 see also specific enzymes

darunavir
 delirium
 clozapine-induced
 drugs used to treat
 HIV infection
 non-psychotropics causing
 delirium tremens (DTs)
 demeclocycline
 dementia
 administering medicines in foodstuffs
 antidepressants
 antipsychotics
 behavioural and psychological symptoms (BPSD)
 benzodiazepines
 driving regulations
 HIV infection
 Huntington's disease
 with Lewy bodies
 mood stabilisers/anticonvulsants
 Parkinson's disease
 vascular
 see also Alzheimer's disease; antidementia drugs
 dependence syndrome
 depot antipsychotics *see* long-acting injection (LAI) antipsychotics
 depression
 anticonvulsant-associated
 benzodiazepines
 bipolar
 carbamazepine
 children and adolescents
 lithium prophylaxis
 pregnancy
 psychostimulants
 treatment
 valproate
 caffeine consumption
 carbamazepine
 children and adolescents

diabetes and
 driving regulations
 elderly
 psychostimulants
 epilepsy
 first episode
 HIV infection
 Huntington's disease
 information for patients
 lithium
 multiple sclerosis
 nicotine use
 non-psychotropics causing
 Parkinson's disease
 postpartum
 post-stroke
 pregnancy
 prescribing principles
 psychostimulants
 psychotic
 recurrent
 resistant (refractory)
 1st choice treatment
 2nd choice treatment
 children and adolescents
 other treatments
 sexual dysfunction
 St John's wort
 treatment
 algorithm
 official guidance
 see also antidepressants
 desipramine, pregnancy
 desmopressin
 dexamethasone, resistant depression
 dexamfetamine
 attention deficit hyperactivity disorder
 depression

maintenance treatment
 diabetes insipidus, nephrogenic, lithium-induced
 diabetes mellitus
 alcohol consumption
 antipsychotic-associated
 depression and
 gestational
 monitoring
 nicotine replacement therapy
 schizophrenia association
 diagnostic overshadowing
 diamorphine *see* heroin
 diazepam
 alcohol withdrawal
 antipsychotic-induced akathisia
 benzodiazepine withdrawal
 breast feeding
 delirium
 emulsion (Diazemuls)
 γ -butyryl-lactone withdrawal
 Huntington's disease
 rapid tranquillisation
 children and adolescents
 renal impairment
 surgical patients
 tardive dyskinesia
 tolerance test
 dihydrocodeine
 dimebon, Alzheimer's disease
 diphenhydramine
 discontinuation symptoms
 antidepressants
 disinhibition, benzodiazepines and
 disintegrative disorder, childhood
 disorientation, non-psychotropics causing
 disulfiram
 diuretics, lithium interactions
 docosahexaenoic acid (DHA), schizophrenia

donepezil

adverse effects

Alzheimer's disease

behavioural and psychological symptoms

delirium

dosing

drug interactions

ECT recovery and

efficacy

Huntington's disease

mechanism of action

memantine with

multiple sclerosis

renal impairment

schizophrenia

switching to/from

tardive dyskinesia

tolerability

vascular dementia

dosulepin (dothiepin)

adverse effects

breast feeding

depression prophylaxis

elderly

epilepsy

renal impairment

surgical patients

dothiepin *see* dosulepin

doxepin

adverse effects

rectal

renal impairment

dreams, drug-induced

drink, covert administration of medicines in

Driver and Vehicle Licensing Agency (DVLA)

driving

drug-induced sedation

DVLA regulations

effects of mental illness
 effects of psychotropic drugs
 epilepsy and
 GMC guidance
 drooling *see* hypersalivation
 Drug Attitude Inventory
 drug misuse/dependence
 benzodiazepines
 driving regulations
 γ -butyryl-lactone and γ -hydroxybutyrate
 NICE guidance
 non-psychotropic medications
 polysubstance abuse
 psychotropic drug interactions
 stimulant drugs
 urine testing
 see also opioid misuse/dependence; 'street drugs'
 dual diagnosis
 duloxetine
 breast feeding
 cardiac effects
 diabetes and
 ECT seizure threshold and
 elderly
 epilepsy
 hepatic impairment
 minimum effective dose
 multiple sclerosis
 overdose
 relative adverse effects
 renal impairment
 sexual dysfunction and
 smoking and
 swapping/stopping
 dyslipidaemia
 antipsychotic-related
 monitoring
 pseudohyponatraemia

treatment
 see also lipids, blood
 dysthymia, antidepressant treatment
 dystonia
 acute, after rapid tranquillisation
 antipsychotic-induced

 eating disorders
 atypical
 Ebstein's anomaly
 ECG *see* electrocardiography
 Ecstasy, drug interactions
 ECT *see* electroconvulsive therapy
 efavirenz
 eicosapentaenoic acid (EPA)
 resistant depression
 schizophrenia
 ejaculatory disorders
 elderly
 administering medicines in foodstuffs
 antipsychotics and pneumonia
 depression
 psychostimulants
 drug interactions
 hypnotic agents
 prescribing principles
 reducing drug-related risk
 renal impairment
 see also dementia
 electrocardiography (ECG)
 acetylcholinesterase inhibitors
 antidepressant-treated patients
 antipsychotic-treated patients
 bipolar disorder
 methadone-treated patients
 psychotropic-induced changes
 electroconvulsive therapy (ECT)
 catatonia

child and adolescent depression
 epilepsy
 Huntington's disease
 multiple sclerosis
 Parkinson's disease
 pregnancy
 psychotic depression
 psychotropics and
 refractory schizophrenia
 resistant depression
 electrolyte disturbances
 alcohol-related
 anorexia nervosa
 emtricitabine
 enfuvirtide
 eosinophilia, clozapine-induced
 eosinophils
 epilepsy
 anticonvulsant withdrawal
 antidepressant/antipsychotic use
 depression and psychosis
 driving
 learning disability
 pregnancy
 see also anticonvulsants; seizures
 EPS *see* extrapyramidal side-effects
 Equasym *see* methylphenidate
 Equasym XL
 attention deficit hyperactivity disorder
 see also methylphenidate
 erectile dysfunction
 erythrocytes
 erythrocyte sedimentation rate (ESR)
 escitalopram
 adverse effects
 breast feeding
 cardiac effects
 child and adolescent depression

- hepatic impairment
- intravenous
- minimum effective dose
- post-stroke depression
- renal impairment
- swapping/stopping
- eszopiclone
- ethanol *see* alcohol
- ethosuximide, drug interactions
- etravirine
- euphoria
 - multiple sclerosis
 - non-psychotropics causing
- extrapyramidal side-effects (EPS)
 - antipsychotic polypharmacy
 - comparative table
 - first vs second-generation antipsychotics
 - switching antipsychotics
 - treatment

Fatal Toxicity Index (FTI)

- fatigue
 - multiple sclerosis
 - non-psychotropics causing
- ferritin, serum
- fever, clozapine-induced
- financial incentives, medication adherence
- first-generation antipsychotics (FGAs)
 - adverse effects
 - bipolar disorder
 - breast feeding
 - children and adolescents
 - delirium
 - dementia
 - diabetes risk
 - dyslipidaemia and
 - long-acting injectable
 - maximum licensed doses

minimum effective doses
 negative symptoms
 place in therapy
 pregnancy
 prophylaxis
 recommended use
 relative efficacy
 fish oils *see* omega-3 fatty acids
 fluid restriction, hyponatraemia
 flumazenil
 guidelines for use
 rapid tranquillisation and
 fluoxetine
 adverse effects
 antipsychotic-induced weight gain
 anxiety disorders
 bipolar depression
 breast feeding
 cardiac effects
 children and adolescents
 anxiety
 autism spectrum disorders
 depression
 diabetes and
 eating disorders
 hepatic impairment
 minimum effective dose
 post-stroke depression
 pregnancy
 psychotic depression
 renal impairment
 resistant depression
 sublingual
 swapping/stopping
 unlicensed use
 flupentixol
 adverse effects
 breast feeding

depot (flupentixol decanoate)
 equivalent dose
 maximum licensed dose
 equivalent dose
 hepatic impairment
 maximum licensed dose
 renal impairment
 fluphenazine
 adverse effects
 depot (fluphenazine decanoate)
 equivalent dose
 maximum licensed dose
 equivalent dose
 Huntington's disease
 renal impairment
 smoking and
 flutamide, Tourette's syndrome
 fluvoxamine
 adverse effects
 breast feeding
 cardiac effects
 child and adolescent anxiety
 with clozapine
 hepatic impairment
 minimum effective dose
 renal impairment
 smoking and
 folic acid supplements
 Alzheimer's disease
 anticonvulsant-treated women
 food, covert administration of medicines in
 fosamprenavir
 full blood count (FBC), monitoring
 fusion inhibitors, HIV

 gabapentin
 acute mania/hypomania
 bipolar depression

drug interactions
 tardive dyskinesia
 galactorrhoea
 galantamine
 adverse effects
 Alzheimer's disease
 behavioural and psychological symptoms
 dosing
 drug interactions
 efficacy
 mechanism of action
 memantine with
 renal impairment
 tolerability
 vascular dementia
 γ -butyryl-lactone (GBL)
 γ -glutamyl transferase
 γ -hydroxybutyrate (GHB)
 gastrointestinal bleeds, SSRI-related
 gastro-oesophageal reflux disease (GORD), clozapine-induced
 generalised anxiety disorder (GAD)
 benzodiazepines
 NICE guidance
 pregabalin
 SSRIs/SNRIs
 General Medical Council (GMC), driving ability and
Ginkgo biloba
 Alzheimer's disease
 refractory schizophrenia
 schizophrenia
 tardive dyskinesia
 ginseng, Alzheimer's disease
 Glasgow Antipsychotic Side-effect Scale (GASS)
 glomerular filtration rate (GFR)
 glucose, blood
 antidepressant effects
 bipolar disorder
 fasting plasma (FPG)

psychotropic drug effects
 random plasma (RPG)
see also impaired glucose tolerance

glycine, schizophrenia

glycopyrrolate

granulocyte colony-stimulating factor (G-CSF)

guanfacine

H₂ antagonists, antipsychotic-induced weight gain

haematological side-effects, psychotropic drugs

haemoglobin

glycated (HbA_{1c})

psychotropics affecting

hallucinations

alcohol withdrawal

non-psychotropics causing

Parkinson's disease

haloperidol

acute mania/hypomania

adults with learning disabilities

adverse effects

alcohol withdrawal

breast feeding

clozapine augmentation

costs

delirium

depot (haloperidol decanoate)

equivalent dose

maximum licensed dose

diabetes and

epilepsy

equivalent dose

hepatic impairment

Huntington's disease

maximum licensed dose

minimum effective dose

overdose

pregnancy

rapid tranquillisation
 children and adolescents
 refractory schizophrenia
 renal impairment
 sexual adverse effects
 smoking and
 speed and onset of action
 tics and Tourette's syndrome
 heat stroke, clozapine-induced
 hepatic failure, clozapine-induced
 hepatic impairment
 antidepressants
 antipsychotics
 methadone dosing
 mood stabilisers
 nicotine replacement therapy
 prescribing principles
 recommended drugs
 stimulants
 see also liver disease
 hepatitis B and C
 hepatotoxicity, drug-induced
 herbal medicine
 see also Ginkgo biloba; St John's wort
 heroin (diamorphine)
 buprenorphine substitution
 dependence *see* opioid misuse/dependence
 drug interactions
 injectable maintenance prescribing
 methadone substitution
 overdose
 withdrawal symptoms
 high-density lipoprotein (HDL)
 HIV infection/AIDS
 drug interactions
 drug misusers
 neurocognitive disorders
 psychostimulants in depression

psychotropic effects of HIV drugs
 psychotropic prescribing
 homeopathy
 Huntington's disease
 huperzine A, Alzheimer's disease
 hydrazine, swapping/stopping
 γ -hydroxybutyrate (GHB)
 9-hydroxyrisperidone *see* paliperidone
 hyoscine
 hyperemesis gravidarum
 hyperglycaemia
 antipsychotic-induced
 pseudohyponatraemia
 see also diabetes mellitus
Hypericum perforatum *see* St John's wort
 hyperlipidaemia *see* dyslipidaemia
 hyperparathyroidism, lithium-induced
 hyperprolactinaemia
 antidepressants and
 antipsychotic-induced
 antipsychotics not causing
 antipsychotic switching
 monitoring
 sexual dysfunction and
 treatment
 hypersalivation, clozapine-induced
 hypertension
 antipsychotics and
 clozapine-induced
 hypertriglyceridaemia
 hypnosis
 hypnotics
 benzodiazepine
 biochemical side-effects
 breast feeding
 driving and
 prescribing guidelines
 renal impairment

hypomania
 driving regulations
 non-psychotropics causing
 treatment
 see also mania
 hyponatraemia
 antidepressant-induced
 antipsychotic-induced
 other drugs associated with
 treatment
 hypotension
 antidepressant-induced
 antipsychotic-induced
 clozapine-induced
 rapid tranquillisation and
 switching antipsychotics
 hypothyroidism, lithium-induced
 Hy's rule, hepatotoxicity of new drugs

 ibuprofen
 illicit drugs *see* 'street drugs'
 iloperidone
 adverse effects
 minimum effective dose
 imipramine
 adverse effects
 child and adolescent depression
 hepatic impairment
 pregnancy
 psychotic depression
 rectal
 renal impairment
 impaired glucose tolerance
 antipsychotic-associated
 switching antipsychotics
 impulsiveness, autism spectrum disorders
 inattention, autism spectrum disorders
 indinavir

inositol

insomnia

childhood and adolescent

cognitive behavioural therapy

drug treatment

non-psychotropics causing

pregnancy

see also hypnotics

integrase strand transfer inhibitors

interferon- β therapy

international normalised ratio

interstitial nephritis, clozapine-induced

ipratropium

irritability

autism spectrum disorders

non-psychotropics causing

isocarboxazid

ketamine

ketoconazole

lability, non-psychotropics causing

lactate dehydrogenase

lamivudine

lamotrigine

acute mania/hypomania

adults with learning disabilities

bipolar depression

bipolar disorder

children and adolescents

breast feeding

clozapine augmentation

drug interactions

hepatic impairment

Huntington's disease

overdose

plasma level monitoring

pregnancy

renal impairment
 resistant depression
 schizophrenia
 unlicensed use
 laughing and crying, pathological, in multiple sclerosis
 learning disabilities (LD)
 assessment of care environments
 capacity and consent
 driving regulations
 medications used
 physical co-morbidity
 psychological interventions
 sensitivity to side-effects
 lethargy, non-psychotropics causing
 leucopenia, psychotropics causing
 levetiracetam
 acute mania/hypomania
 bipolar disorder
 drug interactions
 Huntington's disease
 tardive dyskinesia
 levomepromazine
 levothyroxine *see* thyroxine
 Lewy body dementia
 libido (sexual desire)
 reduced
 lipids, blood
 antipsychotic drug effects
 monitoring
 see also dyslipidaemia
 lipoproteins, plasma
 lithium
 acute mania/hypomania
 adults with learning disabilities
 adverse effects
 augmentation of antidepressants
 bipolar depression
 bipolar disorder

borderline personality disorder
 breast feeding
 caffeine interaction
 children and adolescents
 clozapine combinations
 costs
 depression
 discontinuation
 driving and
 drug interactions
 ECT seizure threshold and
 epilepsy
 formulations
 hepatic impairment
 HIV infection
 Huntington's disease
 hyponatraemia
 indications
 mechanism of action
 multiple sclerosis
 on-treatment monitoring
 overdose
 plasma level monitoring
 pregnancy
 prescribing
 pretreatment tests
 renal impairment
 resistant depression
 street drug interactions
 suicide and
 surgery and
 toxicity
 women of child-bearing age
 lithium carbonate
 lithium citrate
 liver disease
 alcohol withdrawal
 drug-induced

see also hepatic impairment

liver function tests (LFTs)

bipolar disorder

buprenorphine and

clozapine-induced changes

monitoring

Liverpool University Neuroleptic Side-Effect Ratings Scale (LUNSERS)

lofepramine

adverse effects

cardiac effects

elderly

hepatic impairment

minimum effective dose

overdose

renal impairment

lofexidine

long-acting injection (LAI) antipsychotics (depot antipsychotics)

differences between

dose reduction

doses and frequencies

epilepsy

equivalent doses

first-episode schizophrenia

intramuscular anticholinergics and

maximum licensed doses

NICE guidance

non-adherent patients

prescribing advice

loop diuretics, lithium interaction

lopinavir

lorazepam

acute mania/hypomania

breast feeding

catatonia

delirium

diazepam equivalent dose

hepatic impairment

rapid tranquillisation

children and adolescents
 renal impairment
 surgical patients
 lormetazepam
 low-density lipoprotein (LDL)
 loxapine
 lurasidone
 LY2140023
 lymphocytes

 maca root
 mania
 acute
 antipsychotics
 carbamazepine
 drug costs
 lithium
 pregnancy
 treatment
 valproate
 children and adolescents
 driving regulations
 multiple sclerosis
 non-psychoactives causing
 MAOIs *see* monoamine oxidase inhibitors
 maraviroc
 Maxepa *see* omega-3 fatty acids
 MDA (3,4-methylenedioxyamphetamine)
 MDRD (Modification of Diet in Renal Disease) formula
 mean cell haemoglobin
 mean cell haemoglobin concentration
 mean cell volume
 mecamlamine
 Medicines and Healthcare products Regulatory Agency (MHRA)
 methadone therapy
 nicotine replacement therapy
 paediatric use of risperidone
 SSRIs

Medikinet

attention deficit hyperactivity disorder

see also methylphenidate

melatonin

autism spectrum disorders

benzodiazepine withdrawal

child and adolescent insomnia

delirium

insomnia

tardive dyskinesia

unlicensed use

see also agomelatine

memantine

acute mania

adverse effects

Alzheimer's disease

behavioural and psychological symptoms

catatonia

combination therapy

dementia with Lewy bodies

dosing

drug interactions

efficacy

Huntington's disease

mechanism of action

refractory schizophrenia

renal impairment

switching to/from

tolerability

vascular dementia

mental illness

caffeine consumption

driving and

learning disabilities

nicotine use

placebo effect

substance misuse

see also specific conditions

metformin

methadone
 analgesia for patients on
 buprenorphine vs
 cautions
 dose
 dose reduction regimens
 drug interactions
 NICE guidance
 overdose
 pregnancy and breast feeding
 QT prolongation
 surgery and
 transferring to buprenorphine
 withdrawal symptoms

methylcellulose

3,4-methylenedioxyamphetamine (MDA)

methylphenidate
 attention deficit hyperactivity disorder
 autism spectrum disorders
 depression
 driving and
 hepatic impairment
 psychotic depression
 resistant depression
 unlicensed use

metoclopramide, alcohol withdrawal

MHRA *see* Medicines and Healthcare products Regulatory Agency

mianserin
 antipsychotic-induced akathisia
 breast feeding
 overdose
 refractory schizophrenia
 relative adverse effects
 resistant depression

midazolam
 rapid tranquillisation
 children and adolescents

surgical patients
 mifepristone
 mineral supplements, anorexia nervosa
 minocycline, schizophrenia
 mirtazapine
 antipsychotic-induced akathisia
 breast feeding
 cardiac effects
 diabetes and
 discontinuation symptoms
 ECT seizure threshold and
 elderly
 epilepsy
 hepatic impairment
 hyperprolactinaemia and
 intravenous
 minimum effective dose
 multiple sclerosis
 overdose
 post-stroke depression
 pregnancy
 refractory schizophrenia
 relative adverse effects
 renal impairment
 resistant depression
 sexual adverse effects
 smoking and
 swapping/stopping
 moclobemide
 bipolar depression
 breast feeding
 cardiac effects
 clozapine-related hypersalivation
 epilepsy
 hepatic impairment
 minimum effective dose
 multiple sclerosis
 overdose

pregnancy
 relative adverse effects
 renal impairment
 surgical patients
 swapping/stopping
 modafinil
 attention deficit hyperactivity disorder
 bipolar depression
 depression
 multiple sclerosis
 overdose
 resistant depression
 schizophrenia
 surgery and
 Modification of Diet in Renal Disease (MDRD) formula
 monoamine oxidase-A (MAO-A), reversible inhibitor
 see also moclobemide
 monoamine oxidase inhibitors (MAOIs)
 adverse effects
 breast feeding
 caffeine interaction
 cardiac effects
 depression
 diabetes and
 discontinuation symptoms
 drug interactions
 ECT seizure threshold and
 hepatic impairment
 hyperprolactinaemia and
 overdose
 pregnancy
 resistant depression
 sexual adverse effects
 surgery and
 swapping/stopping
 monocytes
 mood changes, non-psychotropics causing
 mood disorders *see* affective disorders

mood stabilisers
 acute mania/hypomania
 alcohol misusers
 benzodiazepine withdrawal
 biochemical side-effects
 borderline personality disorder
 breast feeding
 children and adolescents
 dementia
 hepatic impairment
 HIV infection
 multiple sclerosis
 overdose
 pregnancy
 renal impairment
 withdrawing
 see also anticonvulsants; carbamazepine; lithium; valproate
 morphine
 movement disorders, nicotine use
 multiple sclerosis (MS)
 multivitamins *see* vitamin supplements
 music therapy
 myocardial infarction (MI), antidepressant prescribing after
 myocarditis, clozapine-induced

 nabilone, Huntington's disease
 N-acetylcysteine, refractory schizophrenia
 naloxone
 buprenorphine overdose
 methadone overdose
 opioid overdose
 take-home
 naloxone/buprenorphine (Suboxone)
 naltrexone
 adults with learning disabilities
 alcohol dependence
 NICE guidance
 opioid dependence

tardive dyskinesia
 unlicensed use
 National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence (NICE)
 adherence to medication
 Alzheimer's disease
 antipsychotics in pregnancy
 anxiety spectrum disorders
 attention deficit hyperactivity disorder
 benzodiazepines
 bipolar disorder
 borderline personality disorder
 carbamazepine
 child and adolescent depression
 depression
 eating disorders
 lipid-lowering guidance
 lithium
 mood stabilisers in pregnancy
 obsessive compulsive disorder
 opioid dependence
 rapid tranquillisation in pregnancy
 schizophrenia
 smoking cessation
 valproate
 nausea, clozapine-induced
 nefazodone, HIV infection
 nelfinavir
 nemiotide
 neonates
 antidepressant withdrawal effects
 antipsychotic discontinuation symptoms
 opioid withdrawal syndrome
 see also breast feeding
 nervousness, non-psychotropics causing
 'neuroleptic equivalents'
 neuroleptic malignant syndrome (NMS)
 renal impairment and
 neuroleptics *see* antipsychotics

neutropenia

benign ethnic

chemotherapy-associated

clozapine-induced

psychotropics causing

see also agranulocytosis

neutrophils

nevirapine

NICE *see* National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence

nicotine

drug interactions

psychotropic effects

smoking cessation and

Tourette's syndrome

withdrawal symptoms

see also smoking, cigarette

nicotine replacement therapy (NRT)

MHRA advice

NICE guidance

types and doses

nimodipine, bipolar disorder

nitrazepam

diazepam equivalent dose

hypnotic use

renal impairment

nizatidine

NMS *see* neuroleptic malignant syndrome

nocebo effect

nocturnal enuresis, clozapine-induced

non-adherence *see* adherence

non-psychotropics, psychiatric side-effects

non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs)

lithium interactions

SSRI co-prescription

nortriptyline

adverse effects

child and adolescent depression

diabetes and

ECT and
 Fatal Toxicity Index (FTI)
 plasma level monitoring
 post-stroke depression
 pregnancy
 renal impairment
 resistant depression
 transdermal patches
 nucleoside analogues
 nucleoside and nucleotide reverse transcriptase inhibitors
 nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors

obsessive compulsive disorder (OCD)
 children and adolescents
 NICE guidance
 non-psychotropics causing
 psychological therapies
 SSRIs/SNRIs
 ocular pigmentation, clozapine-induced
 oculogyric spasm (crisis)
 oestrogens
 anorexia nervosa
 carbamazepine interaction
 resistant depression
 off-label prescribing
 paediatric practice
 olanzapine
 acute intoxication with 'street drugs'
 acute mania/hypomania
 adults with learning disabilities
 adverse effects
 anorexia nervosa
 bipolar depression
 bipolar disorder
 blood lipids and
 breast feeding
 children and adolescents
 bipolar disorder

psychosis
 rapid tranquillisation
 clozapine augmentation
 costs
 delirium
 dementia
 diabetes association
 dose-response observations
 epilepsy
 hepatic impairment
 high-dose
 Huntington's disease
 long-acting injection (LAI)
 see also olanzapine pamoate (below)
 maximum licensed dose
 minimum effective dose
 negative symptoms
 overdose
 pamoate
 cost
 dose equivalence
 plasma level monitoring
 pregnancy
 psychotic depression
 rapid tranquillisation
 refractory schizophrenia
 relative efficacy
 renal impairment
 resistant depression
 sexual adverse effects
 smoking and
 speed and onset of action
 surgical patients
 switching to
 tardive dyskinesia and
 Omacor *see* omega-3 fatty acids
 omega-3 fatty acids (fish oils)
 Alzheimer's disease

bipolar depression
 child and adolescent depression
 clozapine augmentation
 depression in pregnancy
 refractory schizophrenia
 resistant depression
 schizophrenia
 tardive dyskinesia
 ondansetron
 schizophrenia
 tardive dyskinesia
 opioid(s)
 analgesia, opioid-dependent patients
 overdose
 withdrawal symptoms
 opioid misuse/dependence
 buprenorphine substitution
 buprenorphine vs methadone
 detoxification and reduction regimens
 evidence of
 injectable maintenance opioids
 methadone substitution
 NICE guidelines
 pain management
 pregnancy and
 relapse prevention
 substitute prescribing
 treatment aims
 oral glucose tolerance test (OGTT)
 orgasm
 disorders
 Orlistat
 osteoporosis, anorexia nervosa
 overactivity, autism spectrum disorders
 overdose, psychotropic drug
 oxazepam
 alcohol withdrawal
 diazepam equivalent dose

- hepatic impairment
- hypnotic use
- renal impairment
- oxcarbazepine
- drug interactions
- mania
- pregnancy
- oxybutynin
- oxytocin

- packed cell volume
- paediatric autoimmune neuropsychiatric disorder associated with streptococcus (PANDAS)
- paediatric patients *see* children and adolescents
- pain management, opioid-dependent patients
- paliperidone
 - adverse effects
 - cost
 - hepatic impairment
 - maximum licensed dose
 - palmitate long-acting injection
 - cost
 - dose and administration
 - maximum licensed dose
 - risperidone equivalent doses
 - switching to
 - vs other depot antipsychotics
 - plasma level monitoring
 - renal impairment
- pancreatitis, clozapine-induced
- PANDAS
- panic disorder
 - NICE guidance
 - non-psychotropics causing
 - SSRIs/SNRIs
- Parkinson's disease
 - dementia
 - depression

nicotine use
 psychosis
 paroxetine
 adverse effects
 anxiety disorders
 breast feeding
 cardiac effects
 child and adolescent anxiety
 hepatic impairment
 minimum effective dose
 pregnancy
 renal impairment
 swapping/stopping
 payments, medication adherence
 Peony Glycyrrhiza Decoction
 pergolide
 pericardial effusions, clozapine-induced
 pericyazine
 perphenazine
 adverse effects
 equivalent dose
 maximum licensed dose
 personality change, non-psychotropics causing
 personality disorders
 borderline
 driving regulations
 pervasive developmental disorders
 pervasive developmental disorders—not otherwise specified (PDD–NOS)
 P-glycoprotein
 phenelzine
 adverse effects
 renal impairment
 resistant depression
 phenobarbital, interactions
 phenothiazines
 blood lipids and
 breast feeding
 diabetes risk

ECT seizure threshold and
 hepatic impairment
 overdose
 pregnancy
 sexual adverse effects
 phenytoin
 acute mania
 drug interactions
 plasma level monitoring
 surgical patients
 phosphate, plasma
 phytotherapy *see* herbal medicine
 pimozide
 adverse effects
 clozapine augmentation
 equivalent dose
 maximum licensed dose
 renal impairment
 tics and Tourette's syndrome
 pindolol, resistant depression
 pipotiazine (depot)
 adverse effects
 equivalent dose
 maximum licensed dose
 renal impairment
 pirenzepine
 placebo effect
 plasma drug levels
 meaningfulness
 steady state
 plasma level monitoring
 criteria
 interpreting results
 reasons for
 sampling time
 platelet counts
 pneumonia
 polyunsaturated fatty acids (PUFAs) *see* omega-3 fatty acids

postinjection syndrome, olanzapine pamoate
 postpartum period
 bipolar illness
 depression
 psychosis
 see also breast feeding
 post-stroke depression
 psychostimulants
 post-traumatic stress disorder (PTSD)
 benzodiazepines
 SSRIs/SNRIs
 potassium, plasma
 pramipexole
 bipolar depression
 Parkinson's disease
 resistant depression
 pregabalin
 anxiety disorders
 benzodiazepine withdrawal
 multiple sclerosis
 pregnancy
 alcohol use/withdrawal
 anticonvulsants
 antidepressants
 antipsychotics
 benzodiazepine misuse
 bipolar illness
 depression
 discussions with women
 epilepsy
 mood stabilisers
 opioid dependence
 prescribing principles
 psychosis
 psychotropic drug choice
 rapid tranquillisation
 sedatives
 smoking cessation

see also breast feeding; women of child-bearing age
 pregnenolone
 priapism
 pridopidine, Huntington's disease
 prochlorperazine, alcohol withdrawal
 procyclidine
 Product Licence, prescribing drugs outside
 prolactin, serum
 antipsychotics not affecting
 elevated *see* hyperprolactinaemia
 monitoring
 psychotropics affecting
 promazine, adverse effects
 promethazine
 borderline personality disorder
 breast feeding
 insomnia
 pregnancy
 rapid tranquillisation
 renal impairment
 street drug intoxication
 propantheline
 propentifylline
 propranolol
 antipsychotic-induced akathisia
 tardive dyskinesia
 protease inhibitors, antiretroviral
 protein, serum
 prothrombin time
 pseudohyponatraemia
 pseudo-parkinsonism, antipsychotic-induced
 psychiatric disorders *see* mental illness
 psychiatric side-effects, non-psychotropics
 psychological therapies
 anxiety spectrum disorders
 attention deficit hyperactivity disorder
 child and adolescent depression
 drug misuse

eating disorders
 learning disabilities
 psychosis
 anticonvulsant-associated
 benzodiazepines
 children and adolescents
 driving regulations
 epilepsy
 first episode
 HIV infection
 Huntington's disease
 multiple sclerosis
 non-psychotropics causing
 Parkinson's disease
 postpartum
 pregnant women
 sexual dysfunction
 see also schizophrenia
 psychostimulant drugs *see* stimulant drugs
 psychotropics
 biochemical side-effects
 breast feeding
 child and adolescent doses
 cytochrome function and
 driving and
 ECT seizure threshold and
 haematological side-effects
 HIV infection
 overdose
 plasma level monitoring
 pregnant women
 QTc prolongation
 smoking and
 special patient groups
 street drug interactions
 surgery and
 PTSD *see* post-traumatic stress disorder
 publication bias

pulmonary embolism, clozapine-induced
 pulse monitoring
 rapid tranquillisation
 starting clozapine
 pyridoxine, tardive dyskinesia

QTc prolongation
 antidepressant-induced
 antipsychotic-induced
 antipsychotic polypharmacy
 ECG monitoring
 management
 metabolic inhibition
 methadone and
 non-psychotropics inducing
 psychotropic-related
 renal impairment and
 risk factors
 switching antipsychotics
 quercetin, tardive dyskinesia
 quetiapine
 acute mania/hypomania
 adults with learning disabilities
 adverse effects
 anorexia nervosa
 augmentation
 bipolar depression
 bipolar disorder
 children and adolescents
 blood lipids and
 breast feeding
 catatonia
 children and adolescents
 clozapine-related hypersalivation
 costs
 delirium
 dementia
 diabetes association

epilepsy
 hepatic impairment
 high-dose
 Huntington's disease
 maximum licensed dose
 minimum effective dose
 overdose
 Parkinson's disease
 plasma level monitoring
 pregnancy
 psychotic depression
 refractory schizophrenia
 relative efficacy
 renal impairment
 resistant depression
 sexual adverse effects
 speed and onset of action
 switching to
 tardive dyskinesia and

raltegravir
 ramelteon
 rapid tranquillisation (RT)
 antipsychotics
 benzodiazepines
 children and adolescents
 physical monitoring
 pregnancy
 remedial measures
 reboxetine
 antipsychotic-induced weight gain
 breast feeding
 cardiac effects
 diabetes and
 elderly
 epilepsy
 hepatic impairment
 hyperprolactinaemia and

minimum effective dose
 overdose
 post-stroke depression
 pregnancy
 publication bias
 relative adverse effects
 renal impairment
 sexual adverse effects
 swapping/stopping
 red cell distribution width
 reflux oesophagitis
 renal function tests, bipolar disorder
 renal impairment
 antidementia drugs
 antidepressants
 antipsychotics
 anxiolytics and hypnotics
 classification
 elderly
 lithium-related
 methadone dosing
 mood stabilisers
 nicotine replacement therapy
 prescribing principles
 recommended drugs
 renal replacement therapies
 respiratory rate, after rapid tranquillisation
 restlessness
 non-psychotropics causing
 see also akathisia
 restricted repetitive behaviours and interests (RRBIs)
 reticulocyte count
 Rett's syndrome
 riluzole
 bipolar depression
 Huntington's disease
 resistant depression
 risperidone

acute mania/hypomania
 adults with learning disabilities
 adverse effects
 augmentation
 bipolar disorder
 blood lipids and
 breast feeding
 children and adolescents

- attention deficit hyperactivity disorder
- autism spectrum disorders
- bipolar disorder
- obsessive compulsive disorder
- pathological aggression
- psychosis
- tics and Tourette's syndrome

 clozapine augmentation
 costs
 delirium
 dementia
 diabetes association
 dose-response observations
 epilepsy
 hepatic impairment
 HIV infection
 Huntington's disease
 long-acting injection (RLAI)

- cost
- maximum licensed dose
- switching to
- vs other depot antipsychotics
- vs paliperidone palmitate

 maximum licensed dose
 minimum effective dose
 overdose
 paliperidone equivalent doses
 Parkinson's disease
 plasma level monitoring
 pregnancy

rapid tranquillisation
 refractory schizophrenia
 relative efficacy
 renal impairment
 resistant depression
 sexual adverse effects
 speed and onset of action
 switching to
 tardive dyskinesia and
 Ritalin *see* methylphenidate
 ritanserlin
 ritonavir
 rivastigmine
 Alzheimer's disease
 behavioural and psychological symptoms
 delirium
 dementia with Lewy bodies
 drug interactions
 efficacy
 Huntington's disease
 mechanism of action
 memantine with
 Parkinson's disease
 renal impairment
 tolerability
 vascular dementia
 RT *see* rapid tranquillisation

S-adenosyl-L-methionine
 saffron
 saquinavir
 sarcosine
 schizophrenia
 acute exacerbation
 adherence to medication
 caffeine consumption
 cardiovascular risk factors
 catatonia

children and adolescents
 complementary therapies
 compliance therapy
 diabetes association
 driving regulations
 drug misuse
 first episode
 hyponatraemia
 multi-episode
 negative symptoms
 NICE guidance
 nicotine use
 omega-3 fatty acids
 refractory
 relapse
 sexual dysfunction
 smoking cessation
 treatment algorithms
see also antipsychotics
 scopolamine (hyoscine)
 second-generation antipsychotics (SGAs)
 adverse effects
 autism spectrum disorders
 bipolar disorder
 children and adolescents
 breast feeding
 children and adolescents
 costs
 delirium
 dementia
 diabetes risk
 dyslipidaemia and
 first-generation agents vs
 inadequate response
 long-acting injections
 maximum licensed doses
 minimum effective doses
 negative symptoms

neuroleptic malignant syndrome
 Parkinson's disease
 pregnancy
 prophylaxis
 psychotic depression
 rapid tranquillisation
 relative efficacy
 street drug interactions
 treatment algorithms
 unlicensed use
 sedation
 alcohol-induced
 antidepressant-induced
 antipsychotic-induced
 clozapine-induced
 driving ability and
 non-psychotropics causing
 switching antipsychotics
 see also rapid tranquillisation
 sedatives
 borderline personality disorder
 breast feeding
 hepatic impairment
 pregnancy
 renal impairment
 use of antipsychotics as
 seizures
 alcohol-related, driving regulations
 alcohol withdrawal
 antidepressant-induced
 antipsychotic-induced
 bupropion-related risk
 clozapine-induced
 see also epilepsy
 selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs)
 adults with learning disabilities
 adverse effects
 antipsychotic-induced weight gain

anxiety disorders
 children and adolescents
 autism spectrum disorders
 bipolar depression
 bipolar disorder
 bleeding and
 borderline personality disorder
 breast feeding
 caffeine interaction
 cardiac effects
 dementia
 depression
 children and adolescents
 minimum effective doses
 official guidance
 diabetes and
 discontinuation symptoms
 drug interactions
 eating disorders
 ECT seizure threshold and
 elderly
 epilepsy
 hepatic impairment
 HIV infection
 Huntington's disease
 hyperprolactinaemia and
 hyponatraemia
 lithium interactions
 multiple sclerosis
 overdose
 Parkinson's disease
 post-stroke depression
 pregnancy
 resistant depression
 schizophrenia negative symptoms
 sexual adverse effects
 street drug interactions
 surgical patients

swapping/stopping
 selegiline
 sexual adverse effects
 transdermal
 self-injurious behaviour (SIB)
 adults with learning disabilities
 autism spectrum disorders
 lithium therapy
 semisodium valproate *see* valproate
 Sequenced Treatment Alternatives to Relieve Depression (STAR-D) programme
 D-serine, refractory schizophrenia
 serotonin and noradrenaline reuptake inhibitors (SNRIs)
 anxiety disorders
 diabetes and
 discontinuation symptoms
 hyperprolactinaemia and
 multiple sclerosis
 see also duloxetine; venlafaxine
 serotonin syndrome
 antidepressant interactions
 renal impairment and
 St John's wort
 surgery-related risk
 sertindole
 adverse effects
 breast feeding
 cost
 maximum licensed dose
 minimum effective dose
 refractory schizophrenia
 sertraline
 adverse effects
 anxiety disorders
 breast feeding
 cardiac effects
 child and adolescent anxiety
 child and adolescent depression
 dementia

hepatic impairment
 minimum effective dose
 multiple sclerosis
 post-stroke depression
 pregnancy
 psychotic depression
 renal impairment
 swapping/stopping
 sexual arousal
 disorders
 sexual desire *see* libido
 sexual dysfunction
 antidepressants and
 antipsychotic-related
 depression and
 hyperprolactinaemia and
 schizophrenia
 switching antipsychotics
 treatment
 sexual response, human
 Short Alcohol Withdrawal Scale (SAWS)
 sialorrhoea *see* hypersalivation
 sildenafil
 sleep disturbances
 autism spectrum disorders
 non-psychotropics causing
 sleep hygiene
 smoking, cigarette
 caffeine interaction
 depression and anxiety
 drug interactions
 movement disorders
 schizophrenia
 see also nicotine
 smoking cessation
 bupropion
 effects on other drugs
 NICE guidance

psychiatric disorders
 surgical patients
 varenicline
see also nicotine replacement therapy
 Snoezelen
 social and communication impairment
 social phobia
 sodium, plasma
 monitoring
 psychotropics affecting
 sodium oxybate, tardive dyskinesia
 sodium valproate *see* valproate
 SOHO trial
 SSRIs *see* selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors
 STAR-D programme
 statins
 stavudine
 stimulant drugs
 attention deficit hyperactivity disorder
 depression
 hepatic impairment
 misuse/dependence
 resistant depression
 St John's wort (SJW)
 child and adolescent depression
 patient information
 'street drugs'
 acute intoxication
 interactions with prescribed psychotropics
 see also drug misuse/dependence
 stroke
 antipsychotic-treated elderly with dementia
 depression after
 SSRI-related risk
 Suboxone
 substance misuse
 attention deficit hyperactivity disorder and
 extrapyramidal symptom risk

NICE guidance
 sudden cardiac death
 antipsychotic-associated
 clozapine-related
 psychotropic-induced
 see also QTc prolongation
 suicide/suicidal ideation
 antidepressants and
 bipolar disorder
 child and adolescent depression
 epilepsy
 Huntington's disease
 lithium and
 non-psychotropics causing
 perioperative discontinuation of drugs
 psychotropic overdose
 sulpiride
 adverse effects
 breast feeding
 clozapine augmentation
 clozapine-related hypersalivation
 epilepsy
 equivalent dose
 hepatic impairment
 Huntington's disease
 maximum licensed dose
 minimum effective dose
 refractory schizophrenia
 renal impairment
 sexual adverse effects
 tics and Tourette's syndrome
 sumatriptan, intranasal
 surgery, psychotropics and
 Symbyax®
 syndrome of inappropriate antidiuretic hormone (SIADH)

 tachycardia, clozapine-induced
 tamoxifen, acute mania

tantrums, autism spectrum disorders
 tardive dyskinesia (TD)
 first vs second-generation antipsychotics
 switching antipsychotics
 treatment
 TCAs *see* tricyclic antidepressants
 temazepam
 diazepam equivalent dose
 hepatic impairment
 hypnotic use
 renal impairment
 temperature, body
 clozapine-induced increase
 rapid tranquillisation and
 tenofovir
 terazosin
 testosterone
 tetrabenazine
 Huntington's disease
 tardive dyskinesia
 Tourette's syndrome
 theophylline, carbamazepine interaction
 therapeutic index, antipsychotics
 thiamine
 alcohol withdrawal
 post-ECT confusion
 thiazide diuretics, lithium interaction
 thioridazine, adverse effects
 thioxanthines
 breast feeding
 sexual adverse effects
 thrombocytopenia, clozapine-induced
 thromboembolism, clozapine-induced
 thyroid function tests
 thyroxine
 bipolar disorder
 carbamazepine interaction
 psychotropics affecting

tiagibine, interactions
 tics
 tipranavir
 TMS *see* transcranial magnetic stimulation
 tolvaptan
 topiramate

- antipsychotic-induced weight gain
- bipolar disorder
- clozapine augmentation
- eating disorders
- psychotropic drug interactions
- refractory schizophrenia

 torsade de pointes
 torticollis
 Tourette's syndrome
 tranquillisation, rapid *see* rapid tranquillisation
 transcranial magnetic stimulation (TMS)

- extrapyramidal side-effects
- schizophrenia

 transferrin, carbohydrate-deficient
 tranlycypromine

- adverse effects
- resistant depression
- swapping/stopping
- withdrawal

 trazodone

- breast feeding
- cardiac effects
- delirium
- dementia
- diabetes and
- elderly
- minimum effective dose
- overdose
- pregnancy
- rectal
- relative adverse effects
- renal impairment

sexual adverse effects
 swapping/stopping
 Treatment of Adolescents with Depression Study
 Treatment of Resistant Depression in Adolescence (TORDIA) studies
 TREC studies
 tremor, valproate-induced
 tricyclic antidepressants (TCAs)
 adverse effects
 attention deficit hyperactivity disorder
 breast feeding
 cardiac effects
 children and adolescents
 dementia
 depression
 diabetes and
 discontinuation symptoms
 drug interactions
 ECT seizure threshold and
 elderly
 hepatic impairment
 HIV infection
 Huntington's disease
 hyperprolactinaemia and
 minimum effective doses
 multiple sclerosis
 overdose
 Parkinson's disease
 plasma level monitoring
 pregnancy
 psychotic depression
 resistant depression
 sexual adverse effects
 smoking and
 street drug interactions
 surgery and
 swapping/stopping
 trifluoperazine
 adverse effects

epilepsy
 equivalent dose
 maximum licensed dose
 minimum effective dose
 pregnancy
 renal impairment
 triglycerides, plasma
 trihexyphenidyl
 tri-iodothyronine (T3)
 psychotropics affecting
 resistant depression
 trimipramine
 adverse effects
 renal impairment
 resistant depression
 tryptophan

UDP-glucuronosyl transferase (UGT)
 unlicensed medicines
 paediatric practice
 see also off-label prescribing
 urate/uric acid, plasma
 urea, plasma
 urea and electrolytes (U&Es), monitoring

valproate
 acute mania/hypomania
 adults with learning disabilities
 adverse effects
 bipolar depression
 bipolar disorder
 breast feeding
 children and adolescents
 clozapine-induced seizures
 costs
 delirium
 dementia
 discontinuation

drug interactions
 formulations
 hepatic impairment
 Huntington's disease
 indications
 mechanism of action
 monitoring
 overdose
 plasma levels
 pregnancy
 refractory schizophrenia
 renal impairment
 street drug interactions
 surgical patients
 unlicensed use
 women of childbearing age
 valproic acid *see* valproate
 vaptans
 varenicline, smoking cessation
 vascular dementia
 vasculitis, clozapine-induced
 venlafaxine
 bipolar depression
 breast feeding
 cardiac effects
 children and adolescents
 ECT seizure threshold and
 elderly
 epilepsy
 hepatic impairment
 Huntington's disease
 minimum effective dose
 multiple sclerosis
 overdose
 pregnancy
 psychotic depression
 relative adverse effects
 renal impairment

resistant depression
 sexual adverse effects
 surgical patients
 swapping/stopping
 vigabatrin, drug interactions
 violent behaviour
 driving regulations
 recommended interventions
 see also acutely disturbed behaviour; aggressive behaviour
 vitamin B₁₂
 vitamin B complex (Pabrinex), alcohol withdrawal
 vitamin E
 vitamin K
 vitamin supplements
 alcohol withdrawal
 Alzheimer's disease
 anorexia nervosa

 water intoxication
 weight, monitoring
 bipolar disorder
 renal impairment
 schizophrenia
 weight gain
 antidepressant-induced
 antipsychotic-induced
 hypertension risk
 relative risk
 switching agents
 treatment
 clozapine-induced
 valproate-induced
 Wernicke's encephalopathy
 women of child-bearing age
 anticonvulsants
 lithium
 prescribing principles
 see also pregnancy

yohimbine
 young people *see* children and adolescents

zaleplon
 breast feeding
 renal impairment
 zidovudine
 zinc, resistant depression
 ziprasidone
 acute mania/hypomania
 adverse effects
 blood lipids and
 breast feeding
 children and adolescents
 clozapine augmentation
 delirium
 diabetes and
 dose-response observations
 maximum licensed dose
 minimum effective dose
 overdose
 rapid tranquillisation
 children and adolescents
 refractory schizophrenia
 relative efficacy
 renal impairment
 resistant depression
 speed and onset of action
 switching to
 zolpidem
 breast feeding
 overdose
 renal impairment
 zonisamide
 zopiclone
 breast feeding
 hepatic impairment
 overdose

renal impairment
zotepine, epilepsy
zuclopenthixol
acetate (Acuphase), guidelines
adverse effects
breast feeding
depot
 equivalent dose
 maximum licensed dose
equivalent dose
hepatic impairment
maximum licensed dose
renal impairment
smoking and

The Maudsley

Prescribing
Guidelines
in Psychiatry

12TH EDITION

David Taylor
Carol Paton
Shitij Kapur

WILEY Blackwell

Copyright © 2015, John Wiley & Sons, Incorporated. All rights reserved.

Taylor, David M., et al. The Maudsley Prescribing Guidelines in Psychiatry, John Wiley & Sons, Incorporated, 2015. ProQuest Ebook Central, <http://ebookcentral.proquest.com/lib/hscqub/detail.action?docID=2009829>.
Created from hscqub on 2023-05-23 10:17:08.

The Maudsley Prescribing Guidelines in Psychiatry

12th Edition

David Taylor

Director of Pharmacy and Pathology
South London and Maudsley NHS Foundation Trust
Professor of Psychopharmacology
King's College London, London, UK

Carol Paton

Chief Pharmacist
Oxleas NHS Foundation Trust
Joint Head of the Prescribing Observatory for Mental Health
Honorary Research Fellow, Imperial College London, London, UK

Shitij Kapur

Professor of Schizophrenia, Imaging and Therapeutics
Executive Dean and Head of Faculty, Institute of Psychiatry, Psychology and Neuroscience (IoPPN)
Deputy Vice Principal (Health Schools)
King's College London, London, UK

WILEY Blackwell

Contents

Preface	xi
Acknowledgements	xii
Notes on using <i>The Maudsley Prescribing Guidelines</i>	xiii
List of abbreviations	xv
Chapter 1 Plasma level monitoring of psychotropic drugs	1
Interpreting sample results	2
Acting on clozapine plasma concentration results	11
Interpreting post-mortem blood concentrations	13
Chapter 2 Schizophrenia	15
ANTIPSYCHOTIC DRUGS	15
General introduction	15
General principles of prescribing	20
Minimum effective doses	22
Quick reference for licensed maximum doses	24
Equivalent doses	26
High-dose antipsychotics: prescribing and monitoring	28
Antipsychotic prophylaxis	31
Combined antipsychotics	37
Negative symptoms	41
Monitoring	45
Relative adverse effects – a rough guide	48
Treatment algorithms for schizophrenia	49
First-generation antipsychotics – place in therapy	52
Omega-3 fatty acid (fish oils) in schizophrenia	54
New and developing drugs to treat schizophrenia	56
NICE guidelines for the treatment of schizophrenia	59
Antipsychotic response – to increase the dose, to switch, to add or just wait – what is the right move?	61
Antipsychotic long-acting injections	66
Depot antipsychotics – pharmacokinetics	70

Management of patients on long-term depots	72
Aripiprazole LAI	74
Olanzapine LAI	75
Paliperidone palmitate LAI	77
Risperidone LAI	80
ANTIPSYCHOTICS – ADVERSE EFFECTS	84
Extrapyramidal side-effects	84
Akathisia	88
Weight gain	90
Treatment of drug-induced weight gain	92
Tardive dyskinesia	97
Neuroleptic malignant syndrome	102
Catatonia	105
QT prolongation	110
Dyslipidaemia	117
Diabetes and impaired glucose tolerance	121
Hypertension	128
Hyponatraemia	130
Hyperprolactinaemia	133
Sexual dysfunction	137
Pneumonia	143
Switching antipsychotics	144
REFRACTORY SCHIZOPHRENIA AND CLOZAPINE	147
Clozapine – dosing regimen	147
Optimising clozapine treatment	149
Alternatives to clozapine	153
Re-starting clozapine after a break in treatment	159
Initiation of clozapine for community-based patients	160
CLOZAPINE – ADVERSE EFFECTS	165
Common adverse effects	165
Clozapine: uncommon or unusual adverse effects	168
Clozapine: serious haematological and cardiovascular adverse effects	170
Clozapine-induced hypersalivation	174
Clozapine-induced gastrointestinal hypomotility (CIGH)	177
Clozapine, neutropenia and lithium	181
Clozapine and chemotherapy	186
Chapter 3 Bipolar affective disorder	189
Lithium	189
Valproate	197
Carbamazepine	203
Antipsychotics in bipolar disorder	208
Treatment of acute mania or hypomania	211
Bipolar depression	216
Rapid-cycling bipolar affective disorder	223

Prophylaxis in bipolar affective disorder	225
Physical monitoring for people with bipolar affective disorder	228
Chapter 4 Depression and anxiety	231
Introduction	231
Basic principles of prescribing in depression	231
Official guidance on the treatment of depression	232
Antidepressants: general overview	233
St John's wort	246
Recognised minimum effective doses of antidepressants	250
Drug treatment of depression	252
Treatment of refractory depression	255
Psychotic depression	266
Electroconvulsive therapy and psychotropic drugs	269
Psychostimulants in depression	272
Post-stroke depression	276
Treatment of depression in the elderly	279
Antidepressant discontinuation symptoms	283
Antidepressant prophylaxis	287
Antidepressants: alternative routes of administration	290
Antidepressants: swapping and stopping	296
Drug interactions with antidepressants	303
Cardiac effects of antidepressants	307
Antidepressant-induced arrhythmia	312
Antidepressant-induced hyponatraemia	316
Antidepressants and hyperprolactinaemia	319
Antidepressants and diabetes mellitus	321
Antidepressants and sexual dysfunction	324
SSRIs and bleeding	328
Antidepressants: relative adverse effects – a rough guide	332
Anxiety spectrum disorders	334
Benzodiazepines in the treatment of psychiatric disorders	343
Benzodiazepines: dependence and detoxification	346
Benzodiazepines and disinhibition	350
Chapter 5 Children and adolescents	353
Principles of prescribing practice in childhood and adolescence	353
Depression in children and adolescents	355
Bipolar illness in children and adolescents	362
Psychosis in children and adolescents	367
Anxiety disorders in children and adolescents	369
Obsessive compulsive disorder in children and adolescents	374
Post-traumatic stress disorder in children and adolescents	379
Attention deficit hyperactivity disorder	384
Autism spectrum disorders	390

Copyright © 2015, John Wiley & Sons, Incorporated. All rights reserved.

Tics and Tourette's syndrome	397
Melatonin in the treatment of insomnia in children and adolescents	402
Rapid tranquillisation in children and adolescents	405
Doses of commonly used psychotropic drugs in children and adolescents	408
Chapter 6 Substance misuse	409
Introduction	409
Alcohol dependence	411
Opioid misuse and dependence	429
Nicotine and smoking cessation	456
Pharmacological treatment of dependence on stimulants	463
Benzodiazepine misuse	466
GBL and GHB dependence	467
Drugs of misuse: a summary	469
Interactions between 'street drugs' and prescribed psychotropic drugs	472
Chapter 7 Use of psychotropic drugs in special patient groups	477
The elderly	477
Dementia	487
Safer prescribing of physical health medicines in dementia	507
Management of non-cognitive symptoms of dementia	517
Parkinson's disease	529
Multiple sclerosis	533
Huntington's disease	538
Pregnancy	541
Breastfeeding	559
Renal impairment	576
Hepatic impairment	590
HIV infection	598
Eating disorders	607
Acutely disturbed or violent behaviour	611
Borderline personality disorder	618
Learning disabilities	621
Delirium	625
Epilepsy	632
Surgery	637
Velo-cardio-facial syndrome	643
Cytochrome (CYP) function	646
Psychiatric side-effects of non-psychotropic drugs	650
Atrial fibrillation	656
Chapter 8 Miscellaneous conditions and substances	659
Psychotropic drugs in overdose	659
Biochemical and haematological effects of psychotropics	665
Prescribing drugs outside their licensed indications ('off-label' prescribing)	673
Observations on the placebo effect in mental illness	676

Drug interactions with alcohol	679
Nicotine	684
Smoking and psychotropic drugs	688
Caffeine	690
Complementary therapies	695
Enhancing medication adherence	700
Driving and psychotropic medicines	706
Covert administration of medicines within food and drink	714
Index	717

Copyright © 2015, John Wiley & Sons, Incorporated. All rights reserved.

Acutely disturbed or violent behaviour

Acute behavioural disturbance can occur in the context of psychiatric illness, physical illness, substance abuse or personality disorder. Psychotic symptoms are common and the patient may be aggressive towards others secondary to persecutory delusions or auditory, visual or tactile hallucinations.

The clinical practice of rapid tranquillisation (RT) is used when appropriate psychological and behavioural approaches have failed to de-escalate acutely disturbed behaviour. It is, essentially, a treatment of last resort. Patients who require RT are often too disturbed to give informed consent and therefore participate in RCTs, but, with the use of a number of creative methodologies, the evidence base with respect to the efficacy and tolerability of pharmacological strategies is growing. Recommendations, however, remain based partly on research data, partly on theoretical considerations and partly on clinical experience.

Several studies supporting the efficacy of oral SGAs have been published.¹⁻⁴ The level of behavioural disturbance exhibited by the patients in these studies was moderate at most, and all subjects accepted oral treatment (this degree of compliance would be unusual in clinical practice). Note too that patients recruited to these studies received the SGA as antipsychotic monotherapy. The efficacy and safety of adding a second antipsychotic as 'prn' has not been explicitly tested in formal RCTs.

The efficacy of inhaled loxapine (in behavioural disturbance that is moderate in severity) is also supported by RCTs;^{5,6} note that use of this preparation requires the cooperation of the patient, and that bronchospasm is an established side-effect.

Larger, placebo-controlled RCTs support the efficacy of IM preparations of olanzapine, ziprasidone and aripiprazole. When considered together these trials suggested that IM olanzapine is more effective than IM haloperidol which in turn is more effective than IM aripiprazole.⁷ Again, the level of behavioural disturbance in these studies was moderate at most.

Five large RCTs have investigated the effectiveness of parenteral medication in 'real-life' acutely disturbed patients.

- Compared with IV midazolam alone, a combination of IV olanzapine or IV droperidol with IV midazolam was more rapidly effective and resulted in fewer subsequent doses of medication being required.⁸
- IM midazolam 7.5–15 mg was more rapidly sedating than a combination of haloperidol 5–10 mg and promethazine 50 mg (TREC 1).⁹
- Olanzapine 10 mg was as effective as a combination of haloperidol 10 mg and promethazine 25–50 mg in the short term, but the effect did not last as long (TREC 4).¹⁰
- A combination of haloperidol 5–10 mg and promethazine 50 mg was more effective and better tolerated than haloperidol 5–10 mg alone (TREC 3).¹¹
- A combination of haloperidol 10 mg and promethazine 25–50 mg was more effective than lorazepam 4 mg (TREC 2).¹²

Note that TREC 3¹¹ found IM haloperidol alone to be poorly tolerated; 6% of patients had an acute dystonic reaction. Cochrane concludes that haloperidol alone is effective in the management of acute behavioural disturbance but poorly tolerated, and that co-administration of promethazine but not lorazepam improves tolerability.¹³ However

NICE considers the evidence relating to the use of promethazine for this purpose to be inconclusive.¹⁴

In a meta-analysis that examined the tolerability of IM antipsychotics when used for the treatment of agitation, the incidence of acute dystonia with haloperidol was reported to be 5%, with SGAs faring considerably better.¹⁵ Acute extrapyramidal symptoms may adversely affect longer-term compliance.¹⁶ In addition, the SPC for haloperidol requires a pre-treatment ECG^{17,18} and recommends that concomitant antipsychotics are not prescribed. The mean increase in QTc after 10 mg IM haloperidol has been administered has been reported to be 15 ms but the range is wide.¹⁹ Note that promethazine may inhibit the metabolism of haloperidol,²⁰ a pharmacokinetic interaction that is potentially clinically significant given the potential of haloperidol to prolong QTc. While this is unlikely to be problematic if a single dose is administered, repeat dosing may confer risk.

A large observational study supports the efficacy and tolerability of IM olanzapine in clinical emergencies (where disturbance was severe).²¹

In an acute psychiatric setting, high dose sedation (defined as a dose of more than 10 mg of haloperidol, droperidol or midazolam in routine clinical practice) was not more effective than lower doses but was associated with more adverse effects (hypotension and oxygen desaturation).²² Consistent with this, a small RCT supports the efficacy of low dose haloperidol, although both efficacy and tolerability were superior when midazolam was co-prescribed.²³ These data support the use of standard doses in clinical emergencies.

A small observational study supports the effectiveness of buccal midazolam in a psychiatric intensive care unit (PICU) setting.²⁴ Parenteral administration of midazolam, particularly in higher doses, may cause over-sedation accompanied by respiratory depression.²⁵ Lorazepam IM is an established treatment and TREC 2¹² supports its efficacy, although combining all results from the TREC studies suggests midazolam 7.5–15 mg is probably more effective. Cochrane supports the efficacy of benzodiazepines when used alone and concludes that there is no advantage of benzodiazepine-antipsychotic combinations over benzodiazepines alone.²⁶

With respect to those who are behaviourally disturbed secondary to acute intoxication with alcohol or illicit drugs, there are fewer data to guide practice. A large observational study of IV sedation in patients intoxicated with alcohol found that combination treatment (most commonly haloperidol 5 mg and lorazepam 2 mg) was more effective and reduced the need for subsequent sedation than either drug given alone.²⁷ A case series (n=59) of patients who received modest doses of oral, IM or IV haloperidol to manage behavioural disturbance in the context of phencyclidine (PCP) consumption, reported that haloperidol was effective and well tolerated (one case each of mild hypotension and mild hypoxia).²⁸

Plans for the management of individual patients should ideally be made in advance. The aim is to prevent disturbed behaviour and reduce risk of violence. Nursing interventions (de-escalation, time out, seclusion²⁹), increased nursing levels, transfer of the patient to a PICU and pharmacological management are options that may be employed. Care should be taken to avoid combinations and high cumulative doses of antipsychotic drugs. The monitoring of routine physical observations after RT is essential. Note that RT is often viewed as punitive by patients. There is little research into the patient experience of RT.

The aims of RT are threefold.

- To reduce suffering for the patient: psychological or physical (through self-harm or accidents).
- To reduce risk of harm to others by maintaining a safe environment.
- To do no harm (by prescribing safe regimes and monitoring physical health).

Note: Despite the need for rapid and effective treatment, concomitant use of two or more antipsychotics (antipsychotic polypharmacy) should be avoided on the basis of risk associated with QT prolongation (common to almost all antipsychotics). This is a particularly important consideration in RT where the patient's physical state predisposes to cardiac arrhythmia.

Table 7.29 outlines the interventions to use in an emergency situation. Remedial measures are shown in Table 7.30. Box 7.12 describes physical monitoring requirements in RT; Box 7.13 the use of flumazenil; and Box 7.14 shows guidelines for the use of zuclopenthixol acetate.

Table 7.29 Recommended interventions for patients showing acutely disturbed or violent behaviour

Step	Intervention	Comment
1	De-escalation, time out, placement, etc., as appropriate	
2	Offer oral treatment If the patient is prescribed a regular antipsychotic, lorazepam 1–2 mg alone avoids the risks associated with combining antipsychotics Repeat after 45–60 minutes Monotherapy with buccal midazolam, 10–20 mg may avoid the need for IM treatment <i>Note that this preparation is unlicensed</i> Go to step 3 if two doses fail or sooner if the patient is placing themselves or others at significant risk	An oral antipsychotic is an option in patients not already taking a regular oral or depot antipsychotic ■ Quetiapine 50–100 mg ■ Olanzapine 10 mg or ■ Risperidone 1–2 mg or ■ Haloperidol 5 mg (best with promethazine 25 mg) Note that the SPC for haloperidol recommends: ■ Avoid concomitant antipsychotics ■ A pre-treatment ECG
3	Consider IM treatment Lorazepam 2 mg^{a,b} Promethazine 50 mg^c Olanzapine 10 mg^d Aripiprazole 9.75 mg Haloperidol 5 mg Repeat after 30–60 minutes if insufficient effect	Have flumazenil to hand in case of benzodiazepine-induced respiratory depression IM promethazine is a useful option in a benzodiazepine-tolerant patient IM olanzapine should NOT be combined with an IM benzodiazepine, particularly if alcohol has been consumed ³⁰ Less hypotension than olanzapine, but possibly less effective ^{3,7,31} Haloperidol should be the last drug considered ■ The incidence of acute dystonia is high; combine with IM promethazine and ensure IM procyclidine is available ■ The SPC recommends a pre-treatment ECG

(Continued)

614 The Maudsley Prescribing Guidelines in Psychiatry

Table 7.29 (Continued)

Step	Intervention	Comment
4	Consider IV treatment Diazepam 10 mg over at least 5 minutes ^{b,e} Repeat after 5–10 minutes if insufficient effect (up to 3 times) Have flumazenil to hand	
5	Seek advice from a senior psychiatrist or senior clinical pharmacist ^f	

^aCarefully check administration instructions, which differ between manufacturers. With respect to Ativan (the most commonly used preparation), mix lorazepam 1:1 with water for injections before injecting. Some centres use 2–4 mg. An alternative is midazolam 7.5–15 mg. The risk of respiratory depression is dose-related with both but generally greater with midazolam.

^bCaution in the very young and elderly and those with pre-existing brain damage or impulse control problems, as disinhibition reactions are more likely.³²

^cPromethazine has a slow onset of action but is often an effective sedative. Dilution is not required before IM injection. May be repeated up to a maximum of 100 mg/day. Wait 1–2 hours after injection to assess response. Note that promethazine alone has been reported, albeit very rarely, to cause NMS³³ although it is an extremely weak dopamine antagonist. Note the potential pharmacokinetic interaction between promethazine and haloperidol (reduced metabolism of haloperidol) which may confer risk if repeated doses of both are administered.

^dRecommended by NICE only for moderate behavioural disturbance, but data from a large observational study also support efficacy in clinical emergencies.

^eUse Diazemuls to avoid injection site reactions. IV therapy may be used instead of IM when a very rapid effect is required. IV therapy also ensures near immediate delivery of the drug to its site of action and effectively avoids the danger of inadvertent accumulation of slowly absorbed IM doses. Note also that IV doses can be repeated after only 5–10 minutes if no effect is observed.

^fOptions at this point are limited. IM amylobarbitone and paraldehyde have been used in the past but are used now only extremely rarely. ECT is probably a better option. Behavioural disturbance secondary to the use of illicit drugs can be very difficult to manage. Time and supportive care may be safer than administering more sedative medication.

Box 7.12 Rapid tranquillisation: physical monitoring

After any parenteral drug administration, monitor as follows:

- temperature
- pulse
- blood pressure
- respiratory rate

every 10 minutes for 1 hour, and then half-hourly until the patient is ambulatory. Patients who refuse to have their vital signs monitored, or who remain too behaviourally disturbed to be approached, should be observed for signs/symptoms of pyrexia, hypotension, over-sedation and general physical wellbeing.

If the patient is asleep or **unconscious**, the continuous use of pulse oximetry to measure oxygen saturation is desirable. A nurse should remain with the patient until ambulatory.

ECG and haematological monitoring are also strongly recommended when parenteral antipsychotics are given, especially when higher doses are used.^{34,35} Hypokalaemia, stress and agitation place the patient at risk of cardiac arrhythmia³⁶ (see section on 'QT prolongation' in Chapter 2). ECG monitoring is formally recommended for all patients who receive haloperidol.

Table 7.30 Remedial measures in rapid tranquilisation

Problem	Remedial measures
Acute dystonia (including oculogyric crises)	Give procyclidine 5–10 mg IM or IV
Reduced respiratory rate (<10/min) or oxygen saturation (<90%)	Give oxygen, raise legs, ensure patient is not lying face down Give flumazenil if benzodiazepine-induced respiratory depression suspected
Irregular or slow (<50/min) pulse	If induced by any other sedative agent: transfer to a medical bed and ventilate mechanically Refer to specialist medical care immediately
Fall in blood pressure (>30 mmHg orthostatic drop or <50 mmHg diastolic)	Have patient lie flat , tilt bed towards head. Monitor closely
Increased temperature	Withhold antipsychotics (risk of NMS and perhaps arrhythmia). Check creatinine kinase urgently

IM, intramuscular; IV, intravenous; NMS, neuroleptic malignant syndrome.

Box 7.13 Guidelines for the use of flumazenil

Indication for use	If, after the administration of lorazepam, midazolam or diazepam, respiratory rate falls below 10/minute.
Contraindications	Patients with epilepsy who have been receiving long-term benzodiazepines.
Caution	Dose should be carefully titrated in hepatic impairment.
Dose and route of administration	Initial: 200 µg intravenously over 15 seconds – if required level of consciousness not achieved after 60 seconds, then, subsequent dose: 100 µg over 10 seconds.
Time before dose can be repeated	60 seconds.
Maximum dose	1 mg in 24 hours (one initial dose and eight subsequent doses).
Side-effects	Patients may become agitated, anxious or fearful on awakening. Seizures may occur in regular benzodiazepine users. Side-effects usually subside.
Management	
Monitoring	
What to monitor?	Respiratory rate
How often?	Continuously until respiratory rate returns to baseline level. Flumazenil has a short half-life (much shorter than diazepam) and respiratory function may recover and then deteriorate again.
	Note: If respiratory rate does not return to normal or patient is not alert after initial doses given, assume that sedation is due to some other cause.

616 The Maudsley Prescribing Guidelines in Psychiatry

Box 7.14 Guidelines for the use of Clopixol Acuphase (zuclopenthixol acetate)

Acuphase should be used only after an acutely psychotic patient has required *repeated* injections of short-acting antipsychotic drugs such as haloperidol or olanzapine, or sedative drugs such as lorazepam. It is perhaps best reserved for those few patients who have a prior history of good response to Acuphase.

Acuphase should be given only when enough time has elapsed to assess the full response to previously injected drugs: allow 15 minutes after IV injections; 60 minutes after IM.

Acuphase should **never** be administered:

- in an attempt to 'hasten' the antipsychotic effect of other antipsychotic therapy
- for rapid tranquillisation (onset of effect is too slow)
- at the same time as other parenteral antipsychotics or benzodiazepines (may lead to over-sedation which is difficult to reverse)
- as a 'test dose' for zuclopenthixol decanoate depot
- to a patient who is physically resistant (risk of intravasation and oil embolus).

Acuphase should **never** be used for, or in, the following:

- patients who accept oral medication
- patients who are neuroleptic-naïve
- patients who are sensitive to EPS
- patients who are unconscious
- patients who are pregnant
- those with hepatic or renal impairment
- those with cardiac disease.

Onset and duration of action

Sedative effects usually begin to be seen 2 hours after injection and peak after 12 hours. The effects may last for up to 72 hours. Note: Acuphase has no place in rapid tranquillisation: *its action is not rapid*. Cochrane concludes that Acuphase has no advantages over other options in the immediate management of an episode of behavioural disturbance but that patients who receive this preparation may need fewer subsequent injections in the medium term (7 days).³⁷

Dose

Acuphase should be given in a dose of 50–150 mg (note there is no evidence to support any advantage of higher over lower doses),³⁷ up to a maximum of 400 mg over a 2-week period. This maximum duration ensures that a treatment plan is put in place. It does not indicate that there are known harmful effects from more prolonged administration, although such use should be very exceptional. There is no such thing as a 'course of Acuphase'. The patient should be assessed before each administration.

Injections should be spaced at least 24 hours apart.

Note: zuclopenthixol acetate was formerly widely misused as a sort of 'chemical straitjacket'. In reality it is a potentially toxic preparation with very little published information to support its use.³⁷

References

1. Currier GW et al. Acute treatment of psychotic agitation: a randomized comparison of oral treatment with risperidone and lorazepam versus intramuscular treatment with haloperidol and lorazepam. *J Clin Psychiatry* 2004; 65:386–394.
2. Ganesan S et al. Effectiveness of quetiapine for the management of aggressive psychosis in the emergency psychiatric setting: a naturalistic uncontrolled trial. *Int J Psychiatry Clin Pract* 2005; 9:199–203.
3. Simpson JR, Jr. et al. Impact of orally disintegrating olanzapine on use of intramuscular antipsychotics, seclusion, and restraint in an acute inpatient psychiatric setting. *J Clin Psychopharmacol* 2006; 26:333–335.
4. Hsu WY et al. Comparison of intramuscular olanzapine, orally disintegrating olanzapine tablets, oral risperidone solution, and intramuscular haloperidol in the management of acute agitation in an acute care psychiatric ward in Taiwan. *J Clin Psychopharmacol* 2010; 30:230–234.

5. Lesem MD et al. Rapid acute treatment of agitation in individuals with schizophrenia: multicentre, randomised, placebo-controlled study of inhaled loxapine. *Br J Psychiatry* 2011; 198:51–58.
6. Kwentus J et al. Rapid acute treatment of agitation in patients with bipolar I disorder: a multicenter, randomized, placebo-controlled clinical trial with inhaled loxapine. *Bipolar Disord* 2012; 14:31–40.
7. Citrome L. Comparison of intramuscular ziprasidone, olanzapine, or aripiprazole for agitation: a quantitative review of efficacy and safety. *J Clin Psychiatry* 2007; 68:1876–1885.
8. Chan EW et al. Intravenous droperidol or olanzapine as an adjunct to midazolam for the acutely agitated patient: a multicenter, randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled clinical trial. *Ann Emerg Med* 2013; 61:72–81.
9. TREC Collaborative Group. Rapid tranquillisation for agitated patients in emergency psychiatric rooms: a randomised trial of midazolam versus haloperidol plus promethazine. *BMJ* 2003; 327:708–713.
10. Raveendran NS et al. Rapid tranquillisation in psychiatric emergency settings in India: pragmatic randomised controlled trial of intramuscular olanzapine versus intramuscular haloperidol plus promethazine. *BMJ* 2007; 335:865.
11. Huf G et al. Rapid tranquillisation in psychiatric emergency settings in Brazil: pragmatic randomised controlled trial of intramuscular haloperidol versus intramuscular haloperidol plus promethazine. *BMJ* 2007; 335:869.
12. Alexander J et al. Rapid tranquillisation of violent or agitated patients in a psychiatric emergency setting. Pragmatic randomised trial of intramuscular lorazepam v. haloperidol plus promethazine. *Br J Psychiatry* 2004; 185:63–69.
13. Powney MJ et al. Haloperidol for psychosis-induced aggression or agitation (rapid tranquillisation). *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2012; 11: CD009377.
14. National Institute for Health and Care Excellence. Evidence Summaries: Unlicensed/Off-Label Medicines: Rapid tranquillisation in mental health settings: promethazine hydrochloride (ESUOM 28), 2014. <http://www.nice.org.uk/>
15. Satterthwaite TD et al. A meta-analysis of the risk of acute extrapyramidal symptoms with intramuscular antipsychotics for the treatment of agitation. *J Clin Psychiatry* 2008; 69:1869–1879.
16. van Harten PN et al. Acute dystonia induced by drug treatment. *Br Med J* 1999; 319:623–626.
17. Pharmacovigilance Working Party. Public Assessment Report on Neuroleptics and Cardiac safety, in particular QT prolongation, cardiac arrhythmias, ventricular tachycardia and torsades de pointes, 2006. <http://www.mhra.gov.uk>
18. Janssen-Cilag Ltd. *Summary of Product Characteristics*. Haldol Injection, 2014. <https://www.medicines.org.uk/>
19. Miceli JJ et al. Effects of high-dose ziprasidone and haloperidol on the QTc interval after intramuscular administration: a randomized, single-blind, parallel-group study in patients with schizophrenia or schizoaffective disorder. *Clin Ther* 2010; 32:472–491.
20. Suzuki A et al. Histamine H1-receptor antagonists, promethazine and homochlorcyclizine, increase the steady-state plasma concentrations of haloperidol and reduced haloperidol. *Ther Drug Monit* 2003; 25:192–196.
21. Perrin E et al. A prospective, observational study of the safety and effectiveness of intramuscular psychotropic treatment in acutely agitated patients with schizophrenia and bipolar mania. *Eur Psychiatry* 2012; 27:234–239.
22. Calver L et al. A prospective study of high dose sedation for rapid tranquillisation of acute behavioural disturbance in an acute mental health unit. *BMC Psychiatry* 2013; 13:225.
23. Mantovani C et al. Are low doses of antipsychotics effective in the management of psychomotor agitation? A randomized, rated-blind trial of 4 intramuscular interventions. *J Clin Psychopharmacol* 2013; 33:306–312.
24. Taylor D et al. Buccal midazolam for rapid tranquillisation. *Int J Psychiatry Clin Pract* 2008; 12:309–311.
25. Spain D et al. Safety and effectiveness of high-dose midazolam for severe behavioural disturbance in an emergency department with suspected psychostimulant-affected patients. *Emerg Med Australas* 2008; 20:112–120.
26. Gillies D et al. Benzodiazepines for psychosis-induced aggression or agitation. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2013; 9: CD003079.
27. Li SF et al. Safety and efficacy of intravenous combination sedatives in the ED. *Am J Emerg Med* 2013; 31:1402–1404.
28. MacNeal JJ et al. Use of haloperidol in PCP-intoxicated individuals. *Clin Toxicol (Phila)* 2012; 50:851–853.
29. Huf G et al. Physical restraints versus seclusion room for management of people with acute aggression or agitation due to psychotic illness (TREC-SAVE): a randomized trial. *Psychol Med* 2012; 42:2265–2273.
30. Wilson MP et al. Potential complications of combining intramuscular olanzapine with benzodiazepines in emergency department patients. *J Emerg Med* 2012; 43:889–896.
31. Villari V et al. Oral risperidone, olanzapine and quetiapine versus haloperidol in psychotic agitation. *Prog Neuropsychopharmacol Biol Psychiatry* 2008; 32:405–413.
32. Paton C. Benzodiazepines and disinhibition: a review. *Psychiatr Bull* 2002; 26:460–462.
33. Chan-Tack KM. Neuroleptic malignant syndrome due to promethazine. *South Med J* 1999; 92:1017–1018.
34. Appleby L et al. Sudden unexplained death in psychiatric in-patients. *Br J Psychiatry* 2000; 176:405–406.
35. Yap YG et al. Risk of torsades de pointes with non-cardiac drugs. Doctors need to be aware that many drugs can cause QT prolongation. *BMJ* 2000; 320:1158–1159.
36. Taylor DM. Antipsychotics and QT prolongation. *Acta Psychiatr Scand* 2003; 107:85–95.
37. Jayakody K et al. Zuclopentixol acetate for acute schizophrenia and similar serious mental illnesses. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2012; 4: CD000525.

Further reading

National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence. Violence – The short-term management of disturbed/violent behaviour in in-patient psychiatric settings and emergency departments. Clinical Guideline 25, 2005. www.nice.org.uk

Index

Note: page numbers in *italics* refer to figures; those in **bold** to tables or boxes.

- abacavir 603
 acamprosate
 alcohol dependence 421, **421**,
 426–7
 eating disorders 609
 acetylcholinesterase (AChE)
 inhibitors 487–95, **488–9**
 adverse effects 493–4
 Alzheimer's disease 487–90
 atrial fibrillation 657
 combination therapy 495
 delirium 628–9
 dementia with Lewy bodies 502
 dosing 492
 drug interactions 205, 494–5, **496**
 efficacy in dementia 487–90
 Huntington's disease 539
 mechanism of action 487
 mild cognitive impairment
 (MCI) 493, 502
 myasthenia gravis 512, **514**
 NICE guidance 497
 non-cognitive symptoms of
 dementia 521
 Parkinson's disease 502, **530**, **531**
 renal impairment 586
 switching between 491–2
 tolerability 492–3
 vascular dementia 501–2
 see also donepezil; galantamine;
 rivastigmine
 N-acetylcysteine, refractory
 schizophrenia 154
 activated partial thromboplastin
 time 670
 acute intoxication
 rapid tranquillisation 612
 street drugs, behavioural
 disturbance 472
 acutely disturbed behaviour 611–17
 Clopixol Acuphase 616
 intoxication with street drugs 472
 rapid tranquillisation 611–13
 recommended
 interventions 613–14
 acute mania *see* mania, acute
 S-adenosyl-L-methionine
 refractory depression 263
 velo-cardio-facial syndrome 644
 ADHD *see* attention deficit
 hyperactivity disorder
 adherence, medication 700–5
 assessment 702
 factors affecting 701
 lithium therapy 193
 rates 700–1
 schizophrenia 18, 33, 68, 700
 strategies for improving 702–4
 adolescents *see* children and
 adolescents
 adverse psychiatric drug effects *see*
 psychiatric side-effects
 AF111167: 57
 affective disorders
 caffeine consumption 693
 stupor 105, **107**
 see also bipolar affective disorder;
 depression; mania
 Afro-Caribbeans, clozapine-induced
 neutropenia 181
 ageing *see* elderly
 aggressive behaviour
 autism spectrum disorders 392, 393
 benzodiazepine-associated 350–2
 carbamazepine 204
 dementia *see* dementia, non-
 cognitive symptoms
 learning disabilities 622–3
 lithium 190
 non-psychotropics causing 651
 valproate 198
 see also acutely disturbed behaviour
 agitation
 dementia *see* dementia, non-
 cognitive symptoms
 non-psychotropics causing 651
 agomelatine 242
 adverse effects 332
 atrial fibrillation 657
 breastfeeding 561
 cardiotoxicity 308, 312
 diabetes and 321
 discontinuation 283, 285
 elderly 279, **281**, **480**
 epilepsy 633
 hepatic impairment 593
 minimum effective dose 250
 overdose 659
 renal impairment 581
 serum prolactin and 319
 sexual adverse effects 325, 326
 smoking status and 688
 switching to/from 297, **297–301**
 agranulocytosis
 clozapine-induced 166, **168**, **170**,
 181, **182**
 psychotropics causing 670
 see also neutropenia
 AIDS *see* HIV infection/AIDS
 akathisia 48, **84–5**, **88–9**
 treatment 85, **88**, **89**

The Maudsley Prescribing Guidelines in Psychiatry, Twelfth Edition. David Taylor,
 Carol Paton and Shitij Kapur.

© 2015 David Taylor, Carol Paton and Shitij Kapur. Published 2015 by John Wiley & Sons, Ltd.

718 Index

- D-alanine, refractory schizophrenia 153
- alanine transferase 666
- albumin, plasma 666
- alcohol 416–17
- buprenorphine and 443
 - detoxification 413–17
 - driving and 707
 - drug interactions 473–4, 679–83, 680–2
 - intoxication, rapid
 - tranquillisation 612
 - metabolism 679, 679
 - methadone interaction 436
 - post-mortem blood samples 13, 13
 - units 411
- alcohol dehydrogenase (ADH) 679, 679
- drugs inhibiting 680
- alcohol dependence/misuse 411–28
- assessment 411–12
 - children and adolescents 424
 - co-morbid mental health disorders 425–7
 - concurrent drug use disorders 424–5
 - driving regulations 710–11
 - drug interactions 679–80
 - mild, assisted withdrawal 416, 420
 - moderate, assisted withdrawal 416, 416, 420
 - NICE guideline 411, 421, 422
 - older adults 424
 - pregnancy 423–4
 - psychotropic drug choice 682
 - relapse prevention 420–3
 - severe, assisted withdrawal 416, 417, 420
 - treatment *see* alcohol withdrawal
- Alcohol Use Disorders Identification Test (AUDIT) 412
- alcohol withdrawal 412–23
- clinical features 412, 412
 - community setting 413
 - complications 418–20
 - fixed dose reduction regimen 415–16, 416, 417
 - front-loading regimen 415
 - inpatient/residential settings 413, 416–17
 - pharmacologically assisted 413–17, 420
 - pregnancy 423–4
 - seizure prophylaxis 203–4, 418
 - somatic complaints, and remedies 420
 - symptom scales 413, 414, 415
 - symptom-triggered regimen 416–17
- aldehyde dehydrogenase 679, 679
- drugs inhibiting 680
- alfuzosin 509
- alkaline phosphatase 666
- allopurinol 153
- acute mania 213
- α_2 -adrenergic agonists
- opioid withdrawal 446
 - PTSD in young people 380
 - tic disorders 398
 - see also* clonidine; guanfacine
- alpha-blockers, for urinary retention, dementia patients 509, 515
- alprazolam
- HIV drug interactions 601
 - panic disorder 334
- alprostadil 140, 140
- alverine 511
- Alzheimer's disease 487–501
- anticholinergics for urinary incontinence 507–9
 - atrial fibrillation and 657
 - cognitive enhancing drugs 487–95, 488–9
 - depression and 522
 - efficacy of drug treatment 487–91
 - management of non-cognitive symptoms 517–28
 - NICE guidance 495, 497, 521
 - other treatments 498–501
 - quantifying drug effects 491
 - switching between drugs 491–2
 - see also* acetylcholinesterase inhibitors; anti-dementia drugs; memantine
- Alzheimer's Disease Assessment Scale - cognitive subscale (ADAS-cog) 487
- amantadine
- antipsychotic-induced weight gain 93
 - Huntington's disease 538
 - hyperprolactinaemia 134
 - multiple sclerosis 535–6
 - refractory depression 262
 - sexual dysfunction 138–9, 140
 - tardive dyskinesia 98
- American Academy of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry (AACAP) 369, 379
- American Psychiatric Association, acute mania/hypomania 212
- amfebutamone *see* bupropion
- amfetamine(s)
- depression 272, 273, 274
 - drug interactions 473–4
 - misuse 464, 470
 - refractory depression 263
 - see also* dexamfetamine
- AMG 747: 57
- amino acids, tardive dyskinesia 98
- 6-(2-aminopropyl)benzofuran (6-APB) 473–4
- amiodarone 513
- amisulpride
- adverse effects 48
 - bipolar affective disorder 208
 - breastfeeding 566
 - clozapine augmentation 150
 - clozapine-induced hypersalivation 174
 - delirium 627
 - dementia 518, 521
 - diabetes and 122–3
 - elderly 481
 - epilepsy 633
 - hepatic impairment 592
 - Huntington's disease 539
 - maximum licensed dose 24
 - minimum effective dose 22
 - monitoring physical health 45, 46
 - negative symptoms 41
 - overdose 660
 - plasma level monitoring 2–4, 3
 - prescribing 20
 - psychotic depression 266
 - refractory schizophrenia 153, 154, 155
 - relative efficacy 17
 - renal impairment 579
 - sexual adverse effects 139
 - weight gain risk 90
- amitriptyline 238
- adverse effects 332
 - children and adolescents 356–7, 408
 - clozapine-induced hypersalivation 174
 - discontinuation symptoms 284
 - epilepsy 633
 - gel 291, 293
 - intramuscular 291, 292
 - intravenous 291, 292
 - plasma level monitoring 3
 - post-stroke depression 276
 - pregnancy 547, 549
 - rectal 292, 294
 - renal impairment 581
- amnesia, alcohol-induced 681
- amoxapine, epilepsy 633
- amphetamines *see* amfetamine(s)
- amylase, serum 666
- anaemia, psychotropics causing 672
- analgesic agents
- dementia 512–13, 515, 517
 - opioid-dependent patients 437–8, 443
- angiotensin II antagonists, lithium interactions 194, 194
- angiotensin converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitors, lithium interactions 194, 194
- ANNSERS (Antipsychotic Non-Neurological Side-Effects Rating Scale) 17, 20
- anorexia nervosa 607–9, 609
- Antabuse *see* disulfiram

- anti-adrenergic medications, PTSD in
young people 380, 381
- antibiotics, dementia patients 514, 515
- anticholinergic cognitive burden
(ACB) 507
- anticholinergic drugs
antidepressant discontinuation
symptoms 285
- bronchodilators 511
- extrapyramidal side-effects 85
- with long-acting injection
antipsychotics 68
- prescribing in dementia 507–12,
508, 514, 515
- street drug interactions 474
- urinary incontinence 507–9, 510, 515
- anticholinergic side-effects
antidepressants 280–1, 332–3
- antipsychotics 48
- renal impairment and 577
- anticholinesterases *see*
acetylcholinesterase (AChE)
inhibitors
- anticoagulated patients
atrial fibrillation 656
- SSRIs and 276–7, 329
- anticonvulsants
alcohol dependence 203–4, 418, 423
- autism spectrum disorders 391
- biochemical side-effects 667
- bipolar affective disorder 197–207
- clozapine-induced seizure
prophylaxis 11–12
- dementia 523
- depression/psychosis and 632–5
- driving and 707
- drug interactions 635
- ECT seizure threshold and 270
- learning disabilities 622
- pregnancy 551–2, 552
- surgical patients 638
- see also* mood stabilisers; *specific agents*
- anti-dementia drugs (cognitive
enhancers) 487–507, 488–9
- adverse effects 493–4
- clinical effectiveness 487–91
- clinical practice guidance 502–3, 503
- combinations 495
- dementia with Lewy bodies 502
- dosing 492
- drug interactions 494–5, 496–7
- Huntington's disease 539
- mechanisms of action 487
- mild cognitive impairment 493, 502
- multiple sclerosis 535
- NICE guidance 495, 497
- non-cognitive symptoms of
dementia 521
- Parkinson's disease 502
- quantifying effects 491
- renal impairment 578, 586
- switching between 491–2
- tolerability 492–3
- vascular dementia 501–2
- see also* acetylcholinesterase (AChE)
inhibitors; memantine
- antidepressants 233–333, 235–43
- adverse effects 307–33
- elderly 280–1
- relative 234, 332–3
- alcohol dependence 425–6, 682
- alternative routes of
administration 290–5, 291–2
- anxiety spectrum disorders 334–5,
370–1
- atrial fibrillation 657
- benzodiazepine withdrawal 348
- biochemical side-effects 666–9
- bipolar affective disorder 226
- borderline personality disorder 619
- breastfeeding 560, 560, 561–5
- cardiotoxicity 307–14, 308–9
- children and adolescents 355–9,
359, 370–1, 408
- costs 235–43
- cross-tapering 296
- dementia 522–3
- depression 233–333
- bipolar 217, 218, 219, 363
- children and adolescents 355–9,
359
- choice of agent 234, 235–43
- duration of treatment 244
- effectiveness 233
- lithium augmentation 190
- minimum effective doses 250
- next step treatments 244
- NICE guidelines 232, 288
- onset of action 233
- post-stroke 276–8
- prescribing principles 231
- prophylaxis 287–9
- psychotic 266–8
- refractory (resistant) 255,
255–65, 265
- switching 253
- treatment algorithm 252–3
- diabetes and 321, 321–3
- discontinuation symptoms 234,
283–6, 284, 296
- driving and 707
- drug interactions 205, 234, 303–6,
304–5
- dysthymia 233
- eating disorders 608, 609
- ECT seizure threshold and 269, 269
- elderly 280–1, 480–1
- epilepsy and 632, 633
- haematological side-effects 670–2
- hepatic impairment 591, 591, 593–4
- HIV infection 599
- Huntington's disease 539
- hyperprolactinaemia and 319,
319–20
- hyponatraemic effects 234, 279,
316–18
- indications 235–43
- intra-gastric (IG) 290
- intra-jejunal (IJ) 290
- intramuscular 291, 291
- intravenous 290–3, 291
- multiple sclerosis 534
- overdose 659–60
- Parkinson's disease 529
- pregnancy 546–8, 549, 553
- rectal 292, 293–4
- renal impairment 577–8, 578, 581–3
- schizophrenia negative
symptoms 42
- sexual dysfunction and 324–7, 325
- street drug interactions 473
- sublingual 290, 291
- suicidality and 244
- surgical patients 637, 638–9
- swapping/stopping 296–302,
298–301
- transdermal 291–2, 293
- see also specific agents*
- antidiuretic hormone, syndrome of
inappropriate secretion
(SIADH) 130, 131, 316
- antiemetics, dementia patients
509–11, 514
- antiepileptics *see* anticonvulsants
- antihistamines
anorexia nervosa 608
- borderline personality disorder 619
- dementia 513, 514
- see also* promethazine
- antihypertensives, dementia
patients 513, 514
- antimuscarinic drugs
antipsychotic-induced akathisia 88
- see also* anticholinergic drugs
- Antipsychotic Non-Neurological
Side-Effects Rating Scale
(ANNSERS) 17, 20
- antipsychotics 15–187
- acute mania/hypomania 208, 211,
211–12, 213
- adherence 18, 33, 50, 68
- adverse effects 17, 84–146
- children and adolescents 367
- combination therapy 37
- dose-related 29
- first- vs second-generation
agents 52, 86
- monitoring 20
- relative 48, 48
- switching agents for 144, 144–6
- alcohol misusers 682
- anorexia nervosa 608

720 Index

- antipsychotics (*cont'd*)
atrial fibrillation 657
atypical 15
 see also second-generation antipsychotics
biochemical side-effects 666–9
bipolar affective disorder 208–10, 225–6
borderline personality disorder 618–19
breastfeeding 560, 566–8
cardiovascular effects 110–16
catatonia 106–8, 107, 107
children and adolescents 408
 bipolar affective disorder 362–3, 364
 psychosis 367, 367
choosing 16–17
classification 15–16
combination therapy 20, 37–40, 60, 63–4
delirium 627–8
dementia 518–21
depot *see* long-acting injection (LAI) antipsychotics
diabetes association 121–3, 124
dose-response effects 28, 61–2
doses 20
 equivalent 26, 26–7, 27
 loading 60
 maintenance treatment 33
 maximum licensed (EU) 24–5
 minimum effective 22, 22–3
 when to increase 61
driving and 707
drug interactions 205
ECT seizure threshold and 270
elderly 481–3
epilepsy and 632, 633–4
first episode psychosis 31, 49
first generation *see* first-generation antipsychotics
haematological side-effects 670–2
hepatic impairment 591, 591, 592–3
high-dose 28–30
 adverse effects 29
 efficacy 28
 prescribing 29–30
HIV infection 598
Huntington's disease 538, 539
inadequate response 61–5
learning disabilities 622
long-acting injections *see* long-acting injection (LAI) antipsychotics
maintenance treatment 32, 32–4
monitoring 20, 45–6, 59–60
monotherapy 20, 37
multiple sclerosis 534–5
negative symptoms 41–4
new and developing 56–7
NICE guidelines 59–60
overdose 660–1
Parkinson's disease 530
plasma level variations 62
pregnancy 543–5, 545, 553
prescribing principles 20–1
prophylaxis 31–6
psychotic depression 266–7
rapid tranquillisation 611–13, 613, 613–14, 616
refractory depression 257
relapse or acute exacerbation 50
relative efficacy 17–18
renal impairment 577–8, 578, 579–80
second generation *see* second-generation antipsychotics
sedative use 20
street drug interactions 473
surgical patients 639
switching 62–4, 144, 144–6
tic disorders 398–9
typical 15
 see also first-generation antipsychotics
velo-cardio-facial syndrome 644
withdrawal 33–4
see also specific agents
antiretroviral drugs
 adverse psychiatric effects 604, 605
 pharmacodynamic interactions 604, 606
 pharmacokinetic interactions 600, 601–4
antisocial personality disorder, ADHD and 386
antispasmodics, dementia patients 511, 514
anxiety 334
 nicotine use 685
 non-psychotropics causing 651
anxiety spectrum disorders 334–42, 337–8
 alcohol dependence with 426–7
 atrial fibrillation and 657
 benzodiazepines 334, 343
 caffeine consumption 693
 children and adolescents 369–73, 371, 379–80
 driving regulations 708
 HIV infection 599
 learning disabilities 622
 multiple sclerosis 533
 NICE guidelines 334, 339
 pregabalin 335
 pregnancy 552–3
 psychological approaches 336, 338
 SSRIs/SNRIs 334–5
anxiolytics 343
 biochemical side-effects 666
 driving and 707
 elderly 484–5
 HIV infection 599
 renal impairment 578, 585–6
 see also benzodiazepines; sedatives
6-APB (6-(2-aminopropyl) benzofuran) 473–4
aquaretics 130
aripiprazole
 acute mania/hypomania 212
 adverse effects 48
 atrial fibrillation 657
 autism spectrum disorders 392
 bipolar affective disorder 208, 223, 225
 children and adolescents 364, 365
 bipolar depression 218, 219
 blood lipids and 117, 118
 breastfeeding 566
 catatonia 106, 107
 children and adolescents 408
 psychosis 367
 rapid tranquillisation 406
 clozapine augmentation 149, 150
 combination therapy 37
 cost 213
 delirium 627
 dementia 518
 diabetes and 122–3, 124
 dose
 equivalent 27
 maximum licensed 24
 minimum effective 22
 dose-response observations 61
 elderly 481
 epilepsy 633
 hepatic impairment 592
 Huntington's disease 538, 539
 hypertension risk 128
 learning disabilities 622
 long-acting injection (LAI) 68, 74
 dosing and frequency 67, 74
 elderly 483
 maximum licensed dose 24
 pharmacokinetics 70
 switching to 74
 neuroleptic malignant syndrome 103
 overdose 660
 Parkinson's disease 530
 plasma level monitoring 3, 4
 prolactin plasma levels and 133, 134
 psychotic depression 266
 rapid tranquillisation 611, 613
 children and adolescents 406
 refractory depression 257
 refractory schizophrenia 153, 154
 relative efficacy 17
 renal impairment 579
 sexual function and 138, 139
 switching to 63, 92
 tardive dyskinesia and 97
 tic disorders 398
 velo-cardio-facial syndrome 644
 weight gain risk 90

- Arizona Sexual Experience Scale (ASEX) 138
- armodafinil
depression 272, 273
schizophrenia 42
- aromatherapy 695, 697, 698
dementia 518
- arrhythmias
antidepressant-induced 308–9, 312–15
antipsychotic-induced 110–11
physiological risk factors 112, 112
risk in anorexia nervosa 607
see also atrial fibrillation; QT prolongation
- asenapine
acute mania/hypomania 212
adverse effects 48
bipolar affective disorder 208
breastfeeding 566
cost 213
epilepsy 633
equivalent dose 27
glucose homeostasis and 123
hepatic impairment 592
hyperprolactinaemia and 134
maximum licensed dose 24
minimum effective dose 22
negative symptoms 41
neuroleptic malignant syndrome 103
overdose 660
renal impairment 579
weight gain risk 90
- aspartate aminotransferase 666
- Asperger's syndrome 390, 709
- aspirin
multiple sclerosis 536
valproate interaction 200
- assays, drug 1
- asthenia, non-psychotropics causing 651
- ataxia, alcohol-induced 681
- atazanavir 601
- atomoxetine
ADHD 385, 386, 388
autism spectrum disorders 392
hepatic impairment 595
Parkinson's disease 529
- atrial fibrillation (AF) 656–8, 657
- atropine, for hypersalivation 174, 512
- attention deficit hyperactivity disorder (ADHD) 384–9
adult 385–6
autism spectrum disorders 391–2
bipolar affective disorder and 363
driving and 707, 709
NICE guidance 384
pregnancy 554
prescribing 388
velo-cardio-facial syndrome 644–5
attitudes to medication, assessing 701
- atypical antipsychotics 15
see also second-generation antipsychotics
- autism 390
- autism spectrum disorders (ASD) 390–6
co-morbid problem behaviours 391–3
core symptoms 390–1
driving regulations 709
fluoxetine prescribing 394, 395
learning disability with 621, 622
risperidone prescribing 394
- baclofen
alcohol dependence 423
GBL and GHB withdrawal 467, 467, 468
tic disorders 399
- BALANCE study 198, 225
- bapineuzumab 501
- barbiturates
ECT seizure threshold and 270
pregnancy 552
- basophils 670
- behavioural and psychological symptoms (BPSD) of dementia *see* dementia, non-cognitive symptoms
- behavioural disorders
acute *see* acutely disturbed behaviour
driving regulations 710
learning disabilities 621, 622–3
non-psychotropics causing 651
- behavioural therapies
autism spectrum disorders 390
dementia 518
drug-induced weight gain 92
tics 397
- benign ethnic neutropenia (BEN) 181
- benperidol, adverse effects 48
- benzamides, substituted 15
- benzotripine, antipsychotic side-effects 88, 174
- benzhexol, clozapine-induced hypersalivation 174
- benzodiazepines 343–52
acute mania/hypomania 212
alcohol withdrawal 413–17, 416, 417, 418, 423–4
antagonism *see* flumazenil
antipsychotic-induced akathisia 88
anxiety disorders 334, 337–8, 343
alcohol dependence with 426
children and adolescents 371, 371
anxiolytic 343
borderline personality disorder 619
breastfeeding 571
caffeine interaction 692
catatonia/stupor 106, 107
delirium 628
dementia 522
dependence (misuse) 346–9, 466, 470
alcohol dependence with 424
depression 343–4
detoxification 346–9
disinhibitory reactions 350–2
dosage reduction 347
driving ability and 707
drug interactions 205, 344–5, 474
ECT seizure threshold and 269
elderly 484–5
HIV infection 598, 599
hypnotic 343
methadone interaction 436
misuse *see* benzodiazepines, dependence
multiple sclerosis 533
overdose 661
post-mortem blood concentrations 13
pregnancy 423–4, 552–3
rapid tranquilisation 344, 612, 613–14
side-effects 344
smoking status and 688
street drug interactions 474
surgical patients 639
switching to diazepam 347, 347
tardive dyskinesia 98
tolerance test 346
urine screening 346
withdrawal symptoms 346, 346
benztropine *see* benzatropine
- beta-agonists, dementia patients 511
- beta-blockers
multiple sclerosis 533
see also propranolol
- bethanechol
clozapine-induced constipation 179
sexual dysfunction 138–9, 140
- bexarotene, refractory schizophrenia 153
- bicarbonate, plasma 666
- bilirubin, serum 666
- binge eating disorder 607, 609, 609
- biochemical side-effects, psychotropic drugs 665, 666–9
- BioMelatonin 402, 404
- bipolar affective disorder (BAD) 189–230
alcohol dependence with 426
antipsychotics 208–10, 225–6
atrial fibrillation and 657
children and adolescents 358–9, 362–6, 364, 365
elderly 484
HIV infection 599
mood stabilisers 189–207
multiple sclerosis 534–5
physical monitoring 228–9
pregnancy and postpartum 548–50, 551

722 Index

- bipolar affective disorder (*cont'd*)
 prophylaxis 225–7
 antipsychotics 208, 225–6
 carbamazepine 203, 225, 226
 lithium 190, 225, 226
 NICE recommendations 225–6
 valproate 198, 225, 226
 rapid-cycling 223, 223–4
see also depression, bipolar; mania
 bitopertin 57
 bleeding, SSRI-related 279, 328–31, 329
 blood drug concentrations
 post-mortem, interpretation 13, 13–14
see also plasma drug concentrations
 blood pressure (BP)
 antidepressants and 308–9
 monitoring
 bipolar affective disorder 229
 schizophrenia 46
 starting clozapine 161
see also hypertension; hypotension
 body dysmorphic disorder (BDD) 335
 Bolam test 673, 674
 Bolitho test 673, 674
 borderline personality disorder
 (BPD) 618–20
 botulinum toxin
 clozapine-related
 hypersalivation 174
 tardive dyskinesia 98
 tic disorders 399
 bowel obstruction,
 clozapine-associated 178
 bradykinesia 84
 bradyphrenia 84
 breastfeeding 559–60, 560
 antidepressants 560, 561–5
 antipsychotics 566–8
 infant exposure 559
 mood stabilisers 569–70
 nicotine replacement therapy 458
 opioid dependence 450
 prescribing principles 559–60
 sedatives 571
see also postpartum period
 breathalyser 411
 brexipiprazole 56
 British Association for
 Psychopharmacology (BAP)
 guidelines
 acute mania/hypomania 212
 anti-dementia drugs 502–3, 503
 schizophrenia 42
 bromocriptine 134, 140
 bronchodilators, dementia
 patients 511, 514
 bulimia nervosa 607, 609, 609
 buprenorphine 431, 439–44
 analgesia for patients on 437, 443
 cautions 443
 clinical effectiveness 439
 detoxification regimens 445, 446,
 446, 448
 less than daily dosing 442–3
 methadone vs 431, 432
 NICE guidance 451
 older people 513
 overdose 443
 pregnancy and
 breastfeeding 449–50
 prescribing 439–43, 440
 QT prolongation 439
 transfer from methadone to 441,
 441–2, 443
 transfer from other prescribed
 opioids to 442
 withdrawal 431
 buprenorphine/naloxone
 (Suboxone) 431, 444
 bupropion (amfebutamone)
 ADHD 385
 antipsychotic-induced weight gain 93
 bipolar depression 217
 breastfeeding 561
 cardiotoxicity 308, 312, 313
 clozapine-related
 hypersalivation 174
 cocaine dependence 463
 discontinuation symptoms 283
 eating disorders 609
 epilepsy 633
 HIV infection 599
 hyperprolactinaemia and 319
 overdose 659
 pregnancy 548
 refractory depression 256, 257
 renal impairment 581
 sexual dysfunction 138–9, 140, 326
 smoking cessation 456, 460, 461
 switching to/from 297–301
 buspirone
 alcohol dependence 426
 body dysmorphic disorder 335
 children and adolescents 371, 371
 multiple sclerosis 533
 refractory depression 256, 260
 renal impairment 585
 sexual dysfunction 138–9, 140
 butyrophenones 15
 breastfeeding 566
 overdose 660
 cabergoline
 hyperprolactinaemia 134
 refractory depression 262
 caffeine 690–4
 consumption in mental illness 692–3
 content of drinks 690
 interactions 691, 692
 intoxication 691, 692
 Parkinson's disease and 531
 psychotropic effects 691
 calcium, plasma 667
 calcium antagonists, tardive
 dyskinesia 98
 cancer, psychostimulants for
 depression 273
 cannabinoids
 anorexia nervosa 607
 tic disorders 399
 cannabis 470
 drug interactions 473–4
 capacity, mental
 assessment 714
 covert administration of medication
 and 714–16
 learning disabilities 621
 to refuse medication 701, 714
 carbamazepine 203–7, 206
 acute mania/hypomania 203, 211
 ADHD 385
 adverse effects 204–5
 alcohol withdrawal 203–4, 418
 bipolar affective disorder 203–7,
 225, 226
 bipolar depression 203, 218
 breastfeeding 569
 children and adolescents 408
 costs 213
 dementia 523
 discontinuation 205
 drug interactions 205–6, 635
 elderly 484
 formulations 203
 hepatic impairment 594
 HIV infection 599, 603, 604
 indications 203–4
 learning disabilities 622
 lithium interaction 195
 mechanism of action 203
 on-treatment monitoring 205
 overdose 661
 plasma levels 3, 204
 pregnancy 550, 551, 551–2, 552
 pre-treatment tests 205
 renal impairment 584
 smoking status and 688
 street drug interactions 474
 surgical patients 638
 women of child-bearing age 205
 cardiac arrhythmias *see* arrhythmias
 cardiac conduction disturbances,
 antidepressant-induced 308–9,
 332–3
 cardiac drugs, dementia 513
 cardiomyopathy,
 clozapine-induced 170–2
 cardiovascular adverse effects
 acetylcholinesterase
 inhibitors 493–4
 antidepressants 234, 307–15, 308–9
 antipsychotics 110–16
 clozapine 161, 163–4, 170–3

- cardiovascular disease
 cigarette smokers 684, 685
 depression-associated risk 312
 nicotine replacement therapy 458
 risk factors in schizophrenia 114, 117–18
- cariprazine 56
- catatonia 105–9
 malignant/lethal 106
 management 106–8, 107, 107
- CATCH 22 syndrome 643–5
- CATIE-AD study 519
- CATIE study 17, 32, 33, 52, 62, 63
- CBT *see* cognitive behavioural therapy
- celecoxib, refractory schizophrenia 153
- cerebrolysin 500
- cerebrovascular accident (CVA) *see* stroke
- chemotherapy, clozapine and 186–7
- Childhood Anxiety Multimodal Study (CAMS) 370
- childhood disintegrative disorder 390
- children and adolescents 353–408
 ADHD 384, 384–9, 388
 alcohol dependence 424
 anxiety disorders 369–73, 371, 379–80
 autism spectrum disorders 390–6
 bipolar illness 358–9, 362–6, 364, 365
 depression 355–61, 359
 drug doses 408
 eating disorders 607, 609
 lithium plasma levels 190
 melatonin for insomnia 402–4, 404
 obsessive compulsive disorder 374–8, 376
 prescribing principles 353–4
 psychosis 367, 367–8
 PTSD 372, 379–83, 381
 rapid tranquillisation 405–7, 406
 smoking cessation 458
 tics and Tourette's syndrome 397–401
 velo-cardio-facial syndrome 644–5
- Children's Yale-Brown Obsessive Compulsive Scale (CY-BOCS) 374, 375
- chlordiazepoxide
 alcohol-dependent pregnant women 423–4
 alcohol withdrawal 413–17, 416, 417
 diazepam equivalent dose 347
 renal impairment 585
- chloride, serum 667
- chlorphenamine 513
- chlorpromazine 15
 adverse effects 48
 breastfeeding 567
 epilepsy 634
- equivalent doses 26, 26, 27
- first episode psychosis 31
- HIV infection 598
- maximum licensed dose 24
- minimum effective dose 22
- monitoring physical health 45, 46
- NICE guidance 60
- overdose 661
- pregnancy 545
- renal impairment 579
- sexual adverse effects 139
- smoking status and 688
- weight gain risk 90
- cholesterol, blood 117, 118, 667
- cholinesterase inhibitors *see* acetylcholinesterase inhibitors
- chronic kidney disease 577–8
see also renal impairment
- cigarette smoking *see* smoking, cigarette
- cimetidine, with clozapine 149
- Circadin 402, 404
- citalopram 235
 adverse effects 332
 anxiety disorders 334–5
 breastfeeding 561
 cardiotoxicity 308, 312, 313
 children and adolescents
 anxiety disorders 371
 autism spectrum disorders 391
 depression 356
 obsessive compulsive disorder 374
 PTSD 380, 381
- dementia 522–3
- elderly 480
- epilepsy 633
- hepatic impairment 591
- HIV infection 599
- intravenous 290, 291
- minimum effective dose 250
- post-stroke depression 276
- refractory depression 255, 255
- renal impairment 578, 581
 switching from 296
- Clinical Institute Withdrawal Assessment of Alcohol, Revised (CIWA-Ar) 413, 414
- Clinical Opioid Withdrawal Scale 431, 435
- clomethiazole (chlormethiazole), renal impairment 585
- clomifene, tic disorders 399
- clomipramine 238
 adverse effects 332
 anxiety disorders 334–5
 childhood obsessive compulsive disorder 374, 375, 376
 discontinuation 285
 elderly 480
 epilepsy 633
- intravenous 291, 292
 pregnancy 546–7
 rectal 292, 294
 refractory depression 263
 renal impairment 581
 switching to/from 297–301
- clonazepam
 acute mania/hypomania 212
 akathisia 88
 autism spectrum disorders 393
 children and adolescents 371
 diazepam equivalent dose 347
 elderly 484
 panic disorder 335
 renal impairment 585
 tardive dyskinesia 98
- clonidine
 ADHD 385
 akathisia 88
 autism spectrum disorders 392, 393
 clozapine-related
 hypersalivation 174
 PTSD in young people 380, 381
 tic disorders 398
- Clopixol *see* zuclopentixol
- clozapine 147–87
 acute mania 213
 adverse effects 48, 165–85
 common 165–6, 165–7
 community-based patients 161, 163–4
 serious haematological and cardiovascular 170–3
 uncommon or unusual 168, 168–9
see also specific adverse effects
 alternatives to 153–5, 153–8
 augmentation 37, 38, 42, 60, 92, 149, 150
 bipolar affective disorder 208
 blood lipids and 118, 119
 borderline personality disorder 619
 breastfeeding 566
 caffeine interaction 692
 catatonia 106, 107
 chemotherapy and 186–7
 children and adolescents 367, 408
 classification as atypical 15
 community-based patients 160–4
 adverse effects 161, 163–4
 initiation guidelines 160–4, 162–3
 monitoring 160, 161, 163
 switching from other antipsychotics 161–3
 diabetes association 121–2
 dosing 147–8
 maximum licensed dose 24
 re-titration, after break in treatment 159, 159
 starting regimen 147, 147–8
 target 149
 titration in community 161, 162–3

724 Index

- clozapine (*cont'd*)
 ECT seizure threshold and 270
 elderly 481
 epilepsy 633
 first episode psychosis 31, 49
 hepatic impairment 592
 HIV infection 598, 601, 602
 hypertension association 128–9, 165
 learning disabilities 622
 lithium combinations 181–5, 183, 190
 monitoring physical health 45, 46, 161, 163
 NICE guidance 59, 60
 optimising treatment 149–52
 overdose 660
 Parkinson's disease 530
 plasma levels 3, 4–5, 148
 acting on results 11, 12–13
 optimising treatment 149
 response threshold 4, 149
 pneumonia risk 143, 168
 post-mortem blood concentrations 13
 pregnancy 544, 545
 prescribing 20
 relapsed schizophrenia 50
 relative efficacy 17, 18
 renal impairment 579
 sexual adverse effects 139
 smoking status and 688
 switching to 62, 85, 161–3
 tardive dyskinesia and 97
 tic disorders 399
 treatment-resistant schizophrenia 51
 unlicensed use 675
 velo-cardio-facial syndrome 644
 vs high-doses of other antipsychotics 28, 29
 for water intoxication 131
 weight gain risk 90
 clozapine-induced gastrointestinal hypomotility (CIGH) 12, 165, 177–80
 acute, management 178
 clozapine re-challenge after severe 178–9
 prevention and simple management 177–8
 risk factors 177
 cocaine 463–4, 470
 co-existing alcohol dependence 424
 drug interactions 473–4
 post-mortem blood concentrations 13, 14
 vaccines 463–4
 withdrawal 463
 Cockcroft and Gault equation 576
 cocoa 500
 codeine 512
 cognitive behavioural therapy (CBT)
 anxiety disorders 335
 children and adolescents
 anxiety disorders 369
 depression 355, 357, 358
 obsessive compulsive disorder 374, 375
 PTSD 382
 depression in multiple sclerosis 534
 refractory schizophrenia 153
 cognitive enhancers *see* anti-dementia drugs
 cognitive impairment
 delirium 625, 626
 HIV infection 599
 mild *see* mild cognitive impairment
 multiple sclerosis 535
 non-psychotropics causing 651
see also dementia
 colitis, clozapine-induced 168
 complementary therapies (CTs) 695–9, 696–7
 dementia 518
 Parkinson's disease 531
 compliance *see* adherence, medication
 compliance aids 703–4
 compliance therapy, schizophrenia 703
 concentration problems, non-psychotropics causing 651
 Concerta XL 388
see also methylphenidate
 confusion
 non-psychotropics causing 652
 post-ECT 270
 Confusion Assessment Method (CAM) 625
 consent, capacity to give 621
 constipation, clozapine-induced *see* clozapine-induced gastrointestinal hypomotility
 contingency management, drug misuse 447, 452, 463
 contraception, bipolar illness 200, 205
 conversion disorder stupor 105, 107
 covert administration of medicines 479, 714–16
 COX-2 inhibitors
 lithium and 195
 schizophrenia 42
 C-reactive protein 667
 creatine (phospho)kinase 46, 102, 667
 creatinine, plasma 667
 creatinine clearance (CrCl) 576
 CUtLASS trial 17, 52, 86, 138
 cyclizine, dementia patients 509, 513
 D-cycloserine
 anxiety disorders 372
 PTSD prevention 382
 refractory depression 262
 cyproheptadine
 anorexia nervosa 608
 antipsychotic-induced akathisia 85, 88
 sexual dysfunction 138, 140
 unlicensed use 675
 cyproterone, tic disorders 399
 cytochrome P450 (CYP) enzymes
 alcohol interactions 679, 679, 680
 anticonvulsant drug interactions 635
 antidepressant drug interactions 234, 303, 304–5
 caffeine interactions 690, 692
 HIV drug interactions 601–4
 psychotropic drug interactions 646, 647–9
 St John's wort interactions 247
 darifenacin 507, 509, 510
 darunavir 601
 delirium 625–31
 clozapine-induced 168
 drugs used to treat 627–9
 HIV infection 598
 non-psychotropics causing 651–2
 delirium tremens (DTs) 412, 412, 418
 demeclocycline 131
 dementia 487–528
 anticholinergic drug use 507–9, 508, 510
 cognitive enhancers *see* anti-dementia drugs
 cognitive side-effects of drugs 507–17, 514–15
 covert administration of medication 479, 715
 driving regulations 706, 709
 HIV-related 599
 Huntington's disease 539
 NICE guidance 495, 497, 521
 non-cognitive symptoms 517–28
 analgesics 517
 antidepressants 522–3
 antipsychotics 518–21
 benzodiazepines 522
 cognitive enhancers 521
 miscellaneous agents 524
 mood stabilisers/
 anticonvulsants 523
 non-drug measures 518
 other treatments 498–501
 Parkinson's disease 487, 529, 531
 vascular 501–2
see also Alzheimer's disease; mild cognitive impairment
 dementia with Lewy bodies (DLB) 502, 521, 531
 dependence syndrome 409–10
 depot antipsychotics *see* long-acting injection (LAI) antipsychotics

- depression 231–333
 alcohol dependence and 425–6
 anticonvulsant-associated 632–5
 atrial fibrillation and 657
 benzodiazepines 343–4
 bipolar 216–22
 carbamazepine 203, 218
 children and adolescents 363, 365
 lithium 190, 217, 219
 meta-analysis 219
 psychostimulants 273
 treatment 216–22, 217–18
 valproate 198, 217
 caffeine consumption 693
 carbamazepine 203
 children and adolescents 355–61, 359
 chronic kidney disease 578
 dementia and 522
 diabetes and 321–3
 driving regulations 708
 elderly 279–82, 480–1
 antidepressant prophylaxis 288
 psychostimulants 274
 epilepsy 632
 first episode 287
 HIV infection 599
 Huntington's disease 539
 lithium 190, 288
 multiple sclerosis 533, 534
 nicotine use 685
 non-psychotropics causing 652
 Parkinson's disease 529, 529
 post-partum 545–8
 post-stroke 274, 276–8
 pregnancy 545–8, 549
 prescribing principles 231
 psychostimulants 272–5, 273–4
 psychotic 266–8
 rating scales 253
 recurrent 287, 287–8
 refractory (resistant) 255, 255–65, 265
 1st choice treatment 256–9, 257
 2nd choice treatment 260, 260–1
 children and adolescents 358
 other treatments 262–3, 262–4
 psychostimulants 273
 secondary to medical illness 274
 sexual dysfunction 324
 St John's wort 246–9
 treatment 231–82
 algorithm 252–3
 effectiveness 233
 NICE guidelines 232, 288
see also antidepressants
 desipramine
 multiple sclerosis 534
 pregnancy 547
 desmopressin 130, 166
 desvenlafaxine
 cardiotoxicity 309
 elderly 480
 hepatic impairment 594
 hyponatraemia 316
 overdose 660
 renal impairment 581
 switching to/from 299–301
 dexamethasone, refractory
 depression 262
 dexamfetamine
 ADHD 384–5, 388
 cocaine dependence 463
 depression 273, 274
 misuse 464
 Dexedrine *see* dexamfetamine
 dextromethorphan/quinidine
 (Nuedexta) 534
 diabetes insipidus, nephrogenic,
 lithium-induced 191
 diabetes mellitus
 antipsychotic-associated 121–7
 depression/antidepressants
 and 321, 321–3
 monitoring 123, 123–4
 nicotine replacement therapy 458
 schizophrenia association 121
 diagnostic overshadowing 621
 diamorphine *see* heroin
 diazepam
 akathisia 88
 alcohol interaction 682
 alcohol withdrawal 415, 418
 delirium 628
 elderly 484
 emulsion (Diazemuls) 344
 GBL and GHB withdrawal 467, 467, 468
 HIV drug interactions 601, 602
 Huntington's disease 539
 paediatric rapid
 tranquillisation 406
 renal impairment 585
 stupor 106
 switching to 347, 347
 tardive dyskinesia 98
 tolerance test 346
 didanosine 603
 DiGeorge syndrome 643–5
 digoxin 247, 513
 dihydrocodeine, opioid
 dependence 444
 dimebon, Alzheimer's disease 499
 diphenhydramine, akathisia 85, 89
 diphenylbutylpiperidines 15
 Discontinuation–Emergent Signs and
 Symptoms (DESS) scale 283
 disinhibition, benzodiazepines
 and 350–2
 disintegrative disorder, childhood 390
 disorientation, non-psychotropics
 causing 652
 Disruptive Mood Dysregulation
 Disorder (DMDD) 365
 disulfiram (Antabuse)
 alcohol dependence 422–3, 423
 cocaine dependence 463
 diuretics, lithium interactions 194,
 194–5
 divalproex *see* valproate
 docosahexaenoic acid (DHA),
 schizophrenia 54
 docusate 178
 dolutegravir 604
 domperidone, dementia
 patients 509–11
 donepezil 488–9
 adverse effects 493–4
 Alzheimer's disease 487–90
 delirium 628
 drug interactions 494–5, 496
 efficacy 489–90
 Huntington's disease 539
 mechanism of action 487
 multiple sclerosis 535
 non-cognitive symptoms of
 dementia 521
 refractory schizophrenia 153
 renal impairment 586
 schizophrenia 42
 switching to/from 491–2
 tardive dyskinesia 98
 tolerability 492
 vascular dementia 501–2
 dosulepin (dothiepin) 238
 adverse effects 332
 depression prophylaxis 288
 elderly 279
 epilepsy 633
 renal impairment 581
 dothiepin *see* dosulepin
 doxepin 238
 adverse effects 332
 nanoemulsion (transdermal) 291,
 293
 rectal 292, 294
 renal impairment 581
 dreams, drug-induced 651
 Driver and Vehicle Licensing Agency
 (DVLA) 706, 707–12
 driving 706–13
 DVLA regulations 706, 708–11,
 711–12
 effects of mental illness 706
 effects of psychotropics 706–11,
 707
 epilepsy and 635
 GMC guidance 712
 medication-induced sedation 711
 dronabinol, anorexia nervosa 607
 drooling *see* hypersalivation
 droperidol, rapid tranquillisation 611
 Drug Attitude Inventory (DAI) 701

726 Index

- drug misuse/dependence 463–75, 470–1
 alcohol dependence with 424–5
 benzodiazepines 466
 driving regulations 706, 711
 GBL and GHB 467–8
 NICE guidance 451–3
 non-psychotropic medications 653
 polysubstance abuse 464
 psychotropic drug
 interactions 472–5, 473–4
 stimulant drugs 463–5
 urine testing 469
see also opioid dependence; 'street drugs'
- dual diagnosis 409, 469, 621
- duloxetine 242
 adverse effects 234, 332
 anxiety disorders 334
 breastfeeding 561
 cardiotoxicity 308
 eating disorders 609
 ECT seizure threshold and 269
 elderly 279, 281, 480
 epilepsy 633
 hepatic impairment 593
 hyponatraemia 316
 minimum effective dose 250
 overdose 659
 Parkinson's disease 529
 post-stroke depression 276
 pregnancy 548
 renal impairment 581
 sexual adverse effects 325, 326
 smoking status and 688
 switching to/from 299–301
- dyslipidaemia
 antipsychotic-related 117–20
 pseudo-hyponatraemia 130
 screening 45, 118, 119
 treatment 118–19, 144
see also lipids, blood
- dysthymia, effectiveness of antidepressants 233
- dystonia
 acute, after rapid tranquillisation 615
 antipsychotic-induced 84–5
- early-onset schizophrenia-spectrum (EOSS) disorder 367
- eating disorders 607–10
 atypical 609
 Ebstein's anomaly 549
 ECG *see* electrocardiography
- e-cigarettes 459–60, 684
- ecstasy 473–4
- ECT *see* electroconvulsive therapy
- efavirenz 603
- eicosapentaenoic acid (EPA)
 refractory depression 263
 schizophrenia 54, 150
- ejaculatory disorders 137, 138, 139
- elderly 477–86
 administering medicines in foodstuffs 479
 alcohol dependence 424
 anticholinergic drugs 507–12, 508
 antipsychotics and pneumonia 143
 cognitive side-effects of drugs 507–15, 514–15
 depression 279–82, 280–1, 480–1
 antidepressant prophylaxis 288
 post-stroke 276
 psychostimulants 274
 drug interactions 478–9
 hypnotic agents 484–5
 hyponatraemia risk 316
 pharmacodynamic changes 477
 pharmacokinetic changes 478
 prescribing principles 477–8
 psychotropic drug doses 480–5
 reducing drug-related risk 479
 renal impairment 577
see also dementia
- electrocardiography (ECG)
 antidepressant-treated patients 312, 313
 antipsychotic-treated patients 46, 59, 110–16
 bipolar affective disorder 229
 methadone-treated patients 438, 438–9
- electroconvulsive therapy (ECT)
 antidepressant prophylaxis after 288
 catatonia 106, 107
 child and adolescent depression 357
 epilepsy 632
 Huntington's disease 539
 multiple sclerosis 534
 Parkinson's disease 529, 530
 pregnancy 548
 psychotic depression 267
 psychotropics and 269–70, 269–71
 refractory depression 257
 refractory schizophrenia 154
- electroencephalography (EEG) 46
- electrolyte disturbances
 alcohol-related 681
 anorexia nervosa 608
- Elvanse *see* lisdexamfetamine
- elvitegravir 604
- emtricitabine 603
- energy drinks 691
- enfuvirtide 604
- eosinophilia, clozapine-induced 168
- eosinophils 670
- epilepsy 632–6
 antidepressant/antipsychotic use 632, 633–4
 depression and psychosis 632
- driving 635
 learning disability 621–3
 pregnancy 551–2, 552
see also anticonvulsants; seizures
- EPS *see* extrapyramidal side-effects
- Equasym *see* methylphenidate
- Equasym XL 388
- erectile dysfunction 137, 138, 140
- erythrocytes 670
- erythrocyte sedimentation rate (ESR) 670
- escitalopram 235
 adverse effects 332
 breastfeeding 562
 cardiotoxicity 308, 312, 313
 children and adolescents 408
 autism spectrum disorders 391
 depression 356
 obsessive compulsive disorder 374
 elderly 480
 HIV infection 599
 hyponatraemia 316
 intravenous 290, 291
 minimum effective dose 250
 placebo response 676
 post-stroke depression 276
 renal impairment 582
- estimated glomerular filtration rate (eGFR) 576
- eszopiclone, renal impairment 585
- ethanol *see* alcohol
- etravirine 603
- EUFEIST study 41
- euphoria
 multiple sclerosis 534–5
 non-psychotropics causing 653
- EVP-6124: 58
- extrapyramidal side-effects (EPS) 84–5, 84–7
 antipsychotic classification and 15–16
 first vs second-generation antipsychotics 17, 52
 never-medicated schizophrenia 86
 switching antipsychotics 144
 treatment 85
see also akathisia; dystonia; tardive dyskinesia
- famotidine 93, 154
- Fatal Toxicity Index (FTI) 312–13
- fatigue
 depression with 273
 HIV-associated 274
 multiple sclerosis 535–6
 non-psychotropics causing 652
- fentanyl patches, older people 512
- ferritin, serum 667
- fesoterodine 509, 510
- fever, clozapine-induced 161, 166

- fibre, dietary 177–8
 first episode psychosis 31, 49
 first-generation antipsychotics (FGAs) 15
 adverse effects 17, 86
 bipolar affective disorder 208, 225
 children and adolescents 367
 delirium 627
 dementia 518
 diabetes risk 121
 dyslipidaemia and 117
 elderly 481–3
 equivalent doses 26, 26
 Huntington's disease 538
 long-acting injectable 66, 67, 67–8
 maximum licensed doses 24
 minimum effective doses 22
 negative symptoms 41
 place in therapy 52–3
 pregnancy 543–4, 545
 relative efficacy 17
 renal impairment 578, 579–80
 sexual adverse effects 138, 139
 tic disorders 398
 fish oils *see* omega-3 fatty acids
 fluid restriction, hyponatraemia 131, 317
 flumazenil 344
 guidelines for use 614
 rapid tranquilisation and 615
 flunitrazepam, disinhibitory reactions 350
 fluoxetine 235
 adverse effects 332
 antidepressant discontinuation and 285
 antipsychotic-induced weight gain 93
 anxiety disorders 334, 335
 bipolar depression 216, 217, 219
 breastfeeding 562
 cardiotoxicity 308, 312
 children and adolescents 408
 anxiety 370, 371
 autism spectrum disorders 391, 394, 395
 depression 355–6, 357, 358
 obsessive compulsive disorder 374, 375
 discontinuation 284
 drug interactions 635
 eating disorders 608, 609
 elderly 480
 hepatic impairment 593
 minimum effective dose 250
 post-stroke depression 276
 pregnancy 547, 549
 psychotic depression 266
 refractory depression 257
 renal impairment 582
 sublingual 290, 291
 switching to/from 297–301
 unlicensed use 675
 flupentixol 15
 adverse effects 48
 breastfeeding 568
 depot (flupentixol decanoate) 67, 68
 dose reduction 72
 elderly 482
 equivalent dose 26
 maximum licensed dose 24
 pharmacokinetics 70
 equivalent dose 26
 hepatic impairment 592
 maximum licensed dose 24
 pregnancy 544
 renal impairment 579
 sexual adverse effects 139
 fluphenazine
 adverse effects 15, 48
 depot (fluphenazine decanoate) 67
 elderly 483
 equivalent dose 26
 maximum licensed dose 24
 pharmacokinetics 70
 equivalent dose 26
 Huntington's disease 538
 inadequate response 62
 renal impairment 579
 smoking status and 688
 flurazepam, HIV drug interactions 601, 602
 flutamide, Tourette's syndrome 399
 fluvoxamine 236
 adverse effects 332
 breastfeeding 562
 cardiotoxicity 308
 children and adolescents
 anxiety disorders 370, 371
 autism spectrum disorders 391
 obsessive compulsive disorder 374
 with clozapine 149
 minimum effective dose 250
 renal impairment 582
 smoking status and 688
 switching to/from 297–301
 tardive dyskinesia 98
 folic acid supplements 695
 Alzheimer's disease 498
 anticonvulsant-treated pregnant women 550, 552
 schizophrenic negative symptoms 41
 valproate-treated women 200
 food, covert administration of medicines in 479, 714–16
 fosamprenavir 601
 full blood count (FBC), monitoring 45, 228
 gabapentin
 acute mania 213
 alcohol dependence 423
 bipolar depression 218
 dementia 523
 HIV infection 599
 tardive dyskinesia 98
 galactorrhoea 133, 138
 galantamine 488–9
 adverse effects 493–4
 Alzheimer's disease 487–9, 490
 drug interactions 494–5, 496
 efficacy 490
 mechanism of action 487
 non-cognitive symptoms of dementia 521
 renal impairment 586
 schizophrenia 42
 tolerability 492
 vascular dementia 501–2
 γ -butyryl-lactone (GBL) 467, 467–8, 470
 γ -hydroxybutyrate (GHB) 467, 467–8, 470
 gamma-glutamyl transferase 667
 gastrointestinal bleeding
 NSAID-related 512
 SSRI-related 234, 279, 328–31, 329
 gastrointestinal drugs, dementia patients 509–11, 514
 gastrointestinal hypomotility, clozapine-induced *see* clozapine-induced
 gastrointestinal hypomotility
 gastro-oesophageal reflux disease (GORD), clozapine-induced 166
 GBL (γ -butyryl-lactone) 467, 467–8, 470
 generalised anxiety disorder (GAD) 337–8
 NICE guidance 339
 pregabalin 335
 SSRIs/SNRIs 334
 valproate 198
 General Medical Council (GMC), driving guidelines 712
 GHB (γ -hydroxybutyrate) 467, 467–8, 470
Ginkgo biloba
 dementia 498, 524
 drug interactions 695
 schizophrenia 42, 150, 154
 tardive dyskinesia 85, 98
 ginseng
 Alzheimer's disease 499
 drug interactions 695
 multiple sclerosis 536
 Glasgow Antipsychotic Side-effect Scale (GASS) 17, 20
 glomerular filtration rate (GFR) 576

728 Index

- glucose, blood
 antidepressant drug effects 321
 fasting plasma (FPG) 123, 123–4
 monitoring
 antipsychotic-treated patients 45, 123, 123–4
 bipolar affective disorder 228
 psychotropic drug effects 668
 random plasma (RPG) 124
 see also hyperglycaemia; impaired glucose tolerance
 glycine, schizophrenia 41–2, 154
 glycopyrrolate, clozapine-related hypersalivation 175
 granisetron
 dementia patients 511
 schizophrenia 42
 granulocyte colony-stimulating factor (G-CSF) 184, 186
 granulocyte macrophage colony-stimulating factor (GM-CSF) 182
 guanfacine 175
 ADHD 385
 autism spectrum disorders 392
 PTSD in young people 380, 381
 tic disorders 398
 H₂ antagonists
 antipsychotic-induced weight gain 93
 dementia patients 515
 haematological side-effects
 clozapine 170–3
 psychotropic drugs 665, 670–2
 haemoglobin
 glycosylated (HbA_{1c}) 124, 668
 psychotropics affecting 670
 hallucinations
 alcohol withdrawal 418
 non-psychotropics causing 652, 654
 Parkinson's disease 530
 haloperidol 15
 acute mania/hypomania 212
 adverse effects 48
 alcohol withdrawal 418
 bipolar affective disorder 226
 breastfeeding 566
 children and adolescents 408
 costs 213
 delirium 626–30, 627
 dementia 519
 depot (haloperidol decanoate) 67, 67
 dose reduction 72
 elderly 483
 equivalent dose 26
 maximum licensed dose 24
 pharmacokinetics 70
 vs paliperidone palmitate 52, 77–8
 diabetes risk 121
 elderly 482
 epilepsy 633
 equivalent dose 26
 hepatic impairment 592
 HIV infection 598, 602
 Huntington's disease 538, 539
 learning disabilities 622
 overdose 660
 pneumonia risk 143
 pregnancy 544, 545
 rapid tranquillisation 611–12, 613–14
 children and adolescents 406
 renal impairment 578, 579
 schizophrenia
 combination therapy 37, 150
 dose-response effects 33, 61
 maximum licensed dose 24
 minimum effective dose 22
 monitoring physical health 46
 negative symptoms 41
 refractory 155
 relative efficacy 17
 therapeutic index 52
 sexual adverse effects 139
 smoking status and 689
 tic disorders 398
 weight gain risk 90
 Hamilton Depression Rating Scale (HAM-D) 253
 heart failure, clozapine-treated patients 170–1
 heart rate, effects of antidepressants 308–9
 heat stroke, clozapine-induced 168
 hepatic failure,
 clozapine-induced 168
 hepatic impairment 590–7
 alcohol dependence 417, 682
 antidepressants 591, 593–4
 antipsychotics 591, 592–3
 drug-induced 591–6
 methadone dosing 436
 mood stabilisers 594
 nicotine replacement therapy 458
 prescribing principles 590–1
 recommended agents 591
 stimulants 595
 see also liver disease
 hepatitis B and C 472
 hepatotoxicity, drug-induced 595–6
 herbal medicines 695–8, 696
 Alzheimer's disease 499–500
 drug interactions 695
 hyperprolactinaemia 134
 see also *Ginkgo biloba*; St John's wort
 heroin (diamorphine) 471
 buprenorphine substitution 439–44
 dependence *see* opioid dependence
 detoxification 444–5
 drug interactions 473–4
 injectable maintenance prescribing 444
 methadone substitution 433–9
 withdrawal 431
 high-density lipoprotein (HDL) 117, 668
 hirudin, Alzheimer's disease 499
 HIV infection/AIDS 598–606
 adverse psychiatric effects of antiretrovirals 604, 605
 drug misusers 472
 neurocognitive disorders 599
 pharmacodynamic drug interactions 604, 606
 pharmacokinetic drug interactions 600, 601–4
 psychostimulants in depression 274
 psychotropic prescribing 598–600
 homeopathy 696
 Huntington's disease 538–9, 538–40
 huperzine A, Alzheimer's disease 499–500
 9-hydroxyrisperidone *see* paliperidone
 hydroxyzine 343, 513
 hyoscine (scopolamine)
 clozapine-induced hypersalivation 165, 175
 cognitive effects in dementia 511
 depression 262, 293
 hypercalcaemia, lithium-induced 191
 hyperemesis gravidarum 543–4, 553
 hyperforin 247
 hyperglycaemia
 antipsychotic-induced 121–3
 pseudohyponatraemia 130
 see also diabetes mellitus
 hypericins 246
Hypericum perforatum *see* St John's wort
 hyperlipidaemia *see* dyslipidaemia
 hyperparathyroidism,
 lithium-induced 191
 hyperprolactinaemia
 antidepressants and 319, 319–20
 antipsychotic-induced 48, 52, 133–6
 antipsychotics not causing 133, 133
 monitoring 46, 133–4
 sexual dysfunction and 133, 138
 switching antipsychotics 144
 treatment 134
 hypersalivation
 anticholinergics for, dementia patients 512, 514
 clozapine-induced 165, 174–5, 174–6
 hypersomnia, depression with 273
 hypertension
 antipsychotics and 128–9
 clozapine-induced 165
 hypertensive crisis,
 MAOI-induced 234
 hypertriglyceridaemia 117, 118

- hypnotics
 benzodiazepine 343
 biochemical side-effects 666
 disinhibitory reactions 350
 driving and 707
 elderly 484–5
 renal impairment 578, 585–6
- hypoglycaemia, alcohol-induced 681
- hypomania 211–15
 children and adolescents 358–9
 driving regulations 709
 drug treatment 211, 211–15
 non-psychotropics causing 653
 see also mania
- hyponatraemia
 antidepressant-induced 234, 279, 316–18
 antipsychotic-induced 130–2, 131
 other drugs associated with 317
 treatment 317
- hypotension
 antidepressant-induced 332–3
 antipsychotic-induced 48, 128
 clozapine-induced 147, 161, 165
 rapid tranquilisation 615
 switching antipsychotics 144
 see also postural hypotension
- hypothyroidism, lithium-induced 191
- Hy's rule, hepatotoxicity of new drugs 591
- ibuprofen 270
- illicit drugs *see* 'street drugs'
- iloperidone
 adverse effects 48
 bipolar affective disorder 208
 blood lipids and 117
 breastfeeding 568
 elderly 481
 equivalent dose 27
 hepatic impairment 592
 maximum licensed dose 24
 minimum effective dose 22
 neuroleptic malignant syndrome 102–3
 overdose 661
 weight gain risk 90
- imipramine 239
- imipramine 239
 adverse effects 332
 child and adolescent depression 356–7
 discontinuation symptoms 284
 hepatic impairment 591
 pregnancy 547, 549
 psychotic depression 266
 rectal 292, 294
 renal impairment 582
 transdermal (nanoemulsion) 291, 293
- impaired glucose tolerance
 antipsychotic-associated 121–7, 124
 switching antipsychotics 144
- impulsiveness, autism spectrum disorders 391–2
- inattention, autism spectrum disorders 391–2
- indinavir 247, 601
- indomethacin 512
- infants, breastfed 559
- inositol, bipolar depression 218
- insomnia
 melatonin for childhood 402–4, 404
 non-psychotropics causing 653
 pregnancy 552–3
 see also hypnotics
- interferon- β therapy 533
- international normalised ratio 671
- interstitial nephritis, clozapine-induced 168
- intoxication, acute *see* acute intoxication
- ipratropium 175
- irritability
 autism spectrum disorders 392
 non-psychotropics causing 653
- isocarboxazid 240, 333
- isoniazid 515
- ITI-007: 56
- ketamine
 bipolar depression 218
 childhood obsessive compulsive disorder 377
 depression 293
 refractory depression 260
- ketanserin, tic disorders 399
- ketoconazole, refractory depression 262
- Korsakoff's syndrome 419
- lability, non-psychotropics causing 653
- lactate dehydrogenase 668
- lactulose 178
- lamivudine 604
- lamotrigine
 acute mania 213
 bipolar affective disorder 223, 226
 bipolar depression 216, 217, 219, 363
 borderline personality disorder 619
 breastfeeding 569–70
 clozapine augmentation 150
 dementia 523
 depressant effects 634
 eating disorders 609
 elderly 484
 hepatic impairment 594
 HIV infection 599
 Huntington's disease 538
 learning disabilities 622
 overdose 661
 plasma level monitoring 3
- pregnancy 550, 552
 refractory depression 260
 renal impairment 584
 schizophrenia 42, 154
- latrepirdine, Huntington's disease 539
- laughter and crying, pathological (PLC), multiple sclerosis 533–4
- laxatives
 clozapine-induced constipation 178–9
 dementia patients 509, 514
 learning disabilities (LD) 621–4
 assessment of care environments 623
 capacity and consent 621
 driving regulations 709
 medications used 622–3
 physical co-morbidity 621–3
 psychological interventions 623
 sensitivity to side-effects 623
- lethargy, non-psychotropics causing 651, 652
- leucopenia, psychotropics causing 671
- levetiracetam
 acute mania 213
 bipolar affective disorder 223
 Huntington's disease 538
 tardive dyskinesia 98
 tic disorders 399
- levomepromazine, maximum licensed dose 24
- levothyroxine *see* thyroxine
- Lewy body dementia 502, 521, 531
- libido (sexual desire) 137
 reduced 138, 324
- licensed medicines, unlicensed use *see* off-label prescribing
- lipids, blood
 antipsychotic drug effects 117–18
 monitoring 45, 228
 see also dyslipidaemia
- lipoproteins, plasma 668
- lisdexamfetamine
 ADHD 385, 388
 depression 273
- lithium 189–96
 acute mania/hypomania 189, 211, 213
 adverse effects 191
 alcohol dependence 426, 682
 augmentation of antidepressants 190
 autism spectrum disorders 393
 bipolar affective disorder 189–96, 225, 226
 bipolar depression 190, 217, 219
 borderline personality disorder 619
 breastfeeding 570
 caffeine interaction 692
 cannabis interaction 474
 children and adolescents 363, 364, 408

730 Index

- lithium (*cont'd*)
- clozapine combinations 181–5, 183, 190
 - costs 213
 - depression 190, 288
 - discontinuation 193
 - driving and 707
 - drug interactions 193–5, 194
 - ECT seizure threshold and 269
 - elderly 484
 - formulations 191
 - hepatic impairment 594
 - HIV infection 599
 - Huntington's disease 539
 - for hyponatraemia 131
 - indications 189–90
 - learning disabilities 623
 - mechanism of action 189
 - multiple sclerosis 534
 - on-treatment monitoring 192, 193
 - overdose 661
 - plasma levels 3, 190–1
 - pregnancy 549–50, 551
 - prescribing 192
 - pre-treatment tests 192, 192
 - refractory depression 257, 262
 - renal impairment 191, 584
 - suicide and 190
 - surgical patients 640
 - toxicity 192
 - women of child-bearing age 192
- liver disease
- alcohol withdrawal 417
 - drug-induced 591–6
 - see also* hepatic impairment
- liver function tests (LFTs) 590
- bipolar affective disorder 228
 - buprenorphine and 443
 - drug-induced hepatic toxicity 595–6
 - liver disease 591
 - schizophrenia 46
- lofepramine 239, 332
- adverse effects 332
 - cardiotoxicity 308, 312, 313
 - elderly 280, 480
 - minimum effective dose 250
 - overdose 659
 - renal impairment 582
- lofexidine
- clozapine-induced hypersalivation 175
 - opioid withdrawal 446
- long-acting injection (LAI)
- antipsychotics (depot antipsychotics) 18, 66–83
 - bipolar affective disorder 208
 - differences between 67–8
 - dose reduction 72–3
 - doses and frequencies 67
 - elderly 482–3
- epilepsy 634
- equivalent doses 26, 27
 - first episode psychosis 31
 - intramuscular anticholinergics and 68
 - maintenance treatment 32
 - management of patients 72–3
 - maximum licensed doses 24–5
 - NICE guidance 60
 - non-adherent patients 704
 - pharmacokinetics 70, 70–1
 - prescribing advice 66
- loop diuretics, lithium
- interaction 194, 194–5
- loperamide 509, 514
- lopinavir 602
- lorazepam
- acute mania/hypomania 212
 - catatonia/stupor 106, 107
 - children and adolescents 371, 406
 - delirium 628
 - diazepam equivalent dose 347
 - elderly 485
 - HIV infection 598
 - rapid tranquillisation 406, 611, 612, 613
 - renal impairment 585
- lormetazepam, diazepam equivalent dose 347
- low-density lipoprotein (LDL) 117, 668
- loxapine
- adverse effects 48
 - diabetes risk 121
 - epilepsy 634
 - inhaled 56–7, 611
- lubiprostone 179
- lurasidone
- adverse effects 48
 - atrial fibrillation 657
 - bipolar affective disorder 208, 365
 - bipolar depression 217, 219, 363
 - blood lipids and 117
 - breastfeeding 567
 - children and adolescents 365
 - elderly 481
 - epilepsy 633
 - equivalent dose 27
 - glucose homeostasis and 123
 - hepatic impairment 592
 - hyperprolactinaemia and 134
 - maximum licensed dose 24
 - minimum effective dose 22
 - overdose 661
 - renal impairment 579
 - switching to 92
 - weight gain risk 90
- LY2140023: 42
- lymphocytes 670
- maca root 326
- mania
- acute 211–15
 - antipsychotics 208, 211, 211–12, 213
 - carbamazepine 203, 211
 - children and adolescents 363, 364, 365
 - drug costs 213
 - drug treatment 211, 211–15, 212–13
 - lithium 189, 211, 213
 - valproate 197–8, 211, 213
 - children and adolescents 358–9, 362, 363
 - driving regulations 709
 - HIV infection 599
 - multiple sclerosis 534–5
 - non-psychotherapeutics causing 653
 - prophylaxis 190, 198, 203
- MAOIs *see* monoamine oxidase inhibitors
- maraviroc 604
- Maxepa *see* omega-3 fatty acids
- MDA (3,4-methylene dioxymfetamine) 473–4
- MDRD (Modification of Diet in Renal Disease) formula 576
- mean cell haemoglobin 670
- mean cell haemoglobin concentration 670
- mean cell volume 670
- mebeverine 511
- mecamylamine, refractory depression 262
- medication
- adherence *see* adherence, medication
 - assessing attitudes to 702
 - covert administration in food or drink 479, 714–16
 - paying patients to take 704
 - refusal, patient rights 701, 714, 715
- Medicines and Healthcare Products Regulatory Agency (MHRA)
- methadone therapy 438
 - nicotine replacement therapy 458
 - paediatric use of risperidone 394
 - SSRIs in children 374–5
 - varenicline for smoking cessation 461
- Medikinet 388
- see also* methylphenidate
- melatonin
- autism spectrum disorders 393
 - benzodiazepine withdrawal 348
 - childhood insomnia 402–4, 404
 - delirium 629
 - drug-induced weight gain 93
 - elderly 485
 - tardive dyskinesia 98
 - unlicensed use 674, 675
 - see also* agomelatine

- memantine 488–9
 acute mania 213
 adverse effects 494
 Alzheimer's disease 487, 489, 490–1
 combination therapy 495
 dementia with Lewy bodies 502
 drug interactions 497
 efficacy 489, 490–1
 Huntington's disease 539
 mechanism of action 487
 multiple sclerosis 535
 myasthenia gravis 512
 NICE guidance 497
 non-cognitive symptoms of dementia 521
 Parkinson's disease 531
 renal impairment 586
 schizophrenia 42, 150, 154
 switching to/from 491–2
 tolerability 493
 vascular dementia 501–2
- mental capacity *see* capacity, mental
 Mental Capacity Act (MCA) 714, 715
 Mental Health Act (MHA) 712, 714, 715
- mental illness
 alcohol use disorders 425–7
 caffeine consumption 692–3
 driving and 706, 708–11
 illicit drug use 469
 learning disabilities 621
 nicotine use 684–5
 placebo effect 676–8
 velo-cardio-facial syndrome 643–5
see also specific conditions
- metformin 92, 93
- methadone 433–9, 471
 analgesia for patients on 437–8
 buprenorphine vs 431, 432
 cautions 436
 clinical effectiveness 433
 detoxification regimens 445, 446, 448
 drug interactions 205, 473–4
 HIV drug interactions 602
 NICE guidance 451
 overdose 436–7, 662
 post-mortem blood concentrations 13
 pregnancy and breastfeeding 449–50
 prescribing 433–6
 QT prolongation/ECG monitoring 438, 438–9
 stabilisation in community 436
 surgical patients 640
 transfer to buprenorphine from 441, 441–2, 443
- methylcellulose 93
- methylidopa, velo-cardio-facial syndrome 644
- methylphenidate
 ADHD 384, 384, 386, 388
 autism spectrum disorders 391–2
 depression 272, 273–4
 driving and 707
 hepatic impairment 595
 pregnancy 554
 psychotic depression 267
 refractory depression 263
 unlicensed use 675
 velo-cardio-facial syndrome 645
- metoclopramide
 adverse effects 89, 97
 alcohol withdrawal 420
 dementia patients 509
 tic disorders 399
- metyrosine, velo-cardio-facial syndrome 644
- MHRA *see* Medicines and Healthcare products Regulatory Agency
- mianserin 242
 adverse effects 332
 antipsychotic-induced akathisia 85, 88
 breastfeeding 562
 overdose 660
 post-stroke depression 276
 refractory depression 257
 refractory schizophrenia 154
 schizophrenia 42
- midazolam
 akathisia 89
 HIV drug interactions 601, 602, 603
 rapid tranquillisation 611, 612, 613
 children and adolescents 406
- mifepristone 218, 267
- mild cognitive impairment (MCI) 502
 anti-dementia drugs 493, 502
 vitamin supplements 498
- mineral supplements, anorexia nervosa 607
- Mini Mental State Examination (MMSE) 487
- minocycline
 psychotic depression 267
 schizophrenia 42, 153, 154
- mirtazapine 242
 adverse effects 332
 antipsychotic-induced akathisia 85, 88
 breastfeeding 563
 cardiotoxicity 307, 308, 312–13
 children and adolescents
 anxiety disorders 371, 371
 depression 357
 diabetes and 321
 discontinuation symptoms 283
 ECT seizure threshold and 269
 elderly 279, 281, 480
 epilepsy 632, 633
 hepatic impairment 593
 HIV infection 599
 hyperprolactinaemia and 319
 hyponatraemia 316
- intravenous 291, 292
 minimum effective dose 250
 overdose 660
 post-mortem blood concentrations 13
 post-stroke depression 276
 pregnancy 548
 refractory depression 256, 257
 renal impairment 582
 schizophrenia 42, 154
 sexual adverse effects 325
 smoking status and 689
 switching to/from 296, 297–301
- moclobemide 241
 adverse effects 333
 breastfeeding 563
 cardiotoxicity 309, 312, 313
 clozapine-related hypersalivation 175
 epilepsy 633
 hepatic impairment 593
 minimum effective dose 250
 multiple sclerosis 534
 overdose 660
 pregnancy 548
 renal impairment 582
 switching to/from 297–301
- modafinil
 ADHD 385
 bipolar depression 218
 cocaine dependence 463
 depression 272, 273, 274
 multiple sclerosis 535–6
 overdose 662
 refractory depression 262
 schizophrenia 42
 surgical patients 640
- Modification of Diet in Renal Disease (MDRD) formula 576
- monoamine oxidase inhibitors (MAOIs) 240–1
 adverse effects 234, 333
 alcohol interactions 682
 breastfeeding 562
 caffeine interaction 692
 cardiotoxicity 308
 depression 234, 240–1
 diabetes and 321
 discontinuation symptoms 284, 284–5
 drug interactions 305
 ECT seizure threshold and 269
 hepatic impairment 593
 HIV infection 599
 Huntington's disease 539
 hyperprolactinaemia and 319
 hyponatraemia 316
 overdose 659
 pregnancy 548
 refractory depression 262
 sexual adverse effects 325
 surgical patients 637, 638
 switching to/from 297–301

732 Index

- monocytes 670
 Montgomery–Asberg Depression Rating Scale (MADRS) 253
 mood changes, non-psychotropics causing 653
 mood disorders *see* affective disorders
 mood stabilisers
 acute mania/hypomania 211, 211–12
 alcohol misusers 682
 atrial fibrillation 657
 autism spectrum disorders 393
 biochemical side-effects 667
 bipolar illness 189–207
 antipsychotic combinations 208
 children and adolescents 362–3, 364, 408
 prophylaxis 225–6
 rapid-cycling 223
 borderline personality disorder 619
 breastfeeding 560, 569–70
 dementia 523
 drug costs 213
 elderly 484
 hepatic impairment 591, 594
 HIV infection 599
 multiple sclerosis 534–5
 overdose 661
 pregnancy 549–50, 551, 553
 PTSD 381
 renal impairment 578, 584
see also anticonvulsants; carbamazepine; lithium; valproate
 morphine
 older people 512–13
 PTSD prevention 382
 slow release oral (SROM), opioid dependence 444
 movement disorders, nicotine use 685
 multiple sclerosis (MS) 533–7
 multivitamins *see* vitamin supplements
 music therapy 518
 myasthenia gravis, dementia patients 512, 514
 myocardial infarction (MI)
 antidepressant prescribing after 307, 308–9, 312
 protective effects of SSRIs 329
 myocarditis, clozapine-induced 161, 163–4, 170–2, 171
 nabilone, Huntington's disease 538
 N-acetylcysteine, refractory schizophrenia 154
 nalmefene 422
 naloxone
 buprenorphine overdose 443
 methadone overdose 436–7
 opioid overdose 450, 451
 take-home 450
 naloxone/buprenorphine (Suboxone) 431, 444
 naltrexone
 alcohol dependence 421–2, 422, 426–7
 amphetamine misuse 464
 analgesia for patients on 437
 anorexia nervosa 608
 learning disabilities 623
 NICE guidance 452
 opioid dependence 447–9, 448
 tardive dyskinesia 98
 unlicensed use 675
 naproxen 512
 National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence (NICE)
 ADHD 384
 adherence to medication 701, 702, 704
 alcohol dependence/harmful drinking 411, 421, 422
 anxiety spectrum disorders 334, 339
 benzodiazepines 343, 344
 bipolar affective disorder 190, 198, 203
 acute mania/hypomania 212
 prophylaxis 225–6
 rapid-cycling illness 223
 bipolar depression 216
 borderline personality disorder 618, 619
 carbamazepine 203, 205
 child and adolescent anxiety disorders 369
 child and adolescent depression 355
 dementia 495, 497, 521
 depression 232, 288
 lipid-lowering guidance 118–19
 lithium 190, 193
 obsessive compulsive disorder 339, 375, 377
 opioid dependence 431, 445, 447, 451–3
 psychotic depression 266
 PTSD in young people 379
 schizophrenia 16–17, 59–60
 smoking cessation 456–7
 substance misuse 451–3
 valproate 198, 199, 200
 nausea/vomiting
 antidepressant-induced 332–3
 clozapine-induced 166
 nemiifitide, refractory depression 262
 neonates
 antidepressant withdrawal effects 547, 549
 antipsychotic discontinuation symptoms 544–5, 545
 drug exposure in breastfed 559
 opioid withdrawal syndrome 449
see also breastfeeding
 neostigmine 178, 512
 nervousness, non-psychotropics causing 653
 'neuroleptic equivalents' 26
 neuroleptic malignant syndrome (NMS) 46, 102, 102–4
 vs catatonic stupor 106, 108
 neuroleptics *see* antipsychotics
 neutropenia
 benign ethnic 181
 chemotherapy-associated 186
 clozapine-induced 166, 168, 181–5
 psychotropics causing 671
see also agranulocytosis
 neutrophils 670–1
 nevirapine 603
 NICE *see* National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence
 nicotine 456–62
 drug interactions 462, 685–6, 688–9, 688–9
 psychotropic effects 684
 withdrawal symptoms 686
 nicotine dependence 684–9
 alcohol dependence with 425
 NICE guidance 456–7
 tic disorders 399
see also smoking, cigarette; smoking cessation
 nicotine replacement therapy (NRT) 457–60
 drug interactions 458
 e-cigarettes 459–60
 NICE guidance 456–7
 preparations and dose 458–9
 nicotinic alpha-7 receptor partial agonists 58
 nimodipine, bipolar affective disorder 223
 nitrazepam
 diazepam equivalent dose 347
 renal impairment 585
 nizatidine 93
 NMS *see* neuroleptic malignant syndrome
 nocebo effect 676
 nocturnal enuresis,
 clozapine-induced 166
 non-adherence *see* adherence
 non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors 603
 non-psychotropics, psychiatric side-effects 650–5, 651–4
 non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs)
 dementia 512
 lithium interactions 194, 195
 SSRI combination 328
 norclozapine 5, 149
 nortriptyline 239
 adverse effects 332
 cardiotoxicity 312, 313

- children and adolescents 356–7
ECT and 270
plasma level monitoring 3
post-stroke depression 276
pregnancy 547
refractory depression 262
renal impairment 582
transdermal patches 291, 293
nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors 603–4
nucleotide reverse transcriptase inhibitors 603–4
- obsessive compulsive disorder (OCD) 335, 337–8
children and adolescents 374–8, 376
NICE guidance 339, 375, 377
non-psychotropics causing 653
- ocular pigmentation, clozapine-induced 168
- oculogyric spasm (crisis) 84, 615
- oestrogens
anorexia nervosa 608
carbamazepine interaction 205
refractory depression 262
- off-label prescribing 673–5
examples of acceptable 674, 675
paediatric practice 353, 375
Royal College consensus statement 673–4, 674
- olanzapine
acute mania/hypomania 212
adverse effects 48
anorexia nervosa 607, 608
bipolar affective disorder 198, 208, 223, 225, 226
blood lipids and 117–18, 119
breastfeeding 567
catatonia 106
children and adolescents 408
bipolar affective disorder 364, 365
psychosis 367
rapid tranquillisation 406
costs 213
delirium 627
dementia 518–19, 520, 521
depression
bipolar 216, 217, 219
psychotic 266
refractory 257
diabetes association 122
elderly 482
epilepsy 633
equivalent dose 27
first episode psychosis 31
hepatic impairment 592
HIV infection 598
Huntington's disease 538
learning disabilities 622
long-acting injection (LAI) (mainly pamoate) 68, 75–6
dosing schedules 67, 75
pharmacokinetics 70
post-injection syndrome 75–6
switching to 75
monitoring physical health 45
multiple sclerosis 535
overdose 661
Parkinson's disease 530
plasma levels 3, 5–6, 62
pneumonia risk 143
post-mortem blood concentrations 13
pregnancy 544, 545
prolactin plasma levels and 133
rapid tranquillisation 611, 612, 613
renal impairment 578, 579
schizophrenia
clozapine augmentation 150
dose-response effects 28, 61
high-dose 28, 61
maintenance treatment 32, 33
maximum licensed dose 24
minimum effective dose 22
negative symptoms 41
place in therapy 51, 52
prescribing 20
refractory 153, 154
relative efficacy 17, 18
switching to 63, 88
sexual adverse effects 139
smoking status and 689
street drug intoxication 472
tardive dyskinesia and 97
tic disorders 399
for water intoxication 131
weight gain risk 90
- Omacor *see* omega-3 fatty acids
omega-3 fatty acids (fish oils)
Alzheimer's disease 499
bipolar depression 218
child and adolescent depression 357
clozapine augmentation 150
depression in pregnancy 548
elderly with depression 279
refractory depression 263
schizophrenia 54–5, 155
tardive dyskinesia 98
- OMS643762: 57
- ondansetron
refractory schizophrenia 153
schizophrenia 42, 155
tardive dyskinesia 98
tic disorders 399
- opioid(s)
overdose 450, 451
use in older people 512–13
withdrawal 431
withdrawal scales 431, 435
- opioid dependence 429–55
alcohol dependence with 425
alternative oral opioids 444
buprenorphine substitution 439–44
buprenorphine vs methadone 431, 432
cocaine dependence with 464
detoxification and reduction regimens 444–6, 446, 452
driving regulations 711
evaluation 430, 430–1
injectable maintenance opioids 444
methadone substitution 433–9
NICE guidelines 431, 445, 447, 451–3
pain management 437–8, 443
pregnancy and 432, 449–50
relapse prevention 447–9
substitute prescribing 429–30, 431–44
treatment aims 429
- oral glucose tolerance test (OGTT) 123, 123–4
- Org 25935: 57
- orgasm 137
disorders 139, 324
- orlistat 93, 179
- orthostatic hypotension *see* postural hypotension
- osteoporosis, anorexia nervosa 608
- over activity, autism spectrum disorders 391–2
- overdose, psychotropic drug 659–62, 659–64
- oxazepam
alcohol withdrawal 417
diazepam equivalent dose 347
renal impairment 585
- oxcarbazepine
acute mania 213
child and adolescent bipolar illness 364
dementia 523
- oxybutynin
clozapine-induced hypersalivation 175
cognitive effects in dementia 507, 509, 510
- oxycodone, older people 513
- oxytocin, autism spectrum disorders 391
- Pabrinex 419
- packed cell volume 671
- Paediatric Autoimmune Neuropsychiatric Disorder Associated with Streptococcus (PANDAS) 399
- paediatric patients *see* children and adolescents
- pain management
non-cognitive symptoms of dementia 517
opioid-dependent patients 437–8, 443

734 Index

- paliperidone
 adverse effects 48
 breastfeeding 567
 hepatic impairment 592
 maximum licensed dose 24
 monitoring physical health 46
 neuroleptic malignant syndrome 103
 overdose 661
 palmitate long-acting injection (LAI) 68, 77–9
 dose equivalents 27, 77
 dosing schedule 67, 77
 elderly 483
 maximum licensed dose 25
 pharmacokinetics 70
 switching to 78
 vs haloperidol decanoate 52, 77–8
 plasma level monitoring 3, 7
 renal impairment 580
 weight gain risk 90
 pancreatitis, clozapine-induced 168
 PANDAS 399
 panic disorder 334–5, 337–8
 NICE guidance 334, 339
 non-psychotropics causing 653
 paracetamol, dementia patients 512, 517
 parkinsonism
 antipsychotic-induced 48, 84–5
 never-medicated schizophrenia 86
see also extrapyramidal side-effects
 Parkinson's disease 529–32
 anti-dementia drugs 502
 dementia 487, 529, 531
 depression 529, 529
 nicotine use 685
 psychosis 530, 530–1
 parotid gland swelling, clozapine-induced 168
 paroxetine 236
 adverse effects 234, 332
 alcohol dependence 426
 anxiety disorders 335
 breastfeeding 563
 cardiotoxicity 309
 children and adolescents
 anxiety 370, 371
 depression 356
 obsessive compulsive disorder 374
 discontinuation symptoms 284, 284
 drug interactions 635
 hepatic impairment 591
 minimum effective dose 250
 multiple sclerosis 534
 pregnancy 547, 549
 renal impairment 583
 pathological aggression, autism spectrum disorders 393
 pathological laughter and crying (PLC), multiple sclerosis 533–4
 payments, for medication adherence 704
 Peony Glycyrrhiza Decoction 134
 peppermint oil 511
 pergolide, tic disorders 399
 pericardial effusions, clozapine-induced 168
 pericyazine, maximum licensed dose 24
 perphenazine
 adverse effects 48
 equivalent dose 26
 hypertension risk 128
 maximum licensed dose 24
 personality change, non-psychotropics causing 653
 personality disorders
 ADHD 386
 borderline 618–20
 driving regulations 710
 pervasive developmental disorders (PDD) 390
 pervasive developmental disorders-not otherwise specified (PDD-NOS) 390
 pethidine 512
 PF-02545920: 57
 P-glycoprotein 646
 phenelzine 240
 adverse effects 333
 overdose 659
 refractory depression 262
 renal impairment 583
 switching to/from 297–301
 phenobarbital, HIV drug interactions 604
 phenothiazines 15
 blood lipids and 117
 breastfeeding 567
 diabetes risk 121
 hepatic impairment 592
 HIV drug interactions 602
 overdose 661
 pregnancy 543–4
 sexual adverse effects 139
 phenytoin
 acute mania 213
 HIV drug interactions 604
 plasma level monitoring 3
 phosphate, plasma 668
 phosphodiesterase 10A inhibitors 57
 PHQ-9: 253
 physostigmine 178
 phytotherapy *see* herbal medicines
 pimavanserin 531
 pimozone 15
 adverse effects 48
 clozapine augmentation 150
 equivalent dose 26
 HIV drug interactions 601, 602, 603
 maximum licensed dose 24
 monitoring physical health 46
 renal impairment 580
 tic disorders 398
 pindolol, refractory depression 262
 pioglitazone 124
 pipotiazine (depot) 15, 67, 67
 adverse effects 48
 elderly 483
 equivalent dose 26
 maximum licensed dose 25
 pharmacokinetics 70
 renal impairment 580
 pirenzepine 175, 512
 unlicensed use 674
 placebo effect 676–8
 plasma drug concentrations
 meaningfulness 2
 post-mortem, interpretation 13, 13–14
 steady state 1
 plasma level monitoring 1–14
 criteria 1–2
 interpreting results 2–7, 3
 reasons for 2
 sampling time 1–2
 platelet counts 671
 pneumonia 143, 168
 polyethylene glycol 178
 polysubstance abuse 464
 polyunsaturated fatty acids (PUFAs)
see omega-3 fatty acids
 post-mortem blood concentrations, interpreting 13, 13–14
 post-mortem redistribution (PMR) 13
 post-partum period
 bipolar illness 548–50
 depression 545–8
 epilepsy 551–2
 psychosis 543–5
see also breastfeeding
 post-traumatic stress disorder (PTSD) 334, 335, 337–8
 alcohol dependence with 426
 children and adolescents 372, 379–83, 381
 postural hypotension
 antidepressant-induced 280–1, 308–9
 antipsychotic-induced 128
 clozapine-induced 161
 switching antipsychotics 144
see also hypotension
 potassium, plasma 668
 pramipexole
 bipolar depression 218
 Parkinson's disease 529
 refractory depression 263
 schizophrenia 42
 prazosin
 PTSD in young people 380, 381
 urinary retention, dementia patients 509

- pregabalin
akathisia 89
alcohol dependence 423
anxiety disorders 335
benzodiazepine withdrawal 348
elderly 485
multiple sclerosis 533
pregnancy 541–58, 553
ADHD 554
alcohol use/withdrawal 423–4
anticonvulsants 551–2, 552
antidepressants 546–8, 549, 553
antipsychotics 543–5, 545, 553
anxiety disorders and
insomnia 552–3
benzodiazepine misuse 466
bipolar illness 548–50, 551
depression 545–8, 549
discussions with women 541–3
epilepsy 551–2, 552
mood stabilisers 549–50, 551, 553
opioid dependence 432, 449–50
prescribing principles 542
psychosis 543–5, 545
rapid tranquillisation 553–4
sedatives 552–3, 553
smoking cessation 458
unplanned, bipolar illness 200, 205
see also breastfeeding; women of
child-bearing age
- pregnenolone, schizophrenia 42
priapism 138, 139
pridopidine, Huntington's disease 538
prochlorperazine, alcohol
withdrawal 420
procyclidine 68, 615
Product Licence (PL), prescribing
drugs outside 673–5
prolactin, serum
antipsychotics not affecting 133, 133
elevated *see* hyperprolactinaemia
interpretation 134
monitoring 46, 133–4, 229
psychotropics affecting 668
promazine 48, 571
promethazine
borderline personality disorder 619
dementia patients 513
pregnancy 544, 553
rapid tranquillisation 406,
611–12, 613
renal impairment 585
street drug intoxication 472
propranolol 175
propentofylline 155
propranolol
antipsychotic-induced akathisia
85, 88
lithium-induced tremor 191
PTSD in young people 380, 381, 382
tardive dyskinesia 98
- protease inhibitors,
antiretroviral 601–3
protein, serum 669
prothrombin time 671
proton pump inhibitors, dementia
patients 515
pseudobulbar effect (PBA), multiple
sclerosis 533–4
pseudo-parkinsonism *see*
parkinsonism
psychiatric disorders *see* mental illness
psychiatric side-effects
anticonvulsants 632–4
antiretroviral drugs 604, 605
non-psychotropic drugs 650–5,
651–4
psychological therapies
anxiety spectrum disorders 336, 338
child and adolescent
depression 355
drug misuse 447, 452
eating disorders 607, 609
learning disabilities 623
PTSD in young people 382
psychosis
anticonvulsant-associated 632–5
benzodiazepines 344
children and adolescents 367, 367–8
driving regulations 708
epilepsy 632
first episode 31, 49
HIV infection 598
Huntington's disease 539
multiple sclerosis 535
non-psychotropics causing 653–4
Parkinson's disease 530, 530–1
post-partum 543–5
pregnant women 543–5
sexual dysfunction 137–8
substance misuse with 453
super-sensitivity 34
velo-cardio-facial syndrome 643–4
see also schizophrenia
psychostimulant drugs *see* stimulant
drugs
psychotropics
atrial fibrillation 656–8, 657
biochemical side-effects 665, 666–9
breastfeeding 559–60, 560
child and adolescent doses 408
cytochrome function and 646, 647–9
driving and 706–11, 707
ECT seizure threshold and 269–70,
269–71
haematological side-effects 665,
670–2
HIV drug interactions 601–4, 606
HIV infection 598–600
overdose 659–62, 659–64
plasma level monitoring 1–10
pregnant women 541–54, 542, 553
smoking and 688–9, 688–9
special patient groups 477–655
street drug interactions 472–5, 473–4
surgery and 637–42, 638–40
PTSD *see* post-traumatic stress
disorder
publication bias 677
pulmonary embolism,
clozapine-related 170
pulse monitoring
rapid tranquillisation 614, 615
starting clozapine 161
pyridostigmine 512
pyridoxine (vitamin B6) 89, 98
QT interval 110
QT prolongation 110–16
antidepressant-induced 308–9, 312
antipsychotic-induced 110–16, 111
ECG monitoring 113, 114
management 114
metabolic inhibition 113
methadone and 438, 438–9
non-psychotropics inducing 113
other risk factors 112, 112
physiological risk factors 112, 112
quantifying risk 111–12
rapid tranquillisation 612, 613
renal impairment and 577
switching antipsychotics 144
quetecetin, tardive dyskinesia 98
quetiapine
acute mania/hypomania 212
adverse effects 48
anorexia nervosa 607, 608
bipolar affective disorder 208, 223,
225, 226
blood lipids and 117
breastfeeding 568
children and adolescents 408
bipolar affective disorder 363,
364, 365
PTSD 380, 381
classification as atypical 15
clozapine-related
hypersalivation 175
costs 213
delirium 628
dementia 518, 519, 521
depression
bipolar 216, 217, 219, 363
psychotic 266
refractory 257
diabetes association 122
elderly 482
epilepsy 633
equivalent dose 27
hepatic impairment 592
HIV infection 598, 601, 602, 603
Huntington's disease 538, 539
hypertension risk 128

736 Index

- quetiapine (*cont'd*)
 learning disabilities 622
 overdose 661
 Parkinson's disease 530
 plasma level monitoring 3, 6
 pregnancy 545
 renal impairment 580
 schizophrenia
 combination therapy 38
 dose-response effects 28
 high-dose 28
 inadequate response 61
 maximum licensed dose 24
 minimum effective dose 22
 monitoring physical health 45, 46
 negative symptoms 41
 place in therapy 51
 refractory 155
 relative efficacy 17
 switching to 63, 88
 sexual adverse effects 139
 tardive dyskinesia and 97
 tic disorders 399
 velo-cardio-facial syndrome 644
 for water intoxication 131
 weight gain risk 90
- raltegravir 604
 ranitidine 93
 rapid neuroleptisation 60
 rapid tranquillisation (RT) 611–13, 613–14
 antipsychotics 611–13, 613–14, 616
 benzodiazepines 344, 612, 613–14
 children and adolescents 405–7, 406
 physical monitoring 614
 pregnancy 553–4
 remedial measures 615
- reboxetine 243
 adverse effects 332
 antipsychotic-induced weight gain 93
 breastfeeding 563
 cardiotoxicity 309
 diabetes and 321
 elderly 281
 epilepsy 633
 hepatic impairment 593
 HIV infection 599
 hyperprolactinaemia and 319
 minimum effective dose 250
 overdose 660
 post-stroke depression 276
 pregnancy 548
 publication bias 677
 renal impairment 583
 sexual adverse effects 325
 switching to/from 297–301
- red cell distribution width 672
 reflux oesophagitis 168
 refusal of medication 701, 714, 715
- relative infant dose (RID) 559
 renal function testing 576
 bipolar affective disorder 228
 renal impairment 576–89
 agents recommended 578
 anti-dementia drugs 586
 antidepressants 581–3
 antipsychotics 579–80
 anxiolytics and hypnotics 585–6
 classification 577
 lithium-related 191
 methadone dosing 436
 mood stabilisers 584
 nicotine replacement therapy 458
 prescribing principles 576–8
 renal replacement therapies 577
- Research Units on Paediatric Psychopharmacology (RUPP) Autism Network 391
- respiratory rate, rapid
 tranquillisation 615
- restlessness
 non-psychotropics causing 653
see also akathisia
- restricted repetitive behaviours and interests (RRBIs) 390–1
- reticulocyte count 672
- Rett's syndrome 390
- reverse transcriptase inhibitors 603–4
- reversible inhibitors of monoamine oxidase-A (RIMA) 241, 333
see also moclobemide
- rhabdomyolysis 577–8
- rilpivirine 603
- riluzole
 bipolar depression 218
 childhood obsessive compulsive disorder 377
 Huntington's disease 538
 refractory depression 263
 refractory schizophrenia 155
- risperidone
 acute mania/hypomania 212
 adverse effects 48
 bipolar affective disorder 208, 223, 225, 226
 blood lipids and 117
 breastfeeding 568
 catatonia 106, 107
 children and adolescents 394, 408
 ADHD 385
 autism spectrum disorders 391, 392, 393, 394
 bipolar affective disorder 364, 365
 obsessive compulsive disorder 376
 pathological aggression 393
 psychosis 367
 PTSD 380, 381
 classification 15
 costs 213
- delirium 628
 dementia 518–19, 520
 depression
 bipolar 219
 refractory 257
 diabetes association 122
 elderly 482
 epilepsy 633
 equivalent doses 27, 27
 hepatic impairment 593
 HIV infection 598
 Huntington's disease 538, 539
 hypertension risk 128
 learning disabilities 622
 long-acting injection (RLAI) 67, 68, 80–3
 combination therapy 37
 dose-response effects 28, 80
 elderly 483
 equivalent dose 27, 80
 management of patients 72
 maximum licensed dose 25
 neuroleptic malignant syndrome 103
 pharmacokinetics 70
 plasma levels 7
 switching away from 74, 78
 switching to 81
 vs other depot antipsychotics 80–2
 vs paliperidone palmitate 80
- multiple sclerosis 535
 overdose 661
 Parkinson's disease 530
 plasma levels 3, 6–7, 62
 post-mortem blood concentrations 13
 renal impairment 580
- schizophrenia
 clozapine augmentation 150
 dose-response effects 28, 61
 high-dose 28, 61
 inadequate response 61
 maximum licensed dose 24
 minimum effective dose 22
 monitoring physical health 46
 place in therapy 51
 prescribing 20
 refractory 153, 154, 155
 relative efficacy 17
 switching to 63
 sexual adverse effects 139
 tardive dyskinesia and 97
 tic disorders 398
 for water intoxication 131
 weight gain risk 90
- Ritalin *see* methylphenidate
- ritanserin
 acute mania 213
 refractory schizophrenia 155
- ritonavir 601–3, 604

- rivastigmine 488–9
 adverse effects 493–4
 Alzheimer's disease 487–9, 490
 atrial fibrillation 657
 delirium 629
 dementia with Lewy bodies 502
 drug interactions 495, 496
 efficacy 490
 Huntington's disease 539
 mechanism of action 487
 non-cognitive symptoms of dementia 521
 renal impairment 586
 tolerability 492–3
 transdermal patch 490, 492–3
 vascular dementia 501–2
- Royal College of Psychiatrists, on unlicensed use of licensed drugs 673–4, 674
- RT *see* rapid tranquillisation
- S-adenosyl-l-methionine
 refractory depression 263
 velo-cardio-facial syndrome 644
- saffron 326, 500
- saquinavir 602
- sarcosine 155
- schizoaffective disorder, atrial fibrillation and 657
- schizophrenia 15–187
 acute exacerbation 50
 adherence to medication 18, 50, 68, 700
 strategies for improving 703–4
 alcohol dependence with 427
 atrial fibrillation and 657
 benzodiazepines 344
 caffeine consumption 692–3
 carbamazepine 204
 catatonic 105, 106–8, 107, 107
 children and adolescents 367, 367–8
 complementary therapies 695
 diabetes association 121
 driving regulations 709
 first episode 31, 49
 hyponatraemia 130
 monitoring 20, 45–6, 59–60
 mortality 37
 multi-episode 32, 32–4
 negative symptoms 41–4, 57
 new and developing drugs 56–8
 NICE guidance 16–17, 59–60
 nicotine use 684–5
 omega-3 fatty acids 54–5, 155
 pregnancy and 543
 refractory 147–87
 relapse 32, 50
 sexual dysfunction 137
 smoking cessation 461
 treatment algorithms 49–50, 49–51
 valproate therapy 155, 198
 velo-cardio-facial syndrome 643–4
see also antipsychotics
- scopolamine *see* hyoscine
- second-generation antipsychotics (SGAs) 15
 ADHD 385
 adverse effects 17, 86
 autism spectrum disorders 391, 392
 bipolar affective disorder 208, 225
 children and adolescents
 bipolar affective disorder 362–3, 364
 psychosis 367, 367
 PTSD 380, 381
 delirium 627–8
 dementia 518–21
 diabetes risk 121–3
 dyslipidaemia and 117–18
 elderly 481–2, 483
 equivalent doses 26–7, 27
 HIV infection 598
 Huntington's disease 538
 long-acting injections 68
 maximum licensed doses 24
 minimum effective doses 22
 multiple sclerosis 534–5
 negative symptoms 41
 neuroleptic malignant syndrome 102–3
 NICE guidance 59, 60
 Parkinson's disease 530
 pregnancy 544–5, 545
 psychotic depression 266
 rapid tranquillisation 611, 612
 relative efficacy 17
 renal impairment 578, 579–80
 sexual adverse effects 138, 139
 street drug interactions 473
 switching trials 62–3
 tic disorders 398
 unlicensed use 675
 velo-cardio-facial syndrome 644
- sedation
 alcohol-induced 681
 antidepressant-induced 280–1, 332–3
 antipsychotic-induced 48
 clozapine-induced 165
 driving ability and 711
 high dose 612
 non-psychotropics causing 654
 switching antipsychotics 144
see also rapid tranquillisation
- sedatives
 borderline personality disorder 619
 breastfeeding 560, 571
 hepatic impairment 590, 591
 pregnancy 552–3, 553
 renal impairment 578, 585–6
 use of antipsychotics as 20
- seizures
 alcohol withdrawal 412, 412, 418
 driving regulations 710
 clozapine-induced 166
see also epilepsy
- selective noradrenaline reuptake inhibitors (SNRIs)
 anxiety disorders 334–5, 337–8
 diabetes and 321
 drug interactions 305
 hyperprolactinaemia and 319
 multiple sclerosis 534
 Parkinson's disease 529
 switching to/from 299–301
see also duloxetine; venlafaxine
- selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs) 235–7
 adverse effects 234, 235–7, 332
 children and adolescents 357
 elderly 279
 alcohol dependence 425–6
 antipsychotic-induced weight gain 93
 anxiety disorders 334–5, 337–8
 atrial fibrillation 657
 bleeding risks 279, 328–31, 329
 borderline personality disorder 619
 caffeine interaction 692
 cardiotoxicity 307, 312–13
 children and adolescents
 anxiety disorders 370, 371, 372
 autism spectrum disorders 391
 depression 355–6, 357–9, 359
 obsessive compulsive disorder 374–5, 376
 PTSD 380, 381
 dementia 522–3
 depression 234, 235–7
 bipolar 217, 219
 children and adolescents 355–6, 357–9, 359
 elderly 279, 280
 minimum effective doses 250
 NICE guidance 232
 post-stroke 276–7
 psychotic 267
 refractory 257, 260, 263
 diabetes and 321
 discontinuation symptoms 284, 335
 drug interactions 234, 305
 eating disorders 608, 609
 ECT seizure threshold and 269
 elderly 279, 280
 epilepsy 633
 hepatic impairment 593
 HIV infection 599
 Huntington's disease 539
 hyperprolactinaemia and 319
 hyponatraemia 316, 317
 learning disabilities 622
 lithium interactions 195
 multiple sclerosis 534

738 Index

- selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (*cont'd*)
 neuroleptic malignant syndrome and 103
 overdose 660
 Parkinson's disease 529
 post-mortem blood concentrations 13
 pregnancy 546, 547–8, 549
 schizophrenia negative symptoms 42
 sexual adverse effects 325
 street drug interactions 473
 surgical patients 637, 638
 switching to/from 296, 297–301
 velo-cardio-facial syndrome 644
- selegiline
 schizophrenia 42
 sexual adverse effects 326
 sexual dysfunction 139
 switching to/from 297–301
 transdermal 292, 293
- self-injurious behaviour (SIB)
 autism spectrum disorders 392
 learning disabilities 622–3
 lithium therapy 190
- Semagacestat 501
 semi-sodium valproate *see* valproate
 senna 178
- D-serine, schizophrenia 42, 154
- serotonin 5HT₁ receptor antagonists, dementia patients 511
- serotonin syndrome 297
 HIV infection 599
 renal impairment and 577–8
 St John's wort 247
 surgery-related risk 637, 639
- sertindole
 adverse effects 48
 breastfeeding 568
 equivalent dose 27
 HIV drug interactions 601, 603
 maximum licensed dose 24
 minimum effective dose 22
 monitoring physical health 46
 refractory schizophrenia 150, 155
- sertraline
 adverse effects 234, 332
 alcohol dependence 425–6
 anxiety disorders 334–5
 breastfeeding 564
 cardiotoxicity 309, 312
 children and adolescents 408
 anxiety disorders 370, 371
 autism spectrum disorders 391
 depression 356
 obsessive compulsive disorder 374
 PTSD 380, 381
 dementia 522–3
 depression 237
 children and adolescents 356
 minimum effective dose 250
 post-stroke 276
 psychotic 266
 drug interactions 635
 elderly 480
 multiple sclerosis 534
 pregnancy 547, 549
 renal impairment 583
- Severe Impairment Battery (SIB) 490
- Severity of Alcohol Dependence Questionnaire (SADQ) 412
- sexual arousal 137
 disorders 138, 139, 324
- sexual desire *see* libido
- sexual dysfunction 137–42
 antidepressants and 234, 324–7, 325, 332–3
 antipsychotic-related 52, 138–40, 139
 effects of psychosis 137–8
 hyperprolactinaemia and 133, 138
 schizophrenia 137
 switching antipsychotics 144
 treatment 138–40, 140, 326
- sexual response, human 137
- Short Alcohol Withdrawal Scale (SAWS) 413, 415
- Short Opiate Withdrawal Scale 431, 435
- Shprintzen syndrome 643–5
- sialorrhoea *see* hypersalivation
- sildenafil 140, 140, 326
- simvastatin 513
- sleep disturbances
 autism spectrum disorders 393
 benzodiazepines 343
 non-psychotropics causing 654
see also insomnia
- smoking, cigarette 684–9
 alcohol dependence and 425
 caffeine interaction 692
 depression and anxiety 685
 drug interactions 685–6, 688–9, 688–9
 movement disorders 685
 pregnant women with psychiatric illness 542
 schizophrenia 684–5
see also nicotine; nicotine dependence
- smoking cessation 456–62
 bupropion 460
 effects on other drugs 462
 mental health disorders 457, 461–2
 NICE guidance 456–7
 nicotine replacement therapy 457–60
 surgical patients 637
 varenicline 460–1
- Snoezelen 518
- SNRIs *see* selective noradrenaline reuptake inhibitors
- social and communication impairment 391
- social anxiety disorder, childhood 369
- social phobia 335, 337–8
- sodium, plasma 130, 316, 669
see also hyponatraemia
- sodium oxybate
 eating disorders 609
 tardive dyskinesia 98
- sodium valproate *see* valproate
- SOHO trial 33
- solanezumab 501
- solifenacin 507, 510
- Souvenaid 500–1
- SSRIs *see* selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors
- STAR*D programme 244, 255, 255–6, 324
- statins
 antipsychotic-treated patients 118–19
 dementia 500, 501, 513, 514
- stavudine 603
- STEP-BD study 226
- steroid-induced psychosis 190
- stimulant drugs
 ADHD 384–5
 depression 272–5, 273–4
 hepatic impairment 595
 misuse/dependence 463–5
 refractory depression 263
- St John's wort (SJW) 246–9
 child and adolescent depression 357
 drug interactions 247, 601–4
 patient information 247–8
- 'street drugs'
 acute intoxication 472
 interactions with prescribed psychotropics 472–5, 473–4
see also drug misuse/dependence
- stroke
 antipsychotic-treated elderly with dementia 519–20
 depression after 274, 276–8
 SSRI-related risk 329, 329
- stupor, psychiatric 105–8, 107
- stuttering, clozapine-related 168
- Suboxone 431, 444
- substance misuse 409–75
 ADHD and 386
 coexisting psychosis 453
 NICE guidance 451–3
 pain management and 437–8
see also specific substances
- Subutex *see* buprenorphine
- sudden cardiac death
 antipsychotic-associated 110, 114
 clozapine-related 170
 risk in depression 312
see also QT prolongation

- suicide/suicidal ideation
 antidepressants and 244
 anxiety disorders 335
 bipolar affective disorder 190,
 216, 225
 lithium and 190
 multiple sclerosis 533
 non-psychotropics causing 654
 psychotropic overdose 659–62,
 659–64
 schizophrenia 32
 SSRI-treated young people 357,
 374–5
- sulpiride 15
 adverse effects 48
 breastfeeding 568
 classification 15
 clozapine augmentation 150
 clozapine-related hypersalivation 175
 diabetes risk 122
 epilepsy 633
 equivalent dose 26
 hepatic impairment 593
 Huntington's disease 538
 hypertension risk 128
 maximum licensed dose 24
 minimum effective dose 22
 monitoring physical health 45
 refractory schizophrenia 154
 renal impairment 580
 sexual adverse effects 139
 tic disorders 398
 weight gain risk 90
- sumatriptan, intranasal 270
 super-sensitivity psychosis 34
 surgery
 psychotropics and 637–42, 638–40
 SSRI-related bleeding 328
 syndrome of inappropriate
 antidiuretic hormone
 (SIADH) 130, 131, 316
- tachycardia, clozapine-induced 165
 tadalafil 326
 tamoxifen
 acute mania 213
 antidepressant interactions 234, 303
 tamsulosin 509
 tantrums, autism spectrum
 disorders 392
 tardive dyskinesia (TD) 84–5, 97–101
 first vs second-generation
 antipsychotics 52, 97
 switching antipsychotics 144
 treatment 97–101, 98
 TC 5619: 58
 TCAs *see* tricyclic antidepressants
 telmisartan 129
 temazepam
 diazepam equivalent dose 347
 renal impairment 586
- temperature, body
 clozapine-induced increase 161, 166
 rapid tranquillisation and 615
 tenofovir 604
 terazosin 174
 testosterone
 female sexual dysfunction 139
 refractory depression 263
 schizophrenia 42
 tetrabenazine
 Huntington's disease 538
 tardive dyskinesia 85, 98
 tic disorders 399
 theophylline
 dementia patients 511
 drug interactions 205, 234
 therapeutic drug monitoring *see*
 plasma level monitoring
 thiamine
 alcohol withdrawal 413, 419, 420
 post-ECT confusion 270
 thiazide diuretics, lithium
 interaction 194, 194
 thioridazine 15, 139
 thioxanthines 15
 breastfeeding 568
 sexual adverse effects 139
 thrombocytopenia,
 clozapine-induced 168
 thromboembolism,
 clozapine-induced 170
 thyroid function tests 46, 191, 228
 thyroid-stimulating hormone 669
 thyroxine
 bipolar affective disorder 218, 223
 carbamazepine interaction 205
 psychotropics affecting 669
 tianeptine, refractory depression 262
 tic disorders 397–401
 obsessive compulsive disorder
 with 377
 tipranavir 603
 TMS *see* transcranial magnetic
 stimulation
 tolterodine 507, 509, 510
 tolvaptan 130
 topiramate
 alcohol dependence 423
 antipsychotic-induced weight gain 93
 autism spectrum disorders 392
 bipolar affective disorder 213, 223
 clozapine augmentation 150
 dementia 523
 depressant effects 634
 eating disorders 609
 refractory schizophrenia 155
 tic disorders 399
 TORDIA (Treatment of Resistant
 Depression in Adolescence)
 studies 355, 358, 359
 torsade de pointes 110–11, 438
- torticollis 84
 Tourette's syndrome 397–401
 tramadol 399, 512
 tranquillisation, rapid *see* rapid
 tranquillisation
 transcranial magnetic stimulation (TMS)
 schizophrenia 42, 155
 tardive dyskinesia 98
 transferrin,
 carbohydrate-deficient 667
 tranlycypromine 240
 adverse effects 333
 discontinuation symptoms 284, 285
 overdose 659
 refractory depression 256
 switching to/from 297–301
 trazodone 243
 adverse effects 332
 antipsychotic-induced akathisia
 85, 89
 breastfeeding 564
 cardiotoxicity 309, 312
 delirium 629
 dementia 522–3
 diabetes and 321
 elderly 481
 HIV infection 599, 602
 minimum effective dose 250
 overdose 660
 pregnancy 548
 rectal 292, 294
 renal impairment 583
 sexual adverse effects 325, 326
 switching to/from 297–301
 Treatment of Adolescents with
 Depression Study (TADS) 355,
 357
 Treatment of Resistant Depression in
 Adolescence (TORDIA)
 studies 355, 358, 359
 TREC studies 611, 612
 tremor
 antipsychotic-induced 84
 lithium-induced 191
 valproate-induced 199
 triazolam 344
 tricyclic antidepressants (TCAs) 238–9
 ADHD 385
 adverse effects 234, 238–9, 332
 alcohol dependence 425, 682
 atrial fibrillation 657
 breastfeeding 564
 cardiotoxicity 309, 312–13
 children and adolescents 356–7
 dementia 523
 depression 234, 238–9
 minimum effective dose 250
 post-stroke 276
 psychotic 266
 refractory 262, 263
 diabetes and 321

740 Index

- tricyclic antidepressants (*cont'd*)
 discontinuation symptoms 284
 drug interactions 303–5
 ECT seizure threshold and 269
 elderly 280
 epilepsy 633
 hepatic impairment 594
 HIV infection 599, 602
 Huntington's disease 539
 hyperprolactinaemia and 319
 multiple sclerosis 534
 overdose 660
 Parkinson's disease 529
 plasma level monitoring 3
 post-mortem blood concentrations 13
 pregnancy 546–7
 sexual adverse effects 325
 smoking status and 689
 surgical patients 637, 639
 switching to/from 297–301
- trifluoperazine
 adverse effects 48
 epilepsy 633
 equivalent dose 26
 maximum licensed dose 24
 minimum effective dose 22
 pregnancy 545
 renal impairment 580
 weight gain risk 90
- triglycerides, plasma 117, 118, 669
- trihexyphenidyl 174
- tri-iodothyronine (T₃)
 psychotropics affecting 669
 refractory depression 256, 257
- trimipramine 239
 adverse effects 332
 refractory depression 262
 renal impairment 583
- tropium 507–9, 510
- tryptophan
 depletion, acute mania 213
 refractory depression 262
- typical antipsychotics 15
see also first-generation antipsychotics
- UDP-glucuronosyl transferase (UGT) 646
- unlicensed medicines 673–5, 675
 paediatric practice 353
see also off-label prescribing
- urate/uric acid, plasma 669
- urea, plasma 669
- urea and electrolytes (U&Es) 45, 228
- urinary incontinence, anticholinergic drugs for 507–9, 510, 515
- urinary retention, alpha blockers for 509, 515
- vaccines, anti-addiction 463–4
- valproate 201
- acute mania/hypomania 197–8, 211, 213
 adverse effects 199
 alcohol dependence 426
 autism spectrum disorders 393
 bipolar affective disorder 197–202, 225, 226
 bipolar depression 198, 217, 219
 breastfeeding 560, 570
 children and adolescents 362, 364, 408
 costs 213
 delirium 629
 dementia 523
 discontinuation 200
 drug interactions 200
 elderly 484
 formulations 197
 hepatic impairment 199, 594
 HIV infection 599
 Huntington's disease 538
 indications 197–8
 learning disabilities 622
 mechanism of action 197
 on-treatment monitoring 199
 overdose 661
 plasma levels 3, 198–9
 pregnancy 550, 551, 551–2, 552
 pre-treatment tests 199
 renal impairment 584
 schizophrenia 155, 198
 street drug interactions 474
 surgical patients 638
 unlicensed use 675
 women of childbearing age 200, 542
- valproic acid *see* valproate
- valsartan 129
- vaptans 130
- varenicline, smoking cessation 456, 460–1, 461–2
- vascular dementia 501–2
- vasculitis, clozapine-induced 168
- velo-cardio-facial syndrome (VCFS) 643–5
- venlafaxine 243
 adverse effects 234, 332
 anxiety disorders 334
 atrial fibrillation 657
 bipolar depression 217
 bleeding risk 328
 breastfeeding 565
 cardiotoxicity 309, 312–13
 children and adolescents 358, 371, 371
 discontinuation symptoms 284, 284, 285
 ECT seizure threshold and 269
 elderly 279, 281, 481
 epilepsy 633
 hepatic impairment 594
 Huntington's disease 539
- minimum effective dose 250
 overdose 660
 Parkinson's disease 529
 post-stroke depression 276
 pregnancy 548
 psychotic depression 266
 refractory depression 256, 257, 260, 263
 renal impairment 583
 sexual adverse effects 325
 switching to/from 299–301
- vigabatrin, cocaine dependence 463
- violent behaviour 611–17
 recommended interventions 613–14
see also acutely disturbed behaviour; aggressive behaviour
- vitamin B₆ (pyridoxine) 89, 98
- vitamin B₁₂ 41, 498
- vitamin B complex, alcohol withdrawal 419
- vitamin D 695
- vitamin E 98, 498
- vitamin supplements
 alcohol withdrawal 413, 419
 Alzheimer's disease 498
 anorexia nervosa 607
- vortioxetine 237
 adverse effects 332
 breastfeeding 565
 cardiotoxicity 309, 312
 discontinuation 283, 285
 elderly 279, 481
 epilepsy 633
 hyperprolactinaemia and 319
 hyponatraemia 316
 minimum effective dose 250
 overdose 660
 renal impairment 583
 switching to/from 299–301
- warfarin
 atrial fibrillation 656
 SSRIs and 276–7, 329
- water intoxication 130, 131
- weight, monitoring
 bipolar affective disorder 229
 renal impairment 577
 schizophrenia 45, 92
- weight gain
 antidepressant-induced 280–1, 321
 antipsychotic-induced 48, 90–6
 children and adolescents 393
 dyslipidaemia risk 117
 hypertension risk 128
 relative risk 90, 90
 switching agents 92, 144
 treatment 92–6, 93
 clozapine-induced 165
 valproate-induced 199

- Wernicke's encephalopathy 412, 412, 418–20
- white cell count (WCC), effects of
lithium and clozapine 181–2
- women of child-bearing age
bipolar affective disorder 192, 200, 205
prescribing principles 542
see also pregnancy
- yohimbine 139, 140
- young people *see* children and adolescents
- zaleplon 571, 586
- zidovudine 603
- zinc 262, 608
- ziprasidone
acute mania 213
adverse effects 48
bipolar affective disorder 208, 364
bipolar depression 219
blood lipids and 117, 118
breastfeeding 568
catatonia 106, 107
children and adolescents 364, 406
clozapine augmentation 150
delirium 628
diabetes and 122–3, 124
dose-response effects 28, 61
- equivalent dose 27
- HIV infection 598
- hypertension risk 128
- maximum licensed dose 24
- minimum effective dose 22
- monitoring physical health 46
- negative symptoms 41
- neuroleptic malignant syndrome 102–3
- overdose 661
- Parkinson's disease 530
- prolactin plasma levels and 133
- QTc prolongation 112
- rapid tranquillisation 406, 611
- refractory depression 262
- refractory schizophrenia 155
- relative efficacy 17
- renal impairment 580
- switching to 63, 92
- tic disorders 398
- weight gain risk 90
- zolmitriptan, akathisia 89
- zolpidem
breastfeeding 571
disinhibitory reactions 350
driving ability and 707
elderly 485
overdose 662
renal impairment 586
tardive dyskinesia 98
- zonisamide
antipsychotic-induced weight gain 93
bipolar depression 218
eating disorders 609
- zopiclone
breastfeeding 571
driving ability and 707
elderly 485
hepatic impairment 591
overdose 662
renal impairment 586
- zotepine, epilepsy 634
- zuclopenthixol
acetate (Clopixol Acuphase), guidelines 616
adverse effects 48
breastfeeding 568
depot 67, 67, 68
elderly 483
equivalent dose 26
maximum licensed dose 25
pharmacokinetics 70
equivalent dose 26
hepatic impairment 592
learning disabilities 622
maximum licensed dose 24
renal impairment 580
smoking status and 689
- Zyban *see* bupropion

The Maudsley

Prescribing
Guidelines
in Psychiatry

13TH EDITION

David Taylor
Thomas R. E. Barnes
Allan H. Young

WILEY Blackwell

Copyright © 2018, John Wiley & Sons, Incorporated. All rights reserved.

Taylor, David M., et al. The Maudsley Prescribing Guidelines in Psychiatry, John Wiley & Sons, Incorporated, 2018. ProQuest Ebook Central.
<http://ebookcentral.proquest.com/lib/hscqub/detail.action?docID=5349044>.
Created from hscqub on 2023-05-23 09:57:08.

The Maudsley Prescribing Guidelines in Psychiatry

13th Edition

David M. Taylor, BSc, MSc, PhD, FFRPS, FRPharmS

Director of Pharmacy and Pathology at the Maudsley Hospital and
Professor of Psychopharmacology at King's College, London, UK

Thomas R. E. Barnes, MBBS, MD, FRCPsych, DSc

Emeritus Professor of Clinical Psychiatry at Imperial College London and
joint-head of the Prescribing Observatory for Mental Health at the
Royal College of Psychiatrists' Centre for Quality Improvement, London, UK

Allan H. Young, MB, ChB, MPhil, PhD, FRCPC, FRCPsych

Chair of Mood Disorders and Director of the Centre for Affective Disorders in the
Department of Psychological Medicine in the Institute of Psychiatry at
King's College London, UK

WILEY Blackwell

Contents

Preface	x
Acknowledgements	xii
Notes on using <i>The Maudsley Prescribing Guidelines in Psychiatry</i>	xiii
List of abbreviations	xv
Part 1 Drug treatment of major psychiatric conditions	1
Chapter 1 Schizophrenia and related psychoses	3
ANTIPSYCHOTIC DRUGS	3
General introduction	3
General principles of prescribing	8
Minimum effective doses	9
Licensed maximum doses	12
Equivalent doses	14
High-dose antipsychotics: prescribing and monitoring	16
Combined antipsychotics	20
Antipsychotic prophylaxis	25
Negative symptoms	31
Monitoring	36
Relative adverse effects – a rough guide	39
Treatment algorithms for schizophrenia	40
First-generation antipsychotics – place in therapy	44
NICE guidelines for the treatment of schizophrenia	46
Antipsychotic response – to increase the dose, to switch, to add or just wait – what is the right move?	49
Acutely disturbed or violent behaviour	54
Antipsychotic depots/long-acting injections (LAIs)	66
Depot/LAI antipsychotics – pharmacokinetics	71
Management of patients on long-term depots/LAIs	73
Aripiprazole long-acting injection	75
Olanzapine long-acting injection	77
Paliperidone palmitate long-acting injection	79
Risperidone long-acting injection	82

Electroconvulsive therapy and psychosis	86
Omega-3 fatty acid (fish oils) in schizophrenia	88
ANTIPSYCHOTIC ADVERSE EFFECTS	90
Extrapyramidal symptoms	90
Akathisia	94
Weight gain	97
Treatment of antipsychotic-induced weight gain	99
Neuroleptic malignant syndrome	104
Catatonia	107
ECG changes – QT prolongation	112
Effect of antipsychotic medications on plasma lipids	119
Diabetes and impaired glucose tolerance	123
Blood pressure changes	130
Hyponatraemia	134
Hyperprolactinaemia	137
Sexual dysfunction	141
Pneumonia	148
Switching antipsychotics	150
Venous thromboembolism	153
REFRACTORY SCHIZOPHRENIA AND CLOZAPINE	156
Clozapine initiation schedule	156
Optimising clozapine treatment	158
Alternatives to clozapine	162
Re-starting clozapine after a break in treatment	169
Initiation of clozapine for community-based patients	170
CLOZAPINE ADVERSE EFFECTS	175
Clozapine: common adverse effects	175
Clozapine: uncommon or unusual adverse effects	179
Clozapine: serious haematological and cardiovascular adverse effects	184
Clozapine-induced hypersalivation	189
Clozapine-induced gastrointestinal hypomotility (CIGH)	193
Clozapine, neutropenia and lithium	197
Clozapine and chemotherapy	202
Chapter 2 Bipolar disorder	205
Lithium	205
Valproate	214
Carbamazepine	221
Antipsychotic drugs in bipolar disorder	226
Antipsychotic long-acting injections in bipolar disorder	229
Physical monitoring for people with bipolar disorder	232
Treatment of acute mania or hypomania	235
Rapid-cycling bipolar disorder	241
Bipolar depression	243
Prophylaxis in bipolar disorder	250

Chapter 3 Depression and anxiety disorders	255
Depression: introduction	255
Basic principles of prescribing in depression	255
Official guidance on the treatment of depression	256
Antidepressants: general overview	257
Recognised minimum effective doses of antidepressants	262
Drug treatment of depression	264
Treatment of refractory depression: first choice	267
Treatment of refractory depression: second choice	271
Treatment of refractory depression: other reported treatments	274
Psychotic depression	278
Electroconvulsive therapy and psychotropic drugs	281
Stimulants in depression	285
Post-stroke depression	290
Treatment of depression in the elderly	293
Antidepressants: alternative routes of administration	298
Antidepressant prophylaxis	306
Antidepressant discontinuation symptoms	310
Antidepressants: swapping and stopping	314
Drug interactions with antidepressants	321
Cardiac effects of antidepressants	325
Antidepressant-induced arrhythmia	329
Antidepressant-induced hyponatraemia	333
Antidepressants and hyperprolactinaemia	337
Antidepressants and diabetes mellitus	340
Antidepressants and sexual dysfunction	343
SSRIs and bleeding	347
St John's wort	355
Antidepressants: relative adverse effects – a rough guide	358
Anxiety spectrum disorders	360
Benzodiazepines in the treatment of psychiatric disorders	373
Benzodiazepines: dependence and detoxification	377
Benzodiazepines and disinhibition	381
Chapter 4 Addictions and substance misuse	385
Introduction	385
Alcohol dependence	387
Opioid dependence	405
Nicotine and smoking cessation	431
Pharmacological treatment of dependence on stimulants	439
GHB and GBL dependence	442
Benzodiazepine misuse	445
Synthetic cannabinoid receptor agonists (SCRAs)	447
Interactions between 'street drugs' and prescribed psychotropic drugs	450
Drugs of misuse – a summary	454

Part 2	Drug treatment of special patient groups	459
Chapter 5	Children and adolescents	461
	Principles of prescribing practice in childhood and adolescence	461
	Depression in children and adolescents	463
	Bipolar illness in children and adolescents	471
	Psychosis in children and adolescents	478
	Anxiety disorders in children and adolescents	480
	Obsessive compulsive disorder (OCD) in children and adolescents	485
	Post-traumatic stress disorder in children and adolescents	491
	Attention deficit hyperactivity disorder	496
	Autism spectrum disorder	504
	Tics and Tourette's syndrome	512
	Melatonin in the treatment of insomnia in children and adolescents	517
	Rapid tranquillisation (RT) in children and adolescents	521
	Doses of commonly used psychotropic drugs in children and adolescents	524
Chapter 6	Prescribing in older people	525
	General principles	525
	Dementia	529
	Safer prescribing for physical conditions in dementia	557
	Management of behavioural and psychological symptoms of dementia	570
	A guide to medication doses of commonly used psychotropic drugs in older adults	586
	Covert administration of medicines within food and drink	593
Chapter 7	Pregnancy and breastfeeding	599
	Drug choice in pregnancy	599
	Breastfeeding	619
Chapter 8	Hepatic and renal impairment	635
	Hepatic impairment	635
	Renal impairment	645
Part 3	Prescribing in specialist conditions	661
Chapter 9	Drug treatment of other psychiatric conditions	663
	Borderline personality disorder	663
	Eating disorders	667
	Delirium	672

Chapter 10	Drug treatment of psychiatric symptoms occurring in the context of other disorders	679
	General principles of prescribing in human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)	679
	Prescribing psychotropics in HIV	685
	Epilepsy	688
	22q11.2 Deletion syndrome	696
	Learning disabilities	699
	Huntington's disease	704
	Multiple sclerosis	709
	Parkinson's disease	715
	Atrial fibrillation	719
	Bariatric surgery	722
Part 4	Other aspects of psychotropic drug use	729
Chapter 11	Pharmacokinetics	731
	Plasma level monitoring of psychotropic drugs	731
	Interpreting post-mortem blood concentrations	742
	Acting on clozapine plasma concentration results	744
	Psychotropic drugs and cytochrome (CYP) function	746
	Smoking and psychotropic drugs	750
	Drug interactions with alcohol	753
Chapter 12	Other substances	759
	Caffeine	759
	Nicotine	765
Chapter 13	Psychotropic drugs in special conditions	769
	Psychotropic drugs in overdose	769
	Driving and psychotropic drugs	776
	Psychotropic drugs and surgery	781
Chapter 14	Miscellany	787
	Enhancing medication adherence	787
	Re-starting psychotropic medications after a period of non-compliance	794
	Biochemical and haematological effects of psychotropic medications	798
	Summary of psychiatric adverse effects of non-psychotropic medications	808
	Prescribing drugs outside their licensed indications ('off-label' prescribing)	813
	The Mental Health Act in England and Wales	816
	Site of administration of intramuscular injections	821
	Treatment of tardive dyskinesia (TD)	824
	Index	831

Acutely disturbed or violent behaviour

Acute behavioural disturbance can occur in the context of psychiatric illness, physical illness, substance abuse or personality disorder. Psychotic symptoms are common and the patient may be aggressive towards others secondary to persecutory delusions or auditory, visual or tactile hallucinations.

The clinical practice of rapid tranquillisation (RT) is used when appropriate psychological and behavioural approaches have failed to de-escalate acutely disturbed behaviour. It is, essentially, a treatment of last resort. Patients who require RT are often too disturbed to give informed consent and therefore participate in randomised controlled trials (RCTs), but with the use of a number of creative methodologies, the evidence base with respect to the efficacy and tolerability of pharmacological strategies has grown substantially in recent years. However, recommendations remain based partly on research data, partly on theoretical considerations and partly on clinical experience.

Several studies supporting the efficacy of oral SGAs have been published.¹⁻⁴ The level of behavioural disturbance exhibited by the patients in these studies was moderate at best, and all subjects accepted oral treatment (this degree of compliance would be unusual in clinical practice). Note too that patients recruited to these studies received the SGA as antipsychotic monotherapy. The efficacy and safety of adding a second antipsychotic as 'PRN' has not been explicitly tested in formal RCTs.

A single-dose RCT showed sublingual asenapine to be more effective than placebo for acute agitation.⁵ The efficacy of inhaled loxapine (in behavioural disturbance that is moderate in severity) is also supported by RCTs⁶⁻⁸ and case series.^{9,10} Note that use of this preparation requires the co-operation of the patient, and that bronchospasm is an established but rare adverse effect.

Large, placebo-controlled RCTs support the efficacy of intramuscular (IM) preparations of olanzapine, ziprasidone and aripiprazole. When considered together, these trials suggested that IM olanzapine is more effective than IM haloperidol, which in turn is more effective than IM aripiprazole.¹¹ Again, the level of behavioural disturbance in these studies was moderate at most.

A large observational study supported the efficacy and tolerability of IM olanzapine in clinical emergencies (where disturbance was severe).¹² A study comparing IM haloperidol with a combination of IM midazolam and IM haloperidol found the combination more effective than haloperidol alone for controlling agitation in palliative care patients.¹³

Several RCTs have now investigated the effectiveness of parenteral medication in 'real-life' acutely disturbed patients. Overall:

- Compared with intravenous (IV) midazolam alone, a combination of IV olanzapine or IV droperidol with IV midazolam was more rapidly effective and resulted in fewer subsequent doses of medication being required.¹⁴
- IM midazolam 7.5–15 mg was more rapidly sedating than a combination of haloperidol 5–10 mg and promethazine 50 mg (TREC 1).¹⁵
- Olanzapine 10 mg was as effective as a combination of haloperidol 10 mg and promethazine 25–50 mg in the short term, but the effect did not last as long (TREC 4).¹⁶
- A combination of haloperidol 5–10 mg and promethazine 50 mg was more effective and better tolerated than haloperidol 5–10 mg alone (TREC 3).¹⁷

- A combination of haloperidol 10 mg and promethazine 25–50 mg was more effective than lorazepam 4 mg (TREC 2).¹⁸
- A combination of IV midazolam and IV droperidol was more rapidly sedating than either IV droperidol or IV olanzapine alone. Fewer patients in the midazolam–droperidol group required additional medication doses to achieve sedation.¹⁹
- IM olanzapine was more effective than IM aripiprazole in the treatment of agitation in schizophrenia in the short term (at 2 hours) but there was no significant difference between treatments at 24 hours.²⁰
- In an open-label study the combination of IM haloperidol and IM lorazepam was found to be similar in efficacy to IM olanzapine.²¹
- IM droperidol and IM haloperidol were equally effective.²²

Note that TREC 3¹⁷ found IM haloperidol alone to be poorly tolerated; 6% of patients had an acute dystonic reaction. A Cochrane review concluded that haloperidol alone is effective in the management of acute behavioural disturbance but poorly tolerated, and that co-administration of promethazine but not lorazepam improves tolerability.^{23,24} However, NICE considers the evidence relating to the use of promethazine for this purpose to be inconclusive.²⁵ When assessing haloperidol plus promethazine, Cochrane concluded that the combination is effective for use in patients who are aggressive due to psychosis and its use is based on good evidence. The resumption of aggression and need for further injections was more likely with olanzapine than with the haloperidol–promethazine combination. The authors also state that ‘haloperidol used on its own without something to offset its frequent and serious adverse effects does seem difficult to justify’.²⁶ Cochrane recently concluded that available data for aripiprazole are rather poor. Available evidence suggests that aripiprazole is more effective than placebo and haloperidol, but not olanzapine. However, the authors advise caution when generalising these results to real-world practice.²⁷ A systematic review and meta-analysis of IM olanzapine for agitation found IM olanzapine and IM haloperidol to be equally effective, but IM olanzapine was associated with a lower incidence of EPS.²⁸ Cochrane suggests that droperidol is effective and may be used to control people with very disturbed and aggressive behaviours caused by psychosis.²⁹ Having become available again, droperidol is seeing a resurgence in use in some countries (its initial withdrawal was voluntary, so reintroduction is not prohibited).

In a meta-analysis that examined the tolerability of IM antipsychotics when used for the treatment of agitation, the incidence of acute dystonia with haloperidol was reported to be 5%, with SGAs faring considerably better.³⁰ Acute EPS may adversely affect longer-term compliance.³¹ In addition, the SPC for haloperidol requires a pre-treatment ECG^{32,33} and recommends that concomitant antipsychotics are not prescribed. The mean increase in QTc after 10 mg IM haloperidol has been administered has been reported to be 15 ms but the range is wide.³⁴ Note that promethazine may inhibit the metabolism of haloperidol,³⁵ a pharmacokinetic interaction that is potentially clinically significant given the potential of haloperidol to prolong QTc. While this is unlikely to be problematic if a single dose is administered, repeat dosing may confer risk.

Droperidol is also associated with QT changes (the reason for its withdrawal). In an observational study set in hospital emergency departments, of the 1009 patients administered parenteral droperidol only 13 patients (1.28%) had an abnormal QT recorded

after dose administration. However, in seven of these cases another contributory factor was identified. There were no cases of torsades de pointes.²²

Intravenous treatment is now rarely used in RT but where benefits are thought to outweigh risks it may be considered as a last resort. A small study comparing high-dose IV haloperidol with IV diazepam found both drugs to be effective at 24 hours.³⁶ Two large observational studies have examined the safety of IV olanzapine when used in the emergency department. The indications for its use varied, agitation being the most common. In one study,³⁷ in the group treated for agitation ($n=265$), over a third of patients required an additional sedative dose after the initial IV olanzapine dose. Hypoxia was reported in 17.7% of cases and supplemental oxygen was used in 20.4% of cases. Six patients required intubation: in two this was likely to have been due to olanzapine treatment. In the other study,³⁸ IV olanzapine ($n=295$) was compared with IM olanzapine ($n=489$). Additional doses were not required for 81% of patients in the IV group and 84% of patients in the IM group. Respiratory depression was more commonly observed in the group receiving IV olanzapine. Five patients in the IM group and two in the IV group required intubation.

In an acute psychiatric setting, high-dose sedation (defined as a dose of more than 10 mg of haloperidol, droperidol or midazolam) was not more effective than lower doses but was associated with more adverse effects (hypotension and oxygen desaturation).³⁹ Consistent with this, a small RCT supports the efficacy of low-dose haloperidol, although both efficacy and tolerability were superior when midazolam was co-prescribed.⁴⁰ These data support the use of standard doses in clinical emergencies.

A small observational study supports the effectiveness of buccal midazolam in a psychiatric intensive care unit (PICU) setting.⁴¹ Parenteral administration of midazolam, particularly in higher doses, may cause over-sedation accompanied by respiratory depression.⁴² Lorazepam IM is an established treatment and TREC 2¹⁸ supports its efficacy, although combining all results from the TREC studies suggests midazolam 7.5–15 mg is probably more effective. A Cochrane review of benzodiazepines for psychosis-induced aggression and agitation concluded that most trials were too small to highlight differences in either positive or negative effects and that although adding a benzodiazepine to another drug may not be clearly advantageous it may lead to unnecessary adverse effects.⁴³

With respect to those who are behaviourally disturbed secondary to acute intoxication with alcohol or illicit drugs, there are fewer data to guide practice. A large observational study of IV sedation in patients intoxicated with alcohol found that combination treatment (most commonly haloperidol 5 mg and lorazepam 2 mg) was more effective and reduced the need for subsequent sedation than either drug given alone.⁴⁴ A case series ($n=59$) of patients who received modest doses of oral, IM or IV haloperidol to manage behavioural disturbance in the context of phencyclidine (PCP) consumption reported that haloperidol was effective and well tolerated (one case each of mild hypotension and mild hypoxia).⁴⁵

Data are emerging from hospital emergency departments on the use of ketamine for agitation. IM ketamine was shown to be effective, with minimal adverse effects, in a small group of patients who failed to respond to IM droperidol.⁴⁶ A small retrospective study found ketamine to be associated with few major adverse effects. However, many

patients in the study (62%) required additional sedation.⁴⁷ An observational study comparing ketamine (IM or IV) first line with midazolam, lorazepam, haloperidol or a combination of haloperidol and benzodiazepine found that significantly more patients in the ketamine group were no longer agitated at 5, 10 and 15 minutes. Two patients receiving ketamine were intubated compared with one patient in the other group.⁴⁸ In a prospective study comparing IM ketamine with IM haloperidol, mean time to adequate sedation was significantly shorter with IM ketamine. Complications, including intubation, vomiting, hypersalivation and laryngospasm, were higher in the ketamine group.⁴⁹

Practical measures

Plans for the management of individual patients should ideally be made in advance. The aim is to prevent disturbed behaviour and reduce risk of violence. Nursing interventions (de-escalation, time out, seclusion⁵⁰), increased nursing levels, transfer of the patient to a PICU and pharmacological management are options that may be employed. Care should be taken to avoid combinations and high cumulative doses of antipsychotic drugs. The monitoring of routine physical observations after RT is essential. Note that RT is often viewed as punitive by patients. There is little research into the patient experience of RT.

The aims of RT are three-fold:

- to reduce suffering for the patient – psychological or physical (through self-harm or accidents)
- to reduce risk of harm to others by maintaining a safe environment
- to do no harm (by prescribing safe regimes and monitoring physical health).

Note: Despite the need for rapid and effective treatment, concomitant use of two or more antipsychotics (antipsychotic polypharmacy) should be avoided on the basis of risk associated with QT prolongation (common to almost all antipsychotics). This is a particularly important consideration in RT where the patient's physical state predisposes to cardiac arrhythmia.

Zuclopenthixol acetate

Zuclopenthixol acetate (ZA) is widely used in the UK and elsewhere and is best known by its trade name Acuphase. Zuclopenthixol itself is a thioxanthine dopamine antagonist and was first introduced in the early 1960s. Its elimination half-life is around 20 hours. IM injection of zuclopenthixol base results in rapid absorption and a duration of action of 12–24 hours. By slowing absorption after IM injection, the biological half-life (and so duration of action) becomes dependent on the rate of release from the IM reservoir. This can be achieved by esterification of the zuclopenthixol molecule, the rate of release being broadly in proportion to the length of the ester carbon chain. Thus, zuclopenthixol decanoate is slow to act but very long-acting as a result of retarded release after IM injection. ZA (with eight fewer carbon atoms) would be expected to provide relatively prompt release but with an intermediate duration of action. The intention of the

manufacturers was that the use of ZA would obviate the need for repeated IM injections in disturbed patients.

An initial pharmacokinetic study of ZA included 19 patients 'in whom calming effect by parenteral neuroleptic was considered necessary'.⁵¹ Zuclopenthixol was detectable in the plasma after 1–2 hours but did not reach peak concentrations until around 36 hours after dosing. At 72 hours, plasma levels were around a third of those at 36 hours. The clinical effect of ZA was not rapid – 10 of 17 patients exhibited minimal or no change in psychotic symptoms at 4 hours. Sedation was evident at 4 hours but it had effectively abated by 72 hours.

A follow-up study by the same research group⁵² examined more closely the clinical effects of ZA in 83 patients. The authors concluded that ZA produced 'pronounced and rapid reduction in psychotic symptoms'. In fact, psychotic symptoms were first assessed only after 24 hours and so a claim of rapid effect is not reasonably supported. Sedative effects were measured after 2 hours, when a statistically significant effect was observed – at baseline mean sedation score was 0.0 (0=no sign of sedation) and at 2 hours 0.6 (1=slightly sedated). Maximum sedation was observed at 8 hours (mean score 2.2; 2=moderately sedated). At 72 hours mean score was 1.1. Dystonia and rigidity were the most commonly reported adverse effects.

Two independently conducted open studies produced similar results – a slow onset of effect peaking at 24 hours and still being evident at 72 hours.^{53,54} The first UK study was reported in 1990.⁵⁵ In the trial, a significant reduction in psychosis score was first evident at 8 hours and scores continued to fall until the last measurement at 72 hours. Of 25 patients assessed, only 4 showed signs of tranquillisation at 1 hour (19 at 2 hours and 22 at 24 hours).

A comparative trial of ZA⁵⁶ examined its effects and those of IM/oral haloperidol and IM/oral zuclopenthixol base (in multiple doses over 6 days). The two non-ester, IM/oral preparations produced a greater degree of sedation at 2 hours than did ZA but the effect of ZA and zuclopenthixol was more sustained than with haloperidol over 144 hours (although patients received more zuclopenthixol doses). No clear differences between treatments were detected with the exception of the slow onset of effect of ZA. The number of doses given varied substantially: ZA 1–4, haloperidol 1–26 and zuclopenthixol 1–22. This is the key (and perhaps unique) advantage of ZA – it reduces the need for repeat doses in acute psychosis. Indeed, this was the principal finding of the first double-blind study of ZA.⁵⁷ Participants were given either ZA or haloperidol IM and assessed over 3 days. Changes in Brief Psychiatric Rating Scale (BPRS) and Clinical Global Impression (CGI) scores were near identical on each daily assessment. However, only 1 of 23 ZA patients required a second injection whereas 7 of 21 haloperidol patients required a repeat dose. Speed of onset was not examined. Similar findings were reported by Thai researchers comparing the same treatments⁵⁸ and in three other studies of moderate size ($n=44$,^{59 $n=40$,⁶⁰ $n=50$ ⁶¹). In each study, the timing of assessments was such that time to onset of effect could not be determined.}

A Cochrane review⁶² included all of the above comparative studies as well as three further studies^{63–65} for which the authors were unable to obtain full details. The Cochrane authors concluded that all studies were methodologically flawed and poorly reported and that ZA did not appear to have a 'rapid onset of action'. They noted that

Box 1.1 Guidelines for the use of zuclopenthixol acetate (Acuphase)

Zuclopenthixol acetate (ZA) is not a rapidly tranquillising agent. It should be used only after an acutely psychotic patient has required **repeated** injections of short-acting antipsychotic drugs such as haloperidol or olanzapine, or sedative drugs such as lorazepam. It is perhaps best reserved for those few patients who have a prior history of good response to Acuphase.

ZA should be given only when enough time has elapsed to assess the full response to previously injected drugs: allow 15 minutes after IV injections, 60 minutes after IM.

ZA should **never** be administered:

- in an attempt to 'hasten' the antipsychotic effect of other antipsychotic therapy
- for rapid tranquillisation (onset of effect is too slow)
- at the same time as other parenteral antipsychotics or benzodiazepines (may lead to over-sedation which is difficult to reverse)
- as a 'test dose' for zuclopenthixol decanoate depot
- to a patient who is physically resistant (risk of intravasation and oil embolus).

ZA should **never** be used for, or in, the following:

- patients who accept oral medication
- patients who are neuroleptic-naïve
- patients who are sensitive to EPS
- patients who are unconscious
- patients who are pregnant
- those with hepatic or renal impairment
- those with cardiac disease.

ZA was probably no less effective than other treatments and that its use might 'result in less numerous coercive injections'.

Overall, the utility of ZA in RT is limited by a somewhat delayed onset of both sedative and antipsychotic actions. Sedation may be apparent in a minority of patients after 2–4 hours, but antipsychotic action is evident only after 8 hours. If ZA is given to a restrained patient, their behaviour on release from restraint is likely to be unchanged and will remain as such for several hours. ZA has a role in reducing the number of restraints for IM injection but it has no role in RT.

Guidelines for the use of ZA are summarised in Box 1.1.

Summary – rapid tranquillisation

A summary of rapid tranquillisation is provided in Box 1.2.

Rapid tranquillisation – physical monitoring

A summary of physical monitoring in RT is provided in Box 1.3.

Remedial measures in rapid tranquillisation

Remedial measures in RT are summarised in Table 1.9 and the use of flumazenil in Box 1.4.

Box 1.2 Rapid tranquillisation – summary**In an emergency situation**

Assess to see if there may be a medical cause.⁶⁶ Optimise regular prescription. The aim of pharmacological treatment is to calm the patient but not to oversedate. Note: lower doses should be used for children, adolescents and older adults. Patients' levels of consciousness and physical health should be monitored after administration of parenteral medication (see Box 1.3).

Step intervention

1. **De-escalation**, time out, placement, etc., as appropriate.

2. Offer oral treatment

If patient is prescribed a regular antipsychotic:

Lorazepam 1–2 mg

Promethazine 25–50 mg.

Monotherapy with **buccal midazolam** may avoid

the need for IM

treatment. Dose: 10 mg.

Note that this preparation

is unlicensed.

If patient is not already taking a regular oral or depot antipsychotic:

■ **Olanzapine** 10 mg, or

■ **Risperidone** 1–2 mg, or

■ **Quetiapine** 50–100 mg, or

■ **Haloperidol** 5 mg (best with promethazine 25 mg). Note that the SPC for haloperidol recommends a pre-treatment ECG and to avoid concomitant antipsychotics.

■ **Inhaled loxapine** 10 mg. Note that use of this preparation requires the co-operation of the patient, and that bronchospasm is a rare adverse effect (have a salbutamol inhaler to hand).

Repeat after 45–60 minutes, if necessary. Consider combining sedative and antipsychotic treatment. Go to step 3 if two doses fail or sooner if the patient is placing themselves or others at significant risk.

3. Consider IM treatment

Lorazepam 2 mg^{a,b}

Have flumazenil to hand in case of benzodiazepine-induced respiratory depression.

Promethazine 50 mg^c

IM promethazine is a useful option in a benzodiazepine-tolerant patient.

Olanzapine 10 mg^d

IM olanzapine should **not** be combined with an IM benzodiazepine, particularly if alcohol has been consumed.⁶⁷

Aripiprazole 9.75 mg

Less hypotension than olanzapine, but possibly less effective.^{3,11,68}

Haloperidol 5 mg

Haloperidol should be the last drug considered

■ The incidence of acute dystonia is high; combine with IM promethazine and ensure IM procyclidine is available.

■ The SPC recommends a pre-treatment ECG.

■ Recommended by NICE.

Repeat after 30–60 minutes if insufficient effect. Combinations of haloperidol and lorazepam or haloperidol and promethazine may be considered if single-drug treatment fails. Drugs must not be mixed in the same syringe. IM olanzapine must never be combined with IM benzodiazepine.

4. Consider IV treatment

■ Diazepam 10 mg over at least 2 minutes.^{b,e}

■ Repeat after 5–10 minutes if insufficient effect (up to 3 times).

■ Have flumazenil to hand.

5. **Seek expert advice** from the consultant or senior clinical pharmacist on call.^f

^aCarefully check administration instructions, which differ between manufacturers. With respect to Ativan (the most commonly used preparation), mix lorazepam 1:1 with water for injections before injecting. Some centres use 2–4 mg. An alternative is midazolam 7.5–15 mg. The risk of respiratory depression is dose-related with both but generally greater with midazolam.

Box 1.2 (Continued)

^b Caution in the very young and elderly and those with pre-existing brain damage or impulse control problems, as disinhibition reactions are more likely.⁶⁹

^c Promethazine has a slow onset of action but is often an effective sedative. Dilution is not required before IM injection. May be repeated up to a maximum of 100 mg/day. Wait 1–2 hours after injection to assess response. Note that promethazine alone has been reported, albeit very rarely, to cause neuroleptic malignant syndrome⁷⁰ although it is an extremely weak dopamine antagonist. Note the potential pharmacokinetic interaction between promethazine and haloperidol (reduced metabolism of haloperidol) which may confer risk if repeated doses of both are administered.

^d Recommended by NICE only for moderate behavioural disturbance, but data from a large observational study also support efficacy in clinical emergencies.

^e Use Diazemuls to avoid injection site reactions. IV therapy may be used instead of IM when a very rapid effect is required. IV therapy also ensures near immediate delivery of the drug to its site of action and effectively avoids the danger of inadvertent accumulation of slowly absorbed IM doses. Note also that IV doses can be repeated after only 5–10 minutes if no effect is observed.

^f Options at this point are limited. IM amyobarbitone and paraldehyde have been used in the past but are used now only extremely rarely and are generally not readily available. IV olanzapine, IV/IM droperidol and IV haloperidol are possible but serious adverse effects are fairly common. Ketamine is an option in medical units. Electroconvulsive therapy (ECT) is probably a better option. Behavioural disturbance secondary to the use of illicit drugs can be very difficult to manage. Time and supportive care may be safer than administering more sedative medication.

Box 1.3 Physical monitoring in rapid tranquillisation – summary

After any parenteral drug administration, monitor as follows:

- **Temperature**
- **Pulse**
- **Blood pressure**
- **Respiratory rate.**

Every 15 minutes for 1 hour, and then hourly until the patient is ambulatory. Patients who refuse to have their vital signs monitored or who remain too behaviourally disturbed to be approached should be observed for signs/symptoms of pyrexia, hypoxia, hypotension, oversedation and general physical well-being.

If the patient is asleep or **unconscious**, the continuous use of pulse oximetry to measure oxygen saturation is desirable. A nurse should remain with the patient until ambulatory.

ECG and haematological monitoring are also strongly recommended when parenteral antipsychotics are given, especially when higher doses are used.^{71,72} Hypokalaemia, stress and agitation place the patient at risk of cardiac arrhythmia⁷³ (see section on 'QT prolongation' in this chapter). ECG monitoring is formally recommended for all patients who receive haloperidol.

Index

Note: page numbers in *italics* refer to figures; those in **bold** to tables or boxes.

- abacavir **686**
 acamprosate
 alcohol dependence **397, 397, 402–403**
 eating disorders **669**
 re-starting after non-adherence **795**
 ACE inhibitors *see* angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors
 acetaldehyde **753**
 acetaminophen, in dementia **564, 571**
 acetylcholinesterase (AChE) **529**
 acetylcholinesterase (AChE)
 inhibitors **529–543, 530–531**
 adverse effects **537–538, 539**
 Alzheimer's disease **529–543, 544, 576**
 atrial fibrillation **720**
 clinical guidelines **544, 551, 551**
 combination therapy **536**
 delirium **675**
 dosing **535**
 drug interactions **223, 539–540, 541–542**
 efficacy **532–533, 534**
 Lewy body dementia **538, 550, 576, 717**
 mechanism of action **529**
 mild cognitive impairment **533, 537, 550**
 myasthenia gravis **564, 567**
 non-cognitive symptoms of dementia **535, 576**
 other dementias **550–551**
 Parkinson's disease **550, 716, 717**
 renal impairment **656**
 re-starting after non-adherence **795**
 stopping treatment **540–543**
 switching between **534**
 tolerability **536–537**
 vascular dementia **549**
 see also donepezil; galantamine; rivastigmine
 acetylcysteine (N-acetylcysteine)
 autism spectrum disorders **505**
 obsessive compulsive disorder **364**
 refractory schizophrenia **163**
 acetyl-L-carnitine **159**
 activated partial thromboplastin time **805**
 acute intoxication *see* intoxication, acute
 acute kidney injury **647**
 acutely disturbed behaviour **54–64**
 intoxication with street drugs **56, 450**
 rapid tranquilisation **54–59**
 acute mania *see* mania, acute
 addictions **385–457**
 S-adenosyl-t-methionine **275**
 ADHD *see* attention deficit hyperactivity disorder
 adherence, medication **787–793**
 assessment **732, 789**
 children and adolescents **486**
 enhancing **789–792**
 factors affecting **788**
 lithium therapy **206, 209**
 rates **787–789**
 re-starting medication after missed doses **794–797, 795**
 schizophrenia **4, 27, 42, 787–788, 790**
 adolescents *see* children and adolescents
 adverse drug reactions (ADR)
 autism spectrum disorder **504**
 biochemical **798, 799–804**
 breastfed infants **620, 622–630**
 children and adolescents **461**
 haematological **798, 805–807**
 hepatic impairment **636**
 HIV infection **680**
 learning disability **700**
 medication adherence and **788, 790**
 Naranjo probability scale **811, 812**
 older people **525**
 psychiatric *see* psychiatric adverse effects
 renal impairment **647**
 see also teratogenicity
 affective disorders
 caffeine consumption **762**
 non-psychotropics causing **808, 809, 810**
 stupor **107, 108, 109**
 see also bipolar disorder; depression; mania
 ageing
 pharmacodynamic changes **525**
 pharmacokinetic changes **526**
 see also older people
 aggressive behaviour
 autism spectrum disorders **506–508**
 benzodiazepine-associated **374, 381–383**
 carbamazepine **222**
 dementia *see* behavioural and psychological symptoms (BPSD) of dementia
 Huntington's disease **706**
 learning disabilities **701–702**
 lithium **207**
 non-psychotropics causing **809**
 valproate **215**
 see also acutely disturbed behaviour

The Maudsley Prescribing Guidelines in Psychiatry, Thirteenth Edition. David M. Taylor, Thomas R. E. Barnes and Allan H. Young.
 © 2018 David M. Taylor. Published 2018 by John Wiley & Sons Ltd.

832 Index

- agitation
 dementia *see* behavioural and psychological symptoms of dementia
 non-psychotropics causing 808, 809, 810
 rapid tranquillisation 54–57
- agomelatine
 adverse effects 358
 atrial fibrillation 720
 breastfeeding 622
 cardiac effects 326
 depression 264
 diabetes mellitus and 340
 discontinuation 310, 312, 315, 318
 driving ability 777
 epilepsy 692
 generalised anxiety disorder 360
 hepatic impairment 639
 hyperprolactinaemia and 337
 hyponatraemia 333, 333
 minimum effective dose 262
 older people 294, 295, 587
 overdose 769
 Parkinson's disease 715
 renal impairment 651
 sexual adverse effects 344
 smoking status and 750
 switching to/from 316, 318
- agranulocytosis
 clozapine–chemotherapy combination 202
 clozapine-induced 176, 179, 184–185, 197–201
 psychotropics causing 806
see also neutropenia
- AIDS *see* HIV infection/AIDS
- akathisia
 antipsychotic induced 39, 91–92, 94–96
 never-medicated schizophrenia 90
 non-psychotropics causing 810
 switching antipsychotics 150
 treatment 92, 94, 95–96
- D-alanine, refractory schizophrenia 163
- alanine aminotransferase (ALT) 799
- albumin, plasma 799
- albumin:creatinine ratio (ACR) 645, 646
- alcohol 387
 bariatric surgery and 727
 driving and 777
 drug interactions 451–452, 753–757, 754, 755
 metabolism 753, 753
 methadone interaction 410, 412
 post-mortem blood samples 742, 743
 units 387
- alcohol consumption
 pregnancy 400
 recommendations 387
- alcohol dehydrogenase (ADH) 753, 753
 drugs inhibiting 754
- alcohol dependence/misuse 387–404
 assessment 387–388
 brief structured intervention 387–388
 children and adolescents 400–401
 co-morbid mental health disorders 401–403
 concurrent drug use disorders 401
 drug interactions 753–756, 754, 755
 mild, assisted withdrawal 392, 393
 moderate, assisted withdrawal 392, 393, 393
 NICE guideline 387, 397, 397, 398, 399, 399
 older adults 401
 psychotropic drug choice 756
 relapse prevention 397–400
 severe, assisted withdrawal 392, 394, 394
 treatment *see* alcohol withdrawal
 Wernicke's encephalopathy 395–396
- alcohol intoxication
 drug interactions 754, 754, 756
 rapid tranquillisation 56
- Alcohol Use Disorders Identification Test (AUDIT) 388
- alcohol withdrawal 388–396
 carbamazepine 222
 children and adolescents 400–401
 clinical features 388–389
 community setting 390, 393
 complications 388–389
 fixed dose reduction regimen 393–394
 front-loading regimen 393
 inpatient/residential settings 390, 393, 394–395
 older adults 401
 pharmacologically assisted (detoxification) 390–395, 392
 pregnancy 400
 somatic complaints, and remedies 396, 396
 symptom-triggered regimen 394, 394–395
 variable dose reduction 393
 Wernicke's encephalopathy 395–396
- aldehyde dehydrogenase 753, 753
 drugs inhibiting 754
- alfuzosin 561
- alkaline phosphatase 799
- allopurinol 162, 237
- α_1 adrenergic agonists
 ADHD 497
 autism spectrum disorders 506
 PTSD in young people 492, 493
 tic disorders 513
see also clonidine; guanfacine
- alpha-blockers
 PTSD in young people 492, 493
 urinary retention in dementia 561, 568
- alpha-lipoic acid 100
- alprostadil 144, 145
- alverine 563
- Alzheimer's disease (AD) 529–549
 antipsychotic-associated pneumonia 148
 atrial fibrillation and 720
 BAP guidance 551, 551
 cognitive enhancers 529–543, 530–531
 depression 577–578
 driving regulations 776
 efficacy of drug treatment 532–534
 NICE guidance 543, 544
 non-cognitive symptoms *see* behavioural and psychological symptoms (BPSD) of dementia
 novel treatments 548–549
 other treatments 543–548
 quantifying drug effects 534
 stopping treatment 540–543, 543
see also dementia
- Alzheimer's Disease Assessment Scale - cognitive subscale (ADAS-cog) 532, 534
- amantadine
 antipsychotic-induced weight gain 100
 Huntington's disease 705
 hyperprolactinaemia 139
 multiple sclerosis 711–712
 psychiatric adverse effects 810
 refractory depression 274
 sexual dysfunction 144, 144, 345
- American Academy of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry (AACAP) 463, 480, 491
- amfetamone *see* bupropion
- amfetamines
 autism spectrum disorders 506
 depression 285, 286–287
 drug interactions 451–452
 epilepsy 693
 misuse 439–440, 455
 psychosis induced by 440
see also dexamfetamine; lisdexamfetamine
- Amiket (amitriptyline + ketamine cream) 300
- amisulpride
 adverse effects 39
 alcohol misusers 756
 bipolar disorder 226
 breastfeeding 625
 clozapine-induced hypersalivation 189
 delirium 674
 dementia 572, 574, 575
 depression 278
 diabetes and 124–125
 epilepsy 692
 equivalent dose 15
 hepatic impairment 637, 641
 Huntington's disease 706
 maximum licensed dose 12
 minimum effective dose 9
 monitoring physical health 37, 38
 negative symptoms 32
 older people 588
 overdose 771

- plasma level monitoring 732–734, 733
 pneumonia risk 148
 refractory schizophrenia 159, 162, 163, 164
 relative efficacy 5
 renal impairment 649
 sexual adverse effects 143
 switching to 51
 weight gain risk 97
- amitriptyline
 adverse effects 358
 autism spectrum disorders 508
 breastfeeding 624
 buccal 299
 children and adolescents 464–465
 clozapine-induced hypersalivation 189
 discontinuation symptoms 311
 effectiveness 257
 gel 300, 302
 intramuscular 302
 intravenous 299, 302
 and ketamine cream 300
 Parkinson's disease 715
 plasma level monitoring 734
 post-mortem blood concentrations 743
 post-stroke depression 290
 PTSD 363
 rectal 301, 303
 renal impairment 651
 surgery-related risk 783
- ammonia, serum 799
 amnesia, alcohol-induced 755
 amoxapine, epilepsy 692
 amphetamines *see* amfetamines
 amylase, serum 800
 anaemia, psychotropics causing 807
 anaesthetic agents 781
 analgesic agents
 dementia 564–565, 568, 571
 naltrexone-treated patients 398, 426
 opioid-dependent patients 420, 426
 psychiatric adverse effects 808
- angiotensin II antagonists
 cognitive effects 566
 lithium interactions 210, 211
- angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitors
 lithium interactions 210, 211
 psychiatric adverse effects 808
- ANNSERS (Antipsychotic Non-Neurological Side-Effects Rating Scale) 5–6
- anorexia nervosa 667–669, 670
 Antabuse *see* disulfiram
- anti-androgens, obsessive-compulsive disorder 365
- antiarrhythmics, QT prolongation 115
- antibiotics
 dementia 566, 567
 psychiatric adverse effects 808
 QT prolongation 115
- anticholinergic agents
 antidepressant discontinuation symptoms 312
 bronchodilators 563–564
 with depot antipsychotics 69
 extrapyramidal symptoms 92, 95
 hypersalivation 189, 190, 564
 Parkinson's disease 716, 716, 717
 safety in dementia 557–564, 561, 567, 568
 street drug interactions 452
 urinary incontinence 557–561, 562, 568
- anticholinergic effect on cognition (AEC) scores 557, 558–560, 561
- anticholinergic effects
 antidepressants 294–295, 296, 321, 358–359
 antipsychotics 39, 142
 anticholinesterases *see* acetylcholinesterase (AChE) inhibitors
- anticoagulation, SSRIs and 291, 348–349, 350
- anticonvulsants
 alcohol dependence 389, 400
 autism spectrum disorders 505, 508
 biochemical side-effects 799, 802
 chronic kidney disease 647
 clozapine-treated patients 176
 dementia 579
 driving and 777
 drug interactions 688–691
 ECT interactions 282
 learning disabilities 701
 pregnancy 610, 611, 612
 psychiatric adverse effects 688, 690, 808–809
 surgical patients 782
see also carbamazepine; mood stabilisers; valproate
- anti-dementia agents *see* cognitive enhancers
- antidepressants 257–359
 22q11.2 deletion syndrome 697
 adverse effects 325–354, 691
 older people 294, 294–295, 296
 relative 258, 358–359
 alcohol use disorders 402, 756
 alternative routes of administration 298–305, 299–301
 anxiety spectrum disorders 260
 atrial fibrillation 720
 bariatric surgery 723
 biochemical effects 799–804
 bipolar depression 243, 244, 245, 472
 bipolar disorder 251
 borderline personality disorder 664
 breastfeeding 620, 621, 622–624
 buccal 298, 299
 cardiac effects 325–332, 326–327
 children and adolescents 463–467, 467, 524
 bipolar depression 472
- cross-tapering 314
 dementia 577–578
 depression 257–359
 children and adolescents 463–467, 467
 choice of agent 258
 duration of treatment 259–260
 effectiveness 257
 lithium augmentation 206
 minimum effective doses 262, 262–263
 next step treatments 260
 NICE guidelines 256, 278, 307
 onset of action 257–258
 post-stroke 290–291
 prescribing principles 255
 prophylaxis 306–309
 psychostimulants with 285, 286–287
 psychotic 278–279
 refractory (resistant) 267–273, 268, 271
 switching 259, 264–265, 314–320, 316–319
 treatment algorithm 264–265
 diabetes mellitus and 340, 340–342
 discontinuation 312, 314–320, 316–319
 discontinuation symptoms 258, 310–313, 311, 314
 driving and 777
 drug interactions 223, 259, 321–324
 dysthymia 257
 eating disorders 668, 669
 ECT interactions 281
 epilepsy 691, 692
 haematological effects 805–807
 hepatic impairment 638, 639, 641
 HIV infection 680–681
 Huntington's disease 706
 hyperprolactinaemia and 337, 337–339
 hyponatraemic effects 323, 333–336
 intra-gastric (IG) 298
 intra-jejunal (IJ) 298
 intramuscular (IM) 298–302, 300
 intravenous (IV) 298–302, 299–300
 learning disabilities 701
 multiple sclerosis 710
 neuroleptic malignant syndrome 105
 older people 293–297, 295–296, 587–588
 opioid dependence 422
 overdose 769–771
 pregnancy 605–608, 608, 612
 rectal 301, 303
 renal impairment 647, 651–653, 656
 re-starting after non-adherence 795
 schizophrenia negative symptoms 32, 33
 serotonin reuptake inhibition 347, 347
 sexual adverse effects 343–346, 344, 345
 street drug interactions 451
 sublingual 298, 299

834 Index

- antidepressants (*cont'd*)
 suicidality and 259
 surgical patients 781, 782–783, 785
 swapping/stopping 314–320, 316–319
 transdermal 300–301, 302–303
- antidiuretic hormone, syndrome of
 inappropriate secretion *see* syndrome
 of inappropriate antidiuretic
 hormone
- anti-emetics
 clozapine-treated patients 176
 dementia patients 561–563, 567
 opioid withdrawal 420
- antiepileptics *see* anticonvulsants
- antihistamines
 borderline personality disorder 665
 dementia 565, 567, 580
see also cyproheptadine; loratadine;
 promethazine
- antihypertensives
 antipsychotic-related hypertension 132
 dementia patients 565–566, 567
- anti-inflammatory agents, Alzheimer's
 disease 548
- antimalarial agents 115, 809
- antimuscarinic agents
 akathisia 95
 dementia 564
see also anticholinergic agents
- Antipsychotic Non-Neurological
 Side-Effects Rating Scale
 (ANNSERS) 5–6
- antipsychotics 3–204
 22q11.2 deletion syndrome 697
 acute mania/hypomania 226–227, 235,
 236, 236
 ADHD 497
 adverse effects 5–6, 90–155
 biochemical changes 799–804
 blood lipids 119–122
 blood pressure 130–133
 children and adolescents 478
 combination therapy 20–21
 dementia 572–574
 diabetes 123–129, 126
 dose-related 17
 ECG/QT prolongation 112–116, 114
 extrapyramidal *see* extrapyramidal
 symptoms
 first- vs second-generation
 agents 44–45, 90
 haematological changes 805–807
 hyperprolactinaemia 137, 137–140
 hyponatraemia 134–136, 135
 monitoring 37–38, 47
 neuroleptic malignant syndrome 104,
 104–105
 older people 525
 pneumonia 148–149
 rapid tranquillisation 55
 relative 39, 39
 sexual dysfunction 142, 143
 switching agents for 150–151,
 150–152
 tardive dyskinesia *see* tardive dyskinesia
 venous thromboembolism 153–155
 weight gain *see* weight gain
- alcohol use disorders 403, 756
 alternative views on 28–29
- amphetamine psychosis 440
- anorexia nervosa 667, 668
- atrial fibrillation 720
- atypical/typical dichotomy 3–4
- bariatric surgery 724
- bipolar depression 226, 244
- bipolar disorder 226–228, 250–251
- borderline personality disorder 664
- breastfeeding 620, 621, 625–626
- catatonia 108–109, 109, 110
- children and adolescents 524
- bipolar illness 471, 472,
 473–474, 475
 obsessive-compulsive disorder 488
 psychosis 478
 PTSD 492, 493
- choosing 4–6
 classification 3–4, 44
- combination therapy 8, 20–24, 47
 rapid tranquillisation 57
 treatment failure 51–52, 162,
 162–165
- delirium 674–675, 676
- delirium tremens 389
- dementia 572–575, 575, 813
- depot *see* depot antipsychotics
- depression 268, 278
- discontinuation 28–29
- dose-response effects 16, 49–50
- doses 8
 equivalent 14, 14, 15
 loading 47
 maintenance treatment 27
 maximum licensed 12–13
 minimum effective 9, 9
 when to increase 49–50
- driving and 777
- drug interactions 223
- ECT augmentation 86–87
- ECT interactions 282
- epilepsy 692–693
- first-episode psychosis 25–26
- first generation *see* first-generation
 antipsychotics
- hepatic impairment 636, 637–638, 641
- high-dose 16–19
 adverse effects 17
 efficacy 16–17
 monitoring 18
 prescribing 17–18
- HIV infection 680, 681
- Huntington's disease 705, 706
- information for patients 28
- learning disabilities 701
- long-acting injections *see* depot
 antipsychotics
- maintenance treatment 25–27, 26
- monitoring 8, 36, 37–38, 47
- monotherapy 8, 20–22
- multi-episode schizophrenia 26–27
- multiple sclerosis 711
- negative symptoms 31–35
- neonatal discontinuation symptoms 604
- neuroscience-based nomenclature
 (NbN) 4, 44
- NICE guidelines 46–48
- non-adherence 6, 27, 109
 management 40, 41, 42, 66
 re-starting after 795
- obsessive compulsive disorder 364
- older people 588–591
- overdose 771
- Parkinson's disease 716
- plasma level monitoring 732–738,
 733, 789
- plasma level variations 50
- pregnancy 602–604, 604, 612
- prescribing principles 8
- PRN (*pro re nata*) prescribing 8, 21
- prophylaxis 25–30, 26
- PTSD 363
- rapid tranquillisation 54–56, 57–59
- relative efficacy 5–6
- renal impairment 647, 649–650, 656
- response 49–53
- second generation *see* second-generation
 antipsychotics
- smoking interactions 765–766
- street drug interactions 451
- surgical patients 783
- switching 50–52, 150–151, 150–152
- synthetic cannabinoid receptor agonist
 (SCRA)-related psychosis 448
- tic disorders 513–514
- typical/atypical dichotomy 3–4
- valproate interactions 217
- antiretroviral agents
 adverse psychiatric effects 686, 686
 HIV-associated neurocognitive
 disorders 682
 interactions with drugs of abuse 450
 pharmacodynamic interactions 685, 685
 pharmacokinetic interactions 450, 685
- antisocial personality disorder, ADHD
 and 498
- antispasmodics, in dementia 563, 567
- anxiety 360
 alcohol dependence 403
 autism spectrum disorders 508
 epilepsy 688
 Huntington's disease 706, 707
 non-psychotropics causing 808,
 809, 810
 smoking 766

- anxiety spectrum disorders 360–383
 22q11.2 deletion syndrome 696, 697
 antidepressants 260
 atrial fibrillation 720
 benzodiazepines 361–365, 373
 caffeine consumption 762–763
 children and adolescents 480–484, 482, 491–494
 HIV infection 682
 learning disabilities 701
 multiple sclerosis 709
 NICE guidelines 365, 368–369, 373
 pregabalin 368
 pregnancy 611–612
 psychological approaches 368
 SSRIs/SNRIs 365–367
- anxiolytics 373
 anorexia nervosa 668
 atrial fibrillation 720
 biochemical side-effects 799
 driving and 777
 older people 592
 renal impairment 655, 656
see also benzodiazepines; sedatives
- apathy, Huntington's disease 706, 707
- 6-APB (6-(2-aminopropyl)benzofuran) 451–452
- aquaretics 134
- aripiprazole
 acute mania/hypomania 226, 236
 adverse effects 39
 antipsychotic-induced weight gain 99, 100
 atrial fibrillation 720
 bipolar depression 243, 245
 bipolar disorder 226, 250
 children and adolescents 474, 475
 rapid cycling 241
 blood lipids and 119, 120
 breastfeeding 625
 catatonia 108–109, 110
 children and adolescents 524
 autism spectrum disorders 506–507
 bipolar illness 474, 475
 psychosis 478
 PTSD 492
 delirium 674
 dementia 572, 575
 depression 268, 278
 diabetes and 124–125, 126
 epilepsy 692
 equivalent dose 15
 hepatic impairment 637
 HIV infection 680
 Huntington's disease 706
 hyperprolactinaemia 138, 139, 139
 hypertension risk 131, 132
 hyponatraemia 134
 lauroxil 71, 75–76
 learning disabilities 701
 long-acting injection (LAI) 67, 75–76
 bipolar disorder 229, 229
 doses and intervals 68, 75
 intramuscular injection sites 821
 maximum licensed dose 12
 older people 590
 pharmacokinetics 71
 switching to 75
 maximum licensed dose 12
 neuroleptic malignant syndrome 105
 older people 588
 overdose 771
 Parkinson's disease 716
 plasma level monitoring 733, 734–735
 post-mortem blood concentrations 743
 pregnancy 603, 604
 QT prolongation 114
 rapid tranquilisation 54, 55, 60
 children and adolescents 522
 intramuscular injection site 821
 renal impairment 649
 schizophrenia
 clozapine augmentation 20, 158, 159
 dose–response effects 49
 minimum effective dose 9
 negative symptoms 32
 refractory 162, 164
 relative efficacy 5
 sexual function and 142, 143
 switching to 99, 100
 tic disorders 513
 weight gain risk 97
- armodafinil
 depression 285, 286
 schizophrenia 32
- aromatherapy, for dementia 571
- arrhythmias
 antidepressant-induced 321, 326–327, 329–332
 antipsychotic-induced 112–113
 cardiovascular risk factors 116
 physiological risk factors 114, 115
 risk in anorexia nervosa 667–668
see also atrial fibrillation; QT prolongation
- asenapine
 acute mania/hypomania 226, 236
 adverse effects 39
 bariatric surgery 724
 bipolar disorder 226, 250
 blood pressure effects 130
 breastfeeding 625
 children and adolescents
 bipolar illness 474, 475
 psychosis 478
 diabetes and 125
 epilepsy 693
 equivalent dose 15
 hepatic impairment 637
 maximum licensed dose 12
 minimum effective dose 9
- neuroleptic malignant syndrome 105
 overdose 771
 rapid tranquilisation 54
 refractory schizophrenia 162
 renal impairment 649
 re-starting after non-adherence 795
 sexual function and 143
 weight gain risk 97
- aspartate aminotransferase 800
- Asperger's syndrome 504
- aspirin
 cognitive effects 564
 multiple sclerosis 712
 SSRI interaction 348, 348
 valproate interaction 217
- ataxia, alcohol-induced 755
- atazanavir 681, 685
- atenolol, social phobia 366
- atomoxetine
 ADHD 501
 adults 498, 499
 children 497
 autism spectrum disorders 506
 breastfeeding 630
 epilepsy 693
 hepatic impairment 640
 Parkinson's disease 715
- atrial fibrillation (AF) 719–721, 720
- atropine, for hypersalivation 189, 564
- attention deficit hyperactivity disorder (ADHD) 496–503, 500–501
 22q11.2 deletion syndrome 696, 697
 adult 497–499, 498
 autism spectrum disorders 505–506
 bipolar disorder and 472
 caffeine consumption 763
 childhood 496, 496–497
 driving and 777
 epilepsy and 693
 learning disability with 702
 obsessive compulsive disorder with 488
 pregnancy 613
- atypical antipsychotics 3–4, 44
see also second-generation antipsychotics
- autism 504
- autism spectrum disorders (ASD) 504–511
 co-morbid problem behaviours 505–509
 core symptoms 504–505
 learning disability with 699, 701
 maternal SSRI use and 605, 607
 melatonin for insomnia 508, 518
 psychiatric co-morbidity 504
- baclofen
 alcohol dependence 400, 403
 GHB and GBL withdrawal 442, 443
 tic disorders 514
- BALANCE study 215, 250
- BAP *see* British Association for Psychopharmacology
- bapincuzumab 549

- barbiturates
ECT interactions 282
psychiatric side effects 690
see also phenobarbital
- bariatric surgery 722–728
antipsychotic-induced weight gain 101
drug formulations 722–723
pharmacokinetic changes 722
psychotropic prescribing after 723–727, 726
- basophils 805
- behavioural and psychological symptoms of
dementia (BPSD) 570–585, 581
analgesics 571
antidepressants 577–578
antipsychotics 572–575, 813
benzodiazepines 577
cognitive enhancers 535, 576
ECT 580
Ginkgo biloba 580
mood stabilisers 579
non-drug measures 570–571
sedating antihistamines 580
sleep disturbances 579–580
- behavioural therapies
ADHD 496
anorexia nervosa 667
childhood insomnia 518
drug-induced weight gain 99
tics 512
see also cognitive behavioural therapy
- behaviour problems
autism spectrum disorders 504, 505–508
dementia *see* behavioural and psychological symptoms (BPSD) of dementia
Huntington's disease 704–705, 706
learning disabilities 699, 700, 701–702
see also acutely disturbed behaviour
- benign ethnic neutropenia (BEN) 197, 198, 200
- benperidol 39
- benzamides, substituted 3
- benzotropine 95, 189
- benzhexol 189
- benzodiazepines 373–383
acute mania/hypomania 235, 236
adverse effects 374–375
akathisia 95, 96
alcohol withdrawal 389, 390–395, 393, 394, 403
antagonism *see* flumazenil
anxiety spectrum disorders 361–365, 373
anxiety with alcohol dependence 403
anxiolytic 373
bariatric surgery 726
borderline personality disorder 665
breastfeeding 629
caffeine interaction 761
catatonia/stupor 108, 109
children and adolescents
anxiety disorders 482, 482
autism spectrum disorders 506, 508
delirium 675
dementia 577
dependence (misuse) 377–380, 445–446, 446, 455
alcohol dependence with 401
pregnancy and 445–446
urine screening 377
depression 374
detoxification 377–380
discontinuation 445, 446
disinhibitory reactions 381–383
dosage reduction 378–379
driving and 777, 778
drug interactions 223, 375
ECT interactions 281
GBL and GHB withdrawal 442, 443
generalised anxiety disorder 360
HIV infection 682
Huntington's disease 706
hypnotic 373
methadone interaction 410, 412
misuse *see* benzodiazepines, dependence
multiple sclerosis 709
neuroleptic malignant syndrome and 105
older people 374, 577
overdose 772
panic disorder 362
post-mortem blood concentrations 743
pregnancy 611, 612
psychiatric side effects 690
psychosis 374
rapid tranquilisation 54, 55, 56, 374
renal impairment 655
smoking status and 750
social phobia 366
street drug interactions 452
surgical patients 783
switching to diazepam 378, 378
synthetic cannabinoid receptor agonist (SCRA) withdrawal 449
tolerance test 377–378
withdrawal symptoms 377, 377
benztropine *see* benztropine
- Best Interests Meeting 594, 595–596
- beta-agonists, in dementia 563
- beta blockers
generalised anxiety disorder 360
multiple sclerosis 709
psychiatric adverse effects 810
PTSD in young people 492, 493
social phobia 366
see also propranolol
- betahistine 100
- bethanechol
clozapine-induced constipation 195
sexual dysfunction 144, 144, 345
- beverages *see* drinks
- bexarotene, schizophrenia 162
- bicarbonate, plasma 800
- bilirubin, serum 800
- binge eating disorder 667, 669, 670
- biochemical effects, psychotropic drugs 798, 799–804
- bipolar depression 243–249
alternative treatments 245
antipsychotic-induced switching 226, 230
antipsychotic therapy 226, 244
carbamazepine 221, 243, 245
children and adolescents 472–473, 474, 475
drug treatment 243–246, 244–245
lithium 206, 244, 246
meta-analysis 243
pregnancy 611
psychostimulants 286
suicide risk 243, 250
valproate 215, 244
- bipolar disorder 205–253
alcohol dependence with 402–403
antipsychotics 226–228
pneumonia risk 148
atrial fibrillation and 720
children and adolescents 467, 471–477, 473–475
ADHD and 472
chronic kidney disease 647
HIV infection 681–682
lithium 205–206
mixed states 250
mood stabilisers 205–224
multiple sclerosis 710–711
older people 590–591
physical monitoring 232–233
plasma level monitoring 233, 733, 734
pregnancy and post partum 608–610, 611
prophylaxis 250–253, 251
antipsychotic long-acting injections 229, 229–231
antipsychotics 226, 250–251
carbamazepine 221–222, 250, 251
lithium 206, 250, 251
NICE guidance 250–251, 251
valproate 215, 250, 251, 251
rapid cycling 241, 241–242
smoking cessation 435
see also bipolar depression; mania
- bisphosphonates 668
- bitopertin 32, 165
- bleeding, SSRI-related 293, 347–354, 348
- blonanserin 162
- blood drug concentrations
post-mortem 742–744, 743
see also plasma drug level monitoring

- blood pressure (BP)
 antidepressant-induced changes 326–327
 antipsychotic-induced changes 130–133
 monitoring
 bipolar disorder 233
 rapid tranquillisation 62
 schizophrenia 38, 130, 156
see also hypertension; hypotension
 body dysmorphic disorder (BDD) 367
 Bolam test 813
 Bolitho test 813
 borderline personality disorder (BPD) 663–666
 botulinum toxin
 clozapine-induced hypersalivation 189
 Huntington's disease 705
 tic disorders 514
 bradycardia, acetylcholinesterase inhibitors and 537–538, 539
 bradykinesia, antipsychotic-induced 32, 91–92, 150
 breastfeeding 619–634
 antidepressants 621, 622–624
 antipsychotics 621, 625–626
 hypnotics 621, 629
 infant exposure to drugs 619
 mood stabilisers 621, 627–628
 opioid dependence 428
 prescribing principles 619–620
 recommended agents 620
 sedatives 620
 stimulants 630, 630
see also post-partum period
 breast surgery, SSRI-treated patients 351, 351
 breathalyser 387
 brexpiprazole
 adverse effects 39
 blood lipids and 119
 breastfeeding 625
 diabetes and 125
 epilepsy 693
 equivalent dose 15
 hepatic impairment 637
 maximum licensed dose 13
 minimum effective dose 9
 older people 588
 sexual function and 143
 weight gain risk 97
 British Association for Psychopharmacology (BAP) guidelines
 alcohol withdrawal 390–393
 bipolar disorder 206, 243, 250
 dementia 534, 551, 551
 lithium monitoring 206, 209
 obsessive compulsive disorder in young people 485–486
 schizophrenia 33
 bromocriptine 139, 144
 bronchodilators, in dementia 563–564, 567
 bulimia nervosa 667, 669, 670
 buprenorphine 414–418
 analgesia for patients on 426
 cautions 417–418
 clinical effectiveness 414
 detoxification regimes 422, 423, 423, 424
 drug interactions 418
 less than daily dosing 417
 methadone vs 408, 409
 older people 565
 overdose 418
 precipitated withdrawal 414, 416, 416
 pregnancy and breastfeeding 427, 428
 prescribing information 414
 QT prolongation 413
 refractory depression 274
 re-titration after non-compliance 795
 stabilisation dose 417
 starting dose 414, 415
 starting treatment 415
 transfer from methadone to 415–417, 416
 transfer from other prescribed opioids to 417
 transfer to methadone from 417
 wash-out period 425
 withdrawal 408
 buprenorphine/naloxone (Suboxone) 418, 427
 bupropion (amfebutamone)
 ADHD 497
 antipsychotic-induced weight gain 100
 bipolar depression 244
 breastfeeding 622
 buccal 299
 cardiac effects 326, 329
 clozapine-induced hypersalivation 189
 cocaine misuse 439
 depression 267, 268
 discontinuation 310, 318
 drug interactions 435
 eating disorders 669
 epilepsy 692
 HIV infection 681
 Huntington's disease 706
 hyperprolactinaemia and 337
 hyponatraemia 333
 overdose 769
 pregnancy 608
 refractory depression 269
 renal impairment 651
 sexual adverse effects 344
 sexual dysfunction therapy 144, 144, 345
 smoking cessation 434, 434–435, 437
 switching to/from 316, 318
 bupropion + naltrexone 100
 buspirone
 alcohol dependence 403
 body dysmorphic disorder 367
 children and adolescents
 anxiety disorders 482, 482
 autism spectrum disorders 508
 generalised anxiety disorder 360
 HIV infection 682
 Huntington's disease 706
 multiple sclerosis 709
 refractory depression 267, 269, 271
 renal impairment 655
 sexual dysfunction 144, 144, 345
 butyrophenones 3
 breastfeeding 625
 overdose 771
 butyrylcholinesterase (BuChE) 529
 cabergoline 139, 274
 caffeine 759–764
 consumption in mental illness 762–763
 content of drinks 759, 762
 interactions 760, 761
 intoxication 761, 761
 Parkinson's disease 717
 pharmacokinetics 760
 psychotropic effects 760
 calcium, plasma 800
 calcium channel blockers, psychiatric adverse effects 810
 Camcolit 207
 cancer
 psychostimulants for depression 287
 valproate therapy 214
see also chemotherapeutic agents
 cannabinoids
 anorexia nervosa 667
 Huntington's disease 705
 tic disorders 514
see also synthetic cannabinoid receptor agonists
 cannabis 448, 449, 455
 drug interactions 451–452
 schizophrenia negative symptoms 33
 tic disorders 514
 capacity, mental 818
 assessment 593
 covert administration of medicines and 593–596, 597
 learning disabilities 699–700
 carbamazepine 221–225, 224
 acute mania/hypomania 221
 adverse effects 222–223, 690–691
 alcohol misuse 756
 bariatric surgery 725
 benzodiazepine withdrawal 379
 bipolar depression 221, 243, 245
 bipolar disorder 221–222, 224, 250, 251
 breastfeeding 627
 dementia 579
 discontinuation 223

838 Index

- carbamazepine (*cont'd*)
 drug interactions 223–224, 688–690
 formulations 221
 hepatic impairment 640
 HIV infection 681
 hyponatraemia risk 335
 indications 221–222, 224
 learning disabilities 701
 lithium interaction 212
 mechanism of action 221
 older people 591
 on-treatment monitoring 223, 232–233
 overdose 771
 plasma levels 222, 733
 pregnancy 610, 611
 pre-treatment tests 223
 psychiatric adverse effects 690, 808
 PTSD in young people 493
 renal impairment 654, 656
 re-starting after non-adherence 795
 smoking status and 750
 street drug interactions 452
 surgical patients 782
 women of child-bearing age 223, 601
- carbohydrate-deficient transferrin (CDT) 800
- cardiac arrhythmias *see* arrhythmias
- cardiomyopathy,
 clozapine-induced 184–186
- cardiovascular adverse effects
 acetylcholinesterase inhibitors 537–538, 539
 antidepressants 325–332, 326–327
 antipsychotics 112–133, 572–574
 clozapine 174, 184–188
 risk in anorexia nervosa 667–668
- cardiovascular agents
 dementia 565–566
 psychiatric adverse effects 810
- cardiovascular disease
 antidepressant prescribing 325, 326–327, 329
 cigarette smokers 765, 766
 depression-associated risk 329
- cardiovascular risk factors
 diabetes 125
 drug-induced arrhythmias and 116
 dyslipidaemia 119–121
 schizophrenia 119
see also smoking; weight gain
- care homes
 covert administration of medicines 596
 learning disabilities 700
- cariprazine
 acute mania 226, 236
 adverse effects 39
 bipolar depression 245
 blood lipids and 119
 breastfeeding 625
 diabetes and 125
 epilepsy 693
 equivalent dose 15
 hepatic impairment 637
 hyponatraemia 134
 maximum licensed dose 13
 minimum effective dose 9
 negative symptoms 32
 older people 588
 sexual function and 143
 weight gain risk 97
- cataplexy 107–111
 malignant/lethal 108
 management 108–109, 109, 110
- CATIE-AD study 572
 CATIE study 5, 27, 44, 50, 51
- CBT *see* cognitive behavioural therapy
- celecoxib 162, 237
- cerebrolysin 546
- cerebrovascular accident (CVA) *see* stroke
- cetirizine 565
- chamomile 361
- chemotherapeutic agents
 clozapine and 202–203
 psychiatric adverse effects 811
see also cancer
- Childhood Anxiety Multimodal Study (CAMS) 481
- childhood disintegrative disorder 504
- children and adolescents 461–524
 ADHD 496, 496–503
 alcohol dependence 400–401
 anxiety disorders 480–484, 482, 491–494
 autism spectrum disorders 504–511
 bipolar illness 467, 471–477, 473–475
 depression 463–470, 467
 eating disorders 669
 lithium plasma levels 207
 medication doses 524
 melatonin for insomnia 517–520, 519
 obsessive compulsive disorder 485–490, 487
 prescribing principles 461–462
 psychosis 478–479
 PTSD 484, 491–495, 493
 rapid tranquillisation 521–522, 521–523
 tics and Tourette's syndrome 512–516, 515
- Children's Yale-Brown Obsessive Compulsive Scale (CY-BOCS) 485, 487
- chlorthalidone
 alcohol-dependent pregnant women 400
 alcohol withdrawal 393, 393–395, 394
 diazepam equivalent dose 378
 renal impairment 655
- chlorthalidone, serum 801
- chloroquine 809
- chlorphenamine 565
- chlorpromazine 3
 adverse effects 39
 breastfeeding 626
 dose 16, 17
 equivalent doses 14, 14
 first-episode psychosis 25
 hepatic impairment 638
 maximum licensed dose 12
 minimum effective dose 9
 monitoring physical health 37, 38
 NICE guidance 47
 overdose 771
 renal impairment 649
 sexual adverse effects 143
 smoking status and 750
 venous thromboembolism risk 153
 weight gain risk 97
- chocolate 759
- cholesterol, blood 119, 120–121, 801
- cholinesterase inhibitors *see* acetylcholinesterase inhibitors
- chorea, Huntington's disease 704, 705
- chronic kidney disease 647
see also renal impairment
- Chronic Kidney Disease Epidemiology Collaboration (CKD-EPI) formula 645, 646
- cigarettes, electronic *see* electronic cigarettes
- cigarette smoking *see* smoking
- cimetidine
 caffeine interaction 761
 carbamazepine interaction 224
 with clozapine 158
 psychiatric adverse effects 566, 811
- Circadin 517, 519, 815
- citalopram
 adverse effects 358
 alcohol dependence 402, 756
 anxiety disorders 367
 breastfeeding 622
 cardiac effects 326, 329, 330
 children and adolescents 524
 anxiety disorders 482
 depression 464
 obsessive compulsive disorder 485
 PTSD 492, 493
 dementia 577, 578
 depression 267, 267
 epilepsy 692
 hepatic impairment 639, 641
 HIV infection 680–681
 Huntington's disease 706
 interferon- α -induced depression 681
 intravenous (IV) 298–302, 300
 minimum effective dose 262
 multiple sclerosis 710
 obsessive compulsive disorder 364
 older people 287, 587
 post-stroke depression 290, 291
 renal impairment 651, 656
 switching from 314

- CKD-EPI (Chronic Kidney Disease Epidemiology Collaboration) formula 645, 646
- Clinical Institute Withdrawal Assessment of Alcohol Scale, Revised (CIWA-Ar) 390, 391
- clomethiazole, renal impairment 655
- clomiphene, tic disorders 514
- clomipramine
 - adverse effects 358
 - breastfeeding 624
 - childhood obsessive compulsive disorder 485, 488
 - diabetes mellitus and 340
 - discontinuation 312, 318
 - generalised anxiety disorder 361
 - Huntington's disease 706
 - hyperprolactinaemia 337
 - intravenous 299, 302
 - obsessive compulsive disorder 364, 365
 - older people 587
 - panic disorder 362, 367
 - pregnancy 606
 - premature ejaculation 343
 - rectal 301, 303
 - refractory depression 275
 - renal impairment 651
 - sexual adverse effects 344
 - switching to/from 316, 318
- clonazepam
 - acute mania/hypomania 236
 - akathisia 92, 95
 - breastfeeding 629
 - children and adolescents 482
 - diazepam equivalent dose 378
 - driving and 778
 - Huntington's disease 705
 - older people 592
 - panic disorder 367
 - renal impairment 655
 - social phobia 366
- clonidine
 - ADHD 497
 - akathisia 95
 - autism spectrum disorders 506
 - clozapine-induced hypersalivation 189
 - PTSD in young people 492, 493
 - tic disorders 513
- Clopixol *see* zuclopenthixol
- clotiapine 15
- clozapine 156–203
 - 22q11.2 deletion syndrome 697
 - acute exacerbation of schizophrenia 41
 - acute mania 237
 - adverse effects 39, 175–203
 - blood lipids 120, 121
 - common 175–176, 175–178
 - community-based patients 171, 174
 - diabetes 123–124
 - gastrointestinal hypomotility 175, 193, 193–196
 - hypersalivation 171, 175, 189–190, 189–192
 - hypertension 131–132, 175
 - hyponatraemia 134
 - neutropenia and agranulocytosis 176, 179, 184–185, 197–201
 - older people 525
 - orthostatic hypotension 130, 175
 - pneumonia 148, 180
 - serious haematological and cardiovascular 184–188
 - sexual dysfunction 143
 - uncommon or unusual 179–180, 179–183
 - weight gain 97, 175
 - alternatives 162–165, 162–168
 - antipsychotic polypharmacy vs 21–22
 - atrial fibrillation 720
 - augmentation 51–52, 158
 - to ameliorate adverse effects 20, 158
 - NICE guidance 47
 - suggested options 159
 - autism spectrum disorders 508
 - bariatric surgery 724
 - bipolar disorder 226, 241
 - borderline personality disorder 664
 - breastfeeding 621, 625
 - caffeine interaction 761
 - catatonia 109, 110
 - chemotherapy and 202–203
 - children and adolescents 478, 524
 - classification as atypical 3–4
 - community-based patients 170–174, 172–173
 - dementia 572
 - dosing/titration
 - community-based patients 171, 172–173
 - maximum licensed dose 12
 - re-starting after a break 169, 169, 795
 - starting regimen 156, 156–157
 - target dose 158
 - ECT augmentation 86–87
 - ECT interactions 282
 - epilepsy 693
 - first-episode psychosis 25, 40
 - fluoxetine interaction 259
 - hepatic impairment 637
 - HIV infection 680
 - Huntington's disease 705
 - initiation schedule 156–157
 - learning disabilities 701
 - lithium combinations 198–199, 200, 207
 - monitoring physical health 37, 38, 170–173, 173
 - monotherapy 158
 - multiple sclerosis 711
 - negative symptoms 32
 - NICE guidance 46, 47
 - older people 588–589
 - optimising treatment 158–161
 - overdose 771
 - Parkinson's disease 716, 717
 - plasma levels 733, 735–736
 - acting on results 744–745, 744–745
 - optimising treatment 158
 - response threshold 158, 735
 - post-mortem blood concentrations 743
 - pregnancy 603, 604
 - relapsed schizophrenia 41
 - relative efficacy 5, 6
 - renal impairment 649
 - smoking cessation and 750, 766
 - surgical patients 783
 - switching to 173
 - tardive dyskinesia and 92
 - tic disorders 514
 - treatment-resistant schizophrenia 16–17, 50, 156–203
 - unlicensed use 815
 - for water intoxication 134
- cocaine 439, 456
 - co-existing alcohol dependence 401
 - co-morbid methadone use 412
 - detoxification 439
 - drug interactions 451–452
 - post-mortem metabolism 742, 743
 - substitution treatment 439
- Cockcroft–Gault equation 645, 645
- cocoa 547
- codeine 565
- co-enzyme Q10 710
- coffee 759
- cognitive behavioural therapy (CBT)
 - ADHD in adults 498
 - children and adolescents
 - anxiety disorders 480
 - depression 463, 465, 466
 - obsessive compulsive disorder 485, 486, 487–488, 489
 - PTSD 491, 492
 - multiple sclerosis 710
 - schizophrenia 162
 - see also* behavioural therapies
- cognitive enhancers (anti-dementia agents) 529–543, 530–531
 - adverse effects 537–539
 - Alzheimer's disease 529–543
 - atrial fibrillation 720
 - clinical effectiveness 532–534
 - combination therapy 536
 - delirium 675
 - dosing 535
 - drug interactions 539–540, 541–542
 - Huntington's disease 707
 - Lewy body dementia 533, 538, 550
 - mechanisms of action 529
 - mild cognitive impairment 533, 537, 550
 - multiple sclerosis 711
 - NICE guidance 543, 544, 576

840 Index

- cognitive enhancers (anti-dementia agents) (*cont'd*)
- non-cognitive symptoms of dementia 535, 576
 - other dementias 550–551
 - Parkinson's disease 550, 716, 717
 - quantifying effects 534
 - renal impairment 656
 - stopping treatment 540–543, 543
 - switching between 534
 - tolerability 536–537
 - vascular dementia 549
 - see also* acetylcholinesterase (AChE) inhibitors; memantine
- cognitive impairment
- delirium 672, 673
 - HIV-associated 682
 - Huntington's disease 707
 - mild *see* mild cognitive impairment
 - multiple sclerosis 711
 - non-psychotropics causing 808, 810, 811
 - see also* dementia; learning disabilities
- colitis, clozapine-induced 179
- Community Treatment Order (CTO) 820
- complementary therapy 571, 717
- compliance *see* adherence, medication
- compliance aids 42, 791
- compliance therapy, schizophrenia 791
- Concerta *see* methylphenidate
- Concerta XL 500
- conduction disturbances, antidepressant-induced 326–327, 358–359
- confusion
- antipsychotic-induced hyponatraemia 134
 - non-psychotropics causing 808, 809
 - post-ECT 282
- Confusion Assessment Method (CAM) 672
- consent
- capacity to give *see* capacity, mental
 - definition 818
 - duty to give information 819
 - to ECT 820
 - learning disabilities 699–700
 - to medication 816–818
- constipation, clozapine-induced 175, 193, 193–196
- contraception, bipolar illness 209, 217, 223
- conversion disorder stupor 107, 108, 109
- co-pharmacy, paediatric practice 461
- coronary artery bypass surgery 351, 351
- corticosteroids, psychiatric adverse effects 710–711, 810
- covert administration of medicines 527, 593–598, 597
- COX-2 inhibitors 32, 211–212
- C-reactive protein (CRP) 185, 186, 800
- creatine (phospho)kinase 38, 104, 801
- creatinine, serum 645, 646, 801
- creatinine clearance (CrCl) 645, 645
- crisis management, borderline personality disorder 665
- CUtLASS trial 5, 44, 90, 142
- cyclizine, in dementia 561, 565
- D-cycloserine
- childhood obsessive compulsive disorder 489
 - panic disorder 362
 - PTSD in young people 484, 494
 - refractory depression 274
- diproheptadine
- akathisia 92, 95
 - sexual dysfunction 142, 144, 345
 - unlicensed use 815
- cyproterone, tic disorders 514
- cystatin C protein 645
- cytochrome P450 (CYP) enzymes
- acetylcholinesterase inhibitor interactions 539–540
 - alcohol interactions 753, 753, 754
 - anticholinergic agents 561
 - anticonvulsant interactions 217, 223–224
 - antidepressant interactions 259, 321, 322
 - caffeine interactions 760, 761
 - pregnancy-related changes 601
 - psychotropic drug interactions 746, 746–749
 - smoking interactions 750
 - St John's wort interactions 356
- dapoxetine 343–345
- darifenacin 557, 562
- darunavir 685
- dehydroepiandrosterone (DHEA) 668
- delirium 672–678
- clozapine-induced 179
 - diagnostic criteria 672
 - GHB and GBL withdrawal 442
 - HIV infection 680
 - non-psychotropics causing 808, 809, 810, 811
 - prophylaxis 676
 - surgical patients 785
 - treatment 673, 674–676
- delirium tremens (DTs) 389
- demeclocycline 134
- dementia 529–585
- anticholinergic drug use 557–561
 - antidepressant-related risk 296
 - BAP guidelines 551, 551
 - behavioural and psychological symptoms *see* behavioural and psychological symptoms of dementia
 - cognitive enhancers *see* cognitive enhancers
 - cognitive side-effects of drugs 557–566, 558–560
- covert administration of medication 527, 593–598, 597
- driving regulations 776
- frontotemporal 550, 551
- HIV-associated 682
- Huntington's disease 707
- learning disabilities and 699
- with Lewy bodies *see* Lewy body dementia
- mixed 549, 551
 - neurological causes of rare 550–551
 - NICE guidance 543, 544, 576
 - other treatments 543–549
 - Parkinson's disease 550, 715, 716
- safe prescribing for physical conditions 557–569, 567–568
- vascular 529, 549
- see also* Alzheimer's disease; cognitive impairment; mild cognitive impairment
- dependence syndrome 385–386
- depot antipsychotics (long-acting injection antipsychotics) 6, 66–85
- bariatric surgery 724
 - bipolar disorder 229, 229–231, 250
 - differences between 67
 - dose reduction 73–74
 - doses and frequencies 68
 - epilepsy 693
 - equivalent doses 14, 15
 - intramuscular anticholinergics and 69, 821
 - intramuscular injection sites 821–822
 - maintenance treatment 26–27
 - management of patients 73–74
 - maximum licensed doses 12
 - NICE guidance 47
 - non-adherent patients 791
 - older people 590–591
 - oral medication vs 69
 - pharmacokinetics 71, 71–72
 - prescribing principles 8, 66–67
 - test doses 66, 68
- depression 255–359
- 22q11.2 deletion syndrome 697
 - adherence to medication 788
 - alcohol-dependent patients 402
 - atrial fibrillation and 720
 - autism spectrum disorders 508
 - benzodiazepines 374
 - bipolar *see* bipolar depression
 - caffeine consumption 762
 - carbamazepine 221
 - children and adolescents 463–470, 467
 - chronic kidney disease 647
 - dementia 577–578
 - diabetes and 340–341
 - ECT *see under* electroconvulsive therapy
 - epilepsy 688
 - first episode 306

- HIV infection 680–681
Huntington's disease 706, 707
interferon- α -induced 681, 811
lithium 206–207, 307
multiple sclerosis 709, 710
non-psychotropics causing 808, 809, 810, 811
older people 293–297, 294–295
antidepressant doses 587–588
maintenance therapy 306, 307
psychostimulants 287
opioid-dependent patients 422
Parkinson's disease 715, 715
post-partum 604–608
post-stroke 287, 290–292
pregnancy 604–608, 608
prescribing principles 255
psychostimulants 285–289, 286–287
psychotic 278–280
recurrent 306–307, 307
refractory (treatment-resistant)
267–277
1st choice treatment 267–270, 268
2nd choice treatment 271, 271–273
children and adolescents 466–467
lithium augmentation 206
NICE guidelines 256
other treatments 274–275, 274–277
psychostimulants 286
secondary to medical illness 287, 293
seizure risk 691
sexual dysfunction 343
smoking 766
St John's wort 355–357
treatment 255–359
algorithm 264–265
effectiveness 257
NICE guidelines 256, 278, 307
prophylactic 306–309
see also antidepressants
Deprivation of Liberty Safeguards (DoLS)
authorisation 594, 595
desipramine
multiple sclerosis 710
panic disorder 362
pregnancy 606
desmopressin 134, 176
desvenlafaxine
cardiac effects 327
hepatic impairment 639
hyponatraemia 333
minimum effective dose 262
older people 587
overdose 770
renal impairment 651
switching to/from 317–319
detention, legal framework 816–817
deutetrabenazine
Huntington's disease 705
tardive dyskinesia 92
tic disorders 514
developmental effects
drug exposure via breast milk 622–629
maternal antidepressant use 605, 606, 607
maternal antipsychotic use 603
maternal valproate use 610
dexamethasone, refractory depression 274
dexamfetamine
ADHD 496–497, 500
breastfeeding 630
cocaine misuse 439
depression 286, 287
misuse 439–440
dextromethorphan/fluoxetine 710
dextromethorphan/quinidine 710
diabetes insipidus, nephrogenic,
lithium-induced 208
diabetes mellitus 123–129
antipsychotic-related 123–129, 126
monitoring 125, 125–126
risk factors 125
treatment 126
depression/antidepressants and 340, 340–342
driving restrictions 776
gestational 603, 604
schizophrenia association 123
diabetic ketoacidosis 123
diagnostic overshadowing 699
diamorphine 419
see also heroin
diazepam
akathisia 95
alcohol interaction 756
alcohol withdrawal 393
breastfeeding 629
catatonia/stupor 108
delirium 675
driving and 778
emulsion (Diazemuls) 375
GHB and GBL withdrawal 442, 443
older people 592
opioid withdrawal 420
rapid tranquillisation 56, 60–61
children and adolescents 522
renal impairment 655
stupor 109
switching to 378, 378
tolerance test 377–378
dibenzoylmethane 548
didanosine 685, 686
DiGeorge syndrome (22q11.2 deletion
syndrome) 696, 696–698, 697
digoxin 526, 566
dihydrocodeine 418
diltiazem 224
dimebon (latrepirdine) 545, 705
diphenhydramine, akathisia 92, 96
diphenylbutylpiperidines 3
Discontinuation–Emergent Signs and
Symptoms (DESS) scale 310
disinhibitory reactions,
benzodiazepines 374, 381–383
disintegrative disorder, childhood 504
disruptive behaviours, severe, autism
spectrum disorders 506–508
disruptive mood dysregulation disorder
(DMDD) 472
disulfiram (Antabuse)
alcohol dependence 397, 398–399, 399
alcohol-induced reaction 753
caffeine interaction 761
cocaine misuse 439
re-starting after non-adherence 795
diuresis, forced, lithium toxicity 208
diuretics, lithium interactions 210, 211
divalproex see valproate
docosahexaenoic acid (DHA) 88
docusate 194
dolutegravir 685, 686
domperidone, in dementia 563
donepezil 530–531
adverse effects 537–538, 539
Alzheimer's disease 532–533, 535
combination therapy 536
delirium 675
drug interactions 539–540, 541
ECT and 282
efficacy 532–533
mechanism of action 529
multiple sclerosis 711
NICE guidance 544
non-cognitive symptoms of
dementia 576
renal impairment 656
schizophrenia 33, 162
stopping treatment 540–543
sustained release 535
switching to/from 534
tolerability 536
vascular dementia 549
dopamine agonists
cocaine misuse 439
Huntington's disease 705
hyperprolactinaemia 139, 139
Parkinson's disease 715, 716, 716
psychiatric adverse effects 810
dosulepin
adverse effects 358
hyperprolactinaemia 337
older people 294, 307
renal impairment 651
surgical patients 783
dothiepin see dosulepin
doxepin
adverse effects 358
buccal delivery 298, 299
nanoemulsion (transdermal) 301, 303
rectal 301, 303
renal impairment 651
doxorubicin 202

842 Index

- drinks
 caffeine content 759, 762
 covert administration of medicines in 527, 593–598, 597
see also alcohol; caffeine
- Driver and Vehicle Licensing Agency (DVLA) 776, 778–779
- driving 776–780
 effects of mental illness 776
 effects of psychotropics 776–778, 777
 epilepsy and 691
 GMC guidance 779
 medication-induced sedation 778
 UK law 776, 778–779
- dronabinol, anorexia nervosa 667
- drooling *see* hypersalivation
- droperidol, rapid tranquillisation 54, 55–56
- Drug Attitude Inventory (DAI) 789
- drug misuse/dependence 439–457
 alcohol dependence with 401
 basic summary 454–457, 455–456
 benzodiazepines 445–446
 biochemical changes 802
 GHB and GBL 442–444
 polysubstance abuse 440
 psychotropic drug interactions 450–453, 451–452
 schizophrenia negative symptoms 33
 stimulants 439–441
 urine testing 454, 455–456
see also opioid dependence; 'street drugs'
- dual diagnosis 385, 454, 699
- duloxetine
 adverse effects 258, 358
 hariatric surgery 723
 bleeding risk 351
 breastfeeding 622
 cardiac effects 326
 children and adolescents 482
 diabetes mellitus and 340
 eating disorders 669
 ECT interactions 281
 epilepsy 692
 hepatic impairment 639
 HIV infection 681
 hyperprolactinaemia and 337
 hyponatraemia 333
 minimum effective dose 262
 multiple sclerosis 710
 obsessive compulsive disorder 364
 older people 294, 295, 587
 overdose 770
 Parkinson's disease 715
 post-mortem blood concentrations 743
 post-stroke depression 290
 pregnancy 607
 PTSD 363
 renal impairment 651
 sexual adverse effects 344
 smoking status and 751
 switching to/from 317–319
- DVLA *see* Driver and Vehicle Licensing Agency
- dyslipidaemia
 antipsychotic-related 119–122
 pseudohyponatraemia 134
 screening 120
 switching antipsychotics 150
 treatment 120–121
see also lipids, blood
- dysphoria
 antipsychotic-induced 44
 non-psychotropic-induced 808, 810
- dysthymia 256, 257
- dystonia
 after rapid tranquillisation 55, 62
 antipsychotic-induced 91–92
 Huntington's disease 705
 never-medicated schizophrenia 90
 switching antipsychotics 150
- EAGLES study 434
- early onset schizophrenia-spectrum (EOSS) disorder 478
- eating disorders 667–671
 atypical 669
- Ebstein's anomaly 609
- ECG *see* electrocardiography
- echocardiography, clozapine-treated patients 185
- e-cigarettes *see* electronic cigarettes
- ecstasy 451–452
- ECT *see* electroconvulsive therapy
- efavirenz 685, 686, 686
- icosapentaenoic acid (EPA)
 depression 275
 schizophrenia 88, 159
- ejaculation, premature 343–345
- elderly *see* older people
- electrocardiography (ECG)
 acetylcholinesterase inhibitor-treated patients 538
 anorexia nervosa 667–668
 antidepressant-treated patients 329, 330–331
 antipsychotic-treated patients 37, 46, 112–116
 bipolar disorder 209, 233
 methadone-treated patients 412–413, 413
 QT interval measurement 112, 113
 rapid tranquillisation 61
- electroconvulsive therapy (ECT)
 antidepressant prophylaxis after 307
 catatonia 86, 108, 109
 children and adolescents 465
 dementia 580
 epilepsy 691
 legal aspects 819–820
 multiple sclerosis 710
 Parkinson's disease 715
 pregnancy 608
 psychotic depression 279
- psychotropic drug interactions 281–282, 281–284
- refractory depression 271
- schizophrenia 86–87, 163
- electroencephalography (EEG) 38
- electrolyte disturbances 668, 756
- electronic cigarettes (vaping) 765
 adverse effects 436, 766
 aiding smoking cessation 435–436, 437
- Elvanse *see* lisdexamfetamine
- elvitegravir 686
- elvitegravir/cobicistat 685
- emtricitabine 685, 686
- energy drinks 759, 762
- enflurane 781
- entacapone 810
- eosinophilia, drug-induced 179, 805
- epilepsy 688–695
 driving 691
 learning disability 700
 psychiatric co-morbidities 688, 689
 psychotropic induced seizures 691, 692–693
 psychotropic prescribing 688, 692–693
see also anticonvulsants; seizures
- Epilim Chrono 214
- EPS *see* extrapyramidal symptoms
- Equasym *see* methylphenidate
- Equasym XL 500
- erectile dysfunction 144, 145, 345
- erythrocyte sedimentation rate (ESR) 805
- erythromycin, drug interactions 224, 375, 527
- escitalopram
 adverse effects 358
 alcohol dependence 402
 breastfeeding 622
 cardiac effects 326, 329, 330
 children and adolescents 464, 485, 524
 diabetes mellitus and 340
 epilepsy 692
 galactorrhoea 337
 hepatic impairment 639
 HIV infection 680–681
 hyponatraemia 333
 intravenous 300, 302
 minimum effective dose 262
 obsessive compulsive disorder 364, 485
 older people 587
 post-stroke depression 290, 291
 renal impairment 652
- esketamine 271, 279
- estradiol, in schizophrenia 163
- eszopiclone, renal impairment 655
- ethanol *see* alcohol
- ethosuximide 690, 808
- ethyl-cicosapentaenoic acid 705
- etravirine 686
- euphoria, non-psychotropics causing 808, 810
- European Academy of Neurology (EAN) 536

- EXPEDITION3 study 548–549
 exposure and response prevention (ERP), PTSD 488, 494
 extrapyramidal symptoms (EPS) 90–93, 91–92
 antipsychotic classification and 3–4
 depot antipsychotics 73
 first vs second-generation agents 44, 90
 never-medicated schizophrenia 90
 rapid tranquillisation 55
 smoking and 766
 switching antipsychotics 150
 treatment 92
 see also akathisia; dystonia; tardive dyskinesia
- famotidine 100, 163
 fasting, preoperative 781
 Fatal Toxicity Index (FTI) 330
 fatigue
 depression with 286, 287
 multiple sclerosis 711–712
 non-psychotropics causing 808, 810
 felbamate 690
 fentanyl patches, older people 565
 ferritin, serum 801
 fesoterodine 557, 562
 fever
 clozapine-induced 171, 176, 185, 186
 rapid tranquillisation 62
 fexofenadine 565
 fibre, dietary 194
 financial incentives, medication adherence 792
 first-episode psychosis
 antipsychotic efficacy 5
 antipsychotic prophylaxis 25–26
 high-dose antipsychotics 16
 minimum antipsychotic doses 9
 negative symptoms 31
 omega-3 fatty acids 88
 treatment algorithm 40
 first-generation antipsychotics (FGAs)
 4, 44–45
 adverse effects 44, 90
 blood lipids 119
 blood pressure 130
 diabetes 123, 126
 extrapyramidal symptoms 90
 neuroleptic malignant syndrome 105
 pneumonia 148
 sexual dysfunction 142
 weight gain 97, 97–98
 bipolar disorder 226, 250
 children and adolescents 478
 delirium 674
 dementia 572–574
 epilepsy 692, 693
 equivalent doses 14
 HIV infection 680
 Huntington's disease 706
 intramuscular injection sites 821
 learning disabilities 701
 long-acting injectable 66, 67, 73
 bipolar disorder 229, 229–230
 maximum licensed doses 12
 minimum effective doses 9
 negative symptoms 32
 nomenclature 4, 44
 older people 589, 590
 place in therapy 44–45
 pregnancy 602
 relative efficacy 5–6
 renal impairment 649–650
 street drug interactions 451
 tic disorders 513
 fish oils *see* omega-3 fatty acids
 flavin-containing monooxygenase (FMO) 321
 flibanserin 144
 fluconazole, carbamazepine interaction 224
 fludrocortisone 131
 fluid restriction, hyponatraemia 135, 334
 flumazenil 62, 375, 379
 flunitrazepam 381, 778
 fluoxetine
 22q11.2 deletion syndrome 697
 adverse effects 358
 antidepressant discontinuation and 312, 315
 antipsychotic-induced weight gain 100
 anxiety disorders 367
 bipolar depression 245
 breastfeeding 623
 cardiac effects 326, 329
 children and adolescents 524
 anxiety disorders 481, 482
 autism spectrum disorders 505, 509, 509
 depression 463, 464, 465, 466
 obsessive compulsive disorder 485, 486
 diabetes mellitus and 340
 discontinuation 318
 drug interactions 259
 eating disorders 668, 669
 epilepsy 692
 hepatic impairment 639
 Huntington's disease 706
 hyperprolactinaemia and 337
 minimum effective dose 262
 multiple sclerosis 710
 obsessive compulsive disorder 364, 367
 olanzapine combination *see* olanzapine + fluoxetine
 older people 587
 post-stroke depression 290
 pregnancy 606, 607
 renal impairment 652
 re-starting after non-adherence 795
 sublingual 298, 299
 switching to/from 316, 318
 unlicensed use 815
- flupentixol
 adverse effects 39
 depot (flupentixol decanoate) 67
 bipolar disorder 229, 230
 depression 300
 doses and intervals 68
 equivalent dose 14
 intramuscular injection site 821
 maximum licensed dose 12
 older people 590
 pharmacokinetics 71
 equivalent dose 14
 hepatic impairment 637
 maximum licensed dose 12
 pregnancy 602
 renal impairment 649
 sexual adverse effects 143
- fluphenazine
 adverse effects 39
 depot (fluphenazine decanoate) 67
 dose reduction 73
 doses and intervals 68
 equivalent dose 14
 intramuscular injection site 821
 maximum licensed dose 12
 older people 590
 pharmacokinetics 71
 dose 50
 equivalent dose 14
 overdose 771
 smoking status and 751
 flutamide, Tourette's syndrome 514
 fluvoxamine
 adverse effects 358
 antipsychotic-induced weight gain 100
 breastfeeding 623
 caffeine interaction 761
 cardiac effects 326
 children and adolescents 481, 482, 485
 clozapine and 158, 736
 discontinuation 318
 drug interactions 259
 galactorrhoea 337
 minimum effective dose 262
 obsessive compulsive disorder 364, 485
 older people 294
 renal impairment 652
 smoking status and 751
 switching to/from 316, 318
 folic acid/folate supplements 217, 544, 610
 food, covert administration of medicines in 527, 593–598, 597
 Food and Drug Administration (FDA)
 antipsychotic maximum doses 13
 autism spectrum disorders 506, 507
 clozapine monitoring 197–198
 dementia 535
 depression in young people 464, 467
 paediatric obsessive compulsive disorder 481

844 Index

- fosamprenavir 685
 frontotemporal dementia 550, 551
 full blood count (FBC), monitoring 37, 232
- gabapentin**
 acute mania 237
 adverse effects 690
 alcohol dependence 400
 bipolar depression 245
 dementia 579
 panic disorder 362
 psychiatric effects 690
 social phobia 366
- galactorrhoea** 142, 337
galantamine 530–531
 adverse effects 537–538
 Alzheimer's disease 533, 535, 540–543
 drug interactions 539–540, 541
 efficacy 533
 mechanism of action 529
 mild cognitive impairment 533, 537
 NICE guidance 544
 non-cognitive symptoms of dementia 576
 renal impairment 656
 schizophrenia 33
 stopping treatment 540–543
 tolerability 536
 vascular dementia 549
- γ -butyryl-lactone (GBL)** 442–444, 443, 455
 γ -hydroxybutyrate (GHB) 442–444, 443, 455
 γ -glutamyl transferase (GGT) 802
- gastrointestinal bleeding**
 NSAID-related 564
 SSRI-related 294, 348, 348–349
- gastrointestinal drugs, in dementia** 561–563
- gastrointestinal hypomotility, clozapine-induced** 175, 193, 193–196
- gastro-oesophageal reflux disease (GORD), clozapine-induced** 176
- GBL (γ -butyryl-lactone)** 442–444, 443, 455
- generalised anxiety disorder (GAD)** 360–361
 drug treatment 215, 365–367, 368, 373
 NICE guidance 369
- General Medical Council (GMC), driving guidelines** 779
- gestational diabetes** 603, 604
- GHB (γ -hydroxybutyrate)** 442–444, 443, 455
- Ginkgo biloba***
 dementia 543, 580
 generalised anxiety disorder 361
 schizophrenia 32, 159, 163
 tardive dyskinesia 92
 ginseng 545, 712
- Glasgow Antipsychotic Side-effect Scale (GASS)** 5–6
- glomerular filtration rate (GFR)**
 classification of renal impairment 646
 lithium-treated patients 209, 232
 measurement 645, 645, 646
- GLP-1 agonists** 100, 126
- glucocorticoids *see* corticosteroids**
- glucose, blood**
 antidepressant-treated patients 340
 fasting plasma (FPG) 125, 126
 monitoring
 antipsychotic-treated patients 37, 125, 125–126
 bipolar disorder 232
 psychotropic drug effects 802
 random plasma (RPG) 125
see also hyperglycaemia; impaired glucose tolerance
- glucose administration, thiamine deficiency** 395
- glutamate-modulating drugs** 32
- glycine, schizophrenia** 32, 164
- glycopyrrolate, clozapine-related hypersalivation** 190
- granisetron**
 dementia 563
 obsessive compulsive disorder 364
 schizophrenia 32
 sexual dysfunction 345
- granulocyte colony-stimulating factor (G-CSF)** 199–200, 202
- guanfacine**
 ADHD 497
 autism spectrum disorders 506
 clozapine-induced hypersalivation 190
 PTSD in young people 492, 493
 tic disorders 513
- gynaecological haemorrhage, SSRI-induced** 350
- H₂ antagonists** 100, 566
- haematological effects**
 clozapine 184–188
 psychotropic drugs 798, 805–807
- haemoglobin**
 glycosylated (HbA_{1c}) 125, 126, 802
 psychotropics affecting 805
- hallucinations**
 non psychotropics causing 808, 809, 810
 Parkinson's disease 716
- haloperidol**
 acute mania/hypomania 226–227, 235, 236
 adverse effects 39
 diabetes 123
 hyponatraemia 134
 pneumonia 148
 sexual dysfunction 143
 weight gain 97
- amphetamine psychosis 440
 bariatric surgery 724
 breastfeeding 625
 delirium 674, 676
 dementia 573, 575
 depot (haloperidol decanoate) 67
 bipolar disorder 230
 dose reduction 73
 doses and intervals 68
 equivalent dose 14
 intramuscular injection site 821
 maximum licensed dose 12
 older people 590
 pharmacokinetics 71
 vs paliperidone palmitate 45, 79
 equivalent dose 14
 hepatic impairment 637
 HIV infection 680
 Huntington's disease 706
 learning disabilities 701
 maximum licensed dose 12
 monitoring 37
 older people 589
 overdose 771
 pregnancy 602, 604
 rapid tranquillisation 54–55, 56, 58, 60
 children and adolescents 521
 intramuscular injection site 821
 renal impairment 649, 656
 re-starting after non-adherence 795
 schizophrenia
 clozapine augmentation 159
 combination therapy 20
 minimum effective dose 9
 prophylaxis 27
 refractory 164
 relative efficacy 5
 therapeutic index 44
 smoking status and 751
 tic disorders 513
- Hamilton Depression Rating Scale (HDRS)** 265
- headache, SSRI-associated** 258
- heart failure, clozapine-treated patients** 185
- heart rate, effects of**
 antidepressants 326–327
- heat stroke, clozapine-induced** 179
- hepatic failure, clozapine-induced** 179
- hepatic impairment** 635–645
 antidepressants 638, 639, 641
 antipsychotics 636, 637–638, 641
 methadone dosing 412
 mood stabilisers 640, 641
 prescribing principles 635–636
 recommended agents 641
 sedatives 641
 stimulants 640
see also liver disease
- hepatitis B** 450
hepatitis C (HCV) 450, 681

- hepatotoxicity
 drug-induced 641–642
 valproate-induced 216
- herbal medicines
 hyperprolactinaemia 139
 schizophrenia 165
see also *Ginkgo biloba*; ginseng;
 St John's wort
- heroin 456
 drug interactions 451–452
 substitution *see* opioid substitution
 treatment
 wash-out period 425
 withdrawal 407–408
see also opioid dependence
- high-density lipoprotein (HDL) 119, 802
- hirudin, Alzheimer's disease 545
- HIV-associated neurocognitive disorders
 (HAND) 682
- HIV infection/AIDS 679–687
 adverse effects of antiretrovirals
 686, 686
 drug misusers 450
 pharmacodynamic interactions 685, 685
 pharmacokinetic interactions 679
 psychostimulants 287
 psychotropic prescribing 679–684
 risk factors for psychiatric
 symptoms 679
- homocysteine 544
- Hospital Order 816
- 5-HT₁ agonists, psychiatric adverse
 effects 808
- 5-HT₂ antagonists
 akathisia 92, 95
 sexual dysfunction 142
- 5-HT₃ antagonists 364, 563
see also granisetron; ondansetron
- 5-HT₆ receptor antagonists 547
- human immunodeficiency virus *see* HIV
- Huntington's disease (HD) 704, 704–708
 cognitive symptoms 707
 mental and behavioural symptoms
 704–705, 706–707
 motor symptoms 704, 705
- huperzine A, Alzheimer's disease 545–546
- 9-hydroxyrisperidone *see* paliperidone
- hydroxyzine 360, 565
- hyoscyne (scopolamine)
 adverse effects in dementia 563, 564
 clozapine-induced hypersalivation
 175, 190
 depression 274, 302
- hypercalcaemia, lithium-induced 208
- hyperemesis gravidarum 602, 611
- hyperforin 356
- hyperglycaemia
 antipsychotic-induced 123–124
 pseudohyponatraemia 134
see also diabetes mellitus
- hypericins 355
- Hypericum perforatum see* St John's wort
- hyperlipidaemia *see* dyslipidaemia
- hyperparathyroidism, lithium-induced 208
- hyperprolactinaemia
 antidepressants and 337, 337–339
 antipsychotic-induced 39, 44, 137,
 137–140, 604
 management 138, 139, 139
 monitoring 38, 233
 other causes 137
 sexual dysfunction 137, 142
 switching antipsychotics 150
- hypersalivation
 clozapine-induced 171, 175, 189–190,
 189–192
 management in dementia 564
- hypersomnia, depression with 286
- hypertension
 antipsychotic-induced 130–132
 clozapine-induced 175
- hypertriglyceridaemia 119, 120
- hypnotics 373
 biochemical side-effects 799
 breastfeeding 621, 629
 dementia 579–580
 driving and 777
 older people 592
 renal impairment 655, 656
- hypoglycaemia, alcohol-induced 756
- hypokalaemia-related QTc
 prolongation 115
- hypokinetic rigidity, Huntington's
 disease 705
- hypomania 235–240
 children and adolescents 471–472
 treatment 235, 235–240
see also mania
- hyponatraemia
 anticonvulsant-induced 212, 224,
 335, 691
 antidepressant-induced 323, 333,
 333–336
 antipsychotic-induced 134–136, 135
 other drugs associated with 335
 treatment 134, 135, 334
- hypotension
 antipsychotic-induced 39, 130, 131
 clozapine-induced 156, 171, 175
 rapid tranquilisation 62
 switching antipsychotics 150
see also postural hypotension
- hypothyroidism, lithium-induced 208
- Hy's rule, hepatotoxicity of new drugs 641
- ibuprofen 282
- idalopirdine 547
- illicit drugs *see* 'street drugs'
- iloperidone
 adverse effects 39
 bipolar disorder 226
 blood lipid changes 119
- blood pressure effects 130
- breastfeeding 626
- equivalent dose 15
- hepatic impairment 637
 maximum licensed dose 13
 minimum effective dose 9
 neuroleptic malignant syndrome 105
 older people 589
 overdose 771
 weight gain risk 97
- imipramine
 adverse effects 358
 children and adolescents 464–465,
 492, 493
 discontinuation symptoms 311
 generalised anxiety disorder 361
 hyperprolactinaemia 337
 panic disorder 362
 PTSD 363, 492, 493
 rectal 301, 303
 renal impairment 652
 sexual adverse effects 344
 transdermal (nanoemulsion)
 301, 303
- impaired glucose tolerance
 antipsychotic-related 123–129
 switching antipsychotics 150
- impulsiveness, autism spectrum
 disorders 505–506
- inattention, autism spectrum
 disorders 505–506
- indinavir 685
- indometacin 564
- infants, breastfed 619, 620, 622–630
- injecting rooms 419
- inositol 245, 362
- insomnia *see* sleep disturbances/insomnia
- insulin-like growth factor 1 (IGF-1) 505
- insulin resistance 123, 124
- interferon- α 681, 811
- interferon- β 709, 811
- International Classification of Diseases 10
 (ICD-10) 385, 497
- international normalised ratio (INR) 807
- interstitial nephritis, clozapine-
 induced 179
- intestinal obstruction, clozapine-
 associated 194
- intoxication, acute
 buprenorphine risks 418
 caffeine 761, 761
 methadone risks 412
 rapid tranquilisation 56
- 'street drugs' 450
 synthetic cannabinoid receptor agonists
 (SCRAs) 447–448, 448
see also alcohol intoxication; overdose
- intracranial haemorrhage (ICH), SSRI-
 induced 349, 350
- intramuscular injection sites 821–822,
 821–823

846 Index

- ipratropium 190, 563–564
 irritability
 autism spectrum disorders 506–508
 Huntington's disease 706, 707
 learning disability 701
 non-psychotropics causing 808, 809, 810
 isocarboxazid 359, 795
 isoniazid 566
 isotretinoin 811

 K2 (synthetic cannabinoid) 447
 ketamine
 abuse 456
 acute behavioural disturbance 56–57
 bipolar depression 245
 children and adolescents 489
 depression 271, 302
 drug interactions 451–452
 obsessive compulsive disorder 365, 489
 psychotic depression 279
 PTSD 363
 ketanserin, tic disorders 514
 ketoconazole, depression 274
 Korsakoff's syndrome 396

 laacosamide 690
 lactate dehydrogenase 802
 lactulose 194
 lamotrigine
 acute mania 237
 bariatric surgery 725
 bipolar depression 243, 244
 bipolar disorder 241, 251
 borderline personality disorder 665
 breastfeeding 627
 children and adolescents 474
 clozapine augmentation 159
 dementia 579
 depression 271, 279
 driving ability and 777
 eating disorders 669
 hepatic impairment 640
 learning disabilities 701
 monitoring tests 233
 obsessive compulsive disorder 364
 older people 591
 overdose 772
 plasma level monitoring 733
 pregnancy 610
 PTSD 363
 renal impairment 654, 656
 re-titration after non-compliance 794–795, 795
 schizophrenia 32, 164
 surgical patients 782
 latrepirdine (dimebon) 545, 705
 laughter and crying, pathological (PLC) 710
 lavender oil 361

 laxatives
 clozapine-induced constipation 194–195
 dementia 561, 567
 learning disabilities (LD) 699–703
 assessment of care environments 700
 capacity and consent 699–700
 medications used 701–702
 physical co-morbidity 700
 psychological interventions 700
 sensitivity to side-effects 700
 leucopenia, psychotropics causing 806
 levetiracetam
 acute mania 237
 alcohol dependence 400
 bipolar disorder 241
 Huntington's disease 705
 psychiatric adverse effects 690, 809
 social phobia 366
 tic disorders 514
 levodopa 705, 716, 809
 levomepromazine 12, 573
 levomilnacipran
 adverse effects 344, 358
 minimum effective dose 262
 levothyroxine *see* thyroxine
 Lewy body dementia 550
 acetylcholinesterase inhibitors 538, 550, 576, 717
 clinical practice guidance 551, 551
 libido (sexual desire) 141
 effects of antidepressants 344
 reduced 142, 144, 343
 licensed medicines, unlicensed use *see* off-label prescribing
 lifestyle interventions 99, 123
 lipids, blood
 antipsychotic drug effects 119–122
 monitoring 37, 120, 121, 232
 see also dyslipidaemia
 alpha-lipoic acid 100
 lipoproteins, plasma 802
 liraglutide 100, 126
 lisdexamfetamine
 ADHD 497, 499, 500
 autism spectrum disorders 506
 binge eating disorder 669
 breastfeeding 630
 depression 286
 lithium 205–213
 acute mania/hypomania 205, 235, 236
 adverse effects 208
 alcohol dependence 402, 756
 autism spectrum disorders 508
 bariatric surgery 725
 bipolar depression 206, 244, 246
 bipolar disorder 205–206, 250, 251
 borderline personality disorder 664–665
 breastfeeding 621, 628
 caffeine interaction 761
 children and adolescents 472, 473, 524
 clozapine-treated patients 198–199, 200, 207
 compliance 206, 209
 discontinuation 209–210
 driving and 777
 drug interactions 210, 210–212, 224
 ECT interactions 282
 epilepsy 692
 formulations 207
 hepatic impairment 640, 641
 HIV infection 681
 Huntington's disease 706
 for hyponatraemia 134
 indications 205–207, 210
 learning disabilities 702
 mechanism of action 205
 multiple sclerosis 711
 neuroleptic malignant syndrome 105
 neuroprotective effects 205
 older people 591
 on-treatment monitoring 209, 210, 232–233
 overdose (acute) 772
 plasma levels 207, 733
 post-mortem blood concentrations 743
 pregnancy 609, 611
 prescribing 210
 pre-treatment tests 209, 210
 refractory depression 267, 268, 274
 renal impairment and 208, 654
 re-starting after non-adherence 795
 street drug interactions 452
 suicide and 207
 surgical patients 784, 785
 toxicity 208
 unipolar depression 206–207, 307
 lithium carbonate tablets 207
 lithium citrate liquid 207
 liver disease
 buprenorphine cautions 417
 drug-induced 641–642
 prescribing principles 635–636
 see also hepatic impairment
 liver function tests (LFTs) 635
 bipolar disorder 232
 carbamazepine and 222
 clozapine-induced changes 179
 drug-induced hepatotoxicity 642
 schizophrenia 38
 valproate and 216
 lofepramine
 adverse effects 358
 cardiac effects 326, 329, 330
 minimum effective dose 262
 older people 294, 587
 overdose 770
 panic disorder 362
 renal impairment 652
 re-starting after non-adherence 795

- lofexidine 190, 424
- long-acting injection (LAI) antipsychotics
see depot antipsychotics
- loop diuretics, lithium interaction 211
- loperamide
- opioid withdrawal 420
 - safety in dementia 561, 567
- lopinavir 681, 685
- loratadine 345, 565
- lorazepam
- acute mania/hypomania 236
 - alcohol withdrawal 393
 - breastfeeding 629
 - catatonia/stupor 108, 109
 - children and adolescents 482, 521
 - delirium 675
 - diazepam equivalent dose 378
 - driving and 778
 - hepatic impairment 641
 - HIV infection 682
 - older people 592
 - rapid tranquillisation 55, 56, 60
 - children and adolescents 521 - intramuscular injection site 821
 - renal impairment 655, 656
- lormetazepam 378
- low-density lipoprotein (LDL)
119, 802
- loxapine
- adverse effects 39
 - autism spectrum disorders 508
 - children and adolescents 522
 - diabetes risk 123
 - epilepsy 693
 - rapid tranquillisation 54, 60, 522
 - smoking status and 751
- LSD (lysergic acid diethylamide) 456
- lubiprostone 194–195
- lurasidone
- adverse effects 39
 - atrial fibrillation 720
 - bariatric surgery 724
 - bipolar depression 243, 244
 - bipolar disorder 226, 251
 - blood lipids and 119
 - blood pressure effects 130
 - breastfeeding 625
 - children and adolescents 474, 475
 - diabetes and 125, 126
 - dose escalation 50
 - epilepsy 693
 - equivalent dose 15
 - hepatic impairment 637
 - maximum licensed dose 12
 - minimum effective dose 9
 - older people 589
 - overdose 771
 - QT prolongation 114
 - refractory schizophrenia 163
 - renal impairment 649
 - sexual adverse effects 143
 - switching to 99
 - weight gain risk 97
- lymphocytes 805
- lysergic acid diethylamide (LSD) 456
- MAIN-AID study 576
- mania
- acute 235–240
 - antipsychotics 226–227, 235, 236, 236
 - carbamazepine 221
 - lithium 205–206, 235, 236
 - NICE guidelines 215
 - other treatments 237
 - patients on long-term lithium 206
 - treatment 235, 235–240, 236
 - valproate 214–216, 235, 236 - children and adolescents 467, 471–472, 473–474, 475
 - HIV infection 681–682
 - multiple sclerosis 710–711
 - non-psychotropics causing 809, 810, 811 - unplanned pregnancy 217, 223
- MAOIs *see* monoamine oxidase inhibitors
- maprotiline 692
- maraviroc 685
- mavoglurant 705
- Maxepa *see* omega-3 fatty acids
- MDA (3,4-methylenedioxyamphetamine)
451–452
- MDRD (Modification of Diet in Renal Disease) formula 645, 646
- mean cell haemoglobin 806
- mean cell haemoglobin concentration 806
- mean cell volume 806
- mebeverine 420, 563
- mecamylamine 274
- medical illness
- antidepressant delivery methods 298–303, 299–301
 - catatonia-like states 107–108
 - learning disability 700
 - safe prescribing in dementia 557–569, 567–568
 - secondary depression 287, 293
- medication
- adherence *see* adherence, medication
 - assessing attitudes to 789
 - covert administration in food or drink 527, 593–598, 597
 - legal framework 816–820
 - paying patients to take 792
 - refusal to take 593
 - re-starting after non-adherence 794–797, 795
- Medicines and Healthcare Products Regulatory Agency (MHRA)
- antipsychotic-induced hypertension 132
 - e-cigarettes 435
 - methadone therapy 412
 - SSRIs in young people 486
- Medikinet 500
- see also* methylphenidate
- mefloquine 809
- melatonin
- antipsychotic-induced weight gain 101
 - autism spectrum disorders 508, 518
 - benzodiazepine withdrawal 379
 - childhood insomnia 517–520, 519, 524
 - delirium 676
 - older people 592
 - prolonged-release formulations 517
 - sleep disturbances in dementia 579–580
 - unlicensed use 815, 815
 - see also* agomelatine
- MEMAGE study 536
- memantine 530–531
- acute mania 237
 - adverse effects 538–539
 - Alzheimer's disease 529, 533–534, 535, 540–543
 - clinical guidelines 544, 551, 551
 - combination therapy 536
 - dementia with Lewy bodies 550
 - drug interactions 542
 - efficacy 532, 533–534
 - extended release 535
 - mechanism of action 529
 - multiple sclerosis 711
 - non-cognitive symptoms of dementia 576
 - obsessive compulsive disorder 364
 - Parkinson's disease 717
 - renal impairment 656
 - re-starting after non-adherence 795
 - schizophrenia 32, 159, 163
 - stopping treatment 540–543
 - switching to/from 534
 - tolerability 537
 - vascular dementia 549
- menstrual disorders, SSRI-associated 350
- mental capacity *see* capacity, mental
- Mental Capacity Act (MCA) 593, 594, 595, 818
- Mental Health Act (MHA) 593, 595, 816–820
- capacity 818
 - civil and forensic detention 816–817
 - community patients 820
 - completing forms T2 and T3 817
 - definition of consent 818
 - ECT 819–820
 - section 62 urgent treatment 819
 - section 132 duty to give information 819
 - SOAD visits 817
 - statutory consultees 817–818

848 Index

- mental illness
 22q11.2 deletion syndrome 696, 697
 alcohol use disorders 401–403
 caffeine consumption 762–763
 driving and 776
 illicit drug use 454
 learning disabilities 699
 nicotine use 765–766
 metabolic inducers 746–749
 metabolic inhibitors 116, 158, 746–749
 metformin
 antipsychotic-induced weight gain 99–101, 100
 hyperprolactinaemia 139, 139
 methadone 408–413, 456
 acute in-patient settings 421
 analgesia for patients on 426
 bariatric surgery 726
 buprenorphine vs 408, 409
 cautions 412
 clinical effectiveness 408–410
 detoxification regimes 422, 423
 driving regulations 776
 drug interactions 223, 410, 412, 451–452
 induction and stabilisation in community 411–412
 information for patients 410
 initial total daily dose 411
 overdose/toxicity 410–411, 412, 772
 post-mortem blood concentrations 743
 pregnancy and breastfeeding 427, 428
 prescribing information 410–411
 QT prolongation/ECG monitoring 412–413, 413
 re-titration after non-compliance 795
 surgical patients 784
 transfer from buprenorphine to 417
 transfer to buprenorphine from 415–417, 416
 wash-out period 425
 withdrawal 408
 methamphetamine, misuse 439–440
 methylcellulose 101
 methyl dopa 697
 methylphenidate
 22q11.2 deletion syndrome 697
 ADHD 500
 adult 498, 498, 499
 childhood 496, 496
 alcohol interaction 755
 autism spectrum disorders 505–506
 bariatric surgery 726
 breastfeeding 630
 depression 285, 286–287
 driving and 777
 epilepsy 693
 hepatic impairment 640
 learning disabilities 702
 modified-release preparations 500
 psychotic depression 279
 re-starting after non-adherence 795
 unlicensed use 815
 metoclopramide
 adverse effects 96, 105
 alcohol withdrawal 396
 clozapine-induced hypersalivation 190
 dementia patients 561
 opioid withdrawal 420
 tic disorders 514
 metyrosine 697
 MHRA *see* Medicines and Healthcare products Regulatory Agency
 mianserin
 adverse effects 358
 akathisia 92, 95
 breastfeeding 623
 overdose 770
 post-stroke depression 290
 refractory depression 268
 schizophrenia 32, 163
 midazolam
 akathisia 96
 children and adolescents 521, 522
 rapid tranquilisation 54, 55, 56, 60
 midodrine 131
 mifepristone 245, 279
 mild cognitive impairment (MCI) 550
 BAP guidance 551, 551
 cognitive enhancers 533, 537, 550
 vitamin supplements 544
 mineral supplements, anorexia nervosa 668
 Mini Mental State Examination (MMSE) 532, 540
 minocycline
 psychotic depression 279
 schizophrenia 32, 163
 mirtazapine
 adverse effects 358
 akathisia 92, 95
 alcohol dependence 402
 bariatric surgery 723
 breastfeeding 623
 cardiac effects 325, 326, 329
 children and adolescents
 anxiety disorders 482, 482
 depression 465
 depression 264
 diabetes mellitus and 340
 discontinuation symptoms 310
 driving ability 777
 ECT interactions 281
 epilepsy 692
 generalised anxiety disorder 361
 hepatic impairment 639
 HIV infection 681
 Huntington's disease 706, 707
 hyperprolactinaemia and 337
 intravenous 300, 302
 methylphenidate with 287
 minimum effective dose 262
 multiple sclerosis 710
 obsessive compulsive disorder 364
 older people 295, 587
 overdose 770
 panic disorder 362
 post-mortem blood concentrations 743
 post-stroke depression 290
 pregnancy 608
 PTSD 363
 refractory depression 267, 268, 269
 renal impairment 652
 schizophrenia 32, 163
 sexual adverse effects 344
 sexual dysfunction therapy 142–144, 345
 smoking status and 751
 switching to/from 314, 316–317, 319
 missed doses, re-starting medication after 794–795, 795
 moclobemide
 adverse effects 359
 bipolar depression 245
 breastfeeding 623
 cardiac effects 327, 329, 330
 clozapine-induced hypersalivation 190
 epilepsy 692
 hepatic impairment 639
 minimum effective dose 262
 multiple sclerosis 710
 overdose 770
 panic disorder 362
 pregnancy 607
 renal impairment 652
 sexual adverse effects 344
 social phobia 366
 surgical patients 782
 switching to/from 316–317, 319
 modafinil
 ADHD 497
 antipsychotic-induced weight gain 101
 bipolar depression 245
 cocaine misuse 439
 depression 285, 286, 287
 multiple sclerosis 711–712
 overdose 772
 refractory depression 274
 schizophrenia 32
 surgical patients 784
 Modification of Diet in Renal Disease (MDRD) formula 645, 646
 molindone 13, 15
 monoamine oxidase inhibitors (MAOIs)
 adverse effects 258, 359
 alcohol interactions 756
 breastfeeding 623
 caffeine interaction 761
 carbamazepine therapy and 224
 cardiac effects 326
 depression 258, 274
 diabetes mellitus and 340, 341

- discontinuation 311, 312, 318
 drug interactions 323
 ECT interactions 281
 epilepsy 692
 generalised anxiety disorder 361
 hepatic impairment 639
 HIV infection 681
 Huntington's disease 706
 hyperprolactinaemia and 337
 hyponatraemia 333, 333
 overdose 770
 panic disorder 362
 pregnancy 608
 PTSD 363
 re-starting after non-adherence 795
 sexual adverse effects 344
 surgical patients 781, 782
 switching to/from 316, 318
 monocytes 806
 Montgomery–Asberg Depression Rating Scale (MADRS) 265
 Montgomery versus Lanarkshire Health Board appeal case 813
 mood disorders *see* affective disorders
 mood stabilisers 205–225
 acute mania/hypomania 235, 235–236, 236
 alcohol misusers 756
 atrial fibrillation 720
 autism spectrum disorders 508
 bariatric surgery 725
 biochemical side-effects 799, 802, 803
 bipolar depression 244, 286
 bipolar disorder 205–225
 children and adolescents 471–472, 473
 prophylaxis 250–251
 rapid-cycling 241
 borderline personality disorder 664–665
 breastfeeding 620, 621, 627–628
 chronic kidney disease 647
 dementia 579
 hepatic impairment 640, 641
 HIV infection 681
 multiple sclerosis 711
 older people 591–592
 overdose 771–772
 pregnancy 609–610, 611, 612
 PTSD in young people 493
 renal impairment 654, 656
 street drug interactions 452
 see also anticonvulsants; carbamazepine; lithium; valproate
 morphine
 obsessive compulsive disorder 365
 older people 565
 PTSD prevention 494
 slow release oral (SROM), opioid dependence 418
 movement disorders, nicotine use 766
 multiple sclerosis (MS) 709–714, 710
 multivitamins *see* vitamin supplements
 music therapy 571
 mutism, akinetic *see* catatonia
 myasthenia gravis 564, 567
 myocardial infarction (MI)
 antidepressant prescribing after 325, 326–327, 329
 antipsychotic-associated 154
 protective effects of SSRIs 325, 349
 myocarditis, clozapine-induced 174, 184–186, 186
 myoclonus 176, 705
 nabilone 705
 N-acetylcysteine *see* acetylcysteine
 nalmefene 398
 naloxone
 buprenorphine overdose 418
 opioid overdose 405, 406
 take-home 421
 naloxone/buprenorphine (Suboxone) 418, 427
 naltrexone
 alcohol dependence 397–398, 398, 401
 co-morbid mental illness 402–403
 amphetamine misuse 440
 analgesia for patients on 398, 426
 antipsychotic-induced weight gain 101
 borderline personality disorder 665
 learning disabilities 702
 opioid dependence 424–425, 425
 re-starting after non-adherence 795
 unlicensed use 815
 naproxen 564
 Naranjo adverse drug reaction probability scale 811, 812
 National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence (NICE)
 adherence to medication 789, 790
 adult ADHD 497, 498
 alcohol misuse 387, 397, 397, 398, 399, 399, 400
 anxiety spectrum disorders 365, 368–369, 373
 bipolar depression 243
 bipolar disorder 215, 250–251
 pregnancy 609, 611
 prophylaxis 251
 borderline personality disorder 663–664, 665
 care home residents 596
 children and adolescents
 ADHD 496
 anxiety disorders 480
 bipolar illness 471
 depression 463, 467
 obsessive-compulsive disorder 486, 487, 487, 489
 PTSD 491
 dementia 543, 544, 576
 depression 256, 278, 307
 eating disorders 670
 lipid-lowering guidance 120–121
 opioid dependence 408, 422
 pregnancy 604
 schizophrenia 4, 46–48
 smoking cessation 431
 National Poisons Information Service (NPIS) 442
 nausea/vomiting
 antidepressant-induced 358–359
 clozapine-induced 176
 see also anti-emetics
 nelfinavir 685
 nemifitide 274
 neonatal abstinence syndrome (NAS) 427–428
 neonates
 antidepressant discontinuation symptoms 606, 607, 608
 antidepressant-treated mothers 605, 606–608
 antipsychotic discontinuation symptoms 604
 antipsychotic-treated mothers 602, 603
 breastfed 619, 620, 622–630
 opioid-dependent mothers 427–428
 persistent pulmonary hypertension of 607
 see also breastfeeding
 neostigmine 564, 567
 NEURAPRO trial 88
 'neuroleptic equivalence' 14
 neuroleptic malignant syndrome (NMS) 104–106
 diagnosis and management 104
 renal impairment 647
 vs catatonic stupor 108, 109
 neuroleptics *see* antipsychotics
 neurological causes of rare dementias 550–551
 neuroscience-based nomenclature (NbN) 4, 44
 neurotoxicity, lithium 208
 neutropenia
 benign ethnic 197, 198, 200
 carbamazepine-induced 222, 224
 chemotherapy-associated 202
 clozapine-induced 176, 179, 197–201
 psychotropics causing 806
 see also agranulocytosis
 neutrophils 806
 nevirapine 681, 686
 NICE *see* National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence
 nicotine 765–768
 dependence 431–438
 psychotropic effects 765
 tic disorders 514
 withdrawal symptoms 767
 see also smoking; smoking cessation

850 Index

- nicotine replacement therapy (NRT) 431–433
 adverse effects 432–433
 combination 431–432, 436, 437
 e-cigarettes 435, 437
 preparations and dose 432
- nimodipine, bipolar disorder 241
- nitrazepam 378, 655
- nizatidine 100
- NMS *see* neuroleptic malignant syndrome
- nocturnal enuresis, clozapine-induced 176
- non-adherence *see* adherence
- non-psychotropic drugs
 psychiatric adverse effects 808, 808–811
 QT prolongation 115
- non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs)
 dementia 548, 564
 lithium interactions 210, 211–212
 SSRI combination 348, 348, 350
- norclozapine 158, 736
- norriptyline
 adverse effects 358
 breastfeeding 624
 cardiotoxicity 329, 330
 children and adolescents 464–465
 diabetes mellitus and 340
 ECT interactions 282
 hyperprolactinaemia 337
 plasma level monitoring 734
 post-stroke depression 290, 291
 pregnancy 606
 psychotic depression 279
 refractory depression 267, 269, 274
 renal impairment 652
 transdermal patches 301, 302–303
- obesity *see* bariatric surgery; weight gain
- Objective Opioid Withdrawal Scale (OOWS) 407, 408
- obsessive compulsive disorder (OCD)
 364–365, 367
 22q11.2 deletion syndrome 697
 children and adolescents 485–490, 487
 Huntington's disease 706, 707
 NICE guidance 369, 486, 487, 487, 489
- obstetrical haemorrhage, SSRI-induced 350
- ocular pigmentation, clozapine-induced 179
- oculogyric spasm (crisis) 62, 91
- oestrogens
 anorexia nervosa 668
 caffeine interaction 761
 carbamazepine interactions 223
 depression 275
 schizophrenia 163
- off-label prescribing 813–815
 examples 814–815, 815
 paediatric practice 461, 486, 488, 492
 Royal College consensus statement 814, 814
- olanzapine
 acute mania/hypomania 226–227, 235, 236
 adverse effect profile 39
 amphetamine psychosis 440
 anorexia nervosa 667, 668
 atrial fibrillation 720
 bariatric surgery 724
 bipolar depression 243, 244, 246
 bipolar disorder 226, 241, 250
 borderline personality disorder 664
 breastfeeding 625
 catatonia 109, 110
 children and adolescents 524
 autism spectrum disorders 508
 bipolar mania 473, 475
 psychosis 478
 PTSD 492
 rapid tranquillisation 521
 classification 4
 delirium 674, 676
 dementia 572, 573, 574, 575
 diabetes association 124
 dyslipidaemia risk 119–120
 epilepsy 693
 first-episode psychosis 25
 fluoxetine combination *see* olanzapine + fluoxetine
 hepatic impairment 637
 Huntington's disease 705, 706
 hypertension risk 132
 hyponatraemia 134
 learning disabilities 701
 long-acting injection (LAI) (mainly pamoate) 67, 77–78
 doses and intervals 68, 77
 intramuscular injection site 821
 pharmacokinetics 71
 post-injection syndrome 77–78
 switching 77
 maximum licensed dose 12
 multiple sclerosis 711
 older people 589
 opioid-dependent patients 422
 overdose 771
 Parkinson's disease 716
 plasma levels 50, 733, 736
 pneumonia risk 148
 post-mortem blood concentrations 743
 pregnancy 603, 604
 psychotic depression 278
 PTSD 363
 rapid tranquillisation 54, 55, 56, 60
 intramuscular injection site 821
 renal impairment 649, 656
 schizophrenia
 acute exacerbation or relapse 41
 clozapine augmentation 159
 dose escalation 16–17, 49
 equivalent dose 15
 maintenance therapy 27
 minimum effective dose 9
 monitoring physical health 37
 refractory 162, 163–164
 relative efficacy 5, 6
 switching to 51, 95
 treatment failure 51
 sexual adverse effects 143
 smoking status and 751
 social phobia 366
 therapeutic index 44
 tic disorders 514
 valproate interaction 217
 for water intoxication 134
 weight gain risk 97
- olanzapine + fluoxetine (Symbyax)
 bipolar depression 243, 244, 246
 children and adolescents 472, 474, 475
 psychotic depression 278
 refractory depression 268
 older people 525–598
 alcohol dependence 401
 anticholinergic agents 557–564, 561, 567, 568
 benzodiazepines 374
 cognitive adverse effects of drugs 557–566, 558–560
 covert administration of medication 527, 593–598, 597
 delirium 672, 673
 depression 293–297, 294–295
 antidepressant doses 587–588
 maintenance therapy 306, 307
 psychostimulants 287
 drug interactions 211, 526–527
 hypnotics 592
 medication doses 587–592
 pharmacodynamic changes 525
 pharmacokinetic changes 526
 prescribing principles 525–528, 527
 renal impairment 646
see also dementia
- Omacor *see* omega-3 fatty acids
- omega-3 fatty acids (fish oils)
 Alzheimer's disease 545
 bipolar depression 245
 child and adolescent depression 465
 multiple sclerosis 710
 refractory depression 275
 schizophrenia 88–89, 159, 164
- ondansetron
 obsessive compulsive disorder 364
 schizophrenia 32, 164
 tic disorders 514
- opioid analgesics
 dementia 565, 571
 methadone/buprenorphine-treated patients 409, 426
 naltrexone-treated patients 398
 opioid-dependent pregnant women 427–428
 psychiatric adverse effects 808
 surgical patients 781

- opioid antagonists
borderline personality disorder 665
see also naloxone; naltrexone
- opioid dependence 405–430
acute in-patient settings 419–421, 420
alcohol dependence with 401
assessment 407, 407
detoxification and reduction regimes 422–425
NICE guidelines 408, 422
pain management 426
pregnancy and 409, 427–428
prescribing for 405
psychotropic prescribing 421–422
relapse prevention 424–425, 425
substitute prescribing *see* opioid substitution treatment
- opioid overdose/toxicity 405
clinical features 405
starting methadone therapy and 410–411
treatment 405, 406
- opioid substitution treatment (OST) 405, 406–419
acute in-patient settings 419–421, 420
alternative oral preparations 418
buprenorphine 414–418
buprenorphine with naloxone 418
discharge home 421
goals 406
induction and stabilisation 408
injectable diamorphine 419
methadone 408–413
methadone vs buprenorphine 408, 409
pain control for patients on 426
pregnancy 409, 427
principles 407–408
- opioid withdrawal 407–408
acute ward settings 419–421
community setting 423
lofexidine-mediated 424
naltrexone-treated patients 425
precipitated by buprenorphine 414, 416, 416
regimes 422–424
scales 407, 408
specialist addiction in-patient setting 423–424
symptomatic treatment 420, 424
- oral glucose tolerance test (OGTT) 125, 126
- orgasm 141
disorders 144
effects of antidepressants 344
- orlistat 101, 195
- orthopaedic surgery, SSRI-treated patients 351, 351
- orthostatic hypotension *see* postural hypotension
- osteopenia 323
- osteoporosis 668, 691
- overactivity, autism spectrum disorders 505–506
- overdose, psychotropic drug 769–772, 769–775
- oxazepam
alcohol withdrawal 393
breastfeeding 629
diazepam equivalent dose 378
driving and 778
hepatic impairment 641
HIV infection 682
renal impairment 655
- oxcarbazepine
adverse effects 691
bipolar disorder 222, 237
child and adolescent bipolar illness 473
dementia 579
drug interactions 690
mechanism of action 221
psychiatric side-effects 690
- oxybutynin
clozapine-induced hypersalivation 190
cognitive effects in dementia 557, 562
oxycodone, older people 565
- oxytocin, autism spectrum disorders 505
- Pabrinex 395–396, 396
packed cell volume 806
- Paediatric Acute-onset Neuropsychiatric Syndrome (PANS) 514–515
- Paediatric Autoimmune Neuropsychiatric Disorder Associated with Streptococcus (PANDAS) 514–515
- paediatric patients *see* children and adolescents
- pain management
dementia 571
opioid-dependent patients 409, 426
see also analgesic agents
- paliperidone
adverse effects 39
alcohol misusers 756
atrial fibrillation 720
bipolar disorder 229
breastfeeding 626
children and adolescents 478
equivalent doses 80
hepatic impairment 638, 641
hyponatraemia 134
maximum licensed dose 12
monitoring physical health 38
neuroleptic malignant syndrome 105
overdose 771
palmitate long-acting injection (LAI) 67, 79–81
1-monthly 68, 79, 79
3-monthly 68, 81, 81
dose equivalents 80, 82
dose reduction 73
equivalent dose 15
intramuscular injection site 821, 822
maximum licensed dose 12
older people 590, 591
pharmacokinetics 71
switching to 80
vs haloperidol decanoate 45, 79
plasma level monitoring 733, 738
renal impairment 650
sexual adverse effects 143
weight gain risk 97
- palliative care, substance misusers 426
- pancreatitis 120, 179, 800
- PANDAS 514–515
- panic disorder 362, 365, 367
NICE guidance 368
non-psychotropics causing 808, 809
- PANS (Paediatric Acute-onset Neuropsychiatric Syndrome) 514–515
- paracetamol, in dementia 564, 571
- parkinsonism
antipsychotic-induced 39, 91–92
never-medicated schizophrenia 90
switching antipsychotics 150
valproate-induced 216
see also extrapyramidal symptoms
- Parkinson's disease 715–718
beta-agonist bronchodilators 563
cognitive enhancers 550, 551, 717
dementia 550, 715, 716
depression 715
psychiatric adverse effects of medications 809–810
psychosis 716, 716–717
smoking 766
- parotid gland swelling, clozapine-induced 179
- paroxetine
adverse effects 258, 358
alcohol dependence 403
anxiety disorders 367
atrial fibrillation 720
breastfeeding 623
cardiac effects 327
children and adolescents
anxiety disorders 481, 482
depression 464
obsessive compulsive disorder 485
discontinuation symptoms 311, 312
drug interactions 259, 321
hepatic impairment 639, 641
HIV-associated neurocognitive disorders 682
Huntington's disease 706
hyperprolactinaemia and 337
minimum effective dose 262
multiple sclerosis 710
obsessive compulsive disorder 367
older people 294
post-stroke depression 291
pregnancy 606–607
renal impairment 653

852 Index

- Patient Health Questionnaire-9 (PHQ-9) 265
- Patient Information Leaflets 794
- payments, for medication adherence 792
- pemoline 712
- peony-glycyrrhia decoction 139
- peppermint oil 563
- perampanel 690, 809
- pergolide, tic disorders 514
- pericardial effusions, clozapine-induced 179
- pericyazine 12, 14
- perphenazine
 - adverse effects 39
 - equivalent dose 14
 - hypertension risk 132
 - maximum licensed dose 12
- perseveration, Huntington's disease 706
- pervasive developmental disorders (PDD) 504
- pervasive developmental disorders not otherwise specified (PDD-NOS) 504
- pethidine 565, 781
- P-glycoprotein 746
- pharmacodynamic interactions
 - alcohol 755, 755-756
 - anticonvulsants 217, 224, 690-691
 - antidepressants 259, 321-323
 - antiretrovirals 685, 685
 - cognitive enhancers 540, 541-542
- pharmacodynamics, age-related changes 525
- pharmacokinetic interactions
 - alcohol 753-755, 754
 - anticonvulsants 688-690
 - antidepressants 259, 321, 322
 - antiretrovirals 450, 685
 - caffeine 760, 761
 - cytochromes 746, 746-749
 - lithium 210, 210
 - older people 526-527
 - smoking 750-752
- pharmacokinetics 731-757
 - acting on clozapine plasma levels 744-745, 744-745
 - after bariatric surgery 722
 - age-related changes 526
 - depot antipsychotics 71, 71-72
 - plasma level monitoring 731-741
 - post-mortem blood concentrations 742-743
 - pregnancy-related changes 609
- phenacyclidine (PCP) 56
- phenelzine
 - adverse effects 359
 - discontinuation 318
 - generalised anxiety disorder 361
 - overdose 770
 - panic disorder 362
 - PTSD 363
- refractory depression 274
- renal impairment 653
- re-starting after non-adherence 795
- social phobia 366
- switching to/from 316, 318
- phenobarbital
 - adverse effects 691
 - drug interactions 690
 - GHB and GBL withdrawal 442, 443
- phenothiazines 3
 - blood lipids and 119
 - breastfeeding 626
 - diabetes risk 123
 - ECT interactions 282
 - hepatic impairment 638
 - hyponatraemia 134
 - overdose 771
 - pregnancy 602
 - sexual adverse effects 143
 - venous thromboembolism risk 153
- phenytoin
 - alcohol withdrawal 389
 - drug interactions 690
 - mania 237
 - neuroleptic malignant syndrome 105
 - plasma level monitoring 733
 - psychiatric adverse effects 690, 809
 - PTSD 363
 - surgical patients 782
- phosphate, plasma 803
- phosphodiesterase inhibitors 345
- physical illness *see* medical illness
- pimavanserin 717
- pimozide
 - adverse effects 39
 - clozapine augmentation 159
 - equivalent dose 14
 - hyponatraemia 134
 - maximum licensed dose 12
 - monitoring physical health 37
 - renal impairment 650
 - tic disorders 513
- pindolol 274, 362
- pioglitazone 126
- pipotiazine (depot) 67
 - adverse effects 39
 - doses and intervals 68
 - equivalent dose 14
 - maximum licensed dose 12
 - pharmacokinetics 71
- pirenzepine 190, 564, 815
- placebo effect 463, 512
- plasma drug level monitoring 731-741
 - assessing adherence 789
 - bipolar disorder 233, 733, 734
 - criteria 731-732
 - interpreting results 732-738, 733-734
- platelets, psychotropics affecting 347, 807
- pneumonia, antipsychotic-associated 148-149, 180
- polyethylene glycol 194
- polypharmacy, paediatric practice 461
- polysubstance abuse 440
- polyunsaturated fatty acids (PUFAs) *see* omega-3 fatty acids
- polyuria, lithium-induced 208
- post-mortem blood concentrations 742-744, 743
- post-mortem redistribution (PMR) 742
- post-operative bleeding, SSRI-treated patients 351
- post-partum haemorrhage, SSRI-treated patients 350, 606
- post-partum period
 - bipolar illness 608-610, 611
 - depression 604-608
 - psychosis 600-604
 - see also* breastfeeding
- post-stroke depression 287, 290-292
- post-traumatic stress disorder (PTSD) 363, 367
 - alcohol dependence with 403
 - avoiding benzodiazepines 365, 373
 - children and adolescents 484, 491-495, 493
- postural hypotension
 - antidepressant-induced 294-295, 321, 326-327, 358-359
 - antipsychotic-induced 130, 131
 - clozapine-induced 171, 175
 - switching antipsychotics 150
 - see also* hypotension
- potassium, plasma 803
- pramipexole
 - bipolar depression 245
 - Parkinson's disease 715
 - refractory depression 275
 - schizophrenia 32
- prazosin
 - PTSD 363, 492, 493
 - urinary retention in dementia 561
- pre-eclampsia 606
- pregabalin
 - abuse potential 426
 - adverse effects 690
 - akathisia 96
 - alcohol dependence 400
 - benzodiazepine withdrawal 379
 - generalised anxiety disorder 360, 368
 - methadone interaction 410, 412
 - multiple sclerosis 709
 - older people 592
 - opioid-dependent patients 422
 - overdose 772
 - psychiatric effects 690
 - re-starting after non-adherence 795
 - social phobia 366
 - surgical patients 784
 - tic disorders 514
- pregnancy 599-618
 - ADHD 613
 - alcohol use/withdrawal 387, 400, 607

- anticonvulsants 610, 611, 612
antidepressants 605–608, 608, 612
antipsychotics 602–604, 604, 612
anxiety disorders and
 insomnia 611–612
benzodiazepine misuse 445–446
bipolar illness 608–610, 611
depression 604–608, 608
discussions with women 600
mood stabilisers 609–610, 611, 612
opioid dependence 409, 427–428
prescribing principles 601
psychosis 600–604
psychotropic drug choice 599–600, 612
rapid tranquillisation 612
sedatives 611–612, 612
unplanned 217, 223
see also breastfeeding; women of child-bearing age
- pregnenolone, schizophrenia 32
Prescribing Observatory for Mental Health (POMH-UK) 21
Priadel 207
priapism 142, 143
pridopidine 705
primidone 690, 690, 691
problem behaviours *see* behaviour problems
- prochlorperazine
 alcohol withdrawal 396
 opioid withdrawal 420
 venous thromboembolism risk 153
procyclidine 62, 69
Product Licence (PL), prescribing drugs outside 813–815
- prolactin, serum
 antipsychotic drug effects 137, 137
 elevated *see* hyperprolactinaemia
 interpretation 137, 138
 monitoring 38, 233
 psychotropics affecting 803
- promazine 39
promethazine
 borderline personality disorder 665
 breastfeeding 629
 cognitive adverse effects 565
 dementia 580
 pregnancy 602, 611, 612
 rapid tranquillisation 54–55, 60–61
 children and adolescents 522
 intramuscular injection site 821
 renal impairment 655
 street drug intoxication 450
- propranolol 190
propofol 164
propofol, GBL and GHB withdrawal 443
propranolol
 akathisia 92, 95
 autism spectrum disorders 508
 generalised anxiety disorder 360
 lithium-induced tremor 208
 psychiatric adverse effects 810
 PTSD in young people 492, 493, 494
 protein, serum 803
 prothrombin time 807
 proton pump inhibitors 176, 566
 pseudobulbar affect (PBA), multiple sclerosis 710
 pseudohyponatraemia 134
 pseudo-parkinsonism *see* parkinsonism
- psychiatric adverse effects
 anticonvulsants 688, 690, 808–809
 antiretroviral drugs 686, 686
 dementia 557–566
 differential diagnosis 811, 812
 non-psychotropic drugs 808, 808–811
- psychiatric disorders *see* mental illness
- psychological therapies
 anxiety disorders 368
 children and adolescents
 ADHD 496
 anxiety disorders 480, 483–484
 bipolar disorder 472
 depression 463
 PTSD 494
 depression 255
 learning disabilities 700
 see also cognitive behavioural therapy
- psychosis
 alcohol consumption and 755
 amfetamine 440
 benzodiazepines 374
 children and adolescents 478–479
 ECT 86–87
 epilepsy 688
 first episode *see* first-episode psychosis
 Huntington's disease 706, 707
 multiple sclerosis 711
 non-psychotropics causing 808, 809, 810, 811
 older people 588–590
 Parkinson's disease 716, 716–717
 post-partum 600–604
 pregnant women 600–604
 rapid tranquillisation *see* rapid tranquillisation
 sexual dysfunction 141–142
 super-sensitivity 28–29
 synthetic cannabinoid receptor agonist (SCRA)-related 448–449
 see also schizophrenia
- psychosocial treatment, drug
 dependence 405, 419, 439, 445, 449
- psychostimulants *see* stimulants
- psychotic depression 278–279
- psychotropic medications
 adverse reactions *see* adverse drug reactions
 after bariatric surgery 723–727, 726
 atrial fibrillation 719, 720
 biochemical effects 798, 799–804
 breastfeeding 619–630, 620
 child and adolescent doses 524
 cytochrome function and 746, 746–749
 driving and 776–780, 777
 ECT interactions 281–282, 281–284
 epilepsy 688–691, 692–693
 haematological effects 798, 805–807
 HIV infection 685, 685
 off-label prescribing 813–815
 overdose 769–772, 769–775
 pharmacodynamic interactions *see* pharmacodynamic interactions
 pharmacokinetic interactions *see* pharmacokinetic interactions
 plasma level monitoring 731–741
 pregnant women 599–613, 601, 612
 smoking status and 750–751, 750–752, 766–767
 street drug interactions 450–453, 451–452
 surgery and 781–786, 782–784
 PTSD *see* post-traumatic stress disorder
- publication bias 814
- pulmonary embolism, antipsychotic-associated 154, 184
- pulmonary hypertension of newborn, persistent 607
- pulse monitoring 62, 171
- pure red cell aplasia 807
- pyridostigmine 564, 567
- pyridoxine (vitamin B₆) 96
- QT interval 112
 corrected (QTc) 112, 413
 measurements 112, 113
- QT prolongation 112–118
 anorexia nervosa 667
 antidepressant-induced 326–327, 329
 newborn 606
 antipsychotic-induced 112–116
 ECG monitoring 114
 management 116
 metabolic inhibition 116
 quantifying risk 113, 114
 rapid tranquillisation 55–56, 57
 switching agents 150
 methadone therapy 412–413, 413
 non-psychotropics inducing 115
 renal impairment and 647
 risk factors 114, 115
 see also arrhythmias
- quetiapine
 acute mania/hypomania 235, 236
 adverse effect profile 39
 anorexia nervosa 667, 668
 bariatric surgery 724
 bipolar disorder 226, 241, 243, 250
 blood lipids and 119
 blood pressure effects 130
 breastfeeding 626

854 Index

- quetiapine (*cont'd*)
- children and adolescents 524
 - autism spectrum disorders 508
 - bipolar illness 472, 474, 475
 - psychosis 478
 - PTSD 492, 493
 - clozapine-induced hypersalivation 190
 - delirium 675
 - dementia 572, 573, 574, 575
 - depression
 - bipolar 244
 - psychotic 278
 - refractory 206, 268
 - diabetes association 124
 - epilepsy 693
 - equivalent dose 15
 - generalised anxiety disorder 360
 - hepatic impairment 638
 - HIV infection 680
 - Huntington's disease 706
 - hypertension risk 131, 132
 - hyponatraemia 134
 - learning disabilities 701
 - maximum licensed dose 12
 - older people 589
 - overdose 771
 - Parkinson's disease 716
 - plasma level monitoring 733, 736–737
 - post-mortem blood concentrations 743
 - pregnancy 603, 604
 - PTSD 363
 - rapid tranquillisation 60
 - renal impairment 650
 - schizophrenia
 - combination therapy 21
 - high dose 16–17, 49
 - minimum effective dose 9
 - monitoring physical health 38
 - multi-episode 27
 - refractory 164
 - relative efficacy 5
 - switching to 51, 95
 - sexual adverse effects 143
 - synthetic cannabinoid receptor agonist (SCRA) withdrawal 449
 - tardive dyskinesia and 92
 - tic disorders 514
 - for water intoxication 134
 - weight gain risk 97
- raloxifene 164
- raltegravir 685, 686
- ranitidine 100, 566
- rapid neuroleptisation 47
- rapid tranquillisation (RT) 54–59, 60–61
- benzodiazepines 54, 55, 56, 374
 - children and adolescents 521–522, 521–523
 - intramuscular treatment 54–56, 60, 821
 - intravenous treatment 54–55, 56, 60
 - ketamine 56–57
 - oral treatment 54, 60
 - paradoxical disinhibitory reactions 382
 - physical monitoring 61
 - practical measures 57–59
 - pregnancy 612
 - remedial measures 62
 - zuclopenthixol acetate 57–59, 59
- reboxetine
- adverse effects 358
 - antipsychotic-induced weight gain 101
 - breastfeeding 624
 - cardiac effects 327
 - diabetes mellitus 340
 - epilepsy 692
 - hepatic impairment 639
 - HIV infection 681
 - hyperprolactinaemia and 337
 - minimum effective dose 262
 - older people 295
 - overdose 770
 - post-stroke depression 290
 - pregnancy 607
 - renal impairment 653
 - sexual adverse effects 344
 - switching to/from 316–317, 319
- Red Bull 759
- red cell count 807
- red cell distribution width 807
- refusal of medication 593
- Regional Drugs and Therapeutics Centre Teratology Service 400
- relative infant dose (RID) 619, 622–630
- renal function testing 645
- antipsychotic-treated patients 37
 - lithium-treated patients 209, 232
 - older people 526
- renal impairment 645–660
- anti-dementia medications 656
 - antidepressants 651–653, 656
 - antipsychotics 649–650, 656
 - anxiolytics and hypnotics 655, 656
 - classification 646
 - lithium and 208, 654
 - methadone dosing 412
 - mood stabilisers 654, 656
 - prescribing principles 645–647
 - recommended drugs 656
- renal replacement therapy 647
- Research Units on Paediatric Psychopharmacology (RUPP) Autism Network 505–506
- respiratory depression 62, 375
- Responsible Clinician (RC) 816
- restlessness *see* akathisia
- restricted repetitive behaviours and interests (RRBIs) 504–505
- Restriction Order 816
- reticulocyte count 807
- Rett's syndrome 504
- reversible inhibitors of monoamine oxidase-A (RIMA) *see* moclobemide
- rhabdomyolysis 647
- rilpivirine 685, 686
- riluzole
 - bipolar depression 245
 - children and adolescents 489
 - generalised anxiety disorder 361
 - Huntington's disease 705
 - obsessive compulsive disorder 365, 489
 - refractory depression 275
 - schizophrenia 164
- risperidone
- acute mania/hypomania 226–227, 235, 236
 - ADHD 497
 - adverse effect profile 39, 82
 - bariatric surgery 724
 - bipolar disorder 226, 241, 250
 - blood lipids and 119, 120
 - breastfeeding 626
 - catatonia 109, 110
 - children and adolescents 524
 - autism spectrum disorders 505, 506–507, 507, 508
 - bipolar illness 473, 475
 - psychosis 478
 - PTSD 492, 493
 - classification 4
 - delirium 675
 - dementia 572, 573, 574, 575
 - depression 271
 - diabetes association 124
 - epilepsy 692
 - first-episode psychosis 25
 - hepatic impairment 638
 - HIV infection 680
 - Huntington's disease 705, 706
 - hypertension risk 131, 132
 - hyponatraemia 134
 - learning disabilities 701
 - long-acting injection (RI-AI) 67, 82–85
 - bipolar disorder 229, 229, 250
 - dose equivalents 80, 82
 - dose–response effects 82
 - doses and intervals 68
 - equivalent dose 15
 - intramuscular injection site 821
 - maximum licensed dose 12
 - neuroleptic malignant syndrome 105
 - new formulations 84
 - older people 591
 - pharmacokinetics 71
 - plasma levels 82, 737
 - refractory schizophrenia 164
 - switching from 75
 - switching to 83
 - maximum licensed dose 12
 - multiple sclerosis 711
 - older people 589
 - overdose 771
 - Parkinson's disease 716
 - plasma levels 50, 733, 737–738

- post-mortem blood concentrations 743
 pregnancy 603, 604
 PTSD 363
 rapid tranquillisation 60
 renal impairment 650
 schizophrenia
 acute exacerbation or relapse 41
 equivalent doses 15, 80
 high dose 16–17, 49–50
 maintenance therapy 27
 minimum effective dose 9
 monitoring physical health 38
 refractory 159, 162, 164
 relative efficacy 5
 switching to 51
 treatment failure 51
 sexual adverse effects 143
 tic disorders 513–514
 for water intoxication 134
 weight gain risk 97
 RISQ-PATH study 113
 Ritalin 500
 see also methylphenidate
 ritanserin 164, 237
 ritonavir 450, 685
 rivastigmine 530–531
 adverse effects 537–538
 Alzheimer's disease 532, 533, 535,
 540–543
 atrial fibrillation 720
 delirium 675, 676
 drug interactions 540, 541
 efficacy 532, 533
 HIV-associated neurocognitive
 disorders 682
 mechanism of action 529
 NICE guidance 544
 non-cognitive symptoms of
 dementia 576
 renal impairment 656
 stopping treatment 540–543
 tolerability 536–537
 transdermal patch 533, 536–537
 vascular dementia 549
 rofecoxib, mild cognitive impairment 550
 Roux-en-Y gastric bypass (RYGB) 722
 Royal College of Psychiatrists, unlicensed
 use of licensed drugs 814, 814
 RT *see* rapid tranquillisation

 S-adenosyl-L-methionine 275
 saffron 546
 saquinavir 685
 sarcosine 164
 schizoaffective disorder
 atrial fibrillation and 720
 ECT 86
 schizophrenia 3–203
 22q11.2 deletion syndrome 696, 697
 acute exacerbation 41–42, 52
 alcohol dependence with 403
 antipsychotic therapy *see* antipsychotics
 atrial fibrillation and 720
 benzodiazepines 374
 caffeine consumption 762
 carbamazepine 222
 cardiovascular risk factors 119
 catatonic 107, 108–109, 109, 110
 children and adolescents 478–479
 chronic kidney disease 647
 diabetes association 123
 driving regulations 777
 ECT 86–87
 first episode *see* first-episode psychosis
 HIV infection 680
 medication adherence 27, 787–788, 790
 enhancing 4, 791–792
 monitoring physical health 8, 36,
 37–38, 47
 mortality 20
 multi-episode 9, 26, 26–27
 negative symptoms 31–35
 NICE guidelines 4, 46–48
 older people 588–590
 omega-3 fatty acids 88–89
 pneumonia 148
 pregnancy and 602
 refractory *see* schizophrenia, treatment
 resistant
 relapse 26–27, 28
 alternative views 28–29
 treatment algorithms 41–42
 sexual dysfunction 141
 smoking 765–766
 cessation 432, 435, 766
 substance misuse 454
 treatment algorithms 40–42, 40–43
 treatment resistant (TRS) 5, 49–52,
 156–203
 alternatives to clozapine 162–165,
 162–168
 dose escalation 16–17, 49–50
 ECT 86–87, 163
 treatment options 50–52
 see also clozapine
 valproate therapy 165, 215
 water intoxication 134
 see also antipsychotics
 scopolamine *see* hyoscine
 second-generation antipsychotics (SGAs)
 4, 44
 ADHD 497
 adverse effects 90
 diabetes 123–125, 126
 dyslipidaemia 119–120
 extrapyramidal symptoms 90
 neuroleptic malignant syndrome 105
 orthostatic hypotension 130
 pneumonia 148
 sexual dysfunction 142
 weight gain 97, 97–98
 bipolar disorder 226, 250
 children and adolescents
 autism spectrum disorders 505,
 506–508, 507
 bipolar illness 471–472, 473–474
 psychosis 478
 PTSD 492, 493
 delirium 674–675
 dementia 572–575
 equivalent doses 15
 HIV infection 680
 Huntington's disease 705, 706
 learning disabilities 701
 long-acting injections
 bipolar disorder 230
 intramuscular injection sites
 821–822
 schizophrenia 66–67, 75–85
 maximum licensed doses 12, 13
 minimum effective doses 9
 negative symptoms 32
 NICE guidelines 46
 older people 588–589, 590–591
 pregnancy 603–604
 rapid tranquillisation 54
 relative efficacy 5–6
 renal impairment 649–650
 social phobia 366
 street drug interactions 451
 switching trials 51
 tic disorders 513–514
 unlicensed use 815
 second opinion appointed doctor (SOAD)
 817, 819
 sedation
 alcohol-induced 755
 antidepressant-induced 294–295,
 358–359
 antipsychotic-induced 39
 clozapine-induced 171, 175
 driving ability and 778
 high dose 56
 non-psychoactives causing 808,
 809, 810
 switching antipsychotics 150
 see also rapid tranquillisation
 sedatives
 antipsychotics as 8
 borderline personality disorder 663, 665
 breastfeeding mothers 620, 620
 hepatic impairment 641
 opioid-dependent patients 422
 pregnancy 611–612, 612
 seizures
 22q11.2 deletion syndrome 697
 alcohol withdrawal 389
 antidepressant-induced 322
 clozapine-induced 176, 735
 melatonin-treated children 518
 psychotropic-associated, in epilepsy 691,
 692–693
 see also epilepsy

856 Index

- selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs)
- 22q11.2 deletion syndrome 697
 - adverse effects 258, 358
 - children and adolescents 465, 467, 481, 483, 486
 - older people 525
 - alcohol misusers 756
 - anxiety disorders 365–367
 - atrial fibrillation 720
 - bariatric surgery 723
 - bleeding risks 293, 347–354, 348
 - borderline personality disorder 664
 - caffeine interaction 761
 - carbamazepine interaction 224
 - cardiac effects 325, 326, 327, 329, 330
 - children and adolescents
 - anxiety disorders 481, 482, 483
 - autism spectrum disorders 505, 506, 508
 - behavioural activation response 467
 - depression 463–464, 465–467, 467
 - obsessive compulsive disorder 485–486, 488
 - PTSD 492, 493
 - dementia 577–578
 - depression 258
 - adjunctive stimulants 286, 287
 - bipolar 244, 246
 - children and adolescents 463–464, 465–467, 467
 - minimum effective doses 262
 - NICE guidance 256
 - older people 294, 294
 - post-stroke 290, 291
 - refractory 206, 268, 271, 275
 - diabetes mellitus and 340, 341
 - discontinuation symptoms 311
 - drug interactions 259, 323, 688–690
 - eating disorders 669
 - ECT interactions 281
 - epilepsy 692
 - generalised anxiety disorder 360
 - hepatic impairment 639
 - HIV infection 680–681, 682
 - Huntington's disease 706, 707
 - hyperprolactinaemia and 337
 - hyponatraemia 333, 333, 334
 - learning disabilities 701
 - lithium interactions 212
 - multiple sclerosis 710, 710
 - neuroleptic malignant syndrome and 105
 - obsessive compulsive disorder 364, 367
 - older people 294, 294
 - opioid-dependent patients 422
 - overdose 770
 - panic disorder 362
 - Parkinson's disease 715
 - post-mortem blood concentrations 743
 - pregnancy 605, 606–607, 608
- PTSD 363
- re-starting after non-adherence 795
- serotonin reuptake inhibition 347, 347
- sexual adverse effects 344
 - social phobia 366
 - street drug interactions 451
 - surgical patients 351, 351, 781, 782
 - switching to/from 315, 316–319
- selegiline
- adverse effects 144–145, 810
 - buccal 298, 299
 - discontinuation 318
 - schizophrenia 32
 - SSRI interaction 715
 - switching to/from 316, 318
 - transdermal 301, 303
- self-injurious behaviour (SIB)
- autism spectrum disorders 506–508
 - learning disabilities 701–702
 - lithium therapy 207
- semagacestat 548
- semi-sodium valproate 214
- acute mania/hypomania 236
 - see also* valproate
- senna 194
- D-serine, schizophrenia 32, 163
- serotonin–noradrenaline reuptake inhibitors (SNRIs)
- adverse effects 358
 - anxiety disorders 365–367
 - bariatric surgery 723
 - children and adolescents 481–482, 482
 - diabetes mellitus and 340, 341
 - drug interactions 323
 - generalised anxiety disorder 360
 - HIV infection 681
 - Huntington's disease 706
 - hyperprolactinaemia and 337
 - hyponatraemia 333
 - multiple sclerosis 710
 - obsessive compulsive disorder 364
 - Parkinson's disease 715
 - refractory depression 268
 - switching to/from 317–319
 - see also* desvenlafaxine; duloxetine; venlafaxine
- serotonin syndrome 315
- antidepressant-related risk 315, 322
 - caffeine–SSRI interactions 761
 - post-ECT 282
 - renal impairment 647, 651, 653
 - St John's wort 356
 - surgery-related risk 781, 782, 783
- sertindole
- adverse effects 39
 - breastfeeding 626
 - maximum licensed dose 12
 - minimum effective dose 9
 - monitoring physical health 37
 - schizophrenia 159, 164
 - weight gain risk 97
- sertraline
- adverse effects 258, 358
 - alcohol misuse 402, 756
 - anxiety disorders 367
 - breastfeeding 624
 - cardiac effects 327, 329, 330
 - children and adolescents 524
 - anxiety disorders 481, 482
 - depression 464
 - obsessive compulsive disorder 485
 - PTSD 492, 493
 - dementia 578
 - depression 267
 - children and adolescents 464
 - minimum effective dose 262
 - post-stroke 290
 - diabetes mellitus and 340
 - discontinuation symptoms 312
 - hepatic impairment 639, 641
 - Huntington's disease 706
 - hyperprolactinaemia 337
 - multiple sclerosis 710, 710
 - obsessive compulsive disorder 364, 485
 - older people 588
 - opioid-dependent patients 422
 - Parkinson's disease 715
 - pregnancy 606, 607
 - rectal 301, 303
 - renal impairment 653, 656
 - social phobia 366
 - street drug interactions 451
 - unlicensed use 815
- severe impairment battery (SIB) 533
- Severity of Alcohol Dependence Questionnaire (SADQ) 388, 388
- sexual arousal 141
- disorders 142, 144
 - effects of antidepressants 344
- sexual desire *see* libido
- sexual disinhibition, mania 217, 223
- sexual dysfunction 141–147
- antidepressants and 343–346, 344, 345, 358–359
 - antipsychotic related 44, 142, 143
 - depression 343
 - effects of psychosis 141–142
 - hyperprolactinaemia and 137, 142
 - schizophrenia 141
 - switching antipsychotics 150
 - treatment 142–145, 144, 345
- sexual response, human 141, 141
- Short Alcohol Withdrawal Scale (SAWS) 390, 392
- Shprintzen syndrome (22q11.2 deletion syndrome) 696, 696–698, 697
- SIADH *see* syndrome of inappropriate antidiuretic hormone
- sialorrhoea *see* hypersalivation
- sildenafil 144, 145, 345
- simvastatin 565
- skin reactions, clozapine 180

- sleep disturbances/insomnia
autism spectrum disorders 508, 518
childhood 517–520, 519, 524
dementia 579–580
non-psychotropics causing 808, 809, 810
older people 592
pregnancy 611–612
see also hypnotics
- smoking (cigarette) 431–438, 765–768
alcohol dependence and 401
caffeine interaction 761
clozapine therapy and 158
drug interactions 750–751, 750–752, 766–767
pregnant women with psychiatric illness 601
schizophrenia 765–766
see also nicotine
- smoking cessation 431–438
bupropion 434, 434–435, 437
e-cigarettes 435–436, 437
NICE guidance 431
nicotine replacement therapy 431–433, 432, 436
serious mental illness 437
surgical patients 781
treatment algorithms 436–437
varenicline 433, 433–434, 436, 437
- Snoezelen 571
- SNRIs *see* serotonin–noradrenaline reuptake inhibitors
- SOAD (second opinion appointed doctor) 817, 819
- social and communication impairment 505
- social phobia (social anxiety disorder) 366, 367
childhood 480
- sodium, serum 134, 334, 803
see also hyponatraemia
- sodium oxybate 669
- sodium valproate 214
acute mania/hypomania 236
controlled release 214
see also valproate
- SOHO trial 27
- solanezumab 548–549
- solifenacin 557, 562
- Souvenaid 547
- Spice 447
- SSRIs *see* selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors
- STAR*D programme 260, 267, 267–269, 343
- statins
antipsychotic-treated patients 120–121
dementia treatment 546–547, 549
psychiatric adverse effects 810
safety in dementia 565, 567
- statutory consultees 817–818
- STEP-BD study 251
- steroid-induced psychosis 207
- steroids (corticosteroids), psychiatric adverse effects 710–711, 810
- stimulants (psychostimulants)
22q11.2 deletion syndrome 697
ADHD 496–497, 498–499, 500–501
breastfeeding 630, 630
depression 285–289, 286–287
epilepsy 693
hepatic impairment 640
misuse/dependence 439–441
refractory depression 275
re-starting after non-adherence 795
see also amfetamines; atomoxetine; methylphenidate
- St John's wort (SJW) 355–357
children and adolescents 465
drug interactions 356–357, 685
patient information 356
- 'street drugs'
acute intoxication 56, 450
psychotropic drug interactions 450–453, 451–452
urine testing 454, 455–456
see also drug misuse/dependence
- stroke
antipsychotic-associated 154, 572–574
depression after 287, 290–292
SSRI-related haemorrhagic 349, 350
stupor, psychiatric 107–109, 109, 110
- stuttering, clozapine-related 180
- Suboxone 418, 427
- substance misuse 385–457
ADHD and 498
extrapyramidal symptoms and 90
pain management and 426
polysubstance abuse 440
- Subutex *see* buprenorphine
- sudden cardiac death
antipsychotic-associated 112, 113
cardiovascular risk factors 116
clozapine-related 185
risk in depression 329
see also QT prolongation
- suicide/suicidal ideation
anticonvulsants and 216, 223
antidepressants and 259
antidepressant-treated young people 465, 466–467, 486
bipolar disorder 243, 250
epilepsy 688
lithium and 207
medication adherence and 788
multiple sclerosis 709
non-psychotropics causing 809, 810, 811
- paediatric obsessive compulsive disorder 486
- perinatal 600
- psychotic depression 279
- psychotropic overdose 769, 769–772
- schizophrenia 26
- surgical patients 785
- sulforaphane 505
- sulpiride 4
adverse effects 39
alcohol misusers 756
breastfeeding 626
clozapine augmentation 159
clozapine-induced hypersalivation 190
diabetes risk 124
epilepsy 692
equivalent dose 14
hepatic impairment 638, 641
hypertension risk 131
maximum licensed dose 12
minimum effective dose 9
monitoring physical health 37, 38
refractory schizophrenia 164
renal impairment 650
re-starting after non-adherence 795
sexual adverse effects 143
tic disorders 514
weight gain risk 97
- sumatriptan, intranasal 282
- Summary of Product Characteristics (SPC) 794
- super-sensitivity psychosis 28–29
- surgery
psychotropic drugs and 781–786, 782–784
SSRI-related bleeding 351, 351
- Symbyax *see* olanzapine + fluoxetine
- syncope, acetylcholinesterase inhibitors and 537–538, 539
- syndrome of inappropriate antidiuretic hormone (SIADH)
antidepressant-induced 333
antipsychotic-induced 134
medications associated with 800, 801
treatment 135
- synthetic cannabinoid receptor agonists (SCRAs) 447–449, 455
acute intoxication 447–448, 448
dependence and withdrawal 449
related psychosis 448
see also cannabinoids
- T2 and T3, forms 816–817
- T3 *see* tri-iodothyronine
- tachycardia, clozapine-induced 175, 185, 186
- tadalafil 144, 345
- tamoxifen
antidepressant interactions 259, 321
mania 237
- tamsulosin 561
- tardive dyskinesia (TD) 91–92
depot antipsychotics 73
first vs second-generation antipsychotics 45
switching antipsychotics 151
treatment 92
- TCAs *see* tricyclic antidepressants

858 Index

- tea 759
- telmisartan 132
- temazepam
diazepam equivalent dose 378
driving and 778
hepatic impairment 641
HIV infection 682
renal impairment 655
- temperature, increased body *see* fever
- tenofovir 685
- teratogenicity
antidepressants 605, 606–608
antipsychotics 602, 603
benzodiazepines 611
carbamazepine 223, 610
lithium 209, 609
topiramate 610
valproate 217, 610
- terazosin 189
- testosterone
HIV infection 681
psychotropic drug effects 803
refractory depression 275
schizophrenia 32
sexual dysfunction 145, 345
- trabectedin
Huntington's disease 705
tardive dyskinesia 92
tic disorders 514
- tetrahydrocannabinol (THC) 447
- theophylline
dementia 563–564
drug interactions 223, 259
- therapeutic drug monitoring *see* plasma drug level monitoring
- thiamine
alcohol withdrawal 393, 395–396
deficiency 395–396
post-ECT confusion 282
- thiazide diuretics, lithium interaction 210, 211
- thioridazine 4, 153
- thioxanthines 3
breastfeeding 626
sexual adverse effects 143
- thrombocytopenia, psychotropics causing 180, 807
- thromboembolism
antipsychotic-associated 153–155, 154
clozapine-associated 180, 184
- thyroid function tests (TFTs)
bipolar disorder 208, 209, 232
psychotropic drugs affecting 803–804
quetiapine-treated patients 38
- thyroid-stimulating hormone 803
- thyroxine 804
bipolar depression 245
bipolar disorder 241
carbamazepine interaction 223
clozapine augmentation 159
tiagabine 690, 809
- tianeptine, refractory depression 274
- tic disorders 512–516, 515
obsessive compulsive disorder with 488
- Timothy syndrome 1: 606
- tipranavir 685
- TMS *see* transcranial magnetic stimulation
- tolterodine 557, 562
- tolvaptan 134
- topiramate
alcohol dependence 400
antipsychotic-induced weight gain 101
bipolar disorder 241
breastfeeding 628
cocaine misuse 439
dementia 579
drug interactions 690
eating disorders 669
mania 237
obsessive compulsive disorder 364
pregnancy 610
psychiatric adverse effects 690, 809
schizophrenia 32, 159, 164
social phobia 366
tic disorders 514
- TORDIA (Treatment of Resistant Depression in Adolescence) studies 463, 466, 467
- torsade de pointes (TDP)
antipsychotic-induced 112, 113, 114
methadone-treated patients 412–413
see also QT prolongation
- torticollis 91
- touch, therapeutic 571
- Tourette's syndrome 512–516, 515
- tramadol 514
- tranquillisation, rapid *see* rapid tranquillisation
- transcranial direct current stimulation (tDCS) 32
- transcranial magnetic stimulation (TMS)
bipolar disorder in young people 472–473
depression 255
schizophrenia 32, 165
- transferrin, carbohydrate-deficient 800
- tranylcypromine
adverse effects 359
bipolar depression 245
discontinuation 311, 312, 318
overdose 770
refractory depression 267, 268
re-starting after non-adherence 795
switching to/from 316, 318
- trauma exposure, preventive interventions 494
- trauma-focused cognitive behavioural therapy (TF-CBT) 491, 492
- trazodone
adverse effects 358
akathisia 92, 96
breastfeeding 624
cardiac effects 327, 329
delirium 676
dementia 548, 577–578, 580
diabetes mellitus 340
driving ability 777
epilepsy 692
erectile dysfunction 345
HIV infection 681
intravenous 300
minimum effective dose 262
older people 588
overdose 770
pregnancy 608
rectal 301, 303
renal impairment 653
sexual adverse effects 344
smoking status and 751
switching to/from 317–319
- Treatment of Adolescents with Depression Study (TADS) 463, 465
- Treatment of Early Age Mania (TEAM) study 473
- Treatment of Resistant Depression in Adolescence (TORDIA) studies 463, 466, 467
- TREC studies 54–55
- tremor
antipsychotic-induced 91–92
lithium-induced 208
valproate-induced 216
- tricyclic antidepressants (TCAs)
adverse effects 258, 358
alcohol dependence 402, 756
atrial fibrillation 720
bariatric surgery 723
breastfeeding 624
cardiotoxicity 327, 329, 330
children and adolescents 464–465
ADHD 497
PTSD 492, 493
dementia 578
depression 258
adjunctive stimulants 286
minimum effective dose 262
psychotic 278
refractory 274, 275
diabetes mellitus and 340, 341
discontinuation symptoms 311
drug interactions 259, 321–322
ECT interactions 281
epilepsy 692
generalised anxiety disorder 361
hepatic impairment 639
HIV infection 681
Huntington's disease 706
hyperprolactinaemia and 337
hyponatraemia 333
multiple sclerosis 710, 710
older people 294
opioid-dependent patients 422
overdose 770

- panic disorder 362
 Parkinson's disease 715
 plasma level monitoring 734
 post-mortem blood concentrations 743
 pregnancy 606
 PTSD 363
 re-starting after non-adherence 795
 sexual adverse effects 344
 smoking status and 751
 surgical patients 781, 783
 switching to/from 317–319
- trifluoperazine
 adverse effects 39
 equivalent dose 14
 maximum licensed dose 12
 minimum effective dose 9
 renal impairment 650
 weight gain risk 97
- triglycerides, plasma 119, 804
 trihexyphenidyl 189
 tri-iodothyronine (T₃)
 psychotropics affecting 804
 refractory depression 267, 268, 269, 271
- trimipramine
 adverse effects 358
 refractory depression 274
 renal impairment 653
- triptorelin, obsessive-compulsive disorder 365
- troponin, clozapine-treated patients 185, 186
- tropium 557, 561, 562
- tryptophan
 depletion, acute mania 237
 refractory depression 274
- 22q11.2 deletion syndrome 696, 697
- typical antipsychotics 3–4, 44
see also first-generation antipsychotics
- UDP-glucuronosyl transferase (UGT) 321, 746
- unlicensed medicines 813–815, 815
 paediatric practice 461
see also off-label prescribing
- urate/uric acid, plasma 804
- urca, plasma 804
- urea and electrolytes (U&Es) 37, 232
- urgent treatment, Section 62 819
- urinary incontinence, anticholinergic agents 557–561, 562, 568
- urinary retention, alpha blockers for 561, 568
- vagal nerve stimulation 255
- vaginal bleeding, abnormal 350
- valbenazine 92
- valproate 214–220, 218
 acute mania/hypomania 214–215, 235, 236
 adverse effects 216, 690–691
 alcohol dependence 402, 756
 autism spectrum disorders 508
 bariatric surgery 725
 bipolar depression 215, 244
 bipolar disorder 214–215, 250, 251
 breastfeeding 628
 children and adolescents 524
 autism spectrum disorders 508
 bipolar illness 471, 473
 PTSD 493
 controlled release 214
 delirium 676
 dementia 573, 579
 discontinuation 217
 drug interactions 217, 746
 formulations 214
 hepatic impairment 640
 HIV infection 681
 indications 214–215, 218
 learning disabilities 701
 mechanism of action 214
 neuroleptic malignant syndrome 105
 older people 592
 on-treatment monitoring 216, 218, 232–233
 overdose 772
 panic disorder 362
 plasma levels 215–216, 734
 pregnancy 610, 611
 prescribing 218
 pre-treatment tests 216
 psychiatric side-effects 690
 renal impairment 654, 656
 re-starting after non-adherence 795
 schizophrenia 165, 215
 social phobia 366
 street drug interactions 452
 surgical patients 782
 unlicensed use 815
 women of childbearing age 217, 601
- valproic acid 214
see also valproate
- valsartan 132
- vaping *see* electronic cigarettes
- vaptans 134
- varenicline, smoking cessation 433, 433–434, 436, 437
- vascular dementia 529, 549, 551
- vasculitis, clozapine-induced 180
- velocardiofacial syndrome (22q11.2 deletion syndrome) 696, 696–698, 697
- venlafaxine
 adverse effects 258, 358
 atrial fibrillation 720
 bipolar depression 244, 245
 bleeding risk 351
 breastfeeding 624
 cardiac effects 327, 329, 330
 children and adolescents
 anxiety disorders 481–482, 482
 autism spectrum disorders 506
 depression 466–467
 discontinuation symptoms 311, 312
 driving ability 777
 ECT interactions 281
 epilepsy 692
 hepatic impairment 639
 HIV infection 681
 Huntington's disease 706
 hyperprolactinaemia and 337
 learning disabilities 701
 minimum effective dose 262
 multiple sclerosis 710
 obsessive compulsive disorder 364
 older people 295, 588
 overdose 770
 panic disorder 362
 Parkinson's disease 715
 pregnancy 607–608
 psychotic depression 278
 PTSD 363
 refractory depression 206, 267, 268, 269, 271, 275
 renal impairment 653
 sexual adverse effects 344
 social phobia 366
 surgical patients 782
 switching to/from 317–319
see also desvenlafaxine
- venous thromboembolism
 antipsychotic-associated 153–155, 154
 clozapine-associated 180, 184
- verapamil 224, 755
- vigabatrin 690, 809
- vilazodone
 adverse effects 358
 cardiac effects 327, 329
 epilepsy 692
 minimum effective dose 262
 overdose 770
 sexual adverse effects 344
- violent behaviour 54–64
see also acutely disturbed behaviour;
 aggressive behaviour
- vitamin A, multiple sclerosis 710
- vitamin B₁ *see* thiamine
- vitamin B₆ 96
- vitamin B₁₂ 544
- vitamin B complex, alcohol withdrawal 395–396, 396
- vitamin D 465, 544
- vitamin E 544, 551
- vitamin supplements
 alcohol withdrawal 395–396, 396
 anorexia nervosa 668
 dementia 544
- vortioxetine
 adverse effects 358
 breastfeeding 624
 cardiac effects 327, 329
 depression 264, 306

860 Index

- vortioxetine (*cont'd*)
 diabetes mellitus 340
 discontinuation 310, 312
 epilepsy 692
 generalised anxiety disorder 361
 hyperprolactinaemia and 337
 hyponatraemia 333
 minimum effective dose 262
 older people 294, 588
 overdose 771
 post-stroke depression 290
 renal impairment 653
 sexual adverse effects 344
 switching to/from 317–319
- warfarin
 carbamazepine interactions 223
 SSRIs and 348, 348–349
 valproate interaction 217
 water intoxication 134, 135
- weight gain
 anticonvulsant-induced 690
 antidepressant-induced 294–295, 340
 antipsychotic-induced 39, 97–103
 dyslipidaemia risk 119
 hypertension risk 130–131
 relative risk 97, 97
 switching agents 99, 151
 treatment 99–103, 100–101
 young people 471, 473, 474
- clozapine-induced 175
 psychotropic-associated, after bariatric surgery 726
 valproate-induced 216
- weight monitoring
 antipsychotic-treated patients 37, 99
 bipolar disorder 233
 children and adolescents 471, 472
 renal impairment 647
- Wernicke's encephalopathy 395–396, 396
- white cell count (WCC)
 carbamazepine-treated patients 222
 lithium–clozapine combination 198–199, 200
see also neutropenia
 women of child-bearing age
- carbamazepine therapy 223
 lithium therapy 209
 prescribing principles 601
 valproate therapy 217
see also breastfeeding; pregnancy; teratogenicity
- yohimbine 144, 144, 345
 yokukansan 165
 young people *see* children and adolescents
- zaleplon 629, 777
 zidovudine 685, 686
 zinc 274, 710
- ziprasidone
 adverse effects 39
 bariatric surgery 724
 bipolar disorder 226
 blood lipid changes 119, 120
 breastfeeding 626
 catatonia 109, 110
 children and adolescents 474
 autism spectrum disorders 508
 psychosis 478
 rapid tranquillisation 522
 delirium 675
 depression 274
 diabetes and 124–125, 126
 epilepsy 692
 equivalent dose 15
 hypertension risk 131
 mania 237
 maximum licensed dose 13
 neuroleptic malignant syndrome 105
 overdose 771
 Parkinson's disease 716
 pregnancy 604
 rapid tranquillisation 54, 522
 renal impairment 650
 schizophrenia
 dose–response effects 16, 49
 minimum effective dose 9
 monitoring physical health 37
 refractory 159, 165
 relative efficacy 5
 switching to 51, 99
- tic disorders 514
 weight gain risk 97
- zolmitriptan, akathisia 96
- zolpidem
 breastfeeding 629
 carbamazepine interaction 223
 catatonia/stupor 108
 disinhibitory reactions 381
 driving ability and 777
 older people 592
 overdose 772
 post-mortem blood concentrations 743
 pregnancy 612
 renal impairment 655
- zonisamide
 alcohol dependence 400
 antipsychotic-induced weight gain 101
 bipolar depression 245
 eating disorders 669
 psychiatric adverse effects 690, 809
- zopiclone
 breastfeeding 629
 driving ability and 777
 hepatic impairment 641
 older people 592
 opioid withdrawal 420
 overdose 772
 renal impairment 655, 656
- zotepine 165, 693
- zuclopenthixol
 acetate, rapid tranquillisation 57–59, 59
 adverse effects 39
 breastfeeding 626
 dementia 573
 depot 67, 68
 equivalent dose 14
 intramuscular injection site 821
 maximum licensed dose 12
 pharmacokinetics 71
 equivalent dose 14
 hepatic impairment 637
 learning disabilities 701
 maximum licensed dose 12
 older people 590
 renal impairment 650
 smoking status and 751

The Maudsley®

Prescribing Guidelines in Psychiatry

14TH EDITION

David M. Taylor
Thomas R. E. Barnes
Allan H. Young

WILEY Blackwell

The Maudsley® Prescribing Guidelines in Psychiatry

14th Edition

**David M. Taylor, BSc, MSc, PhD, FFRPS, FRPharmS, FRCP_{Edin},
FRCPsych_{Hon}**

Director of Pharmacy and Pathology, Maudsley Hospital and
Professor of Psychopharmacology, King's College, London, UK

Thomas R. E. Barnes, MBBS, MD, FRCPsych, DSc

Emeritus Professor of Clinical Psychiatry at Imperial College London and
joint head of the Prescribing Observatory for Mental Health at the
Royal College of Psychiatrists' Centre for Quality Improvement, London, UK

Allan H. Young, MB, ChB, MPhil, PhD, FRCP, FRCPsych

Chair of Mood Disorders and Director of the Centre for Affective Disorders in the
Department of Psychological Medicine in the Institute of Psychiatry, Psychology and Neuroscience at King's College,
London, UK

WILEY Blackwell

This edition first published 2021
© 2021 David M. Taylor

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, except as permitted by law. Advice on how to obtain permission to reuse material from this title is available at <http://www.wiley.com/go/permissions>.

The right of David M. Taylor, Thomas R. E. Barnes, and Allan H. Young to be identified as the author(s) of this work has been asserted in accordance with law.

Registered Office(s)

John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 111 River Street, Hoboken, NJ 07030, USA
John Wiley & Sons Ltd, The Atrium, Southern Gate, Chichester, West Sussex, PO19 8SQ, UK

Editorial Office

The Atrium, Southern Gate, Chichester, West Sussex, PO19 8SQ, UK

For details of our global editorial offices, customer services, and more information about Wiley products visit us at www.wiley.com.

Wiley also publishes its books in a variety of electronic formats and by print-on-demand. Some content that appears in standard print versions of this book may not be available in other formats.

Limit of Liability/Disclaimer of Warranty

The contents of this work are intended to further general scientific research, understanding, and discussion only and are not intended and should not be relied upon as recommending or promoting scientific method, diagnosis, or treatment by physicians for any particular patient. In view of ongoing research, equipment modifications, changes in governmental regulations, and the constant flow of information relating to the use of medicines, equipment, and devices, the reader is urged to review and evaluate the information provided in the package insert or instructions for each medicine, equipment, or device for, among other things, any changes in the instructions or indication of usage and for added warnings and precautions. While the publisher and authors have used their best efforts in preparing this work, they make no representations or warranties with respect to the accuracy or completeness of the contents of this work and specifically disclaim all warranties, including without limitation any implied warranties of merchantability or fitness for a particular purpose. No warranty may be created or extended by sales representatives, written sales materials or promotional statements for this work. The fact that an organization, website, or product is referred to in this work as a citation and/or potential source of further information does not mean that the publisher and authors endorse the information or services the organization, website, or product may provide or recommendations it may make. This work is sold with the understanding that the publisher is not engaged in rendering professional services. The advice and strategies contained herein may not be suitable for your situation. You should consult with a specialist where appropriate. Further, readers should be aware that websites listed in this work may have changed or disappeared between when this work was written and when it is read. Neither the publisher nor authors shall be liable for any loss of profit or any other commercial damages, including but not limited to special, incidental, consequential, or other damages.

A catalogue record for this book is available from the Library of Congress

Paperback ISBN: 9781119772224; ePDF ISBN: 9781119772248; epub ISBN: 9781119772231

Cover design by Wiley

Set in 10/12pt Sabon by Integra Software Services, Pondicherry, India

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

Contents

Preface	xi
Acknowledgments	xii
Notes on using <i>The Maudsley® Prescribing Guidelines in Psychiatry</i>	xiii
List of abbreviations	xv
Part 1 Drug treatment of major psychiatric conditions	1
Chapter 1 Schizophrenia and related psychoses	3
ANTIPSYCHOTIC DRUGS	3
General introduction	3
Antipsychotics – general principles of prescribing	8
Antipsychotics – minimum effective doses	9
Antipsychotics – quick reference for licensed maximum doses	12
Antipsychotics – equivalent doses	14
High-dose antipsychotics: prescribing and monitoring	16
Combined antipsychotics (antipsychotic polypharmacy)	20
Antipsychotic prophylaxis	25
Negative symptoms	32
Monitoring	38
Relative adverse effects – a rough guide	41
Treatment algorithms for schizophrenia	42
First-generation antipsychotics – place in therapy	46
NICE guidelines for the treatment of schizophrenia	48
Antipsychotic response – to increase the dose, to switch, to add or just wait – what is the right move?	51
Acutely disturbed or violent behaviour	56
Antipsychotic depots/long-acting injections (LAIs)	67
Depot/LAI antipsychotics – pharmacokinetics	72
Management of patients on long-term depots/LAIs	74
Aripiprazole long-acting injection	77
Olanzapine long-acting injection	80
Paliperidone palmitate long-acting injection	83
Risperidone long-acting injection	87
Risperidone subcutaneous long-acting injection	91

Newer long-acting injectable antipsychotic preparations	92
Penfluridol weekly	95
Electroconvulsive therapy and psychosis	96
Omega-3 fatty acid (fish oils) in schizophrenia	99
Stopping antipsychotics	102
ANTIPSYCHOTIC ADVERSE EFFECTS	109
Extrapyramidal symptoms	109
Akathisia	114
Treatment of tardive dyskinesia	117
Antipsychotic-induced weight gain	123
Treatment of antipsychotic-induced weight gain	125
Neuroleptic malignant syndrome	131
Catatonia	135
ECG changes – QT prolongation	141
Effect of antipsychotic medications on plasma lipids	149
Diabetes and impaired glucose tolerance	153
Blood pressure changes with antipsychotics	160
Hyponatraemia in psychosis	164
Hyperprolactinaemia	168
Sexual dysfunction	172
Pneumonia	181
Switching antipsychotics	183
Venous thromboembolism	187
REFRACTORY SCHIZOPHRENIA AND CLOZAPINE	190
Clozapine initiation schedule	190
Intramuscular clozapine	192
Optimising clozapine treatment	193
Alternatives to clozapine	198
Re-starting clozapine after a break in treatment	207
Guidelines for the initiation of clozapine for patients based in the community	208
CLOZAPINE ADVERSE EFFECTS	212
Clozapine: common adverse effects	212
Clozapine: uncommon or unusual adverse effects	217
Clozapine: serious haematological and cardiovascular adverse effects	222
Clozapine-induced hypersalivation	227
Clozapine-induced gastrointestinal hypomotility (CIGH)	232
Clozapine, neutropenia and lithium	236
Clozapine and chemotherapy	242
Clozapine-genetic testing for clozapine treatment	244
Chapter2 Bipolar disorder	247
Lithium	247
Valproate	257
Carbamazepine	264
Antipsychotics in bipolar disorder	269
Antipsychotic long-acting injections in bipolar disorder	274
Physical monitoring for people with bipolar disorder	277
Treatment of acute mania or hypomania	279
Rapid cycling bipolar affective disorder	285

Bipolar depression	288
Prophylaxis in bipolar disorder	296
Stopping lithium and mood stabilisers	301
Chapter 3 Depression and anxiety disorders	305
Introduction to Depression	305
Official guidance on the treatment of depression	305
Antidepressants – general overview	307
Recognised minimum effective doses of antidepressants	312
Drug treatment of depression	314
Management of treatment-resistant depression – first choice	317
Management of treatment-resistant depression – second choice	321
Treatment-resistant depression – other reported treatments	323
Ketamine	328
Psychotic depression	332
Switching antidepressants	336
Antidepressant withdrawal symptoms	343
Stopping antidepressants	348
Electroconvulsive therapy (ECT) and psychotropic drugs	353
Psychostimulants in depression	357
Post-stroke depression	362
Antidepressants – alternative routes of administration	366
Antidepressant prophylaxis	374
Drug interactions with antidepressants	378
Cardiac effects of antidepressants – summary	383
Antidepressant-induced arrhythmia	389
Antidepressant-induced hyponatraemia	393
Antidepressants and hyperprolactinaemia	398
Antidepressants and diabetes mellitus	401
Antidepressants and sexual dysfunction	404
SSRIs and bleeding	409
St. John's Wort	417
Antidepressants: relative adverse effects – a rough guide	421
Anxiety spectrum disorders	423
Benzodiazepines in the treatment of psychiatric disorders	436
Benzodiazepines, z-drugs and gabapentinoids: dependence, detoxification and discontinuation	440
Benzodiazepines and disinhibition	448
Chapter 4 Addictions and substance misuse	451
Introduction	451
Alcohol dependence	453
Alcohol withdrawal delirium – delirium tremens	472
Opioid dependence	474
Nicotine and smoking cessation	503
Pharmacological treatment of dependence on stimulants	511
GHB and GBL dependence	514
Benzodiazepine misuse	517
Synthetic cannabinoid receptor agonists (SCRAs)	520

	Drug-induced acute behavioural disturbance (ABD) in acute admissions	524
	Interactions between 'street drugs' and prescribed psychotropic drugs	526
	Drugs of misuse – a summary	530
	Substance misuse in pregnancy	535
Part 2	Drug treatment of special patient groups	537
Chapter 5	Children and adolescents	539
	Principles of prescribing practice in childhood and adolescence	539
	Depression in children and adolescents	541
	Bipolar illness in children and adolescents	547
	Psychosis in children and adolescents	554
	Anxiety disorders in children and adolescents	556
	Obsessive compulsive disorder (OCD) and body dysmorphic disorder (BDD) in children and adolescents	561
	Post-traumatic stress disorder in children and adolescents	567
	Attention deficit hyperactivity disorder	569
	Autism Spectrum Disorder	578
	Tics and Tourette syndrome	587
	Melatonin in the treatment of insomnia in children and adolescents	593
	Rapid tranquillisation (RT) in children and adolescents	596
	Doses of commonly used psychotropic drugs in children and adolescents	599
Chapter 6	Prescribing in older people	601
	General principles	601
	Dementia	604
	Safer prescribing for physical conditions in dementia	631
	Management of behavioural and psychological symptoms of dementia (BPSD)	644
	A guide to medication doses of commonly used psychotropics in older adults	657
	Covert administration of medicines within food and drink	667
	Treatment of depression in older people	673
Chapter 7	Pregnancy and breastfeeding	679
	Drug choice in pregnancy	679
	What to include in discussions with pregnant women	681
	Breastfeeding	702
Chapter 8	Hepatic and renal impairment	723
	Hepatic impairment	723
	Renal impairment	735
Part 3	Prescribing in specialist conditions	755
Chapter 9	Drug treatment of other psychiatric conditions	757
	Borderline personality disorder (BPD)	757
	Eating disorders	761
	Delirium	767

Chapter 10 Drug treatment of psychiatric symptoms occurring in the context of other disorders	777
General principles of prescribing in HIV	777
Epilepsy	785
22q11.2 deletion syndrome	794
Learning disabilities	797
Huntington's disease – pharmacological treatment	803
Multiple sclerosis	808
Parkinson's disease	814
Atrial fibrillation – using psychotropics	819
Recommendations – psychotropics in AF	820
Psychotropics in bariatric surgery	822
Prescribing in patients with psychiatric illness at the end of life	829
Part 4 Other aspects of psychotropic drug use	831
Chapter 11 Pharmacokinetics	833
Plasma level monitoring of psychotropic drugs	833
Interpreting postmortem blood concentrations	847
Acting on clozapine plasma concentration results	849
Psychotropics and cytochrome (CYP) function	851
Smoking and psychotropic drugs	856
Drug interactions with alcohol	860
Chapter 12 Other substances	865
Caffeine	865
Nicotine	871
Chapter 13 Psychotropic drugs in special conditions	875
Psychotropics in overdose	875
Driving and psychotropic medicines	883
Psychotropics and surgery	889
Chapter 14 Miscellany	897
Enhancing medication adherence	897
Re-starting psychotropic medications after a period of non-compliance	905
Biochemical and haematological effects of psychotropics	907
Summary of psychiatric side effects of non-psychotropics	917
Prescribing drugs outside their licensed indications ('off-label' prescribing or unapproved use of approved drugs)	923
Examples of acceptable use of drugs outside their product licences/labels	925
The Mental Health Act in England and Wales	927
Site of administration of intramuscular injections	932
Intravenous formulations in psychiatry	937
Index	943

Acutely disturbed or violent behaviour

Acute behavioural disturbance can occur in the context of psychiatric illness, physical illness, substance abuse or personality disorder. Psychotic symptoms are common and the patient may be aggressive towards others secondary to persecutory delusions or auditory, visual or tactile hallucinations. This section deals with behavioural disturbance in the context of severe mental illness. Excited/agitated delirium caused by illicit substance misuse is dealt with in Chapter 9.

The clinical practice of rapid tranquillisation (RT) is used when appropriate psychological and behavioural approaches have failed to de-escalate acutely disturbed behaviour. It is, essentially, a treatment of last resort. Patients who require RT are often too disturbed to give informed consent and therefore participate in randomised controlled trials (RCTs), but with the use of a number of creative methodologies, the evidence base with respect to the efficacy and tolerability of pharmacological strategies has grown substantially in recent years. A comprehensive and up-to-date consensus guideline has been published¹ and, more recently, a systematic review and meta-analysis.²

Oral/inhaled treatment

Several studies supporting the efficacy of oral SGAs have been conducted.³⁻⁶ The level of behavioural disturbance exhibited by the patients in these studies was moderate at most, and all subjects accepted oral treatment (this degree of compliance would be unusual in clinical practice). Patients recruited to these studies received the SGA as antipsychotic monotherapy. The efficacy and safety of adding a second antipsychotic as a 'when necessary' treatment has not been explicitly tested in formal RCTs.

A single-dose RCT showed sublingual asenapine to be more effective than placebo for acute agitation.⁷ The efficacy of inhaled loxapine in behavioural disturbance that is moderate in severity is also supported by RCTs⁸⁻¹⁰ and case series.^{11,12} The use of this preparation requires the co-operation of the patient, and bronchospasm is an established but rare side effect.

Parenteral treatment

Large, placebo-controlled RCTs support the efficacy of IM preparations of olanzapine, ziprasidone and aripiprazole. When considered together, these trials suggested that IM olanzapine is more effective than IM haloperidol which in turn is more effective than IM aripiprazole, which itself is more effective than ziprasidone.^{2,13} The level of behavioural disturbance in these studies was moderate at most and differences between treatments small.

A large observational study supports the efficacy and tolerability of IM olanzapine in clinical emergencies (where disturbance was severe).¹⁴ A study comparing IM haloperidol with a combination of IM midazolam and IM haloperidol found the combination more effective than haloperidol alone for controlling agitation in palliative care patients.¹⁵

Several RCTs have investigated the effectiveness of parenteral medication in 'real-life' acutely disturbed patients. Overall:

- Compared with IV midazolam alone, a combination of IV olanzapine or IV droperidol with IV midazolam was more rapidly effective and resulted in fewer subsequent doses of medication being required.¹⁶
- IM midazolam 7.5–15mg was more rapidly sedating than a combination of haloperidol 5–10mg and promethazine 50mg (TREC 1).¹⁷
- Olanzapine 10mg was as effective as a combination of haloperidol 10mg and promethazine 25–50mg in the short term, but the effect did not last as long (TREC 4).¹⁸
- A combination of haloperidol 5–10mg and promethazine 50mg was more effective and better tolerated than haloperidol 5–10mg alone (6% of patients had an acute dystonic reaction) (TREC 3).¹⁹
- A combination of haloperidol 10mg and promethazine 25–50mg was more effective than lorazepam 4mg (TREC 2).²⁰
- A combination of IM chlorpromazine 100mg, haloperidol 5mg and promethazine 25mg was no better than IM haloperidol 5mg plus promethazine 25mg (TREC Lebanon).²¹
- A combination of IV midazolam and IV droperidol was more rapidly sedating than either IV droperidol or IV olanzapine alone. Fewer patients in the midazolam-droperidol group required additional medication doses to achieve sedation.²²
- IM olanzapine was more effective than IM aripiprazole in the treatment of agitation in schizophrenia in the short term (at 2 hours), but there was no significant difference between treatments at 24 hours.²³
- IM midazolam 5mg was faster acting and more effective than olanzapine 10mg, ziprasidone 20mg and both 5 and 10mg haloperidol in a large (n = 737) Emergency Room study.²⁴
- In an open-label study, the combination of IM haloperidol and IM lorazepam was found to be similar in efficacy to IM olanzapine.²⁵
- IM droperidol and IM haloperidol were equally effective.²⁶

Cochrane concluded that haloperidol alone is effective in the management of acute behavioural disturbance but poorly tolerated, and that co-administration of promethazine (but not lorazepam) improves tolerability.^{27,28} However, NICE considers the evidence relating to the use of promethazine for this purpose to be inconclusive.²⁹ When assessing haloperidol plus promethazine, Cochrane concluded that the combination is effective for use in patients who are aggressive due to psychosis, and its use is based on good evidence. The resumption of aggression and need for further injections was more likely with olanzapine than with the haloperidol–promethazine combination. The authors also stated that ‘haloperidol used on its own without something to offset its frequent and serious adverse effects does seem difficult to justify’.³⁰ Cochrane concluded that available data for aripiprazole are rather poor. This evidence suggests that aripiprazole is more effective than placebo and haloperidol alone, but not olanzapine. However, caution is advised when generalising these results to real-world practice.³¹

A systematic review and meta-analysis of IM olanzapine for agitation found IM olanzapine and IM haloperidol to be equally effective, but IM olanzapine was associated with a lower incidence of EPSEs.³² Cochrane suggests that droperidol is effective and may be used to control people with very disturbed and aggressive behaviours caused by psychosis.³³ Droperidol is seeing a resurgence in use in some countries having

become available again (its initial withdrawal was voluntary, so reintroduction is not prohibited).

In a meta-analysis that examined the tolerability of IM antipsychotics when used for the treatment of agitation, the incidence of acute dystonia with haloperidol was reported to be 5%, with SGAs performing considerably better.³⁴ Acute EPS may adversely affect longer-term compliance.³⁵ In addition, the formal prescribing information in most countries for haloperidol calls for a pre-treatment ECG^{36,37} and recommends that concomitant antipsychotics are not prescribed. The mean increase in QTc after 10mg IM haloperidol can be up to 15ms, but the range is wide.³⁸

Note that promethazine may inhibit the metabolism of haloperidol;³⁹ a pharmacokinetic interaction that is potentially clinically significant given the potential of haloperidol to prolong QTc. While this is unlikely to be problematic if a single dose is administered, repeat dosing may confer risk.

Droperidol is also associated with QT changes (the reason for its past withdrawal). In an observational study set in hospital emergency departments, of the 1009 patients administered parenteral droperidol only 13 patients (1.28%) had an abnormal QT recorded after dose administration. In 7 of these cases another contributory factor was identified. There were no cases of torsades de pointes.²⁶ In all RT studies of IM droperidol, the overall rate of QT > 500ms was less than 2%.²

Intravenous treatment is now rarely used in RT but where benefits are thought to outweigh risks it may be considered as a last resort. A small study comparing high dose IV haloperidol with IV diazepam found both drugs to be effective at 24 hours.⁴⁰ Two large observational studies have examined the safety of IV olanzapine when used in the emergency department. The indications for its use varied: agitation being the most common. In one study,⁴¹ in the group treated for agitation ($n = 265$), over a third of patients required an additional sedative dose after the initial IV olanzapine dose. Hypoxia was reported in 17.7% of cases and supplemental oxygen was used in 20.4% cases. Six patients required intubation (two of these because of olanzapine treatment). In the other study,⁴² IV olanzapine ($n = 295$) was compared with IM olanzapine ($n = 489$). Additional doses were not required for 81% of patients in the IV group and 84% of patients in the IM group. Respiratory depression was more commonly observed in the group receiving IV olanzapine. Five patients in the IM group and two in the IV group required intubation.

In an acute psychiatric setting, high dose sedation (defined as a dose of more than 10mg of haloperidol, droperidol or midazolam) was not more effective than lower doses but was associated with more adverse effects (hypotension and oxygen desaturation).⁴³ Consistent with this, a small RCT supports the efficacy of low dose haloperidol, although both efficacy and tolerability were superior when midazolam was co-prescribed.⁴⁴ These data broadly support the use of standard doses in clinical emergencies, but the need for further physical restraint after lower doses needs to be considered.

A small observational study supports the effectiveness of buccal midazolam in a PICU setting.⁴⁵ Parenteral administration of midazolam, particularly in higher doses, may cause over-sedation accompanied by respiratory depression.⁴⁶ Lorazepam IM is an established treatment and TREC 2²⁰ supports its efficacy, although combining all results from the TREC studies suggests midazolam 7.5–15mg is probably more effective. A Cochrane review of benzodiazepines for psychosis-induced aggression and agitation

concluded that most trials were too small to highlight differences in either positive or negative effects and whilst adding a benzodiazepine to another drug may not be clearly advantageous it may lead to unnecessary side effects.⁴⁷

With respect to those who are behaviourally disturbed secondary to acute intoxication with alcohol or illicit drugs, there are fewer data to guide practice. A large observational study of IV sedation in patients intoxicated with alcohol found that combination treatment (most commonly haloperidol 5mg and lorazepam 2mg) was more effective and reduced the need for subsequent sedation than either drug given alone.⁴⁸ A case series ($N = 59$) of patients who received modest doses of oral, IM or IV haloperidol to manage behavioural disturbance in the context of PCP consumption, reported that haloperidol was effective and well tolerated (one case each of mild hypotension and mild hypoxia).⁴⁹ A section on the treatment of agitated delirium is included in Chapter 9.

Ketamine is widely used for agitation from hospital emergency departments. In a systematic review of 18 studies of ketamine,⁵⁰ a mean dose of 315mg IM ketamine achieved adequate sedation in an average of 7.2 minutes. Over 30% of 650 patients were eventually intubated and more than 1% experienced laryngospasm. Ketamine is probably not an option for RT where facilities for intubation are not available.

Overall the current broad consensus is that midazolam and droperidol are the fastest-acting single drug, intramuscular treatments⁵¹ and that haloperidol alone should be avoided and perhaps abandoned completely even in combination.⁵² Second-line treatments are combinations of benzodiazepines and antipsychotics and third line would probably now be intravenous benzodiazepines and then ketamine (2–5mg/kg IM), assuming intubation facilities are available.

Practical measures

Plans for the management of individual patients should ideally be made in advance. The aim is to prevent disturbed behaviour and reduce risk of violence. Nursing interventions (de-escalation, time out, seclusion⁵³), increased nursing levels, transfer of the patient to a psychiatric intensive care unit (PICU) and pharmacological management are options that may be employed. Care should be taken to avoid combinations and high cumulative doses of antipsychotic drugs. The monitoring of routine physical observations after RT is essential. Note that RT is often viewed as punitive by patients. There is little research into the patient experience of RT.

The aims of RT are threefold:

- To reduce suffering for the patient: psychological or physical (through self-harm or accidents).
- To reduce risk of harm to others by maintaining a safe environment.
- To do no harm (by prescribing safe regimes and monitoring physical health).

Note: Despite the need for rapid and effective treatment, concomitant use of two or more antipsychotics (antipsychotic polypharmacy) should be avoided on the basis of risk associated with QT prolongation (common to almost all antipsychotics). This is a particularly important consideration in RT where the patient's physical state predisposes to cardiac arrhythmia.

Zuclopenthixol acetate

Zuclopenthixol acetate (ZA) is widely used in the UK and elsewhere in Europe and is best known by its trade name Acuphase. Zuclopenthixol itself is a thioxanthene dopamine antagonist first introduced in the early 1960s. ZA is not a rapidly tranquillising agent. Its elimination half-life is around 20 hours. Intramuscular injection of zuclopenthixol base results in rapid absorption and a duration of action of 12–24 hours. By slowing absorption after IM injection, the biological half-life (and so duration of action) becomes dependent on the rate of release from the IM reservoir. This can be achieved by esterification of the zuclopenthixol molecule; the rate of release being broadly proportion to the length of the ester carbon chain. Thus, zuclopenthixol decanoate is slow to act but very long-acting as a result of retarded release after IM injection. Zuclopenthixol acetate (with eight carbon atoms fewer) would be expected to provide relatively prompt release but with an intermediate duration of action. The intention of the manufacturers was that the use of ZA would obviate the need for repeated IM injections in disturbed patients.

An initial pharmacokinetic study of ZA included 19 patients ‘in whom calming effect by parenteral neuroleptic was considered necessary’.⁵⁴ Zuclopenthixol was detectable in the plasma after 1–2 hours but did not reach peak concentrations until around 36 hours after dosing. At 72 hours, plasma levels were around a third of those at 36 hours. The clinical effect of ZA was not rapid – 10 of 17 patients exhibited minimal or no change in psychotic symptoms at 4 hours. Sedation was evident at 4 hours, but it had effectively abated by 72 hours.

A follow-up study by the same research group⁵⁵ examined more closely the clinical effects of ZA in 83 patients. The authors concluded that ZA produced ‘pronounced and rapid reduction in psychotic symptoms’. In fact, psychotic symptoms were first assessed only after 24 hours and so a claim of rapid effect is not reasonably supported. Sedative effects were measured after two hours when a statistically significant effect was observed – at baseline mean sedation score was 0.0 (0 = no sign of sedation) and at 2 hours 0.6 (1 = slightly sedated). Maximum sedation was observed at 8 hours (mean score 2.2; 2 = moderately sedated). At 72 hours mean score was 1.1. Dystonia and rigidity were the most commonly reported adverse effects.

Two independently conducted open studies, produced similar results – a slow onset of effect peaking at 24 hours and still being evident at 72 hours.^{56,57} The first UK study was reported in 1990.⁵⁸ In the trial, a significant reduction in psychosis score was first evident at 8 hours and scores continued to fall until the last measurement at 72 hours. Of 25 patients assessed only 4 showed signs of tranquillisation at 1 hour (19 at 2 hours and 22 at 24 hours).

A comparative trial of ZA⁵⁹ examined its effects and those of IM/oral haloperidol and IM/oral zuclopenthixol base (in multiple doses over 6 days). The two non-ester, IM/oral preparations produced a greater degree of sedation at 2 hours than did ZA, but the effect of ZA and zuclopenthixol was more sustained than with haloperidol over 144 hours (although patients received more zuclopenthixol doses). No clear differences between treatments were detected, with the exception of the slow onset of effect of ZA. The number of doses given varied substantially: ZA 1–4; haloperidol 1–26 and zuclopenthixol 1–22. This is the key (and perhaps unique) advantage of ZA – it reduces the

need for repeat doses in acute psychosis. Indeed this was the principal finding of the first double-blind study of ZA.⁶⁰ Participants were given either ZA or haloperidol IM and assessed over three days. Changes in BPRS and CGI scores were near identical on each daily assessment. However, only 1 of 23 ZA patients required a second injection, whereas 7 of 21 required a repeat dose of haloperidol. Speed of onset was not examined. Similar findings were reported by Thai researchers comparing the same treatments,⁶¹ and in three other studies of moderate size ($n = 44$,⁶² $n = 40$,⁶³ $n = 50$).⁶⁴ In each study, the timing of assessments was such that time to onset of effect could not be determined.

A Cochrane review⁶⁵ included all of the above comparative studies as well as three further studies^{66–68} for which we were unable to obtain full details. The Cochrane authors concluded that all studies were methodically flawed and poorly reported and that ZA did not appear to have a ‘rapid onset of action’. They noted that ZA was probably no less effective than other treatments and that its use might ‘result in less numerous coercive injections’.

Overall, the utility of ZA in rapid tranquillisation is limited by a somewhat delayed onset of both sedative and antipsychotic actions. Sedation may be apparent in a minority of patients after 2–4 hours, but antipsychotic action is evident only after 8 hours. If ZA is given to a restrained patient, their behaviour on release from restraint is likely to be unchanged and will remain as such for several hours. ZA has a role in reducing the number of restraints for IM injection, but it has no role in rapid tranquillisation.

Guidelines for the use of zuclopenthixol acetate (Acuphase)

Zuclopenthixol acetate (ZA) is not a rapidly tranquillising agent. It should be used only after an acutely psychotic patient has required *repeated* injections of short-acting antipsychotic drugs such as haloperidol or olanzapine, or sedative drugs such as lorazepam. It is perhaps best reserved for those few patients who have a prior history of good response to Acuphase.

ZA should be given only when enough time has elapsed to assess the full response to previously injected drugs: allow 15 minutes after IV injections; 60 minutes after IM.

ZA should never be administered for rapid tranquillisation (onset of effect is too slow) or to a patient who is physically resistant (risk of intravasation and oil embolus) or to neuroleptic-naïve patients (risk of prolonged EPSE).

Rapid tranquillisation summary

In an emergency situation – Assess if there may be a medical cause.⁶⁹ Optimise regular prescription. The aim of pharmacological treatment is to calm the patient but not to oversedate. Note: lower doses should be used for children, adolescents and older adults. Patients' levels of consciousness and physical health should be monitored after administration of parenteral medication (see protocol)

Step Intervention

1 De-escalation, time out, placement, etc., as appropriate

2 Offer oral treatment

If patient is prescribed a regular antipsychotic:

Lorazepam 1–2mg

Promethazine 25–50mg

Monotherapy with **buccal midazolam** may avoid the need for IM treatment. Dose: 10mg
Note that this preparation is unlicensed

If patient is not already taking a regular oral or depot antipsychotic:

■ **Olanzapine** 10mg or

■ **Risperidone** 1–2mg or

■ **Quetiapine** 50–100mg or

■ **Haloperidol** 5mg (best with promethazine 25mg). Note that the EU SPC for haloperidol recommends: A pre-treatment ECG and to avoid concomitant antipsychotics

■ **Inhaled loxapine** 10mg Note that use of this preparation requires the co-operation of the patient, and that bronchospasm is a rare side effect (have a salbutamol inhaler to hand).

Repeat after 45–60 minutes, if necessary. Consider combining sedative and antipsychotic treatment. Go to step 3 if two doses fail or sooner if the patient is placing themselves or others at significant risk.

3 Consider IM treatment

Lorazepam 2mg^{ab}

Have flumazenil to hand in case of benzodiazepine-induced respiratory depression.

Promethazine 50mg^c

IM promethazine is a useful option in a benzodiazepine-tolerant patient.

Olanzapine 10mg^d

IM olanzapine should NOT be combined with an IM benzodiazepine, particularly if alcohol has been consumed.⁷⁰

Aripiprazole 9.75mg

Less hypotension than olanzapine, but less effective^{5,13,71}

Haloperidol 5mg

Haloperidol should be the last drug considered

■ The incidence of acute dystonia is high; combine with IM promethazine and ensure IM procyclidine is available

■ Pre-treatment ECG required

Repeat after 30–60 minutes if insufficient effect. Combinations of haloperidol and lorazepam or haloperidol and promethazine may be considered if single drug treatment fails. Drugs must not be mixed in the same syringe. IM olanzapine must never be combined with IM benzodiazepine.

4 Consider IV treatment

■ **Diazepam** 10mg over at least 2 minutes^{5b}

■ Repeat after 5–10 minutes if insufficient effect (up to 3 times)

■ Have flumazenil to hand

5 Seek expert advice^f

Consider transfer to medical unit for administration of **IM ketamine**

Notes

- Carefully check administration and dilution instructions, which differ between manufacturers. Many centres use 4mg. An alternative is IM midazolam 5–15mg. 5mg is usually sufficient. The risk of respiratory depression is dose-related with both drugs but generally greater with midazolam.
- Caution in the very young and elderly and those with pre-existing brain damage or impulse control problems, as disinhibition reactions are more likely.⁷²

(Continued)

Rapid tranquillisation summary (Continued)

- c. Promethazine has a slow onset of action but is often an effective sedative. Dilution is not required before IM injection. May be repeated up to a maximum of 100mg/day. Wait 1–2 hours after injection to assess response. Note that promethazine alone has been reported, albeit very rarely, to cause NMS,⁷³ although it is an extremely weak dopamine antagonist. Note also the potential pharmacokinetic interaction between promethazine and haloperidol (reduced metabolism of haloperidol), which may confer risk if repeated doses of both are administered.
- d. Recommended by NICE only for moderate behavioural disturbance, but data from a large observational study also supports efficacy in clinical emergencies.
- e. Use Diazemuls to avoid injection site reactions. Lorazepam can also be given IV. IV therapy may be used instead of IM when a very rapid effect is required. IV therapy also ensures near-immediate delivery of the drug to its site of action and effectively avoids the danger of inadvertent accumulation of slowly absorbed IM doses. IV doses can be repeated after only 5–10 minutes if no effect is observed. Midazolam can also be used IV, but respiratory depression is common.¹
- f. Options at this point are limited, although the wider use of IM ketamine has improved the range of options available. IM amylobarbitone and IM paraldehyde have been used in the past but are used now only extremely rarely and are generally not easy to obtain. IV olanzapine, IV droperidol and IV haloperidol are possible but adverse effects are fairly common. ECT is also an option.

Rapid tranquillisation – physical monitoring

After any parenteral drug administration, monitor as follows:

- **Temperature**
- **Pulse**
- **Blood pressure**
- **Respiratory rate**

Every 15 minutes for 1 hour, and then hourly until the patient is ambulatory. Patients who refuse to have their vital signs monitored or who remain too behaviourally disturbed to be approached should be observed for signs/symptoms of pyrexia, hypoxia, hypotension, over-sedation and general physical well-being.

If the patient is asleep or **unconscious**, the continuous use of pulse oximetry to measure oxygen saturation is desirable. A nurse should remain with the patient until ambulatory.

ECG and haematological monitoring are also strongly recommended when parenteral antipsychotics are given, especially when higher doses are used.^{74,75} Hypokalaemia, stress and agitation place the patient at risk of cardiac arrhythmia⁷⁶ (see the section on 'QT prolongation'). ECG monitoring is formally recommended for all patients who receive haloperidol.

Remedial measures in rapid tranquillisation

Problem	Remedial measures
Acute dystonia (including oculogyric crises)	Give procyclidine 5–10mg IM or IV
Reduced respiratory rate (<10/min) or oxygen saturation (<90%)	Give oxygen, raise legs, ensure patient is not lying face down. Give flumazenil if benzodiazepine-induced respiratory depression suspected (see protocol) If induced by any other sedative agent: transfer to a medical bed and ventilate mechanically.

(Continued)

Remedial measures in rapid tranquillisation (<i>Continued</i>)	
Irregular or slow (<50/min) pulse	Refer to specialist medical care immediately.
Fall in blood pressure (>30mmHg orthostatic drop or < 50mmHg diastolic)	Have patient lie flat , tilt bed towards head. Monitor closely.
Increased temperature	(risk of NMS and perhaps arrhythmia). Check creatine kinase urgently.
Guidelines for the use of flumazenil	
Indication for use	If, after the administration of lorazepam, midazolam or diazepam, respiratory rate falls below 10/min.
Contraindications	Patients with epilepsy who have been receiving long-term benzodiazepines.
Caution	Dose should be carefully titrated in hepatic impairment.
Dose and route of administration	Initial: 200µg intravenously over 15 seconds – if required level of consciousness not achieved after 60 seconds, then, Subsequent dose: 100µg over 15 seconds.
Time before dose can be repeated	60 seconds.
Maximum dose	1mg in 24 hours (one initial dose and eight subsequent doses).
Side-effects	Patients may become agitated, anxious or fearful on awakening. Seizures may occur in regular benzodiazepine users.
Management	Side-effects usually subside.
Monitoring	
▪ What to monitor?	Respiratory rate
▪ How often?	Continuously until respiratory rate returns to baseline level. Flumazenil has a short half-life (much shorter than diazepam) and respiratory function may recover and then deteriorate again.
Note: <i>If respiratory rate does not return to normal or patient is not alert after initial doses given, assume that sedation is due to some other cause.</i>	

References

- Patel MX, et al. Joint BAP NAPICU evidence-based consensus guidelines for the clinical management of acute disturbance: de-escalation and rapid tranquillisation. *J Psychopharmacology* 2018; 32:601–640.
- Bak M, et al. The pharmacological management of agitated and aggressive behaviour: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Eur Psychiatry* 2019; 57:78–100.
- Currier GW, et al. Acute treatment of psychotic agitation: a randomized comparison of oral treatment with risperidone and lorazepam versus intramuscular treatment with haloperidol and lorazepam. *J Clin Psychiatry* 2004; 65:386–394.
- Ganesan S, et al. Effectiveness of quetiapine for the management of aggressive psychosis in the emergency psychiatric setting: a naturalistic uncontrolled trial. *Int J Psychiatry Clin Pract* 2005; 9:199–203.
- Simpson JR, Jr, et al. Impact of orally disintegrating olanzapine on use of intramuscular antipsychotics, seclusion, and restraint in an acute inpatient psychiatric setting. *J Clin Psychopharmacol* 2006; 26:333–335.
- Hsu WY, et al. Comparison of intramuscular olanzapine, orally disintegrating olanzapine tablets, oral risperidone solution, and intramuscular haloperidol in the management of acute agitation in an acute care psychiatric ward in Taiwan. *J Clin Psychopharmacol* 2010; 30:230–234.
- Pratts M, et al. A single-dose, randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial of sublingual asenapine for acute agitation. *Acta Psychiatr Scand* 2014; 130:61–68.
- Lesem MD, et al. Rapid acute treatment of agitation in individuals with schizophrenia: multicentre, randomised, placebo-controlled study of inhaled loxapine. *Br J Psychiatry* 2011; 198:51–58.

9. Kwentus J, et al. Rapid acute treatment of agitation in patients with bipolar I disorder: a multicenter, randomized, placebo-controlled clinical trial with inhaled loxapine. *BipolarDisord* 2012; 14:31–40.
10. Allen MH, et al. Efficacy and safety of loxapine for inhalation in the treatment of agitation in patients with schizophrenia: a randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. *J Clin Psychiatry* 2011; 72:1313–1321.
11. Kahl KG, et al. Inhaled loxapine for acute treatment of agitation in patients with borderline personality disorder: a case series. *J Clin Psychopharmacol* 2015; 35:741–743.
12. Roncero C, et al. Effectiveness of inhaled loxapine in dual-diagnosis patients: a case series. *Clin Neuropharmacol* 2016; 39:206–209.
13. Citrome L. Comparison of intramuscular ziprasidone, olanzapine, or aripiprazole for agitation: a quantitative review of efficacy and safety. *J Clin Psychiatry* 2007; 68:1876–1885.
14. Perrin E, et al. A prospective, observational study of the safety and effectiveness of intramuscular psychotropic treatment in acutely agitated patients with schizophrenia and bipolar mania. *Eur Psychiatry* 2012; 27:234–239.
15. Ferraz Goncalves JA, et al. Comparison of haloperidol alone and in combination with midazolam for the treatment of acute agitation in an inpatient palliative care service. *J Pain Palliat Care Pharmacother* 2016; 30:284–288.
16. Chan EW, et al. Intravenous droperidol or olanzapine as an adjunct to midazolam for the acutely agitated patient: a multicenter, randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled clinical trial. *Ann Emerg Med* 2013; 61:72–81.
17. TREC Collaborative Group. Rapid tranquillisation for agitated patients in emergency psychiatric rooms: a randomised trial of midazolam versus haloperidol plus promethazine. *BMJ* 2003; 327:708–713.
18. Raveendran NS, et al. Rapid tranquillisation in psychiatric emergency settings in India: pragmatic randomised controlled trial of intramuscular olanzapine versus intramuscular haloperidol plus promethazine. *BMJ* 2007; 335:865.
19. Huf G, et al. Rapid tranquillisation in psychiatric emergency settings in Brazil: pragmatic randomised controlled trial of intramuscular haloperidol versus intramuscular haloperidol plus promethazine. *BMJ* 2007; 335:869.
20. Alexander J, et al. Rapid tranquillisation of violent or agitated patients in a psychiatric emergency setting. Pragmatic randomised trial of intramuscular lorazepam v. haloperidol plus promethazine. *Br J Psychiatry* 2004; 185:63–69.
21. Dib JE, et al. Rapid tranquillisation in a psychiatric emergency hospital in Lebanon: TREC-Lebanon – a pragmatic randomised controlled trial of intramuscular haloperidol and promethazine v. intramuscular haloperidol, promethazine and chlorpromazine. *Psychol Med* 2021: [Epub ahead of print].
22. Taylor DM, et al. Midazolam-droperidol, droperidol, or olanzapine for acute agitation: a randomized clinical trial. *Ann Emerg Med* 2017; 69:318–326.e311.
23. Kittipeerachon M, et al. Intramuscular olanzapine versus intramuscular aripiprazole for the treatment of agitation in patients with schizophrenia: a pragmatic double-blind randomized trial. *Schizophr Res* 2016; 176:231–238.
24. Klein LR, et al. Intramuscular midazolam, olanzapine, ziprasidone, or haloperidol for treating acute agitation in the emergency department. *Ann Emerg Med* 2018; 72:374–385.
25. Huang CL, et al. Intramuscular olanzapine versus intramuscular haloperidol plus lorazepam for the treatment of acute schizophrenia with agitation: an open-label, randomized controlled trial. *J Formos Med Assoc* 2015; 114:438–445.
26. Calver L, et al. The safety and effectiveness of droperidol for sedation of acute behavioral disturbance in the emergency department. *Ann Emerg Med* 2015; 66:230–238.e231.
27. Powney MJ, et al. Haloperidol for psychosis-induced aggression or agitation (rapid tranquillisation). *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2012; 11:CD009377.
28. Ostinelli EG, et al. Haloperidol for psychosis-induced aggression or agitation (rapid tranquillisation). *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2017; 7:CD009377.
29. National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence. Violence and aggression: short-term management in mental health, health and community settings. NICE guideline [NG10]. 2015 (last checked December 2019); <https://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/NG10>.
30. Huf G, et al. Haloperidol plus promethazine for psychosis-induced aggression. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2016; 11:CD005146.
31. Ostinelli EG, et al. Aripiprazole (intramuscular) for psychosis-induced aggression or agitation (rapid tranquillisation). *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2018; 1:CD008074.
32. Kishi T, et al. Intramuscular olanzapine for agitated patients: a systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. *J Psychiatr Res* 2015; 68:198–209.
33. Khokhar MA, et al. Droperidol for psychosis-induced aggression or agitation. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2016; 12:CD002830.
34. Satterthwaite TD, et al. A meta-analysis of the risk of acute extrapyramidal symptoms with intramuscular antipsychotics for the treatment of agitation. *J Clin Psychiatry* 2008; 69:1869–1879.
35. Van Harten PN, et al. Acute dystonia induced by drug treatment. *Br Med J* 1999; 319:623–626.
36. Pharmacovigilance Working Party. Public assessment report on neuroleptics and cardiac safety, in particular QT prolongation, cardiac arrhythmias, ventricular tachycardia and torsades de pointes. 2006.
37. Janssen-Cilag Ltd. Summary of product characteristics. haldol decanoate. 2020; <https://www.medicines.org.uk/emc/product/968/smpe>.
38. Miceli JJ, et al. Effects of high-dose ziprasidone and haloperidol on the QTc interval after intramuscular administration: a randomized, single-blind, parallel-group study in patients with schizophrenia or schizoaffective disorder. *Clin Ther* 2010; 32:472–491.
39. Suzuki A, et al. Histamine H1-receptor antagonists, promethazine and homochlorcyclizine, increase the steady-state plasma concentrations of haloperidol and reduced haloperidol. *TherDrug Monit* 2003; 25:192–196.
40. Lerner Y, et al. Acute high-dose parenteral haloperidol treatment of psychosis. *Am J Psychiatry* 1979; 136:1061–1064.
41. Martel ML, et al. A large retrospective cohort of patients receiving intravenous olanzapine in the emergency department. *Acad Emerg Med* 2016; 23:29–35.

42. Cole JB, et al. A prospective observational study of patients receiving intravenous and intramuscular olanzapine in the emergency department. *Ann Emerg Med* 2017; 69:327–336.e322.
43. Calver L, et al. A prospective study of high dose sedation for rapid tranquilisation of acute behavioural disturbance in an acute mental health unit. *BMC Psychiatry* 2013; 13:225.
44. Mantovani C, et al. Are low doses of antipsychotics effective in the management of psychomotor agitation? A randomized, rated-blind trial of 4 intramuscular interventions. *J Clin Psychopharmacol* 2013; 33:306–312.
45. Taylor D, et al. Buccal midazolam for rapid tranquilisation. *Int J Psychiatry Clin Pract* 2008; 12:309–311.
46. Spain D, et al. Safety and effectiveness of high-dose midazolam for severe behavioural disturbance in an emergency department with suspected psychostimulant-affected patients. *Emerg Med Australas* 2008; 20:112–120.
47. Zaman H, et al. Benzodiazepines for psychosis-induced aggression or agitation. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2017; 12:Cd003079.
48. Li SF, et al. Safety and efficacy of intravenous combination sedatives in the ED. *Am J Emerg Med* 2013; 31:1402–1404.
49. MacNeal JJ, et al. Use of haloperidol in PCP-intoxicated individuals. *Clin Toxicol* 2012; 50:851–853.
50. Mankowitz SL, et al. Ketamine for rapid sedation of agitated patients in the prehospital and emergency department settings: a systematic review and proportional meta-analysis. *J Emerg Med* 2018; 55:670–681.
51. Kim HK, et al. Safety and efficacy of pharmacologic agents used for rapid tranquilization of emergency department patients with acute agitation or excited delirium. *Exp Opin Drug Saf* 2021; 20:123–138.
52. Pierre JM. Time to retire haloperidol? For emergency agitation, evidence suggests newer alternatives may be a better choice. *Curr Psychiatry* 2020; 19:19+.
53. Huf G, et al. Physical restraints versus seclusion room for management of people with acute aggression or agitation due to psychotic illness (TREC-SAVE): a randomized trial. *Psychol Med* 2012; 42:2265–2273.
54. Amdisen A, et al. Serum concentrations and clinical effect of zuclopenthixol in acutely disturbed, psychotic patients treated with zuclopenthixol acetate in Viscoleo. *Psychopharmacology* 1986; 90:412–416.
55. Amdisen A, et al. Zuclopenthixol acetate in viscoleo – a new drug formulation. An open Nordic multicentre study of zuclopenthixol acetate in Viscoleo in patients with acute psychoses including mania and exacerbation of chronic psychoses. *Acta Psychiatr Scand* 1987; 75:99–107.
56. Lowert AC, et al. Acute psychotic disorders treated with 5% zuclopenthixol acetate in ‘Viscoleo’ (‘Cisordinol-Acutard’), a global assessment of the clinical effect: an open multi-centre study. *Pharmatherapeutica* 1989; 5:380–386.
57. Balant LP, et al. Clinical and pharmacokinetic evaluation of zuclopenthixol acetate in Viscoleo. *Pharmacopsychiatry* 1989; 22:250–254.
58. Chakravarti SK, et al. Zuclopenthixol acetate (5% in ‘Viscoleo’): single-dose treatment for acutely disturbed psychotic patients. *Curr Med Res Opin* 1990; 12:58–65.
59. Bastrup PC, et al. A controlled Nordic multicentre study of zuclopenthixol acetate in oil solution, haloperidol and zuclopenthixol in the treatment of acute psychosis. *Acta Psychiatr Scand* 1993; 87:48–58.
60. Chin CN, et al. A double blind comparison of zuclopenthixol acetate with haloperidol in the management of acutely disturbed schizophrenics. *Med J Malaysia* 1998; 53:365–371.
61. Taymeeyapradit U, et al. Comparative study of the effectiveness of zuclopenthixol acetate and haloperidol in acutely disturbed psychotic patients. *J Med Assoc Thai* 2002; 85:1301–1308.
62. Brook S, et al. A randomized controlled double blind study of zuclopenthixol acetate compared to haloperidol in acute psychosis. *Human Psychopharmacol Clin Experimental* 1998; 13:17–20.
63. Chouinard G, et al. A double-blind controlled study of intramuscular zuclopenthixol acetate and liquid oral haloperidol in the treatment of schizophrenic patients with acute exacerbation. *J Clin Psychopharmacol* 1994; 14:377–384.
64. Al-Haddad MK, et al. Zuclopenthixol versus haloperidol in the initial treatment of schizophrenic psychoses, affective psychoses and paranoid states: a controlled clinical trial. *Arab J Psychiatry* 1996; 7:44–54.
65. Jayakody K, et al. Zuclopenthixol acetate for acute schizophrenia and similar serious mental illnesses. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2012; 4:CD000525.
66. Liu P, et al. Observation of clinical effect of clopixol acuphase injection for acute psychosis. *Chin J Pharmacoepidemiology* 1997; 6:202–204.
67. Ropert R, et al. Where zuclopenthixol acetate stands amid the ‘modified release’ neuroleptics. *Congres de Psychiatrie et de Neurologie de Langue Francaise, LXXXVth Session, Chambéry, France; June 13–17 1988.*
68. Berk M. A controlled double blind study of zuclopenthixol acetate compared with clothiapine in acute psychosis including mania and exacerbation of chronic psychosis. *Proceedings of XXth Collegium Internationale Neruo-spychopharmacologicum, Melbourne, Australia; June 23–27 1996.*
69. Garriga M, et al. Assessment and management of agitation in psychiatry: expert consensus. *World J Biol Psychiatry* 2016; 17:86–128.
70. Wilson MP, et al. Potential complications of combining intramuscular olanzapine with benzodiazepines in emergency department patients. *J Emerg Med* 2012; 43:889–896.
71. Villari V, et al. Oral risperidone, olanzapine and quetiapine versus haloperidol in psychotic agitation. *Prog Neuropsychopharmacol Biol Psychiatry* 2008; 32:405–413.
72. Paton C. Benzodiazepines and disinhibition: a review. *Psychiatric Bulletin* 2002; 26:460–462.
73. Chan-Tack KM. Neuroleptic malignant syndrome due to promethazine. *South Med J* 1999; 92:1017–1018.
74. Appleby L, et al. Sudden unexplained death in psychiatric in-patients. *Br J Psychiatry* 2000; 176:405–406.
75. Yap YG, et al. Risk of torsades de pointes with non-cardiac drugs. Doctors need to be aware that many drugs can cause QT prolongation. *BMJ* 2000; 320:1158–1159.
76. Taylor DM. Antipsychotics and QT prolongation. *Acta Psychiatr Scand* 2003; 107:85–95.

Index

- AACAP. *See* American Academy of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry (AACAP)
- absolute neutrophil count (ANC) 237
- acamprosate 463
- ACE inhibitors. *See* angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitors
- acetylcholine (ACh) 604
- acetylcholinesterase (AChE) inhibitors 604, 820
- in AD
- interactions 613
 - memantine 612–613
 - NICE recommendations 617
 - other treatments 618
 - reasons for stopping treatment 616
 - when to stop treatment 613–616, 614–615*t*
- benefits of combining 609
- benefits of treatment with 607
- combination of 613
- efficacy of 616, 631
- for rare dementias associated with neurological conditions 625
- reactions to 609
- safety and efficacy of 625
- AChE inhibitors. *See* acetylcholinesterase (AChE) inhibitors
- acute behavioural disturbance (ABD) in acute admissions
- diagnosis 524
 - epidemiology and pathophysiology 524
 - outcomes 525
 - treatment 524–525
- acute illness 8
- acutely disturbed/violent behaviour 56
- oral/inhaled treatment 56
 - parenteral treatment 56–59
 - practical measures 59
 - zuclopenthixol acetate (ZA) 60–64
- acute mania
- first-line treatments for 551*t*
 - physical monitoring for people with 279–281, 279*f*, 280*t*, 281*t*
- ADAPT. *See* Adolescent Depression Antidepressants and Psychotherapy Trial (ADAPT)
- addictions 451–452. *See also* alcohol
- ADHD. *See* attention deficit hyperactivity disorder (ADHD)
- adherence, medication 897–898
- assessing 900–901
 - Cochrane review of 898
 - definition of 897
 - depot/long-acting antipsychotics 902
 - determinants of 899
 - financial incentives 902–903
 - impact of non-adherence 898–899
 - mapping out interventions 899–901
 - monitoring adherence and assessing attitudes to 901
 - rate of non-adherence to 898
 - strategies for improving 899
 - taking aids 902
- Adolescent Depression Antidepressants and Psychotherapy Trial (ADAPT) 541
- Adrenergic α_2 agonists 588
- aducanumab 623
- adverse drug reactions (ADRs) 610
- adverse effect sensitivity 798
- AF. *See* atrial fibrillation (AF)
- affective illness 679
- ageing body 601
- aggressive behaviours 805*t*
- agomelatine 337, 389, 705*t*, 727*t*, 741*t*, 820, 856*t*, 875*t*
- agranulocytosis 222, 236–237, 238
- development of 237
 - prevalence of 236
 - risk factors for 236
- akathisia 114–116
- alanine aminotransferase (ALT) 907*t*
- albumin 908*t*
- alcohol 860
- acamprosate 463
 - advice and recommendations 453
 - anticonvulsants 466
 - anxiety 469
 - assessment and brief structured intervention 453–454
 - bipolar affective disorder 468–469
 - children and adolescents 466–467
 - coexisting and benzodiazepine dependence 467
 - coexisting and opioid dependence 467
 - coexisting dependence and cocaine use 467
 - co-morbid and nicotine dependence 467
 - co-morbid mental health disorders 468
 - concurrent alcohol- and drug-use disorders 467
 - depression 468
 - disulfiram (Antabuse) 464–466
 - misusers 861
 - nalmefene 464
 - naltrexone 463–464
 - older adults 467
 - pharmacodynamic interactions with 862–863*t*
 - pregnancy and alcohol use 466
 - relapse prevention 463
 - schizophrenia 469
 - unit of 453
- Wernicke's encephalopathy 461
- parenteral B-complex 461–462
 - presentation 461
 - prophylactic thiamine 461
 - withdrawal 454–455, 454–455*t*
 - delirium 472–473, 473*t*
 - fixed-dose reduction regimen 459–460

- pharmacologically assisted withdrawal 456–459
 symptom-triggered regimen 460
 treatment interventions 458*t*
 alcohol dehydrogenase 861*t*
 Alcohol Use Disorders Identification Test (AUDIT) 454
 aldehyde dehydrogenase 861*t*
 alfuzosin 635
 alkaline phosphatase 908*t*
 allopregnanolone 367
 α2 agonists 580
 alpha-blockers for urinary retention 635
 alprostadil (Caverject) 177
 alverine 637
 Alzheimer's disease (AD) 604, 820. *See* Alzheimer's disease (AD)
 acetylcholinesterase (AChE) inhibitors 604, 611*f*
 cholinergic hypothesis of 604
 elderly patients with 611
 ginseng in 619
 melatonin and sleep disturbances in 651–652
 memantine 604, 605–606*t*
 non-cognitive aspects of 608
 severity of 616
 vitamin E for 618
 Alzheimer's Disease Assessment Scale 607
 amantadine 169, 582, 811, 918*t*
 Cochrane review of 811
 American Academy of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry (AACAP) 541, 556, 567
 amisulpride 5, 648*t*, 709*t*, 724*t*, 739*t*, 770*t*, 835*t*, 837
 amitriptyline 367, 368, 741*t*
 ammonia 908*t*
 amnesia 863*t*
 amfetamines 511, 580
 detoxification 511–512
 existing dexamfetamine patients 512
 maintenance 512
 amylase 908*t*
 analgesics
 antihistamines 639
 antihypertensives 639
 behavioural and psychological symptoms of dementia (BPSD) 645
 NSAIDs and paracetamol 638
 opiates 638–639
 other cardiac drugs 639
 statins 639
 ANC. *See* absolute neutrophil count (ANC)
 anecdotal evidence 810
 angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitors 252–253
 angiotensin II receptor antagonists 253
 animal-assisted therapy 645
 anorexia nervosa (AN) 7
 Antabuse reaction 860
 anticholinergic drugs
 in urinary incontinence 635, 636*t*
 used in urinary incontinence 631–635, 632–634*t*
 anticholinergic effect on cognition (AEC) scores 631, 632–634*t*
 anticonvulsants, alcohol 466
 antidepressant prophylaxis
 dose for prophylaxis 376
 first episode 374
 key points patients should know 376
 recurrent depression 374–375, 374*f*
 antidepressants 393, 778, 864*t*
 in anxiety spectrum disorders 310
 and arrhythmia 389
 borderline personality disorder (BPD) 4–5
 in breastfeeding 704, 705–714*t*
 cardiac effects of 383, 384–386*t*
 choice of antidepressant and relative side effects 308
 delivery methods
 buccal 366–367
 intranasal 369–371, 369–371*t*
 intravenous and intramuscular injections 367–368
 rectal mucosa 368–369
 sublingual 366
 transdermal 368
 depression
 and diabetes 401–402, 402*t*
 effects of 404
 drug interactions with 308–309, 378–379, 378–379*t*
 duration of treatment 309–310
 effectiveness 307
 effects of antidepressant drugs 404–407, 405–407*t*
 and hyperprolactinaemia 398–399, 398–399*t*
 medications 541
 monitoring 394
 next step treatments 310
 onset of action 307–308
 pharmacodynamic interactions
 MAOIs 380, 381*t*
 SSRIs/SNRIs 380
 tricyclic antidepressants 379–380
 prescribed drugs 395
 prophylactic effects of 375
 psychotropics in bariatric surgery 823, 823*t*
 recommended minimum effective doses of 312*t*
 relative adverse effects 421–422*t*
 relative cardiotoxicity 390
 restarting treatment 395
 serotonin syndrome 337–341, 338–341*t*
 and sexual dysfunction 404
 stopping 348
 practical application of
 tapering 349–350
 theoretical basis for tapering 348, 349*f*
 troubleshooting 350, 351*t*
 suicidality 309
 summary of risk of hyponatraemia with 393, 394*t*
 switching, general guidelines 336–337
 treatment 394–395
 use in at-risk patients 389–390
 withdrawal symptoms
 avoiding 345–346
 background 343
 clinical relevance 345
 incidence and severity 344
 key points patients should know 346
 risk 345
 signs and symptoms 343, 343*f*, 344*t*
 time course 344–345, 344–345*t*
 treatment 346
 antiemetics 635–637
 antihistamines 640*t*
 anti-inflammatory drugs 621
 antipsychotic-associated hypertension 162
 antipsychotic drugs 165*t*
 effects of 174
 sexual adverse effects of 174–175*t*
 withdrawal of 28
 antipsychotic-induced hyperprolactinaemia 169, 170*f*
 antipsychotic-induced orthostatic hypotension 160–161*t*
 antipsychotic long-acting injections 69*t*
 in bipolar disorder 274–275, 274*t*
 antipsychotic medications 136, 137, 149, 150–151, 469
 equivalent doses of 14, 14*t*
 long-term treatment with 74
 monitoring 38–39
 re-establishment of 137
 antipsychotic monotherapy 21
 effectiveness of 20
 Antipsychotic Non-Neurological Side-Effects Rating Scale (ANNSERS) 6
 antipsychotic-related diabetes 155
 monitoring 155–156
 treatment of 156
 antipsychotic-related QT prolongation 141
 cardiovascular risk factors 146
 ECG
 changes 142
 monitoring 144–145
 metabolic inhibition 145
 QT prolongation 141–142
 quantifying risk 142–144, 143*t*
 risk factors 144, 144*t*, 145*t*
 antipsychotic response 51
 dose–response observations 51–52
 plasma level variations 52
 treatment choices 52–54
 when to increase the dose 51
 antipsychotics 58, 143*t*, 153, 588–589, 799, 804*t*, 864*t*
 aripiprazole 270
 asenapine 270
 in behavioural and psychological symptoms of dementia (BPSD) 645–646
 borderline personality disorder (BPD) 4
 in breastfeeding 704
 cariprazine 270
 choosing 4–5
 classification of 3–4
 clozapine 271
 combinations of 8
 discontinuation of 25
 equivalent doses 14–15, 14–15*t*
 fatal adverse effect of 131
 first-generation 153, 682
 high-dose 16
 adverse effects 17

- efficacy 16–17
 recommendations 17
 hypertension 161–162
 long-term treatment with
 adherence to antipsychotic
 treatment 27
 alternative views 28–29
 dose for prophylaxis 27
 episode of psychosis 25–26
 how and when to stop 28
 multi-episode schizophrenia 26–27
 lurasidone 271
 medication 18
 minimum effective doses 9, 9t
 olanzapine 271
 orthostatic hypotension 160–161
 management of 160–161t
 risk factors for 160t
 and pneumonia 181–182
 polypharmacy 20
 principles of prescribing 8
 psychotropics in bariatric
 surgery 823–824t
 quetiapine 271
 quick reference for licensed maximum
 doses 12–13
 relative adverse effects 41
 relative efficacy 5–6
 risperidone 271
 second-generation 154–155, 683–685
 clozapine 153–154
 olanzapine 154
 quetiapine 154
 risperidone 154
 and sexual dysfunction 172
 effects of antipsychotic drugs 173,
 174–175t
 effects of psychosis 172–173
 human sexual response 172, 172t
 treatment 175, 176t, 177
 stopping 102
 discontinuation 105–107
 neurobiology of withdrawal 103
 pattern of tapering 104–105, 104f
 reductions of olanzapine
 doses 106–107t
 tapering in practice 105
 withdrawal/discontinuation effects of
 102–103
 switching, poor tolerability 183–184
 and venous thromboembolism
 evidence of association 187
 latest data 187, 188t
 mechanisms 188, 188t
 outcomes 188
 practice points 189
 summary 188
 antipsychotics in bipolar disorder 269
 first-generation antipsychotics
 (FGAs) 269
 second-generation
 depression 270
 maintenance 270
 mania 269–270
 specific
 aripiprazole 270
 asenapine 270
 cariprazine 270
 clozapine 271
 lurasidone 271
 olanzapine 271
 quetiapine 271
 risperidone 271
 antiretroviral drugs
 adverse psychiatric effects of 782, 782t
 and psychotropics 780–781, 781t
 antiretrovirals
 adverse drug reactions (ADRs) with 782t
 adverse psychiatric effects of 782
 potential pharmacodynamic
 interactions with 781t
 antiretroviral therapy (ART) 778
 antiseizure medications 787, 800
 adverse and beneficial psychiatric side
 effects of 786, 787t
 psychiatric side effects of 786, 787t
 antispasmodics 637
 anxiety disorders 583, 780, 805t, 809,
 820, 869, 872
 alcohol 469
 in childhood and adolescence
 after prescribing 558–560, 559t
 assessment and treatment of 556
 clinical guidance 556
 diagnostic issues 556
 NICE guidelines 563, 563f
 before prescribing 556–557
 specific issues 560
 what to prescribe 557–558
 anxiety spectrum disorders 423
 antidepressants in 310
 benzodiazepines 423
 generalised anxiety disorder 425
 OCD 425–431
 pregabalin 424
 psychological approaches 424–425
 SSRIs/SNRIs 423–424
 apathy 806t
 arbaclofen 582
 aripiprazole 143, 151, 169, 270, 296, 554,
 581, 588, 646, 648t, 709t, 724t,
 739t, 770t, 799, 834, 835t, 837, 923,
 933t, 934t
 ability brands 77
 brands 78
 plasma level monitoring of 837
 re-evaluation of 581
 switching to 78
 two-injection start 77
 aripiprazole lauroxil 933t
 Arizona Sexual Experience Scale
 (ASEX) 173
 aromatherapy 644–645
 arrhythmia, antidepressants and 389
 ART. *See* antiretroviral therapy (ART)
 ASD. *See* autism spectrum disorder (ASD)
 asenapine 270, 709t, 725t, 739t, 823t, 841t
 aspartate aminotransferase (AST) 908t
 aspiration pneumonia 181
 aspirin 621, 811
 asthma 610
 ataxia 863t
 atomoxetine 569, 571, 580, 716t, 729t
 atorvastatin 621
 atrial fibrillation (AF) 646–647, 819
 definition of 819
 psychotropics in 820
 recommendations 820
 attention deficit hyperactivity disorder
 (ADHD) 569–575, 573–575t,
 687–688, 693–694, 693–694t, 795t
 diagnosis of 571
 NICE guidance for 570
 atypical eating disorders 10
 autism spectrum disorder (ASD) 578
 anxiety, OCD and depression 583
 cognitive effects in 583
 heterogeneity of 578
 inattention, overactivity and
 impulsiveness in 580–581
 individuals with 578
 pharmacological treatment of 578
 symptoms 578
 autistic traits 797
 baclofen 589
 BALANCE study 296
 bapineuzumab 622
 bariatric surgery 126, 822
 alcohol 826
 drugs
 antidepressants 823, 823t
 antipsychotics 823–824t
 formulations 822
 miscellaneous agents in 825
 mood stabilisers 824–825, 824–825t
 general recommendations 826
 pharmacokinetic changes 822
 risk of weight gain after 826
 wider considerations 826
 baseline sexual functioning 172
 Bazett's correction formula 142
 behavioural and psychological symptoms of
 dementia (BPSD) 622, 644
 antidepressants 649–650
 antipsychotic drugs in 648t
 benzodiazepines 649
 cognitive enhancers 649
 electroconvulsive therapy
 (ECT) 652–653
 in frontotemporal dementia 650
 melatonin and sleep disturbances in
 AD 651–652
 miscellaneous agents 652
 mood stabilisers/
 anticonvulsants 650–651
 non-drug measures 644–645
 pharmacological measures
 analgesics 645
 antipsychotics in 645–646
 clinical information for antipsychotic
 use in 647–649
 increased mortality with
 antipsychotics in 646–647
 sedating antihistamines 652
 behavioural disturbance 798
 behavioural lifestyle programmes 125
 behaviour disorder, medications for
 799–800
 Beliefs about Medicines Questionnaire 901
 BEN. *See* benign ethnic neutropenia (BEN)
 benign ethnic neutropenia (BEN) 236, 237
 benzodiazepines (BZ) 58, 131, 135, 458,
 459, 472, 582, 601, 692, 715t, 729t,

- 778, 780, 809, 825*t*, 856*t*
 adverse effects of 440, 440*t*
 direct taper or switching to diazepam? 442–443, 442*t*
 dosage reduction (tapering) 442
 mechanism 449
 misuse 517
 discontinuation 517–518
 pregnancy and 518
 summary 518
 reduction schedules 445
 risk 448–449
 stopping 442
 subjective reports 449
 tapering
 before 444
 drug classes 446
 pattern of 443–444, 443*f*
 process of 444–445
 in treatment of psychiatric disorders 436
 anxiolytic effect 436
 drug interactions 438
 hypnotic effect 436–437
 side effects 437–438
 use in depression 437
 use in psychosis 437
 troubleshooting 445
 use in pregnancy 692–693
 withdrawal symptoms 441–442, 441*t*
- bethanechol 234
 bicarbonate 908*t*
 bilirubin 909*t*
 binge eating disorder 9
 biperiden 937*t*
 bipolar affective disorder 779
 alcohol 468–469
 rapid cycling 285–286, 285*t*
 bipolar depression 248–249, 264, 288
 first-line treatments for 551*t*
 meta-analysis in 288–291, 289–291*t*
 bipolar disorder 810, 820
 lithium
 acute treatment of mania 247–248
 adverse effects 250
 angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitors 252–253
 augmentation of antidepressants in unipolar depression 248–249
 bipolar depression 248–249
 carbamazepine 254
 clinically relevant drug interactions 254*t*
 discontinuation 251–252, 252*t*
 diuretics 253
 formulations 250
 interactions with other drugs 252
 maintenance treatment of 248
 mechanism of action 247
 non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) 253–254
 on-treatment monitoring 251
 plasma levels 249
 prescribing and monitoring 252*t*
 pre-treatment tests 251
 prophylaxis of unipolar depression 249
 and suicide 249
 toxicity 250–251
 uses of 249
 physical monitoring for people with 277–278*t*
- bipolar illness in childhood and adolescence
 clinical guidance
 after prescribing 547–548
 other treatments 548–551
 before prescribing 547
 specific issues 548
 what to prescribe 547
 RCT evidence on medication used in 549–550*f*
- bleeding
 abnormal vaginal 412
 gastrointestinal 410–411, 411*t*
 risk factors for 409
 SSRIs and 409
 surgical and post-operative 413–415, 413*t*
- blood pressure changes
 hypertension 161–162
 orthostatic hypotension 160–161
 management of 160–161*t*
 risk factors for 160*t*
- body dysmorphic disorder (BDD) 424
 Bolam and Bolitho criteria 925
 borderline personality disorder (BPD) 3–4
 antidepressants 4–5
 antipsychotics 4
 management of crisis 5
 memantine 5
 mood-stabilisers 5
 opioid antagonists 5
 proportion of people with 757
 suicide rate in 757
 botulinum 590
 BPD. *See* borderline personality disorder (BPD)
 BPSD. *See* behavioural and psychological symptoms of dementia (BPSD)
 bradykinesia 803
 breastfeeding 702
 ADHD 693–694, 693–694*t*
 antidepressants in 685–686, 688–689, 704, 705–714*t*
 antipsychotics in 704
 bipolar illness during 689
 depression during pregnancy and postpartum 685
 discussions with pregnant women 681
 drug choice in 679–681
 general principles of prescribing psychotropics in 702–703, 703*t*
 hypnotics in 704, 715*t*
 infant exposure 702
 mood stabilisers in 690–692, 704
 psychosis during pregnancy and postpartum 681–682
 psychotropic medication in 702
 rapid tranquilisation 693
 sedatives 692–693
 SSRIs 687–688
 stimulants in 704, 716*t*
 treatment with antipsychotics
 first generation 682
 second-generation 683–685
 tricyclic antidepressants 686
 brexanolone 705*t*, 727*t*, 741*t*, 937*t*
- brexipiprazole 144, 652, 709*t*, 725*t*, 820
 British Association for Psychopharmacology (BAP)
 anti-dementia drugs from 625, 626*t*
 recommendations 626*t*
 British Association for Psychopharmacology Guidelines for Dementia 607
 bromocriptine 169
 bromperidol decanoate 932*t*
 bronchodilators
 anticholinergic bronchodilators 637
 beta-agonists 637
 hypersalivation 638
 myasthenia gravis (MG) 638
 theophylline 637
 buccal midazolam 58
 bulimia nervosa 9
 buprenorphine 483–484, 484*t*, 639
 alternative oral opioid preparations 490–491
 brands of oral buprenorphine and bioavailability 485–486
 buprenorphine starting dose 486
 cautions with 490
 initial total daily dose 481
 less than daily dosing 489–490
 and methadone 479*t*
 with naloxone (suboxone) 490
 overdose with 490
 patient-controlled analgesia (PCA) 488–489, 489*t*
 prescribing information 480
 prolonged-release buprenorphine injection 484–485, 485*t*
 stabilisation dose of 489
 starting dose for patients 480, 486
 sublingual buprenorphine 484
 transferring from methadone to 487–488
 transferring from other prescribed opioids to 488
 bupropion 506, 570, 650, 705*t*, 741*t*, 876*t*
 adverse effects 506
 clinical effectiveness 506
 preparations and dose 506
 buspirone 583, 745*t*, 809
 butyrophenones 710*t*
 butyrylcholinesterase (BuChE) 604
- cabergoline 169
 caffeine 865
 anxiety disorders 869
 consumption of 865
 content of drinks 865*t*
 dose and psychotropic effects of 866*t*
 energy drinks 868
 general effects of 866
 interacting substance 867*t*
 intoxication 867–868
 mood disorders 868
 pharmacokinetics 866, 867*t*
 psychotropic effects of 866
 schizophrenia 868
 calcium 909*t*
 calcium channel blockers 919*t*
 cannabinoids, Cochrane Review of 590
 cannabis 590
 captopril 917*t*

- carbamazepine 254, 264, 265–266, 603, 650, 690, 712*t*, 713*t*, 728*t*, 744*t*, 779, 820, 835*t*, 856*t*
 adverse effects 265–266
 continued use of 691
 discontinuation 266
 formulations 264
 indications 264–265
 interactions with other drugs 266–267, 267*t*
 mechanism of action 264
 on-treatment monitoring 266
 plasma levels 265
 prescribing and monitoring 266–267, 267*t*
 pre-treatment tests 266
 use in women of child-bearing age 266
- carbohydrate deficient transferrin (CDT) 909*t*
- cardiomyopathy 222–223
 care environments, assessment of 798
 cariprazine 270, 710*t*, 725*t*, 820, 823*t*
 catatonia 135–137
 algorithm for treating 137
 benzodiazepines reported as treatments for 138*t*
 in schizophrenia 136
- CATIE study 27
- CBT. *See* cognitive behavioural therapy (CBT)
- cephalosporins 917*t*
- cerebrolysin 620
 Cochrane review assessing 620
- cerebrovascular events (CVAEs) 646
- cetirizine 639
- chemotherapeutic agents 919*t*
 chemotherapy, clozapine and 242
- childhood and adolescence
 anxiety disorders in
 after prescribing 558–560, 559*t*
 clinical guidance 556
 diagnostic issues 556
 before prescribing 556–557
 specific issues 560
 what to prescribe 557–558
- attention deficit hyperactivity disorder (ADHD) 569–575, 573–575*t*
- autism spectrum disorder (ASD) 578
 anxiety, OCD and depression 583
 fluoxetine in children and adolescents 583
 inattention, overactivity and impulsiveness in 580–581
 irritability (aggression, self-injurious behaviour, severe disruptive behaviours) 581
 pharmacological treatment of 578
 restricted repetitive behaviours and interests (RRBI) 579
 sleep disturbance 582–583
 social and communication impairment 579
 use of risperidone in 582
- bipolar illness, clinical guidance
 after prescribing 547–548
 other treatments 548–551
 before prescribing 547
 specific issues 548
 what to prescribe 547
- depression in
 after prescribing 544–545
 clinical guidance 541
 diagnostic issues 541
 before prescribing 542
 what to prescribe 542–544
- doses of commonly used psychotropic drugs in 599*t*
- melatonin in treatment of insomnia in 593
 adverse effects 594
 dose 594–595, 595*f*
 efficacy 593–594
- obsessive compulsive disorder (OCD) and body dysmorphic disorder (BDD) in 561
 CBT and medication in treatment of 564
 drug treatment 561
 duration of treatment and long-term follow-up 565
 initiation of treatment with medication 561–562
 NICE guidelines for assessment and treatment of 563, 563*f*
 post-traumatic stress disorder in 567–568
 prescribing SSRIs in children 562–563
 treatment-refractory 564–565
- principles of prescribing practice in 539–540
 psychosis in 554
 rapid tranquillisation (RT) in 596–597, 596–597*t*
- Tics and Tourette syndrome
 adrenergic $\alpha 2$ agonists 588
 antipsychotics 588–589
 detection and treatment of comorbidity 587
 education and behavioural treatments 587
 other drugs 589–590, 590*f*
 pharmacological treatments 587
- chlordiazepoxide 459, 745*t*
- chloride 909*t*
- chloroquine 918*t*
- chlorthalimide 639
- chlorpromazine 25, 739*t*, 856*t*
- chocolate 865
 consumption of 621
- cholesterol 909*t*
- cholinesterase inhibitors 815, 816
- chorea 804*t*
- Chronic Kidney Disease Epidemiology Collaboration (CKD-EPI)
 formula 736
- chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) 473, 610
- CIGH. *See* clozapine-induced gastrointestinal hypomotility (CIGH)
- cimetidine 640, 919*t*
- CitAD trial 649–650
- citalopram 367, 389, 423, 649–650, 705*t*, 741*t*, 779, 809, 937*t*
- Clinical Institute Withdrawal Assessment of Alcohol Scale 457
- Clinical Opiate Withdrawal Scale (COWS) 476, 477*t*
- clomethiazole 745*t*
- clomiphene 590
- clomipramine 367, 369, 423, 561, 741*t*, 937*t*
- clonazepam 745*t*
- clonidine 569, 580, 588
- clopentixol decanoate 932*t*
- clotiapine 935*t*
- clozapine 25–26, 151, 161, 165*t*, 181, 271, 581, 589, 710*t*, 725*t*, 739*t*, 758, 795*t*, 799, 816, 823*t*, 835*t*, 838–839, 856*t*, 925*t*, 935*t*
 adverse effects 210–211
 agranulocytosis, thromboembolism, cardiomyopathy and myocarditis 222
 and chemotherapy 242
 common adverse effects 210–212
 contra-indications to community initiation 208
 dosing 209–210, 209–210*t*
 genetic testing for treatment 244
 agranulocytosis 244–245
 benign ethnic neutropenia 245
 metabolism 245
 response 244
 induced hypersalivation 227–229*t*
 initial work-up 208
 mandatory blood monitoring and registration 208
 myocarditis and cardiomyopathy 222–224
 plasma concentration 849–850*t*
 recommended additional monitoring 211
 re-starting after break in treatment 207
 serious cardiac adverse effects 212
 suitability for 208
 summary 224
 switching from other antipsychotics 211
 therapy 238
 thromboembolism 222
 toxicity 238
 uncommon or unusual adverse effects 217–218
 use for treatment-resistant schizophrenia 683, 778
- clozapine-induced gastrointestinal hypomotility (CIGH) 232
 management of suspected acute 233
 prevention and simple management of 233
 re-challenge following severe constipation 233–234
 risk factors for developing 232, 232*t*
- clozapine initiation schedule 190
 dosing regimen 190–191*t*
- clozapine, neutropenia and lithium
 benign ethnic neutropenia (BEN) 237
 concurrent medications 237
 granulocyte-colony stimulating factor (G-CSF) 239–240
 management options 237–238
 risk of clozapine-induced neutropenia and agranulocytosis 236–237
- clozapine treatment 193
 augmentation 193–194, 194*t*
 CNS penetration effectiveness (CPE) 780

- cocaine 467
 detoxification 511
 substitution treatment 511
 Cochrane systematic review 2018 52
 Cockcroft and Gault equation 735
 codeine 638
 cognitive behavioural therapy (CBT) 556
 cognitive decline, consumption of 621
 cognitive enhancers, characteristics of 604, 605–606*t*
 cognitive impairment 810
 combined antipsychotic medications (antipsychotic polypharmacy) 20
 adverse effects 21–22
 in clinical practice 22
 long-term antipsychotic treatment 20–21
 poor response to antipsychotic monotherapy 20
 communication impairment 579
 community detoxification 456
 co-morbid autistic spectrum disorder 797
 co-morbid depression 9, 401
 co-morbid disorders 9
 comorbidity, detection and treatment of 587
 co-morbid mental health disorders 468
 co-morbid psychiatric illness 571
 compliance aids 902
 conventional antipsychotics 296
 covert administration
 algorithm for determining 671*f*
 guidance on 667–669
 CPY1A2, 852
 CPY2B6, 852
 CPY2C8, 853
 CPY2C9, 853
 CPY2C19, 853
 CPY2D6, 854
 C-reactive protein 909*t*
 creatine kinase 910*t*
 creatinine 910*t*
Crocus sativus (saffron) 620
 cyclizine 635, 639
 CYP2A6 enzyme 852
 CYP3A4 enzyme 855
 alcohol and substrates for 861–862*t*
 CYP2B7 enzymes 852
 CYP2E1 enzyme 854
 alcohol and substrates for 861–862*t*
 CYP450 enzyme 378
 antidepressant effects on 378–379*t*
 cyproheptadine 925*t*
 cyproterone 590
 cytochrome P450 (CYP450) enzymes 635
- darifenacin 631
 dehydration 863
 delirium 13, 638, 778
 choice of drug 15
 clinical subtypes of 13
 diagnostic criteria for 13
 drugs used to treat 15–18, 15–18*t*
 general principles 14
 management 14
 outcome 14
 pharmacological prophylaxis 15–18, 15–18*t*
 prevalence 13
 risk factors 13–14
 tools for evaluation 13
 delirium tremens 472–473, 473*t*
 administration schedules for 473*t*
 treatment of 472
 delusional intensity 561
 demeclocycline 165*t*
 dementia 604, 883
 adverse effects, cholinesterase inhibitors 610–611
 Alzheimer's disease (AD) 604
 memantine 604, 605–606*t*
 cardiovascular effects of drugs 611
 combination treatment 609
 diagnosis 650
 discontinuation of medication 616
 dosing and formulations 608–609
 efficacy of cognitive enhancers used in 607
 other effects 608
 safer prescribing for physical conditions in 631
 switching between drugs used in 607–608
 tolerability 609–610
 dementia with Lewy bodies (DLB) 624
 depot antipsychotics 72
 depot/long-acting antipsychotics 902
 depression 583, 778–779, 805*t*, 808, 810, 820, 872
 alcohol 468
 and anxiety 795*t*
 in childhood and adolescence
 after prescribing 544–545
 clinical guidance 541
 diagnostic issues 541
 medication treatment for 543–544
 before prescribing 542
 summary of pharmacotherapy for 544*t*
 what to prescribe 542–544
 description of 305
 and diabetes 401–402, 402*t*
 drug treatment of 314, 314*f*
 effects of 404
 NICE guidelines 305–306
 non-drug treatments for 788
 in older people 673–676
 prescribing in 674–675*t*, 674–676
 in Parkinson's disease (PD) 814
 post-stroke 362
 prophylaxis 362
 treatment 362–363
 during pregnancy and postpartum 685
 principles of prescribing in 305, 306*t*
 psychotic 332–333
 recurrent 374–375, 374*f*
 second-generation antipsychotics 270
 stimulants in 357–359*t*
 symptoms of 309
 treatment of 788
 treatment-resistant *See* treatment-resistant depression
 desvenlafaxine 389, 741*t*
 deutetrabenazine 589, 730*t*
 dexamfetamine/lisdexamfetamine 569, 571, 716*t*, 729*t*
 dexmedetomidine 937*t*
 dextromethorphan/quinidine, bupropion/
 dextromethorphan 652, 809
 diabetes mellitus 401–402, 402*t*
 diazepam 472, 771*t*, 937*t*
 dibenzoylmethane (DBM) 622
 dietary habits 621
 digoxin 602, 639
 dimebon 619
 discontinuation syndrome 607
 disulfiram (Antabuse)
 alcohol 464–466
 NICE clinical guideline 466
 diuretics 253
 DLB. *See* dementia with Lewy bodies (DLB)
 domperidone 635
 donepezil (AriceptR) 607, 612, 613, 614*t*, 772*t*
 clinical trials of 624
 Cochrane review for 623
 doses of 609
 sustained release 608
 dopamine 168, 871
 agonists 169, 918*t*
 antagonists 47
 receptors, super-sensitivity of 28
 dose–response relationship 837
 dose response, systematic analysis of 17
 dosulepin (dothiepin) 742*t*
 doxepin 368, 742*t*, 857*t*
 drinks, content of 865*t*
 Driver and Vehicle Licensing Agency (DVLA) 883
 driving and psychotropic medicines 883
 duty of driver 886
 duty of prescriber 886
 effects of mental illness 883
 medication-induced sedation 885
 medicines 885
 psychiatric medicines, driving and
 UK law 883–885, 884*t*, 885*t*
 droperidol 58, 938*t*
 Drug Attitude Inventory (DAI) 901
 drug–drug interactions 614–615*t*, 638–639
 drug-induced parkinsonism 778
 drug interactions with alcohol 860
 metabolism of alcohol 860–862
 pharmacodynamic interactions 862–863*t*, 862–864, 864*t*
 pharmacokinetic interactions 860
 drug-placebo differences 307
 drugs. *See also specific drugs*
 acceptable use of 925
 classes, tapering other 446
 concentrations 835, 847
 degradation of 847
 distribution of 847
 with established target ranges 835–836*t*
 interactions 873
 in psychiatric practice 925*t*
 tolerability 609–610
 dual diagnosis 797
 dual re-uptake inhibitors 308
 duloxetine 308, 688, 706*t*, 727*t*, 742*t*, 779, 857*t*

- duty of driver 886
duty of prescriber 886
dyslipidaemia 149
clinical management of 150–151
dystonia 803, 804t
- early-onset schizophrenia-spectrum (EOSS)
disorder 554
- eating disorders 7
anorexia nervosa (AN), general
guidance 7
physical aspects
electrolytes 7–8
osteoporosis 8
vitamins and minerals 7
- ecopipam 589
- ECT. *See* electroconvulsive therapy (ECT)
- electroconvulsive therapy (ECT) 688–689,
788
augmentation of antipsychotic
medication 97
augmentation of clozapine 97
bilateral 97
and psychosis 96
adverse effects 97
summary 97
treatment-refractory
schizophrenia 96–97
and psychotropics 353
psychotropic drugs on seizure
duration in 353–354t
- electrolytes 7–8
- electronic cigarettes 871
and vaping 506–507
adverse effects 507–509
clinical effectiveness 507
preparations and dose 507
- emotional disturbance 798
- energy drinks 868
- entacapone 918t
- epilepsy
and driving 791
pharmacodynamic interactions 788
pharmacokinetic interactions
787–788
psychiatric comorbidities in
785–786t
psychiatric side effects of antiseizure
medications 786, 787t
psychotropics and risk of seizures in
people with 788–791, 789–791t
treatment of 789–791t
- EPSEs. *See* extrapyramidal side effects
(EPSEs)
- erythromycin 603
- escitalopram/citalopram 367, 389,
542–543, 650, 706t, 742t, 778–779,
857t
- estimated glomerular filtration rate
(eGFR) 602
- European Academy of Neurology (EAN)
Guidelines 609
- exercise therapy 645
- extrapyramidal side effects (EPSEs) 109,
778
prevalence 110t
propensity for 5
rating scales 110t
signs and symptoms 110t
time taken to develop 111t
treatment 111t
- fatigue 810–811
- fentanyl patches 638
- ferritin 910t
- fesoterodine 635
- fexofenadine 639
- FGAs. *See* first-generation antipsychotics
(FGAs)
- first-episode schizophrenia, studies in 25
- first-generation antipsychotics (FGAs) 554
equivalent doses for 14
nomenclature 46
optimal doses of 51
role of older antipsychotics 46–47
- fixed-dose chlorthalidoxepoxide regimen 460,
460t
- fixed-dose reduction 459
regimen 459–460
- fluid restriction 165t
- fluoxetine/sertraline 542–543, 687, 706t,
727t, 742t, 758–759, 809, 925t
in children and adolescents 583
safety of 541
- flupentixol/zuclopentixol 3, 725t, 739t,
932t
- fluphenazine 857t
- flupirilene 932t
- flutamide 589
- fluvoxamine 561, 707t, 742t, 857t
- folic acid supplementation 618
- foodstuffs, administering medicines in 603
- French Pharmacovigilance Database 612
- front-loading 459
- gabapentin 650, 651
- GAD. *See* Generalised Anxiety Disorder
(GAD)
- gait disturbance 803
- galantamine 613
Cochrane review for 623–624
controlled trials of 610–611
- galantamine (ReminylR) 614t
- gamma-glutamyl transferase (GGT) 910t
- gastrointestinal bleeding 410–411, 411t
- Generalised Anxiety Disorder (GAD) 423
- General Medical Council 924
- GHB and GBL dependence 514
management of acute unplanned
withdrawal 515–516t
withdrawal management 514–516
withdrawal syndrome 514
- GI disorders, drugs used in
antiemetics 635–637
antispasmodics 637
laxatives 635
loperamide 635
- Ginkgo biloba* 618
efficacy of 652
- ginseng 811
- Glasgow Antipsychotic Side-effect Scale
(GASS) 6
- glucocorticoids 919t
- glucose homeostasis 401t
- gosuranemab 623
- granisetron 637
- granulocyte-colony stimulating factor
(G-CSF) 239–240
- guanfacine 569, 580, 588
- gut motility 602
- haematological monitoring 237
- haloperidol 149, 181, 588, 589, 647, 648t,
725t, 739t, 769–770t, 799, 823t,
857t, 934t, 938t
- haloperidol decanoate 932t
- Halting Antipsychotic Use in Long-Term
Care study 649
- Hamilton Depression Rating Scale
(HDRS) 307
- H₂ antagonists 640
- HbA_{1c} 910t
- HD. *See* Huntington's disease (HD)
- Helicobacter pylori* 640
- hepatic cytochrome P450 (CYP)
pathways 308–309
- hepatic impairment 723
antidepressant medications in 726–728
antipsychotics in 724–726t
drug-induced hepatic damage 731
general principles 723–724
mood stabilisers in 728–729, 728–729t
psychotropics in 730, 730t
sedatives in 729–730, 729–730t
stimulants in 729, 729t
- hepatic transaminases 726
- high-dose antipsychotics 16
adverse effects 17
efficacy 16–17
recommendations 17
- hirudin 619
- HIV, general principles of prescribing in
777–778
adverse psychiatric effects of antiretroviral
drugs 782, 782t
anxiety disorders 780
associated neurocognitive disorders 780
bipolar affective disorder 779
delirium 778
depression 778–779
epilepsy
and driving 791
pharmacodynamic interactions 788
pharmacokinetic
interactions 787–788
psychiatric comorbidities in 785–786t
psychiatric side effects of antiseizure
medications 786, 787t
psychotropics and risk of seizures
in people with 788–791,
789–791t
interactions between antiretroviral drugs
and psychotropics 780–781, 781t
interferon-alpha-induced depression in
779
psychotropic medications for people with
learning disabilities
general considerations 797
key practice areas 797–798
medications for behaviour
disorder 799–800t
schizophrenia 778
secondary mania 779–780
22q11.2 deletion syndrome

- clinical features 794
management of psychiatric disorders in people 795*t*
psychiatric disorders in people with 794, 795*t*
human sexual response 172*t*
Huntington's disease (HD) 803
cognitive symptoms 807
mental and behavioural symptoms 804–806, 805–806*t*
mental state and behavioural changes in 806*t*
motor symptoms 803, 804*t*
huperzine A 619
hydroxychloroquine 621
hydroxyzine 639
hyoscine butylbromide (Buscopan) 637
hyoscine hydrobromide (scopolamine) 637
hyperglycaemia 164
hyperlipidaemia 164
hyperprolactinaemia 46, 168
antidepressants and 398–399, 398–399*t*
and antipsychotics 168
contra-indications 169
effects of antipsychotic medication on prolactin concentration 168*t*
management 169
summary of management 169–170, 170*t*
treatment of 169
hypertension 161–162
hypertriglyceridaemia 149
hypnotics in breastfeeding 704, 715*t*
hypokinetic rigidity 804*t*
hypomania, treatment of 547
hyponatraemia 164–166
- idalopirdine 621
iloperidone 712*t*, 725*t*
imipramine 368, 369, 742*t*
Individual Case Safety Reports from VigiBase 610
infant exposure 702
inhalation 871
injectable diamorphine 491
inpatient detoxification 456
insomnia 102
Instrumental Activities of Daily Living 609–610
interferon-alpha-induced depression 779
interictal psychiatric disorders 785
International Classification of Diseases 10 (ICD-10) 451
intoxication 867–868
intracranial/intracerebral haemorrhage (ICH) 411–412, 412*t*
intramuscular (IM) clozapine 192
general recommendations for prescribing 192*t*
intramuscular injections 932
site of administration of 932–935*t*
intramuscular (IM) thiamine preparations 462
intranasal naloxone 474–475, 475*f*
intravenous treatment 58
irritability/agitation 805*t*
isotretinoin 920*t*
- ketamine/esketamine 58, 333, 367, 925*t*, 938*t*
adverse effects 329–330*t*
background 328
dosing recommendations for different routes of 329–330*t*
mechanism 328
route 328
ketanserin 590
- lactate dehydrogenase 911*t*
LAI. *See* long-acting injectable (LAI)
lamotrigine 650, 690, 691, 713*t*, 728*t*, 744*t*, 824*t*, 835*t*, 905–906, 906*t*
laxatives 635, 640*t*
learning disabilities, psychotropic medications for people with
behavioural problems to 797
general considerations 797
key practice areas 797–798
medications for behaviour disorder 799–800*t*
mental illness 797
lemborexant 730*t*
levetiracetam 590
levodopa 918*t*
levomilnacipran 389, 727*t*
licensed indications 923–924
light therapy 645
linaclotide 234
lipoproteins 911*t*
liquid fluoxetine 583
lisdexamfetamine 569, 571, 580, 716*t*
lisinopril 917*t*
lithium 238, 376, 581, 602, 714*t*, 728*t*, 744–745*t*, 779, 800, 810, 820, 824*t*, 836*t*
acute treatment of mania 247–248
adverse effects 250
angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitors 252–253
augmentation of antidepressants in unipolar depression 248–249
bipolar depression 248–249
carbamazepine 254
clinically relevant drug interactions 254*t*
discontinuation 251–252, 252*t*
diuretics 253
formulations 250
interactions with other drugs 252
maintenance treatment of 248
mechanism of action 247
non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) 253–254
on-treatment monitoring 251
plasma levels 249
prescribing and monitoring 252*t*
pre-treatment tests 251
prophylaxis of unipolar depression 249
and suicide 249
toxicity 250–251
uses of 249
liver function tests (LFTs) 723, 724
lofepramine 389, 743*t*
long-acting injectable (LAI) 67
antipsychotic preparations 21, 92–93
differences between 70
long-acting injectable antipsychotic medication 67, 74–75
advice on prescribing 68–70, 69*t*
differences between 70
doses and frequencies 69*t*
loramide 635
loratadine 639
lorazepam 472, 934*t*
low-density lipoprotein (LDL) 149
loxapine 857*t*
lubiprostone 234
lumateperone 652, 725*t*, 739*t*, 851
lumateperone tosylate 710*t*
lurasidone 143–144, 271, 554, 710*t*, 725*t*, 739*t*, 820, 824*t*
- malabsorptive procedures 822
mania 810
acute treatment of 247–248
second-generation antipsychotics 269–270
symptoms of 547
treatment of 264, 547
massage therapy 644–645
MCI. *See* mild cognitive impairment (MCI)
mebeverine 637
medication adherence 897–898
assessing 900–901
depot/long-acting antipsychotics 902
financial incentives 902–903
impact of non-adherence 898–899
mapping out interventions 899–901
monitoring adherence and assessing attitudes to 901
rate of non-adherence to 898
strategies for improving adherence 899
taking aids 902
Medication Adherence Rating Scale (MARS) 901
medication-induced sedation 885
medicines 885. *See also* drugs
adherence, NICE guideline for 4
melfloquine 918*t*
melatonin 583, 730*t*, 925*t*
adult and paediatric studies of 593–594
preparations of 593
in RCTs 594
in treatment of insomnia 593
adverse effects 594
dose 594–595, 595*f*
efficacy 593–594
Melissa balm 644
memantine (ExibaR) 604, 605–606*t*, 610, 612, 615*t*, 624, 820
borderline personality disorder (BPD) 5
doses of 609
extended release (ER) 608–609
prospective data for 612
mental capacity, assessment of 667
mental disorder 883
Mental Health Act (MHA) 603, 927
arranging and preparing for SOAD visits 928
capacity 929–930
civil and forensic detention sections 927–928
community patients 931
completion of forms T2 and T3, 928
consent 929
electro-convulsive therapy (ECT) 931
Section 132 duty of managers of hospitals 930
Section 62 urgent treatment 930

- statutory consultees 928–929
 mental illness 785
 effects of 883
 metabolic syndrome, development of 724
 metformin 126
 methadone 482, 825*t*
 buprenorphine and 479*t*
 clinical effectiveness 478–481
 first week 481–482
 induction and stabilisation in
 community 481
 initial total daily dose 481
 initiation on acute ward 493
 intoxication 482
 overdose 482
 prescribing information 480
 recommended ECG monitoring 483,
 484*t*
 and risk of torsades de pointes/QT
 interval prolongation 482
 severe hepatic/renal dysfunction 482
 starting dose for patients 480
 subsequent period 482
 methylphenidate 569, 571, 652, 716*t*,
 729*t*, 800, 825*t*, 925*t*
 metoclopramide 589, 635
 MHA. *See* Mental Health Act (MHA)
 mianserin 707*t*
 midazolam 58, 938*t*
 mild alcohol dependence 459
 mild cognitive impairment (MCI) 611, 625
 treatment of 625
 vitamin E for 618
 milnacipran 389, 727*t*
 minerals 7
 Mini Mental State Examination
 (MMSE) 607, 613, 631
 minocycline 582
 mirtazapine 367, 650, 688, 707*t*, 727*t*,
 743*t*, 779, 857*t*
 misuse, drugs of 530–533
 moclobemide 389, 707*t*, 743*t*
 modafinil 570, 693, 716*t*, 811
 moderate alcohol dependence 459, 459*t*
 'moderate-effect' drugs 142
 monitor respiratory rate (RR) 473
 monoamine oxidase inhibitors
 (MAOIs) 308, 380, 381*t*, 673, 688,
 707*t*, 727*t*
 monotherapy, antipsychotic
 polypharmacy to 20
 Montreal Cognitive Assessment 607
 mood disorders 868
 mood stabilisers 581, 864*t*
 borderline personality disorder (BPD) 5
 in breastfeeding 704
 psychotropics in bariatric surgery
 824–825, 824–825*t*
 RCTs of 650
 treatment with 690–692
 morphine 638
 movement disorders 872
 MS. *See* multiple sclerosis (MS)
 multicomponent interventions 645
 Multi-Disciplinary Team (MDT) 603
 multi-episode schizophrenia 26–27
 multiple sclerosis (MS) 808
 anxiety 809
 bipolar disorder 810
 cognitive impairment 810
 depression 808
 fatigue 810–811
 pseudobulbar affect (PBA) 809
 psychosis 810
 recommendations for
 treatment 808–809
 music therapy 644
 myocarditis 222–223
 myoclonus 804*t*

 nalmefene, alcohol 464
 naloxone 474–475
 administration, flowchart for 474, 475*f*
 intranasal 474–475, 475*f*
 naloxone (Suboxone) 490
 naltrexone 800, 925*t*
 alcohol 463–464
 NICE clinical guidelines 464
 in relapse prevention 496
 dose of 497
 initiating 496
 Naranjo scale 920, 921*t*
 National Birth Defects Prevention
 Study 683
 National Institute for Health and Care
 Excellence (NICE) guidance 375,
 562, 609, 617, 624, 673, 693, 758,
 897
 schizophrenia 48–50
 NbN. *See* neuroscience-based nomenclature
 (NbN)
 negative symptoms
 adjunctive therapy for 33
 pharmacological treatment of 32
 in schizophrenia 32–34
 Netherlands Clozapine Collaboration
 Group 236
 neurocognitive disorders 780
 neuroleptic malignant syndrome
 (NMS) 131, 132*t*
 neuroscience-based nomenclature
 (NbN) 46
 neutropenia 236–237, 238
 nicotine 871
 dependence 467
 depression and anxiety 872
 drug interactions 873
 movement disorders and Parkinson's
 disease 872
 placebo-controlled trial of 589
 psychotropic effects 871
 replacement therapy 872
 schizophrenia 871–872
 smoking cessation 873
 withdrawal symptoms 873
 nicotine and smoking cessation 503
 bupropion 506
 adverse effects 506
 clinical effectiveness 506
 preparations and dose 506
 electronic cigarettes and
 vaping 506–507
 adverse effects 507–509
 clinical effectiveness 507
 preparations and dose 507
 nicotine replacement therapy (NRT) 503
 adverse effects 505
 clinical effectiveness 503–505
 preparations and dose 504*t*
 varenicline
 adverse effects 505–506
 clinical effectiveness 505
 preparations and dose 505
 nicotine replacement therapy (NRT) 503
 adverse effects 505
 clinical effectiveness 503–505
 preparations and dose 504*t*
 nitroprusside 939*t*
 NNT. *See* number needed to treat (NNT)
 nomenclature 46
 non-adherence
 to antipsychotic treatment 6
 determinants of 898–900, 902
 impact of 898–899
 rate of 898
 non-compliance 905
 lamotrigine 905–906, 906*t*
 non-psychotropics, psychiatric side
 effects of 917
 adverse drug reactions (ADRs) with
 917–920*t*
 differential diagnosis of 920–921, 921*t*
 non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs
 (NSAIDs) 253–254, 621
 norclozapine 838
 nortriptyline 368, 743*t*, 809
 NRT. *See* nicotine replacement therapy
 (NRT)
 number needed to treat (NNT) 307

 obsessive compulsive behaviours 805*t*
 obsessive compulsive disorder (OCD) 424,
 583, 795*t*
 olanzapine 5, 25–26, 53, 149, 151,
 161, 181, 271, 296, 554, 581,
 589, 646, 647, 648*t*, 710*t*, 726*t*,
 740*t*, 758, 770*t*, 799, 810, 824*t*,
 834, 836*t*, 839, 851, 857*t*, 923,
 935*t*, 939*t*
 long-acting injection 80
 dosing schedules 80*t*
 post-injection syndrome 80–81
 switching 80
 pamoate monohydrate 933*t*
 reductions of dose 106–107*t*
 older people
 absorption 602
 AChE-Is in AD
 interactions 613
 memantine 612–613
 NICE recommendations 617
 other treatments 618
 reasons for stopping treatment 616
 when to stop treatment 613–616,
 614–615*t*
 administering medicines in
 foodstuffs 603
 ageing body 601
 analgesics
 antihistamines 639
 antihypertensives 639
 NSAIDs and paracetamol 638
 opiates 638–639
 other cardiac drugs 639
 statins 639
 antibiotics 640–641, 640–641*t*
 antidepressants and 674–675*t*

- behavioural and psychological symptoms of dementia (BPSD) 644
- antidepressants 649–650
- benzodiazepines 649
- cognitive enhancers 649
- electroconvulsive therapy (ECT) 652–653
- melatonin and sleep disturbances in AD 651–652
- miscellaneous agents 652
- mood stabilisers/anticonvulsants 650–651
- non-drug measures 644–645
- bronchodilators
- anticholinergic bronchodilators 637
- beta-agonists 637
- hypersalivation 638
- myasthenia gravis (MG) 638
- theophylline 637
- commonly used psychotropics in dementia 604
- adverse effects, cholinesterase inhibitors 610–611
- Alzheimer's disease (AD) 604, 605–606*t*
- combination treatment 609
- dosing and formulations 608–609
- efficacy of cognitive enhancers used in 607
- other effects 608
- switching between drugs used in 607–608
- tolerability 609–610
- dementia with Lewy bodies (DLB) 624
- distribution 602
- drug interactions 602–603
- excretion 602
- H₂ antagonists and proton pump inhibitors (PPIs) 640
- medication doses of commonly used psychotropics in 657–665
- medicines within food and drink 667
- additional information 670–671, 671*f*
- assessment of mental capacity 667
- guidance on covert administration 667–669
- summary of process 669–670
- metabolism 602
- mild cognitive impairment (MCI) 625
- novel treatments 622–623
- omega-3 fatty acids 619–621
- other dementias 625
- pharmacological measures
- analgesics 645
- antipsychotics in 645–646
- clinical information for antipsychotic use in 647–649
- increased mortality with antipsychotics in 646–647
- sedating antihistamines 652
- safer prescribing for physical conditions in dementia
- alpha-blockers for urinary retention 635
- anticholinergic drugs used in urinary incontinence 631–635, 632–634*t*
- drugs used in GI disorders. *See* GI disorders, drugs used in
- summary of clinical practice guidance with anti-dementia drugs from BAP 625, 626*t*
- trazodone and dibenzoylmethane 622
- treatment of depression in 674–675*t*, 674–676
- vascular dementia (VaD) 623–624
- omega-3 fatty acids 619–621
- Cochrane review of 619
- in schizophrenia 99
- overall 100
- prevention 99
- summary recommendations 100
- treatment 99
- ondansetron 590
- opioid antagonists, borderline personality disorder (BPD) 5
- opioid dependence
- buprenorphine 483–484, 484*t*
- alternative oral opioid preparations 490–491
- brands of oral buprenorphine and bioavailability 485–486
- buprenorphine starting dose 486
- less than daily dosing 489–490
- with naloxone (suboxone) 490
- overdose with 490
- patient-controlled analgesia (PCA) 488–489, 489*t*
- prolonged-release buprenorphine injection 484–485, 485*t*
- stabilisation dose of 489
- sublingual buprenorphine 484
- transferring from methadone to 487–488
- transferring from prescribed opioids to 488
- detoxification and reduction regimes 494
- injectable diamorphine for maintenance prescribing 491
- intranasal naloxone 474–475, 475*f*
- methadone 482
- clinical effectiveness 478–481
- first week 481–482
- induction and stabilisation in community 481
- initiation on acute ward 493
- intoxication 482
- overdose 482
- recommended ECG monitoring 483
- and risk of torsades de pointes/QT interval prolongation 482
- severe hepatic/renal dysfunction 482
- subsequent period 482
- naltrexone in relapse prevention 496
- dose of 497
- initiating 496
- ongoing prescribing 493
- OST maintenance medication 478
- pain control in patients on OST
- analgesia for methadone-prescribed patients 497–498
- breastfeeding 499
- neonatal abstinence syndrome (NAS) 499
- substitute prescribing during pregnancy 499
- prescribing for 474
- OST safely 478
- psychotropic medications in patients with 493–494
- substitution treatment 475–478, 477*t*
- treatment
- of opioid overdose 474–475
- on psychiatric ward 491–492, 492*t*
- withdrawal in community setting
- buprenorphine 495
- methadone 495
- withdrawal in specialist addiction inpatient setting
- buprenorphine 495
- methadone 495
- opioids 601
- overdose, treatment of 474–475
- substitution treatment 475–478, 477*t*
- withdrawal in community setting
- buprenorphine 495
- methadone 495
- withdrawal in specialist addiction inpatient setting
- buprenorphine 495
- methadone 495
- oral buprenorphine and bioavailability 485–486
- oral/inhaled treatment 56
- oral opioid preparations 490–491
- orlistat 234
- orthostatic hypotension 160–161, 646–647
- management of 160–161*t*
- risk factors for 160*t*
- osteoporosis 8
- OST maintenance medication 478
- oxcarbazepine 650
- oxybutynin 631
- oxycodone 638–639
- pain control in patients on OST
- analgesia for methadone-prescribed patients 497–498
- breastfeeding 499
- neonatal abstinence syndrome 499
- substitute prescribing during pregnancy 499
- paliperidone 554, 711*t*, 726*t*, 740*t*, 836*t*
- paliperidone palmitate 933*t*, 934*t*
- approximate dose equivalence 84*t*
- dose and administration information 83*t*
- dosing of 86*t*
- monthly 83, 83–86
- points to note 83–85
- switching to 85*t*
- PANDA trial 2019, 307
- panic disorder 423
- PANSS total score 97
- parenteral thiamine (vitamin B1) 458–459
- Parkinson's disease (PD) 814, 872
- cholinesterase inhibitors in 816
- depression in 814
- pimavanserin 816
- psychosis in 815–816
- paroxetine 687, 707*t*, 743*t*, 820

- pathological laughing or crying (PLC) 809
- patient-controlled analgesia (PCA) 488–489, 489*t*
- PD. *See* Parkinson's disease (PD)
- pemoline 811
- penfluridol 95
- penicillins 917*t*
- people living with HIV (PLWH) 778, 779
- neurocognitive impairment in 780
- people with epilepsy (PWE) 785
- psychiatric symptoms in 785–786*t*
- peppermint oil 637
- pergolide 589
- perphenazine decanoate 932*t*
- persistent negative symptoms 32
- personality disorder 451
- perthidine 638
- P-glycoprotein (P-gp) 851
- pharmacodynamic interactions 379
- antidepressants
 - MAOIs 380, 381*t*
 - SSRIs/SNRIs 380
 - tricyclic antidepressants 379–380
- pharmacokinetics 866, 867*t*
- absorption 866
 - changes 822
 - interactions 378, 851, 866, 867*t*
 - metabolism 866
- pharmacological treatments 587
- pharmacotherapies 578
- phenelzine 743*t*
- phenothiazines 711*t*, 726*t*
- phenytoin 602, 836*t*
- phosphate 911*t*
- physical co-morbidity 673, 798
- physical deterioration 829
- physical illness 172
- physiological hyper-arousal 567
- PICU. *See* psychiatric intensive care unit (PICU)
- pimavanserin 711*t*, 726*t*, 740*t*, 816
- pimozide 588, 740*t*
- piperazine phenothiazines 3
- pipotiazine palmitate 933*t*
- pitolisant 730*t*
- plasma concentration assay 833
- plasma levels
- determination 834
 - target range of 834
- plasma lipids, antipsychotic medications on 149
- clinical management of
 - dyslipidaemia 150–151
 - clozapine 150
 - effect of antipsychotic drugs on
 - lipids 149
 - olanzapine 149–150
 - screening and monitoring 150
- plecanatide 234
- pneumonia, antipsychotics and 181–182
- polymorphism 851
- polysubstance abuse 512
- postmortem blood concentrations 847
- factors affecting 848*t*
- post mortem redistribution (PMR) 847
- post-stroke depression 362
- prophylaxis 362
 - treatment 362–363
- post-traumatic stress disorder (PTSD) 424
- assessment and treatment of 567
 - clinical guidance 567–568
 - diagnosis of 567
 - diagnostic issues 567
- postural hypotension 161
- potassium 911*t*
- prazosin 635
- prednisolone 621
- pregabalin 424, 590, 651, 809
- pregnancy
- bipolar disorder in 691–692
 - bipolar illness during 689
 - treatment with mood
 - stabilisers 690–692
 - depression in 689
 - during pregnancy and
 - postpartum 685
 - discussions with pregnant women 681
 - drug choice in 679–681
 - other antidepressants 688–689
 - psychiatric illness during 679
 - psychosis in 684–685
 - during pregnancy and
 - postpartum 681–682
 - psychotropics in 679, 694*t*
 - sedatives 692–693
 - ADHD 693–694, 693–694*t*
 - rapid tranquillisation 693
 - SSRIs 687–688
 - treatment with antidepressants 685–686
 - treatment with antipsychotics
 - first generation 682
 - second-generation 683–685
 - tricyclic antidepressants 686
- pregnant women, discussions with 681
- Prescribing Observatory for Mental Health (POMH-UK) quality improvement programme 20
- product licence (PL) 923, 925, 925*t*
- common unlicensed uses of drugs in 925, 925*t*
- prolactin 168, 911*t*
- antidepressants and 398–399*t*
 - concentration, antipsychotic
 - medication on 168*t*
 - routine monitoring of 398
- prolactin release 398
- prolonged-release buprenorphine injection 484–485, 485*t*
- promethazine 639, 652, 693, 715*t*, 729*t*
- hydrochloride 935*t*
- prophylaxis 264
- in bipolar disorder 296
 - combination treatment 297–298
 - optimising lithium treatment 297
 - dose for 27, 376
 - of unipolar depression 249
- protein 911*t*
- proteinuria 735
- proton pump inhibitors (PPIs) 640
- prucalopride 234
- pseudobulbar affect (PBA) 809
- psychiatric aspects
- acute illness 8
 - atypical eating disorders 10
 - bulimia nervosa and binge eating
 - disorder 9
 - co-morbid depression 9
 - co-morbid disorders 9
 - psychotropic medicines 8
 - relapse prevention 9
- psychiatric conditions, drug treatment of
- borderline personality disorder (BPD) 3–4
 - antidepressants 4–5
 - antipsychotics 4
 - management of crisis 5
 - memantine 5
 - mood-stabilisers 5
 - opioid antagonists 5
- delirium 13
- choice of drug 15
 - clinical subtypes of 13
 - diagnostic criteria for 13
 - drugs used to treat 15–18, 15–18*t*
 - general principles 14
 - management 14
 - outcome 14
 - pharmacological prophylaxis 15–18, 15–18*t*
 - prevalence 13
 - risk factors 13–14
 - tools for evaluation 13
- eating disorders 7
- anorexia nervosa (AN), general
 - guidance 7
- physical aspects
- electrolytes 7–8
 - osteoporosis 8
 - vitamins and minerals 7
- psychiatric aspects
- acute illness 8
 - atypical eating disorders 10
 - bulimia nervosa and binge eating
 - disorder 9
 - co-morbid depression 9
 - co-morbid disorders 9
 - psychotropic medicines 8
 - relapse prevention 9
 - psychiatric illness 172, 871
 - at end of life 829
 - prescribing in patients with 829–830*t*
- psychiatric intensive care unit (PICU) 58
- psychiatric medicines 883–885, 884*t*, 885*t*
- psychiatric side effects 921
- psychiatry
- intravenous formulations in 937–939*t*
 - intravenous medication in 937–939*t*
 - off-label prescribing in 924
- psychogenic erectile dysfunction 405
- psychosis 806*t*, 810
- associated with stimulant
 - drugs 512–513
 - in childhood and adolescence 554
 - effects of 172–173
 - electroconvulsive therapy and 96
 - adverse effects 97
 - summary 97
 - treatment-refractory
 - schizophrenia 96–97
 - first episode of 25–26
 - in Parkinson's disease (PD) 815–816
 - psychotic depression 332–333

- psychotropic drugs 856
 amisulpride 837
 aripiprazole 837
 clozapine 838–839
 concentrations 835
 interpreting sample results 834–835
 olanzapine 839
 plasma level monitoring of 833–834
 quetiapine 839–840
 risperidone 840–842, 841–842
 target ranges 835–836, 835–836t
 use of 723
- psychotropics 657–665, 777
 antiretroviral drugs and 780–781, 781t
 biochemical and haematological effects of 907–916, 907–916t
 effects 871
 electroconvulsive therapy (ECT) and 353–354t
 induced sexual dysfunction 176t
 medicines 8
 in overdose 875–879, 875–879t
 and surgery 889
 changing formulation 893
 to continue/not to continue 889–893, 890–892t
 risks associated with continuing 894
 risks associated with discontinuing 893
 smoking 893
 target ranges for 841t
 treatment with 785
- psychotropics and cytochrome (CYP) function 851–855
- psychotropics in bariatric surgery 822
 alcohol 826
 drugs
 antidepressants 823, 823t
 antipsychotics 823–824t
 formulations 822
 miscellaneous agents in 825
 mood stabilisers 824–825, 824–825t
 general recommendations 826
 pharmacokinetic changes 822
 risk of weight gain after 826
 wider considerations 826
- PTSD. *See* post-traumatic stress disorder (PTSD)
- QTc, prolongation and arrhythmia 144t
 quetiapine 149, 271, 296, 554, 581, 589, 648t, 711t, 726t, 740t, 758, 771t, 799, 824t, 836t, 839–840, 923
- quinolones 917t
- randomised controlled trials (RCTs) 56, 461–462, 608, 609–610, 620, 757
 of first-generation antipsychotics 554
 for frontotemporal dementias 625
 meta-analyses of 125
 meta-analysis of 624
 of valproate 651
- rapid cycling bipolar affective disorder 285–286, 285t
- rapid tranquillisation (RT) 56, 596–597, 596–597t, 693
- Rating of Medication Influences Scale (ROMI) 901
- RCTs. *See* randomised controlled trials (RCTs)
- reboxetine 708t, 728t, 743t
 refractory schizophrenia 198, 202
 alternatives to clozapine 198–202t
 relapse prevention 9, 463
 naltrexone in 496
 dose of 497
 initiating 496
- Relative Infant Dose (RID) 702
- remission therapy 645
- renal function 602
- renal impairment 735
 anti-dementia drugs in 738, 747–748t
 antidepressants in 738, 741–744t
 antipsychotics in 738, 739–741t
 anxiolytics and hypnotics in 738, 745–747t
 classification of 736f
 mood stabilisers in 738, 744–745t
 notes 737–738
 prescribing in 735–736
 psychotropics in 738, 748–749t
 stage of 736, 736t
- Research Units on Paediatric Psychopharmacology (RUPP) Autism Network 580
- residual mood symptoms 296
- restricted repetitive behaviours and interests (RRBI) 579
- re-titration 905
 drugs 906t
- risperidone 5, 53, 149, 161, 271, 554, 581, 583, 589, 647, 648t, 711t, 726t, 740t, 771t, 778, 799, 810, 824t, 836t, 840–842, 841–842, 923
 in autism spectrum disorder (ASD) 582
 clinical trial data 647
 dosage of 582
 FDA Guidance for 582
 licensing studies of 51–52
 linear dose reductions of 104f
- risperidone long-acting injection (Risperdal Consta) 87–88
 switching to 88–89t
- risperidone microspheres 934t
- risperidone/paliperidone 857t
- risperidone subcutaneous LAI 91
 approximate equivalent doses 91
- rivastigmine (ExelonR) 608, 613, 614t, 772t, 820
 clinical trials of 624
 patches 609
- road traffic accidents (RTAs) 883
- rosiglitazone 621
- Royal College of Psychiatrists 924
- RT. *See* rapid tranquillisation (RT)
- salivary melatonin measurements 594
- SAWS. *See* Short Alcohol Withdrawal Scale (SAWS)
- schizoaffective disorder 820
- schizophrenia 25–26, 153, 554, 778, 795t, 820, 868, 871–872
 acute and maintenance treatment of 5
 alcohol 469
 catatonia in 136
 complication in 136
 diagnosis of 20, 26
 FGAs role in 46
 first-episode 42
- negative symptoms in 32
 notes 43–44
 pharmacological treatment of 777
 relapse/acute exacerbation of 43, 44
 symptoms of 871
 treatments 6
 algorithms for 42–44
 discontinuation in 20
- scopolamine 939t
- SCRAs. *See* synthetic cannabinoid receptor agonists (SCRAs)
- secondary mania 779–780
- second generation antipsychotics (SGAs) 14, 15t, 571, 778
 depression 270
 equivalent doses of 14
 maintenance 270
 mania 269–270
 relative merits of 47
- sedation 862t
- sedatives 692–693
 ADHD 693–694, 693–694t
 rapid tranquillisation 693
- seizures
 with antipsychotics 795t
 dose-related risk of 788
 reports of 788
- selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs) 308, 380, 541, 557–558, 601, 603, 673, 687–688, 727t, 778–779, 799
 abnormal vaginal bleeding 412
 alternatives to 414
 and bleeding 409
 concomitant treatment with 162
 foetal exposure to 687
 gynaecologic and obstetrical haemorrhage 412
 maternal 687
 percentage figures rounded to nearest integer 411
 post-partum haemorrhage (PPH) 412–413
 prescription of 307
 risk factors for bleeding 409
 surgical and post-operative bleeding 413–415, 413t
 treatment 543
- selegiline 368, 918t
- semagacestat 622
- semorinemab 623
- serotonin–norepinephrine reuptake inhibitors (SNRIs) 558
- serotonin reuptake inhibition 409, 409t
- serotonin syndrome 337–341, 338–341t
 swapping and stopping 337–341, 338–341t
- sertindole 711t
- sertraline 369, 389, 423, 542–543, 561, 650, 687, 708t, 809
- serum creatinine 602
- severe alcohol dependence 460, 460t
- severe hepatic/renal dysfunction 482
- sexual dysfunction 404
 antipsychotics and 172
 effects of antipsychotic drugs 173, 174–175t
 effects of psychosis 172–173
 human sexual response 172, 172t

- treatment 175, 176*t*, 177
- SGAs. *See* second generation antipsychotics (SGAs)
- Short Alcohol Withdrawal Scale (SAWS) 458*t*
- sick sinus syndrome 610
- sildenafil (Viagra) 177
- simulated presence therapy 645
- simvastatin 621
- single-photon emission computed tomography (SPECT) study 871
- SJW. *See* St. John's Wort (SJW)
- sleep difficulties 810
- sleep disturbance 582–583
- 'Slenyto' mimicking 593
- smoking 871, 893
- and psychotropic drugs 856–858, 856–858*t*
- smoking cessation 503, 873
- bupropion 506
- adverse effects 506
- clinical effectiveness 506
- preparations and dose 506
- electronic cigarettes and vaping 506–507
- adverse effects 507–509
- clinical effectiveness 507
- preparations and dose 507
- nicotine replacement therapy (NRT) 503
- adverse effects 505
- clinical effectiveness 503–505
- preparations and dose 504*t*
- varenicline
- adverse effects 505–506
- clinical effectiveness 505
- preparations and dose 505
- Snoezelen multisensory stimulation therapy 645
- SOAD visits 928
- social impairment 579
- social phobia 424
- sodium 912*t*
- sodium valproate 581, 772*t*, 800, 925*t*
- solanezumab 622
- solfenacin 631
- solriamfetol 730*t*
- somatic symptoms, treatment of 462, 462*t*
- souvenaid 621
- spontaneous remission 175
- SSRIs. *See* selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs)
- statins 919*t*
- stimulant-associated depression 513
- stimulants, pharmacological treatment of
- dependence on 511
- amfetamines 511
- detoxification 511–512
- existing dexamfetamine patients 512
- maintenance 512
- cocaine
- detoxification 511
- substitution treatment 511
- polysubstance abuse 512
- psychosis associated with stimulant drugs 512–513
- stimulant-associated depression 513
- St. John's Wort (SJW) 417
- adverse effects 418
- drug interactions 418–419
- in treatment of depression 417
- stopping lithium and mood stabilisers
- duration of tapering 302
- duration for long-term treatment 302
- practice guide to tapering 302–303
- rationale for 301
- withdrawal effects from 301, 301*t*
- 'street drugs' and prescribed psychotropic drugs 526, 527–528*t*
- sublingual buprenorphine 484
- substance, interacting 867*t*
- substance misuse 172, 451–452, 535
- alcohol 535
- benzodiazepines 535–536
- stimulants 536
- tobacco 535
- substance-use disorders 452
- suicide risk 26
- suicide/suicidality 309
- lithium and 249
- sulpiride 589, 711*t*, 726*t*, 740*t*
- Summary of Product Characteristics (SPCs) 905, 923
- super-sensitivity psychosis 29
- supraventricular conduction abnormalities 610
- surgery, psychotropics and 889
- changing formulation 893
- to continue/not to continue 889–893, 890–892*t*
- risks associated with continuing 894
- risks associated with discontinuing 893
- smoking 893
- Swedish cohort study 692–693
- symptom-triggered regimen 460
- syndrome of inappropriate antidiuretic hormone (SIADH) 164
- synthetic cannabinoid receptor agonists (SCRAs) 520
- acute intoxication 520–521, 521*t*
- dependence and withdrawal 522
- management of 521
- related psychosis 522
- tachycardia 646–647
- TADS. *See* Treatment of Adolescents with Depression Study (TADS)
- tamsulosin 635
- tapering
- before 444
- dosage 442
- pattern of 443–444, 443*f*
- practical application of 349–350
- process of 444–445
- theoretical basis for 348, 349*f*
- tardive dyskinesia (TD) 5, 46
- first-choice agents 118*t*
- treatment of 117–119
- TCAs. *See* tricyclic antidepressants (TCAs)
- TD. *See* tardive dyskinesia (TD)
- TDF. *See* tenofovir disoproxil fumarate (TDF)
- tenofovir disoproxil fumarate (TDF) 779
- testosterone 175, 912*t*
- tetrabenazine 589, 803, 804*t*
- tetracyclines 917*t*
- theophylline 602
- 'therapeutic' plasma levels 837
- thiazide diuretic 253
- thioxanthenes 3
- thromboembolism 222
- thyroid-stimulating hormone 912*t*
- thyroxine 912*t*
- tiapride 589
- tic disorders, clinical trials of 587
- Tics and Tourette syndrome
- adrenergic $\alpha 2$ agonists 588
- antipsychotics 588–589
- detection and treatment of comorbidity 587
- education and behavioural treatments 587
- other drugs 589–590, 590*f*
- pharmacological treatments 587
- tilavonemab 623
- tobacco smoking 871
- tolterodine 631
- topiramate 581, 589, 650, 714*t*, 851
- TORDIA. *See* Treatment of Resistant Depression in Adolescents (TORDIA)
- toxicity 250–251
- tramadol 590
- trauma-focused CBT (TF-CBT) 567
- trazodone 369, 389, 622, 650, 708*t*, 744*t*, 772*t*, 858*t*, 939*t*
- Treatment of Adolescents with Depression Study (TADS) 541
- Treatment of Resistant Depression in Adolescents (TORDIA) 541, 543
- treatment-resistant depression 317–319, 317*f*, 318–319*t*, 543
- management of 321, 321*t*
- reported treatments 323–324*t*
- treatment-resistant schizophrenia (TRS) 96–97
- diagnosis of 16
- tricyclic antidepressants (TCAs) 308, 379–380, 389, 570, 673, 686, 708*t*, 858*t*
- doses of 809
- tricyclics 728*t*, 836*t*
- trifluoperazine 740*t*, 851
- triiodothyronine 912*t*
- trimipramine 744*t*
- trospium 635
- TRS. *See* treatment-resistant schizophrenia (TRS)
- 22q11.2 deletion syndrome
- clinical features of 794
- management of psychiatric disorders in people 795*t*
- psychiatric disorders in people with 794, 795*t*
- UDP-glucuronosyl transferase (UGT) 851
- unipolar depression 264
- augmentation of antidepressants in 248–249
- urate (uric acid) 912*t*
- urea 912*t*
- USA Ablify MyCite 902
- VaD. *See* vascular dementia (VaD)
- valbenazine 730*t*
- validation therapy 645
- valproate 650, 690, 714*t*, 729*t*, 745*t*, 820, 825*t*, 836*t*, 939*t*
- adverse effects 259
- discontinuation 260

- formulations 257
- indications 257–258
- interactions with other drugs 260–261, 261*t*
- mechanism of action 257
- monotherapy 691
- on-treatment monitoring 260
- plasma levels 259
- pre-treatment tests 259
- use in women of child-bearing age 260
- valproic acid 809
- vaping 871
- varenicline
 - adverse effects 505–506
 - clinical effectiveness 505
 - preparations and dose 505
- variable-dose reduction 459
- vascular dementia (VaD) 620, 623–624
- management of 623
- venlafaxine/desvenlafaxine 308, 389, 688, 709*t*, 728*t*, 744*t*, 779, 799
- venous thromboembolism,
 - antipsychotics and
 - evidence of association 187
 - latest data 187, 188*t*
 - mechanisms 188, 188*t*
 - outcomes 188
 - practice points 189
 - summary 188
 - vilazodone 389, 728*t*
- vitamins 7
- vortioxetine 367, 389, 709*t*, 728*t*, 744*t*
- warfarin 602
- water intoxication 164
- weight gain 826
 - antipsychotic-induced 123–124, 123*t*
 - monitoring 125
 - treatment and prevention 125–126, 126–127*t*
 - treatment of 125
 - weight loss 125
- Wernicke's encephalopathy 461
- parenteral B-complex 461–462
- presentation 461
- prophylactic thiamine 461
- treatment of somatic symptoms 462, 462*t*
- World Health Organisation (WHO) 451, 897
- ZA. *See* zuclopenthixol acetate (ZA)
- zagotenemab 623
- Z drugs 729*t*
- ziprasidone 554, 581, 589, 712*t*, 740*t*, 771*t*, 810, 824*t*
- zolidem 135–136, 693
- zopiclone 715*t*
- zuclopenthixol acetate (ZA) 60–61, 60–64
- zuclopenthixol decanoate 933*t*
- zuclopenthixol 741*t*, 858*t*



Journal of Psychopharmacology
1–40

© The Author(s) 2018
Reprints and permissions:
sagepub.co.uk/journalsPermissions.nav
DOI: 10.1177/0269881118776738
journals.sagepub.com/home/jop



Joint BAP NAPICU evidence-based consensus guidelines for the clinical management of acute disturbance: De-escalation and rapid tranquillisation

This contribution is being co-published in the following journals: *Journal of Psychopharmacology* and *Journal of Psychiatric Intensive Care*. To request permission to re-use any part of this contribution, please contact SAGE Publishing: <https://uk.sagepub.com/en-gb/eur/journals-permissions>.

Maxine X Patel^{1*}, Faisal N Sethi^{2*} With co-authors (in alphabetical order): Thomas RE Barnes³, Roland Dix⁴, Luiz Dratcu⁵, Bernard Fox⁶, Marina Garriga⁷, Julie C Haste⁸, Kai G Kahl⁹, Anne Lingford-Hughes¹⁰, Hamish McAllister-Williams^{11,12}, Aileen O'Brien¹³, Caroline Parker¹⁴, Brodie Paterson¹⁵, Carol Paton¹⁶, Sotiris Posporelis¹⁷, David M Taylor¹⁸, Eduard Vieta⁷, Birgit Völlm¹⁹, Charlotte Wilson-Jones²⁰ and Laura Woods²¹

*Joint first author (both first authors contributed equally to the article)

Abstract

The British Association for Psychopharmacology and the National Association of Psychiatric Intensive Care and Low Secure Units developed this joint evidence-based consensus guideline for the clinical management of acute disturbance. It includes recommendations for clinical practice and an algorithm to guide treatment by healthcare professionals with various options outlined according to their route of administration and category of evidence. Fundamental overarching principles are included and highlight the importance of treating the underlying disorder. There is a focus on three key interventions: de-escalation, pharmacological interventions pre-rapid tranquillisation and rapid tranquillisation (intramuscular and intravenous). Most of the evidence reviewed relates to emergency psychiatric care or acute psychiatric adult inpatient care, although we also sought evidence relevant to other common clinical settings including the general acute hospital and forensic psychiatry. We conclude that the variety of options available for the management of acute disturbance goes beyond the standard choices of lorazepam, haloperidol and promethazine and includes

¹Department of Psychosis Studies, Institute of Psychiatry, Psychology and Neuroscience, King's College, London, UK

²Maudsley Hospital, South London and Maudsley NHS Foundation Trust, London, UK

³The Centre for Psychiatry, Imperial College London, London, UK

⁴Wotton Lawn Hospital, together NHS Foundation Trust, Gloucester, UK

⁵Maudsley Hospital, South London and Maudsley NHS Foundation Trust, London, UK

⁶National Association of Psychiatric Intensive Care Units, East Kilbride, Glasgow, UK

⁷Hospital Clinic, Institute of Neurosciences, University of Barcelona, Barcelona, Catalonia, Spain

⁸Mill View Hospital, Sussex Partnership NHS Foundation Trust, Hove, East Sussex, UK

⁹Department of Psychiatry, Social Psychiatry and Psychotherapy, Hannover Medical School, Hanover, Germany

¹⁰The Centre for Psychiatry, Imperial College London, London, UK and Central North West London NHS Foundation Trust, London, UK

¹¹Institute of Neuroscience, Newcastle University, Newcastle upon Tyne, UK

¹²Northumberland, Tyne and Wear NHS Foundation Trust, Newcastle upon Tyne, UK

¹³South West London and St Georges NHS Foundation Trust, London, UK and St George's University of London, London, UK

¹⁴Central & North West London NHS Foundation Trust, London, UK

¹⁵CALM Training Ltd, Menstrie, UK

¹⁶Oxleas NHS Foundation Trust, Dartford, UK

¹⁷South London and Maudsley NHS Foundation Trust, London, UK and Institute of Psychiatry, Psychology and Neuroscience, King's College London, London, UK

¹⁸South London and Maudsley NHS Foundation Trust, London, UK

¹⁹Institute of Mental Health, School of Medicine, University of Nottingham, Nottingham, UK

²⁰Maudsley Hospital, South London and Maudsley NHS Foundation Trust, London, UK

²¹The Hellingly Centre, Forensic Health Care Services, Sussex Partnership NHS Foundation Trust, East Sussex, UK

Corresponding authors:

Maxine X Patel, Department of Psychosis Studies, Institute of Psychiatry, Psychology and Neuroscience, King's College London, Box 68, 16 De Crespigny Park, London SE5 8AF, London, UK.
Email: Maxine.patel@kcl.ac.uk

Faisal N Sethi, Maudsley Hospital, South London and Maudsley NHS Foundation Trust, Denmark Hill, London SE5 8AZ, UK.
Email: Faisal.sethi@slam.nhs.uk

oral-inhaled loxapine, buccal midazolam, as well as a number of oral antipsychotics in addition to parenteral options of intramuscular aripiprazole, intramuscular droperidol and intramuscular olanzapine. Intravenous options, for settings where resuscitation equipment and trained staff are available to manage medical emergencies, are also included.

Keywords

Acute disturbance, violence, aggression, rapid tranquillisation, de-escalation, antipsychotics, benzodiazepines, psychiatric illness

Table of contents

Introduction	3	Levomepromazine	20
Acute disturbance	3	Zuclopenthixol acetate	21
De-escalation and rapid tranquillisation	3	Dexmedetomidine	22
Restraint and restrictive practices	4	Barbiturates	22
Rapid tranquillisation practice in the UK	5	Valproate	22
National guidelines	5	Ketamine	22
International perspectives	6	Electroconvulsive therapy	23
A patient's perspective	6	From evidence to practice	24
Guideline scope	7	Modifiers, special settings and circumstances	24
Method	7	Pregnancy	24
		Intoxication and withdrawal	25
De-escalation	8	Rapid tranquillisation in the general hospital	26
		Psychiatric intensive care unit and inpatient forensic settings	26
Benzodiazepines	9	Seclusion	26
Pharmacokinetics	9	Physical health monitoring	26
Oral	11	An algorithm for the management of acute disturbance	27
Oral versus intramuscular	11	Model and components	27
Intramuscular monotherapy	11	Principles	28
Intramuscular benzodiazepines in combination with other medications	12	Recommendations for interventions	29
Intravenous	14	Discussion	31
Adverse effects	14	Overview	31
From evidence to practice	15	Key uncertainties and research recommendations	31
Common antipsychotics	15	Conclusions	32
Pharmacokinetics	15	Acknowledgements	32
Oral	15	Declaration of conflicting interest	32
Oral versus intramuscular	16	Funding	32
Intramuscular monotherapy	17	References	32
Intramuscular antipsychotics in combination with other medications	18		
Intravenous	18		
Adverse effects	19		
From evidence to practice	19		
Other interventions	19		
Promethazine	19		
Loxapine	20		

Introduction

Acute disturbance

This guideline covers the clinical management of ‘acute disturbance’, which we use here as a composite term to include the concepts of ‘agitation’, ‘aggression’ and ‘violence’ in the context of an acute mental state associated with an underlying mental and/or physical disorder. No commonly accepted definitions exist for any of these concepts.

Definitions of agitation from the scientific literature regularly cited in guidance documents have tended to be restricted to the field of dementia. One of the most commonly used definitions was proposed by Cohen-Mansfield (1986) who defined agitation in those with cognitive impairment or dementia as ‘inappropriate verbal, vocal or motor activity that is not explained by needs or confusion per se’ (NICE, 2015a; Seitz et al., 2011). The Agitation Definition Working Group of the International Psychogeriatric Association described agitation in the context of dementia as ‘exhibiting behaviour consistent with emotional distress ... manifesting excessive motor activity, verbal aggression, or physical aggression, and ... evidencing behaviours that cause excess disability and are not solely attributable to another disorder’ (Cummings et al., 2015). National Institute for Health and Care Excellence (NICE) guidelines on conditions other than dementia have not used published definitions of agitation, although NG10 does identify agitation as one of the ‘symptoms or feelings that may lead to violence and aggression’ (NICE, 2015b). It recognises agitation as part of an ‘escalating behaviour pattern, starting with restlessness, moving through agitation and irritability, through verbal aggression ... and culminating in an assault’.

The terms aggression and violence are often used interchangeably and NICE Guideline NG10 does not clearly differentiate between the two terms, stating that ‘violence and aggression refer to a range of behaviours or actions that can result in harm, hurt or injury to another person, regardless of whether the violence and aggression is behaviourally or verbally expressed, physical harm is sustained or the intention is clear’ (NICE, 2015b). Alternatively, a widely accepted definition of violence by the World Health Organization (2014) is the ‘intentional use of physical force or power, threatened or actual, against oneself, another person, or against a group or community that either results in or has a high likelihood of resulting in injury, death, psychological harm, maldevelopment, or deprivation’. The World Health Organization definition excludes damage to property and also requires intent, which might be problematic in the context of acutely mentally unwell individuals and therefore does not seem entirely appropriate for the purposes of this guideline. Some use the term aggression to denote a state that is less severe than violence, whereas others use it to describe behaviours such as damage to property rather than against the person (Yudofsky et al., 1986).

Thus, we define ‘acute disturbance’ as an acute mental state associated with an underlying mental and/or physical disorder in the form of: (i) agitation and distress, which is excessive verbal or motor activity that may or may not lead to aggression or violence; or (ii) actual aggression or violence entailing harm, hurt or injury to another person, or damage to property regardless of

whether it is verbally or behaviourally expressed, physical harm is sustained, or the intention is clear.

De-escalation and rapid tranquillisation

In this guideline, we define ‘de-escalation’ as an explicitly collaborative process involving a range of verbal and non-verbal interventions that aim to reduce agitation and distress, with the purpose of averting aggression or violence. This differs slightly from the definition of de-escalation given by the NICE Guideline NG10 (NICE, 2015b), in that our definition explicitly focuses on non-verbal, as well as verbal interventions.

Defining rapid tranquillisation (RT) has been the subject of debate. The goal of RT is to achieve a state of calmness without sedation, sleep or unconsciousness, thereby reducing the risk to self and/or others while maintaining the ability of the patient to respond to communication (NICE, 2005). However, for acute disturbance, sedation may also be considered to be an appropriate interim strategy. Guidelines have also varied, with the key difference being whether only parenteral formulations of medication are considered to constitute RT or if oral formulations are also included. NICE (2015b) concentrates solely on the parenteral route and the aim of achieving sedation, and so defines RT as ‘the use of medication by the parenteral route (usually intramuscular or, exceptionally intravenous) if oral medication is not possible or appropriate and urgent sedation with medication is required’. This differs from the earlier definition in the NICE (2005) guideline, which explicitly included oral formulations too. For clarity, the definition of RT in our guideline will be parenteral pharmacological intervention, in keeping with the NICE (2015b) guideline.

If oral medication is administered, this may be the only pharmacological intervention, although in some cases RT will be administered subsequently, and so we will refer to this time period as ‘pre-RT’. The aim of offering oral medication to agitated patients is to pre-emptively address acute disturbance and to avoid escalation and the need for parenteral medication and physical restraint. Oral medication administered in the context of the clinical management of acute disturbance will often be an ‘as required’ or pro re nata (PRN) prescription, given at the discretion of nursing staff, when deemed necessary. Arguably, this can lead to patients receiving unnecessary medication (Curtis and Capp, 2003). However, it is common practice for PRN medication to be administered to patients admitted to acute psychiatric wards for acute disturbance. This practice is based on clinical experience rather than evidence as there are no published randomised controlled trials (RCTs) comparing the efficacy of PRN medication with regular medication for the treatment of psychotic symptoms or acute disturbance (Douglas-Hall and Whicher, 2015). It should also be highlighted that the prescribing of antipsychotics PRN can lead to polypharmacy and high cumulative doses of antipsychotics, for which there is also no evidence of increased effectiveness over standard doses for the management of acute disturbance (Paton et al., 2008; Royal College of Psychiatrists, 2014). This practice also carries an enhanced burden of adverse effects and associated monitoring requirements. The same is true for benzodiazepines. Nonetheless, PRN medication can also play an important part of the clinical management of acute disturbance to reduce the risk of incidents.

Formulation and route of administration are also of particular importance for pre-RT and RT medication. Some medications are available in more than one formulation and not all of them are individually examined in the available literature. The pharmacokinetics of different formulations of the same drug can vary markedly; this critically includes time to peak plasma concentration (Tmax), which is a useful but crude gauge for time to onset of action of effect (usually some level of sedation). There is a complex interplay between absorption, Tmax, time to onset of action of effect, duration of desired effect, half-life and risk of acute side effects (NPSA, 2007). In general, oral tablets, capsules and liquids are absorbed via the gastrointestinal tract and have the longest Tmax. All orally administered medicines are absorbed into the bloodstream and pass through the liver before entering the systemic circulation. Where that medicine is metabolised by the liver, this 'first-pass' effect results in a lower proportion of an oral formulation being available in the systemic circulation than if the same medication is administered by the intramuscular (IM) or intravenous (IV) route. The magnitude of any first-pass effect is medication specific but for some medications this will mean that lower parenteral doses than oral doses are effective. When a medicine is administered by the IM route, Tmax is generally reached more rapidly compared with oral administration; this can be helpful when time to onset of action is important. Adherence to medication can be enhanced by using oro-dispersible tablets designed to dissolve on contact with saliva or water. Buccal, sublingual and oral-inhaled absorption have similar or shorter Tmax when compared with IM formulations. The fastest time to peak plasma levels, and hence the shortest time to Tmax, is for IV medications. Thus, IV administration leads to a more immediate onset of action than for IM and is more predictable and easier to titrate.

Restraint and restrictive practices

In clinical practice, RT tends to be associated with the use of restraint and restriction. Manual restraint is defined by NICE (2015b) as 'a skilled, hands-on method of physical restraint used by trained healthcare professionals to prevent patients from harming themselves, endangering others or compromising the therapeutic environment. Its purpose is to safely immobilise the patients'. In our guideline, we will use the term physical restraint instead of manual restraint; the former being the more commonly used term in the United Kingdom (UK). Physical restraint can occur without the use of RT and vice versa. A patient, once physically restrained, may agree to take oral medication. In general, however, for a patient to receive RT safely, some degree of physical restraint is required.

Physical restraint should be distinguished from mechanical restraint, the latter being very rarely used in the UK. Mechanical restraint is defined as 'a form of restrictive intervention that refers to the use of a device (e.g. belt or cuff) to prevent, restrict or subdue movement of a person's body, or part of the body, for the primary purpose of behavioural control' (Department of Health, 2015). It is used in response to behaviour, that poses significant risk to the individual or others of serious long-term harm or immediate injury, and involves the use of some sort of equipment. The Care Quality Commission (2014) recognised

that the use of mechanical restraint may be considered as the least restrictive intervention in some rare and specific cases and may present less risk to the individual than the alternative of prolonged physical restraint or transfer to a more restrictive setting.

Seclusion is defined in the Mental Health Act Code of Practice as 'the supervised confinement and isolation of a patient, away from other patients, in an area from which the patient is prevented from leaving, where it is of immediate necessity for the purpose of the containment of severe behavioural disturbance which is likely to cause harm to others' (Department of Health, 2015). Seclusion is different from voluntary temporary segregation (sometimes mistakenly referred to as 'time out'), when a patient agrees to spend time in an area away from others, with no restrictions on returning to contact with other patients (Department of Health, 2015). Some mental health services have a designated 'extra care area', which may be an alternative to seclusion; a closely supervised space where a patient may be nursed away from other patients (NAPICU, 2016). Seclusion should only be used when other measures for managing violence have failed. RT may be required at the same time. This can be especially challenging when considering safe monitoring following RT.

There is a drive internationally to reduce restrictive practices. In the UK, there is a government directive to reduce all forms of restrictive practices, with an objective of ending the use of prone (face-down) restraint; restrictive practices should only be used as a last resort in emergency situations (Department of Health, 2014). There is also a focus on corporate responsibility; each Trust Board should be fully informed of the position of their Trust on restrictive practices and the management plan to reduce their use, should identify an executive director to lead on recovery approaches and reducing restrictive practices, and should publish an annual report on its use of restrictive interventions (Mental Health Network, 2014).

Low-level evidence regarding interventions to reduce seclusion includes the following: increased monitoring and regulation, leadership changes, staff training and changes, improved staff to patient ratios, treatment plan improvements and even aromatherapy (Gaskin et al., 2007). Recently, one study found that the introduction of body cameras for staff has led to a reduction in untoward incidents (Hardy et al., 2017).

Training is important when trying to reduce restrictive practices. Recognising the early signs of agitation is crucial, with the aim of reducing further restrictive interventions, and staff should be trained in the use of techniques aimed at defusing anger. NICE (2015b) recommends that all staff receive training in de-escalation, although we note that a systematic review of 38 observational studies concluded that overall the quality of evidence was low and the findings were inconsistent, so the positive effects from training staff in de-escalation techniques could not be confirmed (Price et al., 2015). A large number of companies also offer prevention and management of violence and aggression (PMVA) training programmes (Bowers et al., 2006) as well as 'breakaway' training sessions to help staff to escape when they are being physically attacked. As yet, there are no nationally agreed recommendations regarding how and when such techniques should be used, and the effectiveness of the training approaches currently offered is largely unsupported by evidence (McKenna and Paterson, 2006).

Rapid tranquillisation practice in the UK

In 2016, the Prescribing Observatory for Mental Health (POMH-UK; Barnes and Paton, 2011) initiated a quality improvement programme in mental health services addressing RT in the context of the pharmacological management of acute disturbance (POMH-UK, 2017). A total of 58 specialist mental health Trusts or healthcare organisations participated in the baseline clinical audit and submitted data on 2172 episodes of acute disturbance in patients on acute adult ($n = 1455$), psychiatric intensive care ($n = 444$) or low, medium or high secure wards ($n = 273$) (POMH-UK, 2017). Being the largest audit of such practice, the data provide a useful insight into the clinical management of acute disturbance in mental health services in the UK. In the vast majority of episodes ($n = 2061$; 95%), one or more non-pharmacological interventions were employed. Predominantly, these were de-escalation strategies (verbal de-escalation and/or distraction and/or removal of precipitating factors), control and restraint, or observation. Control and restraint was approximately three times more likely to be used in association with parenteral medication, as compared with oral medication (POMH-UK, 2017).

For these episodes of acute disturbance, oral medication only was administered in half ($n = 1091$; 50%). Parenteral (IM and/or IV) medication only was given in 43% of episodes ($n = 936$); this was almost all administered IM, the use of IV medication being limited to only two instances of IV haloperidol usage. A combination of oral and IM/IV medication was given in 145 (7%) of episodes. In over four-fifths of episodes ($n = 1756$; 81%), the patient was already prescribed regular antipsychotic medication and for 5% this was high dose. The administration of additional antipsychotic medication for acute disturbance tipped the total daily dosage over the high-dose threshold for patients in a further 13% of episodes (POMH-UK, 2017).

Of the episodes of acute disturbance for which an oral medication was used, this was most commonly an oral benzodiazepine alone ($n = 726$; 59%). An oral benzodiazepine was also used in combination with oral antipsychotic medication in 15% of episodes and with oral promethazine in a further 5%. The choice of oral benzodiazepine was lorazepam in over 90% of cases, with a median dose of 1 mg. In addition to its use in combination with an oral benzodiazepine, oral antipsychotic medication was used on its own in 12% of such episodes and with oral promethazine in 2%. Haloperidol was by far the most commonly used oral antipsychotic medication, in nearly three-quarters (72%) of cases, with a median dose of 5 mg (POMH-UK, 2017).

An IM benzodiazepine was administered in two-thirds (67%) of episodes where parenteral medication was used and in over a third of instances (39%) was the only IM medication. Lorazepam was almost invariably the IM benzodiazepine used (99% of instances), with a median dose of 2 mg. An IM antipsychotic medication was used in half (50%) of such episodes and for around a fifth of episodes (18%) was the only IM medication used. IM haloperidol was the antipsychotic most commonly prescribed (67%), with a median dose of 5 mg. Other IM antipsychotics used were IM aripiprazole (14%), IM olanzapine (9%), IM promazine (1%) and IM levomepromazine (1%). IM promethazine alone was administered in 74 (7%) of episodes (POMH-UK, 2017).

Combinations of IM medications were used in 381 episodes, including 295 cases with IM benzodiazepine plus IM antipsychotic. The most common combination was IM lorazepam plus IM haloperidol. The combination of IM promethazine plus IM antipsychotic ($n = 44$; 4%) was used relatively infrequently, despite being the recommended combination in the NICE Guideline NG10 (NICE, 2015b). The combination of IM benzodiazepine plus IM promethazine ($n = 42$; 4%) was used almost as frequently as IM promethazine plus IM antipsychotic. It also suggests that around one quarter of patients did not respond to RT (POMH-UK, 2017).

Nationally, there is evidence of poor adherence to physical health monitoring recommendations. The POMH-UK audit found that there was no documented physical health monitoring in the hour after RT in 42% ($n = 450$) of episodes and in 45% ($n = 201$) of these episodes no line-of-sight psychiatric observations were recorded either. Thus, in almost 20% of the episodes recorded nationally there was no documented monitoring (physical health or psychiatric) in the hour following RT (POMH-UK, 2017).

National guidelines

In the UK, the most prominent current clinical guideline on RT is entitled *Violence and aggression: Short-term management in mental health, health and community settings* (NG10, NICE, 2015b). This was an update of a previous guideline (CG25) published in 2005 (NICE, 2005). NICE also published an additional guideline (NG11) on prevention and intervention for challenging behaviour presented by people with learning disabilities (NICE, 2015c). RT is mentioned in current NICE guidelines for psychosis and schizophrenia (NICE, 2014a), bipolar disorder (NICE, 2014b) and dementia (NICE, 2006), all of which point to CG25 for detailed recommendations, as they were published prior to NG10. NICE antenatal and postnatal mental health guidelines provide additional specific recommendations for RT in pregnancy (NICE, 2014c). In addition to these guidelines, which provide comprehensive clinical recommendations, NICE has also reviewed specific medications used in RT including IM promethazine (NICE, 2014d) and inhaled loxapine (NICE, 2013). This information is subsumed within NG10.

NG10 refers to the use of pharmacotherapy in three specific situations: (i) in an individualised management package to decrease the risk of violence or aggression; (ii) as required (PRN) medication as part of a strategy to de-escalate or prevent situations that may lead to violence and aggression; and (iii) in the context of RT. This is a useful basic framework when drawing up treatment plans. NICE recommendations also include developing a multidisciplinary strategy targeting specific symptoms as soon as a patient at risk of violence or aggression is admitted to an inpatient unit, which should then be reviewed at least weekly. If RT is being used, it is recommended that a senior doctor reviews the medication regimen at least daily. There should be clarity about the rationale and circumstances for PRN medication with maximum daily doses specified that should ordinarily not exceed British National Formulary (BNF) (Joint Formulary Committee, 2017) limits except under the direction of a senior doctor.

In terms of drug choice for RT, NICE recommends either IM lorazepam alone or IM haloperidol plus IM promethazine for RT in adults, taking the following factors into account: the patient's preferences or advance statements and decisions; pre-existing physical health problems or pregnancy; possible intoxication; previous response to these medications, including adverse effects; potential for interactions with other medications; and the total daily dose of medications prescribed and administered. IM lorazepam is preferred if there is limited clinical information available, if the patient has not been prescribed antipsychotic medication before, if there is evidence of cardiovascular disease including a prolonged corrected QT interval (QTc), or if no electrocardiogram (ECG) has been carried out (NICE, 2015b). If there is a partial response to IM lorazepam, a further dose is recommended. However, if there is no response, IM haloperidol plus IM promethazine is recommended for consideration. Similarly, if there is a partial response to IM haloperidol plus IM promethazine a further dose is suggested, but if there is no response, IM lorazepam is recommended if it has not already been used. If it has, then a review and possible second opinion is suggested.

In the UK, NICE guidelines are complemented by those produced by the British Association for Psychopharmacology (BAP). Those relating to, for example, schizophrenia (Barnes et al., 2011) and bipolar disorder (Goodwin et al., 2016) provide additional recommendations regarding the generic treatment of these conditions, which will contribute to an overall decrease in risk of acute disturbance. However, with the exception of the BAP perinatal guidelines (McAllister-Williams et al., 2017) there are no specific recommendations made with regards to RT.

Other documents that are relevant to prescribers managing acute disturbance include the Royal College of Psychiatrists consensus statement on the use of high-dose antipsychotic medication (Royal College of Psychiatrists, 2014), recommendations on the use of licensed medication in unlicensed situations (Royal College of Psychiatrists Psychopharmacology Committee, 2017), and prescribing guidance for unlicensed medicines by the General Medical Council (GMC, 2013).

International perspectives

The most recent comprehensive review of the evidence base for the management of acute disturbance is a consensus document produced by the World Federation of Societies for Biological Psychiatry (WFSBP) (Garriga et al., 2016). The guideline was developed after a systematic review, and a consensus exercise of 24 international experts from different countries based on the Delphi method.

Their recommendations emphasised that proper assessment of acute disturbance includes ruling out any possible medical cause as a first step. The differential diagnosis process should include not only a review of the medical and psychiatric history, but also a timely reconstruction of the episode of acute disturbance, physical, neurological and mental examination as well as a minimum set of complementary explorations (vital signs, capillary glucose, oxygen saturation and urine toxicology test). Verbal de-escalation is recommended before pharmacological intervention together with environmental modifications and a focus on strategies to enhance engagement with the patient during all aspects of the clinical management process. Physical restraint should be considered a last-resort strategy. For pharmacological

treatment, the WFSBP guidelines suggest the patient should be involved as much as possible in the selection of the medication.

Pharmacological treatments should match the underlying condition and, if no specific diagnosis is achieved, acute disturbance should be considered to emerge from a medical cause. In acute disturbance due to a medical condition or alcohol intoxication, the WFSBP guidelines suggest that antipsychotics should be preferred over benzodiazepines. If acute disturbance is due to alcohol withdrawal, then the use of benzodiazepines over antipsychotics is advised. If a psychiatric disorder is causing the acute disturbance, antipsychotic medication is recommended for psychotic agitation whereas benzodiazepines should be considered for non-psychotic agitation. The route of medication administration will depend on the severity of the scenario and the degree of patient cooperation, prioritising non-invasive formulations (oral or inhaled) over IM/IV routes. It advises attempts to achieve monotherapy, avoiding medication combinations where possible. Medication adjustment for renal and/or hepatic impairment as well as in the elderly has to be considered (Garriga et al., 2016).

Guidelines highlight a need to increase critical discussion on effective interventions in the management of acute disturbance and in recent years the literature has expanded. This includes the early consensus work of Allen et al. (2001, 2005) as well as relevant reports by: the American Association for Emergency Psychiatry (Holloman and Zeller, 2012) with Project BETA; the American College of Emergency Physicians (Lukens et al., 2006); and the Joint Commission on Accreditation of Healthcare Organisations and the Centres for Medicare and Medicaid (The Joint Commission, 2000). The current WFSBP guidelines (Garriga et al., 2016) were preceded by agitation guidance sections in other documents related to the management of schizophrenia and mania (Grunze et al., 2010; Hasan et al., 2012). Other European societies have also created guidelines, including the Austrian Society for Neuropsychopharmacology and Biological Psychiatry (Kasper et al., 2013; Frey et al., 2015).

A patient's perspective

The following excerpt was provided by a member of the consensus group who has lived experience of acute inpatient clinical settings and is the patient representative on the Executive Committee of the National Association of Psychiatric Intensive Care Units.

Patients so acutely disturbed to be considered for RT are extremely fearful of almost anything they cannot easily understand. All comparisons are likely iniquitous; trust in almost everything is virtually impossible. Worse still, if such fragility of trust is dashed, this can lead to aggression, or even violence. This emphasises the importance that RT should only be used when severe disturbance, aggression or violence is deemed to be imminent. Within this context, we consider how we might most effectively bring about a calmer state avoiding further harm to the patient, others or objects.

To be rapid, the efficacy of tranquillisation is fostered by the route of least ambiguity, measured by the willingness of both the patient and clinician to engage. Deviation from a clear simple approach may have the effect of loading years to the process of recovery. Consequently, listening and careful observation of the patient and environment are advised as this may yield clues to what triggered the heightened anxiety. Recent change of people

or objects may be exacerbating factors and addressing these may help calm the patient. Extreme care in introducing no more anomalies is advised. Ideally, changes should be explained by whoever is considered most trusted and a single communicator will reduce confusion. However stressful the situation becomes, clinicians should be easily identifiable, well trained and presenting positively and confidently in their actions as lack of confidence will exacerbate the anxiety of the patient.

Further, only medicines and routes of administration that clinicians are confident and sure of should be used. Lack of confidence can reduce effectiveness. Communication with the patient as soon as is sensible is key and should include an explanation of the procedure they have been through and why, with great care given to instil feelings of hope. Carefully tailored reward for patient participation towards manageable and sustainable goals can be considered. Post-treatment sharing of both patient and clinician experience is essential to evolve improved specific and general protocols. Clinicians from all disciplines across all health services should share common practices (Allen et al., 2003; NICE, 2012) as this will result in fewer patient presentations through greater understanding.

Guideline scope

The BAP has published a series of evidence-based guidelines for the use of drugs in patients with psychiatric disorders with an emphasis on producing comprehensive, concise and useable guidance based on a review of the relevant evidence (see <https://www.bap.org.uk>). The National Association of Psychiatric Intensive Care and Low Secure Units (NAPICU) has a long history of promoting best multidisciplinary practice in clinical services that manage acute disturbance and challenging behaviour in mental disorders (see <http://www.napicu.org.uk>). The goal of this joint BAP-NAPICU guideline is to provide recommendations for healthcare professionals in the use of de-escalation methods and psychotropic medication for the clinical management of acute disturbance. Most of the evidence reviewed here relates to emergency psychiatric care or acute psychiatric inpatient care, although we also sought evidence relevant to other common clinical settings including the general acute hospital and forensic psychiatry. These guidelines are designed to be complementary to previous guidelines and reports. For example, the most recent NICE guidelines reviewed RCT evidence for the use of medications for acute disturbance, although they placed relatively less emphasis on the use of oral formulations of medication (NICE, 2015b).

At the outset it was decided that we would not attempt to carry out a comprehensive review of evidence for the management of acute disturbance relating to children and young people, those with a learning disability or traumatic brain injury, or older adults with or without dementia. Although these are important topics, the paucity of good evidence relating to these groups would make it impossible to write similarly evidence-based recommendations. Further, we have not reviewed the numerous clinical rating scales for measuring the degree or frequency of acute disturbance and the outcomes of management approaches (for a recent review see Garriga et al., 2016). Staffing, cultural influences and judicial settings are also not considered. The use of seclusion as an intervention, as well as physical and mechanical restraint measures

and techniques are briefly described above, but we have not reviewed them extensively and make no recommendations.

Method

A group of experts was invited to an initial meeting in June 2017 organised jointly by the BAP and NAPICU. Expert participants were asked to review key areas and highlight recent data from systematic reviews, RCTs or observational studies. After each brief presentation, a discussion of the important issues identified areas of agreement or uncertainty. A literature review was then conducted to compile the evidence for the key areas on which the consensus points had been based. This review, together with proposed recommendations and their evidence grading, was circulated to members of the consensus group and discussed in January 2018 at a second smaller meeting of the experts. Their feedback was, as far as possible, incorporated into the final version of these guidelines.

The guideline recommendations are linked to relevant evidence through the literature review. However, our methodology and available funding did not allow for a systematic review of all possible data from primary sources. Existing systematic reviews, RCTs and observational studies were identified from PubMed, Medline and EMBASE and from the Cochrane Database. Published NICE guidelines on RT (CG25, NICE, 2005; NG10, NICE, 2015b; and Quality Standard QS154, NICE, 2017) were also considered.

The categories of evidence applied to the literature reviewed and the strength of the recommendations made are described in Table 1, which is derived from work by Shekelle et al. (1999) on the development of clinical guidelines. RCTs must have an appropriate control treatment arm. For primary efficacy this should include a placebo condition, although for psychological interventions this may not be feasible. 'Strength of recommendation' is rated A to D according to category of evidence. A lower rating implies a less extensive or robust body of evidence but not necessarily lesser clinical importance. The S category represents a standard of care, which describes a consensus based on good practice standards rather than evidence. In the guideline, the recommendations are grouped altogether (see Recommendations for interventions), rather than at the end of each section of evidence reviewed to enable the reader to see the foundations, upon which the algorithm is based, all in one place.

There are a number of factors that should be considered when deriving recommendations for practice from the existing evidence base:

- For RCTs of RT, trials vary in design and most have a relatively small sample size. Further it is challenging to design trials to demonstrate whether pre-emptive use of oral medication pre-RT leads to reduced need for parenteral RT.
- Primary outcome measures are multiple, diverse and measured at different pre-set time points. Further, they commonly include achieving sedation or the state of falling asleep or time to desirable state. The proportions of participants who become calm are not consistently reported.
- With respect to 'onset of action', the populations treated in clinical trials are very different. Onset of sedation and tranquillisation is often reported in trials but how that relates to treatment of acute disturbance is not defined.

Table 1. Categories of evidence and strength of recommendations.**Categories of evidence for causal relationships and treatment**

Ia: Evidence from meta-analysis of randomised controlled trials

Ib: Evidence from at least one randomised controlled trial

IIa: Evidence from at least one controlled study without randomisation

IIb: Evidence from at least one other type of quasi-experimental study

III: Evidence from non-experimental descriptive studies, such as comparative studies, correlation studies and case-control studies

IV: Evidence from expert committee reports or opinions and/or clinical experience of respected authorities

Strength of recommendation

A: Directly based on category I evidence from meta-analysis of randomised controlled trials, at least one large, good quality, randomised controlled trial or replicated, smaller, randomised controlled trials

B: Directly based on category II evidence from meta-analysis of randomised controlled trials, at least one large, good quality, randomised controlled trial or replicated, smaller, randomised controlled trials, or extrapolated a recommendation from category I evidence

C: Directly based on category III evidence from non-experimental descriptive studies, such as uncontrolled, comparative, correlation and case-control studies, or extrapolated recommendation from category I or II evidence

D: Directly based on category IV evidence from expert committee reports or opinions and/or clinical experience of respected authorities, or extrapolated^a recommendation from category I, II or III evidence

S: Standard of good practice

^aExtrapolation may be necessary because of evidence that is only indirectly related, covers only a part or the area of practice under consideration, has methodological problems or is contradictory.

- RCTs of RT conducted in other countries with different healthcare systems or in different healthcare settings may or may not be generalisable to the UK setting. Similarly, RCTs conducted in acute hospital settings are not necessarily generalisable to psychiatric settings as in the former there is ready access to both anaesthetists and the equipment required to deal with medical emergencies caused by over-sedation.
- Ethical considerations, particularly the requirement that participants in research studies give informed consent, make it difficult to conduct RCTs of RT; this is particularly true in UK settings.
- Patients who are able and willing to give informed consent to participate in such RCTs are less behaviourally disturbed than those who receive RT in routine clinical practice. Thus, the findings of such studies may not be directly extrapolated to more severely disturbed patients for whom clinicians are likely to use tried and tested methods to defuse high-risk situations.
- Trials evaluating the use of an antipsychotic in RT, as compared with placebo, recruit participants who are not already receiving regular antipsychotic medication. Consequently, treatment with a single antipsychotic is confirmed as reducing acute disturbance more effectively than placebo, but the common clinical practice of adding a second PRN antipsychotic to manage acute disturbance, for a patient already prescribed one antipsychotic regularly, is untested in clinical trials.
- In clinical practice, the initial attempt at RT fails to achieve sedation or a state of calmness in a significant minority of participants. In such cases, there is very limited evidence on which to base recommendations for further interventions.

over half (53%) of the patients were subject to de-escalation in the first two weeks of their admission (Lavelle et al., 2016). De-escalation is described as potentially useful in averting the need for physical restraint and it is suggested that de-escalation should generally precede and accompany the use of RT or seclusion (NICE, 2015b). De-escalation can also involve the use of purpose-designed de-escalation rooms or temporary separation from other patients (Royal College of Nursing, 2016).

De-escalation can be considered as a process with discrete phases and identifiable components. Various articles have described theoretical models of de-escalation as involving a series of stages either as a linear process (Bowers, 2014; Paterson et al., 1997) or a circular process (Dix and Page, 2008). The linear model of Bowers (2014) comprised delimiting (establishing safety), clarifying (identification of the patient perspective or need) and resolving (negotiation) to reach a mutual solution. This has some parallels with research in a Danish mental health setting based on staff interviews, where the first phase was described as involving creating a 'safe place' including managing physical distance and environment, and the second phase was establishing mutual relations with empathy, which then underpins the phase of collaborative problem solving (Berring et al., 2016).

Gaynes et al. (2016) conducted a systematic review of the literature examining strategies for preventing aggressive behaviour. Broad criteria allowed inclusion of studies of non-pharmacological interventions and articles included: risk assessment, multimodal programmes, environmental or group psychotherapeutic interventions and medication protocols. From 1983 papers of initial interest, 17 RCTs met their inclusion criteria; of these, only one RCT incorporated de-escalation but was not described in detail. This RCT evaluated the introduction of 'six core strategies' in a multimodal intervention in a Finnish high-security service for men. Patient-days with seclusion, restraint or room observation reduced from 30% to 15% for intervention wards versus from 25% to 19% for control wards conducting treatment as usual ($p < 0.001$). Recorded violent incidents reduced from 1.1% to 0.4% for the intervention wards and from 0.1% to 0% for control wards (Putkonen et al., 2013).

De-escalation

De-escalation is commonly practised in many mental health settings. One study of English acute inpatient services showed that

In the UK, the Safewards Model was evaluated in a cluster RCT of 31 adult acute wards. This model highlighted aspects of working in wards that are considered to identify potential 'flash-points' and described 10 interventions, each of which were designed to contribute to a decrease in conflict or improve management such that the need for containment is reduced. The RCT reported that staff can successfully intervene to manage flash-points to significantly reduce conflict incidents (14.6% decrease; 95% confidence interval, CI, 5.4–23.5%; $p = 0.004$) and the use of physical restraint, seclusion and RT (23.6% decrease; 95% CI 5.8–35.2%; $p = 0.001$) (Bowers et al., 2015). One of the interventions was a specific de-escalation element (Bowers 2014) but this was not evaluated individually and thus the degree of contribution to the overall results obtained is difficult to determine. A large Australian pre-/post-design study involving 18 wards failed to replicate these results; this study found no reduction in restrictive practices including seclusion ($p = 0.76$; Hamilton et al., 2016).

In a non-systematic review of the qualitative literature on de-escalation, 11 of 94 articles were selected for inclusion from which de-escalation components were identified (Price and Baker, 2012). The need to 'behave empathically and respectfully' was highlighted and a number of key themes were identified including: staff skills and characteristics of successful de-escalators; maintaining personal control; verbal/nonverbal skills; and de-escalation context. Collaborative problem-solving and compassionate non-confrontational limit setting were also identified as options (Price and Baker, 2012). Kuivalainen et al. (2017) conducted a qualitative analysis and found that 27% of 133 incident forms for de-escalation in a forensic setting identified some method of environmental management.

Price et al. (2018) conducted semi-structured interviews with inpatient ward staff, including three psychiatric intensive care units in the UK. Their findings suggested that staff differentiated between 'non-physical control techniques' and 'support techniques', the latter representing discrete de-escalation skills and encompassing reframing, problem identification and solving, distraction, reassurance and passive intervention. They highlighted the significance of assessment but also the role of trial and error in attempting to establish which combination of techniques may work best. Similarly, a questionnaire-based survey of nursing staff ($n = 72$) investigated the nature of de-escalation in secure mental health settings and identified a series of key skills including expressing empathy, care, humour and using distraction and calmness (Hallett and Dickens, 2015). Further components included displaying self-control to present in a calm manner, managing the environment (including use of other staff and use of separation) and careful attention to ensure the dignity of the patient was not compromised (Hallett and Dickens, 2017). Providing soothing activities may facilitate emotional regulation (Champagne and Stromberg, 2004). The use of humour may seem intuitively inappropriate in a context in which aggression is imminent and distress evident, but careful and respectful usage may change the patient's emotional experience, subverting what may be the dominance of anger (Paterson and Leadbetter, 1999).

Key de-escalation components are considered in two authoritative guidelines. An American Association for Emergency Psychiatry consensus statement highlights a number of characteristics for effective de-escalation including: the establishment of verbal contact; not being provocative; being concise; listening closely to the patient; respecting their personal space; trying to

agree or agree to disagree; offering choices and optimism; setting clear limits; identifying the wants or feelings of the patient; and debriefing the patient and staff (Richmond et al., 2012). In the UK, NICE Guideline NG10 highlights: establishing a working relationship; avoiding provocation; empathising and showing respect; assessing the situation; separating the patient; negotiating; distracting; non-confrontational limit-setting; self-regulatory procedures; and proactive de-escalation planning (NICE, 2015b). Table 2 summarises the interventional components of de-escalation emanating from a review of the literature and provides a brief explanation of each interventional component.

Where acute disturbance may be predictable in a known patient, it is suggested that individualised de-escalation plans should be developed in partnership with the patient, identifying their preferred responses with appropriate adaptations made where the patient has a sensory impairment (Austen, 2005; Department of Health, 2014). Where the patient is not known to staff, general components of de-escalation should be considered. A single member of staff should lead in communicating with the patient (NICE, 2015b; Richmond, et al., 2012). Consideration should be given to environmental change, but staff should remain mindful that the patient's needs for personal space may increase as arousal escalates (Turnbull et al., 1990). The exact nature of the de-escalation intervention will be informed by continual (risk) assessment, dynamic reflection and ongoing identification of the patient's needs; priorities may shift, evolve and fluctuate both during an individual incident and across time (Price et al., 2018; Richter, 2006).

Overall, there is widespread advocacy of de-escalation as an intervention (Department of Health, 2014; NICE, 2015b) with a number of theoretical conceptualisations of the process (Hallett and Dickens, 2017) and a variety of descriptions of the suggested components (Bowers, 2014; Dix and Page, 2008; Paterson and Leadbetter, 1999; Price and Baker, 2012). Nonetheless, there is a paucity of high-quality research evidence demonstrating the effectiveness of specific components of de-escalation.

Benzodiazepines

All benzodiazepines share a common mechanism of action and produce a range of similar effects including anxiolytic, hypnotic, muscle relaxant and anticonvulsant. The individual benzodiazepine medications vary in their propensity for these effects depending on their potency and pharmacokinetics and this should inform the choice of benzodiazepine used for the indication (Baldwin et al., 2013). Benzodiazepines also vary in terms of their available formulations and this will further differ between countries; this is related to availability as well as the convenience of formulations (e.g. lorazepam injection requires refrigeration).

Pharmacokinetics

When benzodiazepines are administered intramuscularly, T_{max} is generally much shorter than for oral formulations (see Table 3); this can be helpful when a swift onset of action is important. However, T_{max} for lorazepam is not much shorter for the IM formulation compared to the oral formulation. Further, lorazepam has a maximum licensed oral dose of 4 mg daily but despite bioequivalence between oral and IM doses, the licensed IM dose can be much higher, as it is based on the weight of the patient

Table 2. De-escalation components.

Component	Description	Highest level of evidence	Other relevant citations
Continual risk assessment	Dynamic cycles of micro-assessment are required. These entail continually monitoring the nature/degree of risk including responses to staff efforts.	Hallet and Dickens (2015): qualitative study surveying medium secure unit staff ($n = 72$); six core themes identified	Dix and Page (2008); Price and Baker (2012); NICE (2015b)
Self-control techniques	Exposure to aggression can have an impact on staff emotional regulation, which needs to be actively and consciously managed.	NICE (2015b): national guideline	Bowers (2014); Paterson and Leadbetter (1999); Richter (2006)
Avoidance of provocation	Understanding and seeking to avoid known triggers or otherwise behaving in a way likely to provoke aggression.	Richmond et al. (2012): consensus statement at a national level	NICE (2015b); Richter (2006)
Respect patient space	Staff should actively increase the personal space they afford the patient to decrease any perceived threat.	NICE (2015b): national guideline	Berring et al. (2016); Paterson and Leadbetter (1999); Richmond et al. (2012); Turnbull et al. (1990)
Management of environment	Moving other patients away or suggesting to the patient that the location of interaction is moved to another room or offering a choice of preferred activity that the patient finds soothing can modify the level of stimulation.	Kuivalainen et al. (2017): qualitative analysis of incident forms ($n = 133$) in a forensic setting; thematic analysis identified this component in 27% of incidents	Bowers (2014); Hallet and Dickens (2015); NICE (2015b); Paterson and Leadbetter (1999); Price and Baker (2012)
Passive intervention and watchful waiting	Consciously minimising the cognitive load of the patient who may be struggling to sustain emotional regulation whilst actively assessing the situation.	Price et al. (2018): qualitative interviews ($n = 20$) with staff from five acute services; thematic analysis identified six sub-themes, including this component	Lowry et al. (2016); NICE (2015b)
Empathy	Display empathy verbally and non-verbally. Appearing calm is helpful, but an acknowledgment of the patient's distress via mirroring can be helpful.	NICE (2015b): national guideline	Berring et al. (2016); Bowers (2014); Richter (2006); Turnbull et al. (1990)
Reassurance	Fear or shame may underlie overt aggression. Reassuring the patient that they are safe, respected, valued and that nobody will harm them, can be critical.	Hallet and Dickens (2015): qualitative study surveying medium secure unit staff ($n = 72$); six core themes identified; this component was a sub-theme of communication	Berring et al. (2016); Nau et al. (2009); Price et al. (2018)
Respect and avoidance of shame	Shame may trigger aggression in patients and staff. Seeking solutions that allow the patient to retain their dignity is important.	Berring et al. (2016): multiple qualitative case studies ($n = 42$) across a variety of clinical settings; this component was repeatedly identified	Bowers (2014); Lavelle et al. (2016); NICE (2015b); Price and Baker (2012); Richmond et al. (2012); Richter (2006)
Appropriate use of humour	Changing the emotional dynamic of a situation underpins de-escalation and the appropriate but importantly empathic use of humour may do this.	Hallet and Dickens (2015): qualitative study surveying medium secure unit staff ($n = 72$); six core themes identified; this component was a sub-theme of interpersonal skills	Berring et al. (2016); Paterson and Leadbetter (1999)
Identification of patient needs	Aggression should be understood as an expression of a need for the patient. Identifying and resolving that need may help avert violence.	Berring et al. (2016): multiple qualitative case studies ($n = 42$) across a variety of clinical settings; this component was described in multiple cases ($n = 5$)	Bowers (2014); Dix and Page (2008); Kuivalainen et al. (2017); Price et al. (2018); Richmond et al. (2012)
Distraction	Distracting the person by changing the focus of the interaction may reduce their distress and decrease their arousal.	Hallet and Dickens (2015): qualitative study surveying medium secure unit staff ($n = 72$); six core themes identified; this component was described by $n = 14$	NICE (2015b)
Negotiation	Identifying mutual goals and a shared consensus may consider underlying control issues as root cause of aggression.	Richmond et al. (2012): consensus statement at a national level	Dix and Page (2008); Duperouzel (2008); Mavandadi et al. (2016); NICE (2015b); Paterson and Leadbetter (1999)
Reframing events for patient	Emotions arise from an interpretation of an event that involves judgements about the motivation of others. Cautious exploration of alternative interpretations may prove helpful.	Price et al. (2018): qualitative interviews ($n = 20$) with staff from five acute services; thematic analysis identified this component	
Non-confrontational limit setting	Explaining the situation calmly, where possible presenting the patient with a choice and avoiding issuing ultimatums.	Hallet and Dickens (2015): qualitative study surveying medium secure unit staff ($n = 72$); 50% ($n = 36$) described this specific component	NICE (2015b); Price and Baker (2012); Richmond et al. (2012); Richter (2006)

Table 3. Benzodiazepine formulations.

Medication	Route	Formulation	Bioavailability	Time to maximum plasma concentration (Tmax)
Clonazepam	Oral	Tablets	90%	1–4 hours
		Liquid	90%	1–4 hours
	IM	Injection	93%	3 hours
Diazepam	Oral	Tablets	76%	30–90 minutes
		Liquid	76%	30–90 minutes
	IM	Injection	Erratic	Erratic
	IV	Injection (emulsion)	100%	≤15 minutes
Lorazepam	Oral	Tablets	100%	2 hours
	IM	Injection	100%	1–1.5 hours
	IV	Injection	100%	seconds/minutes
Midazolam	Buccal	Oromucosal solution	75%	30 minutes
	IM	Injection	>90%	30 minutes
	IV	Injection	100%	seconds/minutes

IM: intramuscular; IV: intravenous.

(0.025–0.03 mg/kg every 6 hours; 1.75–2.1 mg for an average 70 kg man) (Pfizer Ltd, 2014). Oral lorazepam has a Tmax of 2 hours and there is no risk of accumulation on repeated dosing.

For midazolam injection, absorption is rapid and complete, with peak plasma concentration achieved within 30 minutes. It has a faster onset of action (5–20 minutes) than lorazepam and some antipsychotics (Baldaçara et al., 2011; Isbister et al., 2010; Martel et al., 2005; Nobay et al., 2004; TREC Collaborative Group, 2003). Unlike most other benzodiazepines, midazolam is water soluble hence it has a short half-life. In contrast, both diazepam and clonazepam have long half-lives and active metabolites, so multiple dosing is associated with a risk of accumulation and thus a risk of cumulative adverse effects.

Oral

The efficacy of buccal midazolam has only been assessed in a small service evaluation ($n = 27$) in which it was found to reduce agitation (measured indirectly using the Behavioural Activation Rating Scale) (Swift et al., 2002) in 70% of participants within 30 minutes (Taylor et al., 2008). Other oral benzodiazepines have also been used but data are very sparse; for example, Barbee et al. (1992) reported a single randomised double-blind trial for oral alprazolam plus oral haloperidol versus oral haloperidol alone ($n = 28$) but alprazolam is not commonly used in the UK. Review of the literature did not reveal any studies evaluating oral lorazepam, clonazepam or diazepam as monotherapy; despite this, other guidelines still recommend the use of oral lorazepam (NICE, 2005; Wilson et al., 2012b).

Oral versus intramuscular

A larger ($n = 162$) trial by Currier et al. (2004) replicated findings from an earlier study ($n = 37$; Foster et al., 1997) demonstrating that both oral and IM lorazepam had a similar clinically significant effect by 30 minutes after administration, with the effects of both lasting for at least 120 minutes, although this was based on combination arms of oral risperidone plus oral lorazepam versus IM

haloperidol plus IM lorazepam. Therefore, there is no evidence of a clear time advantage in using IM lorazepam when a patient is willing to accept oral lorazepam. There is an absence of trial evidence comparing the oral and IM preparations of other benzodiazepines.

Intramuscular monotherapy

Zaman et al. (2017) conducted a detailed review of the evidence and practice of using benzodiazepines for acute disturbance induced by psychosis; they included 20 RCTs (total $n = 695$) but with no head-to-head studies. Overall, the evidence was weak and most of the trials were too small to highlight differences or to allow strong conclusions to be drawn to inform practice. The authors concluded that there was no difference in improvement in the medium term when benzodiazepines were compared to haloperidol ($n = 188$; five RCTs; RR 0.89; 95% CI 0.71–1.11); and when benzodiazepines were compared to haloperidol plus promethazine, there was a higher risk of lack of improvement with benzodiazepines in the medium term ($n = 200$; one RCT; RR 2.17; 95% CI 1.16–4.05; Zaman et al., 2017).

A Canadian review similarly concluded that the evidence for the comparative efficacy and safety of antipsychotics and benzodiazepines in RT was conflicting and inconclusive (CADTH, 2015). In essence, there are no large, well-designed trials of RT conducted in the UK; the largest RCTs used to inform the UK practice are the four Tranquilização Rápida-Ensaio Clínico (TREC) trials (Rapid Tranquillisation Clinical Trials) and only two of these included a benzodiazepine, see Box 1 and Table 4.

Lorazepam. Although relatively weak, there is more trial evidence for the use of IM lorazepam than for all other parenteral benzodiazepines (Zaman et al., 2017). IM lorazepam was evaluated in one of the TREC trials and was found to be effective but less rapidly so than the combination of IM haloperidol plus IM promethazine (see Box 1 and Table 4) (Alexander et al., 2004). In a double-blind RCT ($n = 201$) IM lorazepam was less effective than IM olanzapine when measured on the Excited Component (subscale) of the Positive and Negative Syndrome

There were four large RCTs, conducted in Brazil and India, that compared the effectiveness of a combination of IM haloperidol plus IM promethazine with a range of other IM strategies, namely: IM midazolam ($n = 301$; TREC Collaborative Group 2003), IM lorazepam ($n = 200$, Alexander et al., 2004), IM haloperidol ($n = 316$, Huf et al., 2007) and IM olanzapine ($n = 300$, Raveendran et al., 2007). All trials recruited from psychiatric emergency rooms and, although primary outcomes differed between studies, all reported on whether the patient was tranquil or asleep at 15–20 minutes after administration of the trial medication. These studies have been criticised for using sleep as a desirable endpoint, but they remain the most methodologically robust studies of RT conducted in psychiatric settings. See Table 4 for a summary of the primary and secondary outcomes relating to sedation as measured by the composite outcome of being 'tranquil or asleep' as well as the outcome measure of being 'asleep'. Potentially serious adverse effects are also reported.

When considered together, the TREC studies lead to the conclusions that: (1) a combination of IM haloperidol plus IM promethazine is more rapidly effective than IM lorazepam or IM haloperidol alone, and as rapidly effective and with a longer lasting sedative effect than IM olanzapine; (2) only IM midazolam was more rapidly sedating than the combination of IM haloperidol plus IM promethazine but respiratory depression was noted in one patient in the midazolam group; (3) IM haloperidol alone was associated with an unacceptably high (6.4%) incidence of acute dystonia, in comparison to the combination of IM haloperidol plus IM promethazine, and this contributed to the decision to stop the trial early after the interim analysis. Based on these trials, it can be concluded that a combination of IM haloperidol 5–10 mg plus IM promethazine 25–50 mg is an effective and safe strategy for RT (Huf et al., 2016; NICE, 2015b). The TREC Collaborative Group (2003) conducted a post-hoc analysis for diagnosis (misusing substances vs psychosis) and found no difference in response to IM midazolam versus IM haloperidol plus IM promethazine.

Box 1. Overview of TREC trials.

Scale (PANSS-EC; Kay et al., 1987; Kay and Sevy, 1990) at 30, 60, 90 and 120 minutes (Meehan et al., 2001). IM lorazepam was found to be more sedating than IM aripiprazole at 2 hours (Zimbroff, 2007).

Midazolam. A number of trials have demonstrated the efficacy of the parenteral formulation as a sole RT agent, including one of the TREC trials (TREC Collaborative Group, 2003). IM midazolam leads to a quicker time to sedation than IM lorazepam or IM haloperidol (Nobay et al., 2004). In one RCT on RT comparing standard doses (10 mg or below) with high doses (above 10 mg) of IM droperidol, IM midazolam, IM haloperidol or IM droperidol plus IM midazolam, the median time to sedation was 20 minutes in both dose groups and it concluded that a high dose did not result in more rapid or effective sedation, but was associated with double the incidence of side effects compared with standard doses (Calver et al., 2013).

In a further RCT ($n = 144$) there were more participants in the IM ziprasidone group who remained acutely disturbed at 15 minutes than in the IM midazolam and IM droperidol groups respectively ($p = 0.01$), but there was no difference in the number of participants remaining acutely disturbed at 30 minutes ($p = 0.08$), and at 45 minutes more of those in the midazolam group were more acutely disturbed than in the IM droperidol and IM ziprasidone groups ($p = 0.03$), highlighting that action of IM midazolam was rapid but not sustained (Martel et al., 2005). Another trial similarly highlighted the problematic short half-life for IM midazolam with its clinical effects not lasting as long as IM haloperidol or IM lorazepam; times to arousal were reported as 81.9 minutes for IM midazolam, 126.5 minutes for IM haloperidol and 217.2 minutes for IM lorazepam (Nobay et al., 2004). Its short half-life was also linked to the need for repeated doses; 62% receiving IM midazolam required additional sedation as compared with IM midazolam plus IM droperidol (41%) or IM droperidol alone (33%) (Isbister et al., 2010). In an RCT conducted in Brazil, 70% of the participants receiving IM midazolam plus IM haloperidol required mechanical restraint, which was significantly higher than for the other treatment arms: IM ziprasidone (33%), IM haloperidol alone

(20%), IM haloperidol plus IM promethazine (17%), IM olanzapine (3%) (Baldaçara et al., 2011).

Others. There is no relevant evidence of efficacy for IM diazepam in RT. In a very small double-blind trial ($n = 16$) IM clonazepam was effective but slower acting than IM haloperidol (Chouinard et al., 1993). One small study ($n = 28$) assessed IM flunitrazepam for RT and found it to be as effective at 30 minutes as IM haloperidol was in reducing the Overt Aggression Score (OAS; Yudofsky et al., 1986) ($F = 72.42$; $df = 6, 156$; $p < 0.001$ time effect) but its effects were short lasting and wore off by 60 minutes (Dorevitch et al., 1999).

Intramuscular benzodiazepines in combination with other medications

Benzodiazepines plus haloperidol. A recent meta-analysis included 20 RCTs (with 695 participants) testing benzodiazepines alone or in combination with other agents for acute disturbance due to psychosis (Zaman et al., 2017). The conclusion was that trials comparing IM benzodiazepines plus antipsychotics versus IM benzodiazepines alone did not yield results with clear differences; this was very low-quality evidence. In the short term (15 mins to 1 hour), IM lorazepam plus IM haloperidol was found to be more sedative than lorazepam only ($n = 47$; one RCT; RR 1.92; 95% CI 1.10–3.35), although there was no difference in the medium term (1–48 hours); this was low-quality evidence (Zaman et al., 2017).

In trials comparing the combination of a benzodiazepine plus an antipsychotic versus the same antipsychotic alone (the antipsychotic in all trials was IM haloperidol, which was combined with a variety of benzodiazepines), there was no difference in the improvement observed in the medium term ($n = 185$; four RCTs; RR 1.17; 95% CI 0.93–1.46); this was low-quality evidence. Yet sedation was more common in the participants who received the combination, in both the short term ($n = 45$; one RCT; RR 2.25; 95% CI 1.18–4.30) and the medium term ($n = 172$; three RCTs; RR 1.75; 95% CI 1.14–2.67); this was very low-quality evidence (Zaman et al., 2017).

Table 4. Summary of TREC trials.

Trial publication	Treatment arms	Primary outcome results: tranquil or asleep	Secondary outcome results: tranquil or asleep	Secondary outcome results: asleep	Reported adverse effects
TREC Collaborative Group (2003)	IM midazolam 7.5-15mg (n=151) vs IM haloperidol 5-10mg plus IM promethazine 25-50mg (n=150)	20 minutes: midazolam (M): 89% haloperidol+promethazine (HP): 67% (RR 1.32, 95% CI 1.16-1.49)	- 40 minutes M: 93%, HP: 83% 60 minutes M: 93%, HP: 87%, NS 120 minutes M: 95%, HP: 92%, NS	20 minutes M: 62%, HP: 29% 40 minutes M: 78%, HP: 46% 60 minutes M: 79%, HP: 55% 120 minutes M: 83%, HP: 63%	M: One transient respiratory depression, which was fully reversed by IV flumazenil (patient had alcohol, and possibly cocaine induced, aggression) HP: One grand mal seizure (had diagnosis of epilepsy)
Alexander et al. (2004)	IM lorazepam 4mg (n=100) vs IM haloperidol 10mg plus IM promethazine 25-50mg (n=100)	4 hours: lorazepam (L): 96% HP: 96% (RR 1.0, 95% CI 0.94-1.06, NS)	15 minutes L: 78%, HP: 89% (RR 1.1, 95% CI: 1.01-1.29) 30 minutes L: 81%, HP: 95% 60 minutes L: 90%, HP: 98% 120 minutes L: 88%, HP: 97%	15 minutes L: 5%, HP: 45% - 30 minutes L: 22%, HP: 69% 60 minutes L: 32%, HP: 67% 120 minutes L: 39%, HP: 69% 240 minutes L: 45%, HP: 76%	L: One 'moderate worsening of respiratory difficulty' in a patient with asthma and one nausea and dizziness
Huf et al. (2007) *	IM haloperidol 5-10mg (n=156) vs IM haloperidol 5-10mg plus IM promethazine 25-50mg (n=160)	20 minutes: haloperidol (H): 55% HP: 72% (RR 1.30, 95% CI 1.10-1.55)	- 40 minutes H: 76%, HP: 81%, NS 60 minutes H: 81%, HP: 87%, NS 120 minutes H: 89%, HP: 91%, NS	20 minutes H: 8%, HP: 19% 40 minutes H: 35%, HP: 36%, NS 60 minutes H: 49%, HP: 48%, NS 120 minutes H: 60%, HP: 61%, NS	H: Nine acute dystonia and one seizure HP: One seizure
Raveendran et al. (2007)	IM olanzapine 10mg (n=150) vs IM haloperidol 10mg plus IM promethazine 25-50mg (n=150)	15 minutes: olanzapine (O): 87% HP: 91% (RR 0.96, 95% CI 0.34-1.47, NS)	- 30 minutes O: 93%, HP: 96%, NS 60 minutes O: 94%, HP: 99% 120 minutes O: 94%, HP: 97%, NS 240 minutes O: 96%, HP: 97%, NS	15 minutes O: 43%, HP: 57% 30 minutes O: 63%, HP: 76% 60 minutes O: 66%, HP: 80% 120 minutes O: 61%, HP: 80% 240 minutes O: 59%, HP: 75%	O: Two akathisia, one nausea HP: One transient hypotension in a patient known to be dehydrated

*This trial was discontinued early on ethical grounds due to the occurrence of 11 serious adverse events.
RR: relative risk; CI: confidence interval; NS: non-significant statistical difference as 95% confidence interval for relative risk includes the value of 1

Of note, one small trial compared IM midazolam plus IM haloperidol versus IM promethazine plus IM haloperidol. Although medium-term sedation was higher in the IM midazolam plus IM haloperidol group ($n = 60$; one RCT; RR 12.00; 95% CI 1.66–86.59), the same group was also at a higher risk of showing no clinical improvement (global state) ($n = 60$; one RCT; RR 25.00; 95% CI 1.55–403.99); this was very low-quality evidence (Zaman et al., 2017).

Another meta-analysis (Ostinelli et al., 2017), with a focus on the use of haloperidol in RT, reviewed two studies that compared IM haloperidol alone versus IM haloperidol plus IM lorazepam ($n = 113$) and one study where the adjunct benzodiazepine was IM midazolam ($n = 60$). Significantly more of the participants receiving IM lorazepam plus IM haloperidol were asleep after 3 hours ($n = 67$; one RCT; RR 1.83; 95% CI 1.11–3.02); fewer participants in the combination group required more than one additional injection ($n = 67$; one RCT; RR 1.05; 95% CI 0.87–1.27); and by 30 minutes more participants showed overall improvement ($n = 45$; one RCT; RR 2.67; 95% CI 1.25–5.68), a difference that was not sustained; this was very low-grade evidence. For the combination of midazolam plus haloperidol, no advantage was found; this was very low-grade evidence with only one small study ($n = 60$) (Ostinelli et al., 2017).

Although both meta-analyses above reviewed much of the available evidence, two studies merit further mention here. Baldaçara et al. (2011) concluded that the combination of IM midazolam plus IM haloperidol showed the worst results across a range of observed parameters. Calver et al. (2013) conducted a prospective study of parenteral sedation for acute disturbance ($n = 171$). High-dose medication was not associated with more rapid sedation than standard dosage. Just over half of the participants (54%) were prescribed high-dose medication and, in the majority of these cases, the medication was a combination of IM midazolam plus an IM antipsychotic (droperidol or haloperidol).

Benzodiazepine plus promethazine. There is no trial evidence that we are aware of that specifically evaluated the combination of IM lorazepam plus IM promethazine.

Intravenous

Intravenous midazolam is sometimes used for RT in an emergency department setting. An RCT of 153 participants with acute disturbance found IV midazolam to be more rapidly sedating than IV droperidol, but three participants in the IV midazolam arm required active airway management (Knott et al., 2006). A subsequent study found that IV midazolam 2.5–5 mg alone was more likely to result in treatment failure, due to the need for additional sedation, than either combination of IV droperidol 5 mg plus IV midazolam 2.5–5 mg or IV olanzapine 5 mg plus IV midazolam 2.5–5 mg; there was no difference in adverse effects between the three treatment arms ($n = 336$; Chan et al., 2013).

IV lorazepam was compared with IV droperidol in a randomised 1 hour open-label trial ($n = 202$); both were effective in achieving sedation within 30 minutes although IV droperidol produced sedation more rapidly than IV lorazepam. However, fewer repeat doses of IV droperidol were required compared with IV lorazepam at 30 minutes. Participants in both arms did not require airway intervention (Richards et al., 1998).

An older study (Lerner, 1979) investigated the efficacy of IV diazepam (30–40 mg) versus IV haloperidol (20–35 mg) over a period of time and not as RT; however, these doses are high compared with current practice. The published data on IV diazepam for acute disturbance are very limited. One article describes a survey of emergency prescribing in a general hospital where medication was given intravenously for 53 out of 102 incidents (Pilowsky et al., 1992). IV diazepam alone or in combination with IV haloperidol appeared to be more predictably and rapidly effective than other medications given intramuscularly. However, if used in clinical practice, the long half-life of diazepam and associated risk of accumulation should be borne in mind. Furthermore, it is important to use the emulsified formulation of diazepam (Diazemuls®) and not the aqueous solution for IV administration as the latter carries a greater risk of adverse effects. If used, Diazemuls should be administered slowly (1.0 ml solution per minute) with the patient kept supine for at least an hour afterwards.

A retrospective study, using historic controls, evaluated the impact of a structured IM sedation protocol, which had replaced the previous practice of IV sedation (Calver et al., 2010). The median duration of acute disturbance using the IM protocol was 21 minutes ($n = 58$; range 5–78 mins) while the median duration using the IV approach was 30 minutes ($n = 79$; range 5–135 mins); this difference was statistically significant ($p = 0.03$). Hence IV medication did not appear to offer an advantage over IM in terms of time to effect.

Adverse effects

The adverse effects of benzodiazepines include, but are not limited to, over-sedation, drowsiness, ataxia and potentially cardiovascular collapse, hypotension with the associated risk of falls and ultimately loss of consciousness. Disinhibition can also occur with benzodiazepines although this is probably uncommon (Paton, 2002). All benzodiazepines can cause respiratory depression and this is more likely with parenteral rather than oral dosing, increasing dosage and with benzodiazepines that are more likely to accumulate on repeated administration, such as diazepam.

IM midazolam has been found to be more sedating than IM lorazepam, with an increased risk of respiratory depression (Nobay et al., 2004), and more sedating than IM antipsychotics alone or in combination with IM promethazine (Baldaçara et al., 2011; TREC Collaborative Group, 2003). In one RCT ($n = 91$) with three arms, participants who received IM midazolam alone had more treatment failures with additional sedation being required (Isbister et al., 2010). In the same trial 28% of participants receiving IM midazolam experienced oxygen desaturation or airway obstruction compared with 6% for those given IM droperidol and 4% for the combination of IM droperidol plus IM midazolam. Thus, a significant safety concern limits the utility of midazolam as a safe IM RT option and it is not widely recommended (NICE, 2015b). Furthermore, concerns have been raised around the risk of overdose with midazolam injection in adults when used for conscious sedation, leading to a 2008 National Patient Safety Agency Rapid Response Report recommending that stocks of flumazenil (see Box 2) be available where parenteral midazolam is used (NPSA, 2008a, b). We would extend this recommendation to include immediate access to flumazenil wherever parenteral benzodiazepines are prescribed (Joint Formulary Committee, 2018). IV

Flumazenil is a benzodiazepine antagonist (reversal agent) which is administered intravenously and should be used if the respiratory rate falls below 10 breaths/minute or oxygen saturation falls below 90%, due to use of benzodiazepines.

Dose: 200 µg intravenously over 15 seconds. If required level of consciousness is not regained, then 100 µg intravenously every 1 minute as required. Usual dose 300–600 µg; maximum 1 mg per course or in 24 hours.

Precautions: Flumazenil is contraindicated in patients with epilepsy who are receiving long-term benzodiazepines. Flumazenil has a short half-life therefore subsequent doses may be necessary; keeping in mind that benzodiazepine effects may persist for at least 24 hours. If respiratory rate does not normalise with doses of flumazenil, urgently consider other causes of sedation.

Box 2. Flumazenil.

midazolam was associated with the need for active airway management in one study (Knott et al., 2006) whereas this was not the case for IV lorazepam (Richards et al., 1998).

From evidence to practice

Recommended. Buccal midazolam has evidence from a small service evaluation that it is effective. Oral lorazepam may be effective, based on data of its use in combination with an antipsychotic, but it does not have any direct trial evidence to support its use as monotherapy. IM lorazepam alone is effective as highlighted by one of the TREC trials. The combination of IM lorazepam plus IM haloperidol has been evaluated in meta-analyses and found to be effective, although a baseline ECG is advised before haloperidol use (in any formulation) due to the risk of QTc prolongation.

Parenteral benzodiazepines have safety concerns due to the risk of respiratory depression and, as flumazenil can reverse this it must be immediately available wherever parenteral benzodiazepines are used. Due to the potential risk of both respiratory depression and cardiac adverse effects, RT IV options must only be used in settings where resuscitation equipment and trained clinicians are available to manage medical emergencies. In this setting, both IV midazolam and IV lorazepam are effective as evidenced by trial data, but the immediate availability of flumazenil must first be confirmed.

Not recommended. Oral clonazepam has no evidence of effectiveness as monotherapy and it is associated with the risk of accumulation with repeated dosing and the resultant risk of cumulative adverse effects. IM midazolam as monotherapy had good evidence of initial effectiveness but this is not sustained over time due to its short half-life and, importantly, it also carries a risk of respiratory depression. The evidence for IM clonazepam was based on only a very small study. No trial evidence was found that evaluated the combination of IM lorazepam plus IM promethazine. All formulations of diazepam carry the risk of accumulation and at best have only poor-quality evidence for use in RT.

Common antipsychotics

All antipsychotics act on dopamine receptors, usually but not always as dopamine-2 (D2) antagonists. Most also act on other receptors. Antipsychotics vary in their propensity for their various effects depending on their potency and pharmacokinetics. Antipsychotics also vary in terms of their available formulations and this will also differ between countries. When used in the treatment of acute psychotic relapse, antipsychotics are more effective than placebo in reducing psychotic

symptoms overall and in reducing acute disturbance as measured using the PANSS-EC subscale (Garriga et al., 2016).

Pharmacokinetics

For general pharmacokinetic considerations see above (De-escalation and rapid tranquillisation). It is commonly believed that oro-dispersible formulations of risperidone and olanzapine are more rapidly absorbed than conventional tablets but this is not the case; T_{max} for both oral and oro-dispersible risperidone is 1–2 hours (Janssen-Cilag, 2017), whereas T_{max} for both formulations of olanzapine is 5–8 hours (Eli Lilly, 2017a). However, oro-dispersible preparations dissolve very quickly in saliva rendering covert non-adherence more difficult.

For oral haloperidol T_{max} is 2–6 hours but for IM haloperidol T_{max} is 20 minutes. The IM dose required to give the same plasma concentration as any given oral dose is approximately 30% lower and this is due to the difference in the magnitude of first pass liver metabolism. T_{max} for IM aripiprazole is 1 hour and for IM olanzapine 15–45 minutes (see Table 5). Values for other drugs not listed in the table can be obtained from the Summary of Product Characteristics (SmPC) for the individual drug, available at <https://www.medicines.org.uk>. Note that these data are mostly derived from phase I and II clinical trials and are applicable to working-age adults with normal muscle mass and levels of activity, who have normal liver function and are not prescribed any interacting medicines. In clinical practice, patients who receive RT may vary considerably in terms of age, level of activity and use of substances and alcohol.

All antipsychotic medications used in RT (or their active metabolites) have elimination half-lives of 20 hours or more. Multiple administrations will lead to accumulation that places the patient at risk of adverse effects.

Oral

Garriga et al. (2016) reviewed 26 trials for oral antipsychotics in the treatment of acute disturbance including: one assessing oral first-generation antipsychotics (FGAs), four comparing FGAs with second-generation antipsychotics (SGAs) and 21 assessing SGAs. They concluded that there was no real difference in the efficacy for SGAs as compared to FGAs, either when used alone or in combination with lorazepam. However, most of these trials were not carried out in the acute treatment of agitation and endpoint measurements were at weeks or months rather than hours or days. A subsequent scoping review concluded there is a surprisingly small amount of evidence regarding oral antipsychotics for acute disturbance (Mullinax et al., 2017). Only two studies assessed the efficacy and tolerability of oral olanzapine in the treatment of psychotic acute disturbance. In the first study ($n = 87$), oro-dispersible tablets were compared to risperidone oral

Table 5. Antipsychotic formulations.

Medication	Route	Formulation	Bioavailability	Time to maximum plasma concentration (Tmax)
Aripiprazole	Oral	Tablet	87%	3–5 hours
	Oral	Oro-dispersible	87%	3–5 hours
	Oral	Liquid	87%	3–5 hours
	IM	Injection	100%	1 hour
Droperidol	Oral	Tablet	75%	1–2 hours
	IM	Injection	100%	≤30 minutes
	IV	Injection	100%	seconds/minutes
Haloperidol	Oral	Tablet	60–70%	2–6 hours
	Oral	Liquid	60–70%	2–6 hours
	IM	Injection	100%	20–40 minutes
	IV	Injection	100%	seconds/minutes
Olanzapine	Oral	Tablet	Undetermined	5–8 hours
	Oral	Oro-dispersible	Undetermined	5–8 hours
	IM	Injection	Undetermined	15–45 minutes
	IV	Injection	100%	seconds/minutes
Quetiapine	Oral	Tablet	Unknown	1.5 hours
Risperidone	Oral	Tablet	67%	1–2 hours
	Oral	Oro-dispersible	67%	1–2 hours
	Oral	Liquid	70%	1–2 hours

IM: intramuscular; IV: intravenous.

solution (Hatta et al., 2008) and both drugs were equally effective in reducing PANSS-EC scores with no difference in requiring additional injections due to worsening. The second study was a randomised, double-blind trial over five days ($n = 604$), which evaluated oral olanzapine versus oral aripiprazole and reported significant improvements in PANSS-EC scores but no difference in the treatment groups; however, a greater proportion of participants receiving aripiprazole also required adjunct lorazepam (Kinon et al., 2008).

There is some literature supporting the use of oral risperidone in the management of acute disturbance. In an RCT ($n = 162$) of a single dose of oral risperidone plus oral lorazepam compared to IM haloperidol plus IM lorazepam, the mean PANSS-EC scores at 30, 60 and 120 minutes after dosing were statistically significantly improved at each time point compared to baseline ($p < 0.0001$) in both groups with no difference between the groups (Currier et al., 2004). A study ($n = 226$) focusing on acute disturbance in psychosis compared the use of oral risperidone plus oral lorazepam versus IM FGAs with or without adjunct IM lorazepam and found that not only was oral risperidone plus oral lorazepam more successful at two hours but also the incidence of extrapyramidal symptoms (EPS) was lower than with the IM medications (Lejeune et al., 2004). Wilhelm et al. (2008) reported that oral risperidone was associated with improvement in PANSS-EC scores over a 5-day period but that oral risperidone use was usually (72%) associated with concomitant benzodiazepine use. Another study compared oro-dispersible risperidone versus IM haloperidol in a randomised open prospective study found the PANSS-EC score significantly decreased over time in both treatment groups without any significant group difference (Lim et al., 2010). In a small RCT ($n = 42$) with four treatment arms, Hsu et al. (2010) also found that scores for PANSS-EC and Agitation–Calmness Evaluation Scale (ACES;

Meehan et al., 2002) improved over 24 hours for participants receiving an oral solution of risperidone 3 mg.

There is some evidence supporting the use of oral quetiapine to reduce agitation, but these studies are over 6 weeks (Chengappa et al., 2003) or a year (Volavka et al., 2011). One small study ($n = 36$) conducted over 5 days (Ganesan et al., 2005) suggested effectiveness of quetiapine in acute disturbance as mean scores reduced on the OAS.

Very little evidence has been published regarding oral haloperidol. Trials in which it has been evaluated were over 8 weeks in duration (Higashima et al., 2004) or in combination with IM lorazepam (Veser et al., 2006). One prospective, rater-blinded study ($n = 101$) over 72 hours compared oral SGAs (risperidone, olanzapine and quetiapine) versus oral haloperidol and reported effectiveness for all four treatments with decreases in scores of the hostility-suspiciousness factor derived from the Brief Psychiatric Rating Scale (BPRS; Overall and Gorham, 1962) and Modified Overt Aggression Scale (Kay et al., 1988), with no significant differences between the groups. However, EPS were more common in the haloperidol group (21.4%) than in the risperidone (7.4%), olanzapine (0%) or quetiapine (0%) groups (Villari et al., 2008).

Oral versus intramuscular

A number of small studies have explored the relative effectiveness of oral and IM antipsychotic medications in the management of psychotic agitation and found little difference between them. For example, the relative effectiveness of oral risperidone plus oral lorazepam and IM haloperidol plus IM lorazepam was reviewed by Currier and Medori (2006), who concluded that these strategies were equally effective.

A small study ($n = 42$) found that participants who received IM olanzapine or oral disintegrating olanzapine tablets showed significantly greater improvements in PANSS-EC scores when compared with those administered IM haloperidol (Hsu et al., 2010). A naturalistic study that tracked clinical practice after orodispersible olanzapine was made available for general use (Simpson et al., 2006) found that this did not result in any change in the prevalence of use of restrictive interventions (IM medication, seclusion or restraint).

A recent review by Mullinax et al. (2017) of trials evaluating oral antipsychotics for participants with acute disturbance found only six small studies ($n = 464$; range 20–162), five of which compared oral SGAs to either IM FGAs or IM SGAs. In general, the studies found that oral SGAs were effective for reducing acute disturbance and had side-effect profiles that were comparable to those of FGAs (Mullinax et al., 2017).

Intramuscular monotherapy

A review of RCTs (most of which were placebo-controlled licensing studies) of parenteral formulations of SGAs for psychotic acute disturbance concluded that, for 'response at 2 hours' the numbers needed to treat were three for IM olanzapine and five for IM aripiprazole (Citrome, 2007).

Haloperidol. The efficacy and safety of haloperidol, by any route, for psychosis-induced acute disturbance has been considered in a Cochrane review (Ostinelli et al., 2017). Many comparisons are reported on and the main results highlight that haloperidol, as compared with placebo, does cause sedation in that more participants are asleep at 2 hours. Compared with those participants receiving IM aripiprazole, those given IM haloperidol required fewer injections ($n = 473$; two RCTs; RR 0.78; 95% CI 0.62–0.99; low-quality evidence). When compared to those given IM lorazepam there was no difference in the proportion asleep at 1 hour (one RCT; $n = 60$; RR 1.05; 95% CI 0.76–1.44; very low-quality evidence). There were clear concerns raised in a number of studies regarding the propensity of haloperidol to cause acute dystonia, and the authors concluded that where additional drugs are available, sole use of haloperidol for extreme emergency could be considered unethical. Adjunct promethazine for haloperidol has higher-quality evidence from RCTs as outlined below (see Intramuscular antipsychotics in combination with other medications).

Olanzapine. One RCT ($n = 150$) compared IM olanzapine, IM ziprasidone, IM haloperidol, IM haloperidol plus IM promethazine, and IM haloperidol plus IM midazolam and found no large differences between these treatment arms with respect to efficacy (Baldaçara et al., 2011). A systematic review and meta-analysis of the efficacy and safety of IM olanzapine for the management of acute disturbance, including RT, concluded that IM olanzapine and IM haloperidol were equally effective but the former was better tolerated with respect to EPS and was associated with marginally less QT prolongation (Kishi et al., 2015). A Cochrane review, which addressed psychosis-induced acute disturbance, concluded that IM olanzapine is rapidly effective but more likely to result in subsequent injections being required than the combination of IM haloperidol plus IM promethazine recommended by

NICE (Huf et al., 2016; NICE, 2015b). A large prospective observational study of the use of parenteral olanzapine in an acute hospital setting reported that 1% (5 of 489) of participants who received olanzapine IM required intubation (Cole et al., 2017).

Droperidol. Droperidol is a butyrophenone antipsychotic with a similar pharmacology to haloperidol, although it is more sedative. Droperidol, both orally and parenterally, was commonly used for the management of acute disturbance in psychiatric settings in the UK until it was withdrawn from use in 2001 due to an association with QTc prolongation (Meyer, 2003; Reilly et al., 2000). Continuing interest in the use of droperidol for RT, particularly in Australia, has prompted a number of recent RCTs.

In a blinded trial, 91 acutely disturbed participants who were seen in general hospital medical emergency departments in Australia were randomised to receive IM droperidol (10 mg), IM midazolam (10 mg) or a combination of IM droperidol (5 mg) plus IM midazolam (5mg) (Isbister et al., 2010). The primary outcome was the duration of acute disturbance and this did not differ across treatment arms, although it was noted that IM midazolam alone required additional sedation more often than the other two treatment arms. Having determined that IM droperidol alone was as effective as and safer than IM midazolam in this small RCT, safety was further explored in a large prospective observational study, again in general hospital emergency departments. Of 1009 participants who received parenteral (IM or IV) droperidol 10 mg and where a post-administration ECG was possible, just 13 participants (1.3%) had evidence of QTc prolongation, and in half of these cases other prescribed medicines are likely to have contributed. There were no cases of torsades de pointes (Calver et al., 2015b).

A further blinded RCT conducted in a psychiatric intensive care unit (PICU) in Australia compared IM droperidol 10 mg ($n = 118$) with IM haloperidol 10 mg ($n = 110$) and the median time to sedation was 20 minutes for IM haloperidol and 25 minutes for IM droperidol (not statistically significant, Calver et al., 2015a). More additional sedation was required in those randomised to the IM haloperidol arm and more adverse effects, mainly hypotension, were seen in the IM droperidol arm. A Cochrane review, which did not differentiate between IM and IV routes, concluded that droperidol is effective and can be used to manage acute disturbance caused by psychosis (Khokhar and Rathbone, 2016).

Aripiprazole. A recent Cochrane review evaluated three poor-quality studies ($n = 885$) that compared IM aripiprazole versus placebo or IM haloperidol or IM olanzapine (Ostinelli et al., 2018). When aripiprazole was compared with placebo, fewer injections were required (RR 0.69; 95% CI 0.56–0.85) and clinically important improvement in acute disturbance favoured the IM aripiprazole group at 2 hours (RR 1.50; 95% CI 1.17–1.92) with more participants experiencing adverse effects in the IM aripiprazole group (RR 1.51; 95% CI 0.93–2.46). When IM aripiprazole was compared with IM haloperidol, more injections were required ($n = 477$; two RCTs; RR 1.28; 95% CI 1.00–1.63) with no significant difference in agitation (RR 0.94; 95% CI 0.80–1.11). When compared with IM olanzapine, IM aripiprazole was less effective in reducing agitation at 2 hours (RR 0.77; 95% CI 0.60–0.99) and there was no difference in adverse effects apart from participants allocated to IM aripiprazole experiencing less

somnolence (RR 0.25; 95% CI 0.08–0.82). Another double-blind, placebo-controlled trial ($n = 357$) evaluated IM aripiprazole and IM haloperidol, and both groups showed significant changes in PANSS-EC and ACES compared with placebo, although IM aripiprazole showed significant changes earlier (Tran-Johnson et al., 2007). In a further double-blind RCT for 301 acutely agitated inpatients, sedation during the first 2 hours was greater with IM lorazepam compared with IM aripiprazole but improvement in PANSS-EC scores was similar at 2 hours (Zimbhoff et al., 2007).

Intramuscular antipsychotics in combination with other medications

Haloperidol plus promethazine. The evidence for IM haloperidol plus IM promethazine comes from the methodologically robust TREC trials on RT (see Box 1 and Table 4). When the TREC trials are considered together, it can be concluded that a combination of IM haloperidol plus IM promethazine is more rapidly effective than IM lorazepam or IM haloperidol alone, as rapidly effective as IM olanzapine, with IM haloperidol plus IM promethazine having a longer-lasting sedative effect and IM olanzapine requiring more additional drugs. Adding two further trials (Baldaçara et al., 2011; Mantovani et al., 2013) to the evidence of the TREC trials, a Cochrane review (Huf et al., 2016) concluded that IM haloperidol and IM promethazine was effective and safe, and its use was based on good evidence. For IM haloperidol plus IM promethazine versus IM haloperidol alone, the combination was clearly more effective ($n = 316$; one RCT; RR 0.65; 95% CI 0.49–0.87).

A recent meta-analysis (Ostinelli et al., 2017), which focused on the use of haloperidol in RT, described two studies comparing IM haloperidol versus IM haloperidol plus IM promethazine ($n = 376$). Significantly more participants in the combination group were tranquil or asleep by 20 minutes ($n = 316$; RR 1.60; 95% CI 1.18–2.16). The relative risks were still in favour of the combination at 40, 60 and 120 minutes, but these were not statistically significant. The combination needed less repeat RT at 2 hours ($n = 376$; two RCTs; RR 0.78; 95% CI 0.43–1.41). Of note, the authors of this meta-analysis also commented on the propensity of haloperidol alone to cause adverse effects. The adverse effect of dystonia caused by haloperidol was not offset by the addition of lorazepam ($n = 67$; one RCT; RR 8.25; 95% CI 0.46–147.45; very low quality of evidence). However, based on the study by Huf et al. (2007), which had a high relative risk for acute dystonia in the IM haloperidol group ($n = 316$; RR 19.48; 95% CI 1.14–331.92), there is an indication of a protective effect of IM promethazine when given in combination with IM haloperidol (Ostinelli et al., 2017).

Haloperidol plus lorazepam. Two recent meta-analyses have reviewed the combination of haloperidol plus lorazepam. Zaman et al. (2017) reviewed RCTs of benzodiazepines alone or in combination with other agents for acute disturbance due to psychosis, which included 20 trials with 695 participants. The review concluded there were no clear differences between IM benzodiazepines plus antipsychotics versus IM benzodiazepines alone; this was very low-quality evidence. Ostinelli et al. (2017) focused on the use of haloperidol in RT and described two studies that provided very low-grade evidence in favour of IM haloperidol plus

IM lorazepam versus IM haloperidol ($n = 113$), and one study where the adjunct benzodiazepine was IM midazolam (see IM benzodiazepines in combination with other medications, above).

Intravenous

As the skills and equipment required to administer sedative medication IV are unlikely to be available in psychiatric settings, the routine use of IV medication in such settings cannot be recommended. Use in exceptional circumstances should be restricted to settings where resuscitation facilities are available and staff are trained to manage medical emergencies, such as in an emergency department.

Droperidol. A Cochrane review, which did not differentiate between IM and IV routes but did include three trials on IV droperidol, concluded that droperidol is effective and can be used to manage acute disturbance caused by psychosis (Khokhar and Rathbone, 2016).

Three large Australian RCTs conducted in emergency departments have examined the relative efficacy and safety of a number of IV strategies, and the first two were included in the Cochrane review. The first RCT found IV midazolam 5 mg to be more rapidly sedating than IV droperidol 5 mg, with three participants in the IV droperidol arm developing dystonia ($n = 153$; Knott et al., 2006). The second RCT reported that IV midazolam 2.5–5 mg alone was more likely to result in treatment failure (i.e. a need for additional sedation) than either of the two comparator combinations of IV midazolam plus IV droperidol 5 mg or IV midazolam plus IV olanzapine 5 mg; no differences in adverse effects were seen for the three treatment arms ($n = 336$; Chan et al., 2013). The third RCT reported that the combination of IV midazolam 5 mg plus IV droperidol 5 mg resulted in more rapid sedation but also in more cases of respiratory events than either IV droperidol 10 mg alone or IV olanzapine 10 mg; there were seven reported cases of QTc prolongation across all three treatment arms ($n = 349$; Taylor et al., 2017). Subsequent subgroup analysis of the third trial focusing on management of methamphetamine-induced agitation found similar results (Yap et al., 2017). In an older randomised study ($n = 202$), IV droperidol was associated with more rapid sedation, also requiring less repeat dosing than IV lorazepam (Richards et al., 1998).

Olanzapine. IV olanzapine was the focus of two studies conducted in emergency departments. One was a retrospective cohort study of 713 patients receiving IV olanzapine in the emergency department, including 177/265 (68.8%) of patients for whom adequate sedation was achieved with a single dose of IV olanzapine. However, 10% of the total sample of patients developed hypoxia with oxygen saturation < 92% and seven patients (1%) required intubation (Martel et al., 2016). The other was a prospective observational study of acutely disturbed patients and respiratory depression occurred in 3.7% of those receiving IV olanzapine ($n = 295$) with two requiring intubation, and in 2.0% for IM olanzapine ($n = 489$) with five requiring intubation (Cole et al., 2017).

Haloperidol. Only one study has been found for haloperidol ($n = 136$), which included participants receiving IV administration ($n = 19$) for acute disturbance; however, this study did not report

its findings separately for the different routes other than to comment that the IV route required repeated dosing more often than IM or oral routes (Clinton et al., 1987). No RCTs of IV haloperidol have been published. Haloperidol carries a risk for QT prolongation, but the assertion that IV haloperidol is more likely to cause adverse cardiovascular effects may be confounded by its primary use in medically ill populations (Beach et al., 2017) and therefore an ECG is recommended before its use. In cases where IV administration is judged to be clinically necessary, this should be done only under continuous ECG monitoring for the detection of QT prolongation and severe cardiac arrhythmias.

Adverse effects

Adverse effects are frequently dose related with higher doses and combinations having higher risks. One prospective observational study (Calver et al., 2013) compared a high dose (above 10 mg) with a standard dose (10 mg and below) of IM haloperidol, IM droperidol or IM midazolam and reported that high-dose sedation did not result in more rapid or effective sedation but was associated with double the incidence of side effects of standard doses, specifically hypotension and oxygen desaturation. Symptomatic hypotension has been reported with the co-administration of IM olanzapine and IM benzodiazepines (Zacher and Roche-Desilets, 2005). The manufacturer of olanzapine has cautioned against combining IM olanzapine with IM benzodiazepines (<http://www.palliativedrugs.org/download/SafetyLetterzyprexa.pdf>). However, a retrospective case series reported IM olanzapine was safe when given in combination with a benzodiazepine in patients who had not ingested alcohol; where alcohol had been consumed the combination of IM olanzapine and an IM benzodiazepine was associated with oxygen desaturation (Wilson et al., 2012a).

Antipsychotics can also cause EPS (Barnes et al., 2011). Some develop over time with repeated doses, but others can develop acutely, including oculogyric crises and acute dystonic reactions. Restlessness associated with akathisia can resemble agitation and therefore may lead to further doses being administered. IM haloperidol, when administered alone, has a greater propensity to cause acute EPS (Satterthwaite et al., 2008) and therefore its use as a single agent is not recommended (Ostinelli et al., 2017) but, if it is, an anticholinergic such as IM procyclidine can be prescribed for the treatment of acute dystonia (Taylor et al., 2015.)

Some antipsychotics, particularly parental haloperidol and droperidol, are known to increase the QTc on the ECG, even at therapeutic doses. A QTc of greater than 500 ms is associated with an increased risk of torsades de pointes (Glassman and Bigger, 2001; Haddad and Anderson, 2002; Taylor, 2003). It is therefore advised, as the licence for haloperidol recommends, that a baseline ECG should be available before administering IM haloperidol (Concordia International, 2017). Consequently, as it is often not possible in the scenario of acute disturbance to carry out an ECG, and if one has not been done recently, haloperidol alone should be avoided.

Neuroleptic malignant syndrome (NMS) is a potentially fatal symptom complex associated with all antipsychotics. In clinical trials, rare cases of NMS were reported during treatment with all antipsychotics (see SmPC on <https://www.medicines.org.uk>). If a patient develops signs and symptoms indicative of NMS or presents with unexplained high fever without additional clinical manifestations of NMS, all antipsychotic active substances must

be discontinued and supportive measures ensured (Su et al., 2014; Taylor et al., 2015).

From evidence to practice

Recommended. Oral formulations of aripiprazole, olanzapine and risperidone all have trial evidence supporting their effectiveness. Oral haloperidol and oral quetiapine both have some evidence of effectiveness. IM antipsychotic monotherapy options include IM aripiprazole and IM droperidol as both have good trial evidence supporting their use. IM olanzapine also has good evidence of efficacy as confirmed by one of the TREC trials, but it should only be administered by itself and not concurrently with IM benzodiazepines due to risk of hypotension; thus, there should be an interval of at least 1 hour between the two. The combination of IM haloperidol plus IM promethazine has been evaluated in meta-analyses, which included the TREC trials, and this combination has been found to be effective. Similarly, meta-analyses have also confirmed the efficacy of the combination of IM lorazepam plus IM haloperidol.

Due to the potential risk of both respiratory depression and adverse cardiac effects, RT IV options must only be used in settings where resuscitation equipment and trained clinicians are available to manage medical emergencies. In this setting, IV droperidol is effective as supported by trial evidence. IV olanzapine also has evidence of effectiveness but caution is advised due to the risk of respiratory depression and the lack of reversing agent. A baseline ECG is advised before use of haloperidol and droperidol in any formulation, as both are associated with a risk of QTc prolongation.

Not recommended. Although IM haloperidol monotherapy has evidence of effectiveness, measures are required to offset its adverse effects; this is especially true for its risk of acute dystonia, which can be somewhat ameliorated by the use of adjunct IM promethazine. IV haloperidol has a lack of evidence for its use in RT.

Other interventions

Promethazine

Promethazine is a sedating antihistamine with anticholinergic effects. It is from the phenothiazine family and differs structurally from antipsychotic phenothiazines by the presence of a branched side chain and no ring substitution (Babe and Serafin, 1996). In the UK, oral promethazine is available over the counter without prescription and is licensed for symptomatic treatment of allergic conditions and anaphylaxis, sedation and treatment of insomnia (Joint Formulary Committee, 2017). Promethazine acts as a strong antagonist at histamine H1 receptors, as a moderate antagonist at muscarinic receptors and weak/moderate antagonist at serotonin (5HT2A and 5HT2C), D2 and adrenergic α -1 receptors (NLM Toxnet, 2018). Its onset of sedative effect ranges from 20–30 minutes (oral and IM), T_{max} is 2–3 hours (oral/IM). Its effects last 4–6 hours but may persist for as long as 12 hours following oral dosing.

The British National Formulary recommended dose for short-term sedation is 25–50 mg orally or 25–50 mg IM, not exceeding 100 mg per IM dose when used for treatment of allergic reactions; there is no recommended maximum daily dose for sedation (Joint Formulary Committee, 2017). Total doses of up to 150 mg

daily are sometimes used in acute psychiatric settings; there is evidence from toxicology studies suggesting that the lethal dose of promethazine in adults far exceeds these limits (NLM Toxnet, 2018).

In spite of its sedative properties, no studies have evaluated the use of oral or IM promethazine as monotherapy in RT. That being said, IM promethazine 50 mg has been described as a useful sedative option in benzodiazepine-tolerant patients, recommending that response should be assessed 1–2 hours after injection (Taylor et al., 2015). IM promethazine plus IM haloperidol is considered as an option for RT (NICE, 2015b) following evidence from a Cochrane review (Huf et al., 2009) of the four TREC trials, all of which included IM promethazine 25–50 mg plus IM haloperidol 5–10 mg (see Box 1 and Table 4). A more recent Cochrane review (Huf et al., 2016), included two further RCTs and concluded that IM haloperidol plus IM promethazine is effective and safe (see Intramuscular antipsychotics in combination with other medications, above).

Promethazine has no absolute contra-indication in adults (Joint Formulary Committee, 2017). Its adverse effects include drowsiness, agitation, confusion, dizziness, hypotension, central nervous system depression and lowering of seizure threshold (Burst, 1996: 99–125). It can also cause anticholinergic effects, EPS including tardive dyskinesia, and rarely also NMS (Chan-Tack, 1999), blood dyscrasias and allergic reactions (Sanofi, 2016). In a case series ($n = 199$) with 237 presentations of promethazine poisonings, the median dose ingested was 625 mg (350–1250 mg), with delirium (44%) and tachycardia (56%) the most common effects, with 10 cases admitted to the intensive care unit (Page et al., 2009). Of the 354 cases of promethazine abuse or intentional misuse reported to United States (US) Poison Centers between 2002 and 2012, the most common clinical effects were drowsiness (43.2%), agitation (13.7%), confusion (13.7%) and tachycardia (7.4%) and less than 20% required hospital admission (Tsay et al., 2015). There is no reversing agent.

Loxapine

Loxapine is a dibenzoxazepine tricyclic antipsychotic with some structural similarities to clozapine (Popovic et al., 2015). The pharmacodynamic properties include receptor binding particularly at D2 and 5HT2A receptor, and a high 5HT/D2 ratio (Buckley, 1999; Glazer, 1999; Stahl, 1999). Regarding affinity for other receptors, loxapine also binds to D4, 5HT6 and 5HT7 receptors (Chakrabarti et al., 2007; Roth et al., 1995; Stahl, 2013) and has antagonistic properties at noradrenergic, histaminergic H1 and muscarinic M1 receptors (Popovic et al., 2015). This FGA has oral and short-acting IM formulations as well as a more recent inhalatory formulation but, in the UK, only the latter is available (Galen Ltd, 2018).

The oral formulation was primarily used in schizophrenia (Chakrabarti et al., 2007) and was available in the UK in the 1990s but its use was uncommon. Since the 1970s, loxapine has been evaluated for the treatment of acute disturbance. Five small-scale, randomised, double-blind trials demonstrated comparable effects on acute disturbance for oral loxapine in comparison with oral trifluoperazine (Moyano, 1975) and oral haloperidol (Selman et al., 1976) and for IM loxapine versus IM haloperidol (Fruensgaard et al., 1977; Paprocki and Versiani, 1977; Tuason, 1986).

In 2012, the US Food and Drug Administration approved an inhalatory formulation of loxapine for adults with acute disturbance associated with schizophrenia or bipolar I disorder. In the UK, the inhalatory loxapine dose is 9.1 mg. Oral inhaled loxapine has high bioavailability and T_{max} is 2 minutes. In a phase II trial, Allen et al. (2011) evaluated inhaled loxapine in 129 acutely disturbed participants with schizophrenia or schizoaffective disorder, who were randomised to 5 or 10 mg of inhaled loxapine compared with placebo. Inhaled loxapine 10 mg showed a rapid onset of action with improvement after 20 minutes compared with placebo ($p < 0.05$; secondary outcome); statistically significant differences were also found for the 10 mg dose with respect to the PANSS-EC score compared with placebo after 120 minutes ($p < 0.01$; primary outcome). In the first phase III trial, Lesem et al. (2011) found that 5 mg and 10 mg doses of inhaled loxapine were effective in reducing acute disturbance as measured by PANSS-EC in schizophrenia when compared with placebo during a 2-hour observation timeframe (both $p < 0.001$; primary outcome, $n = 344$). The inhaled loxapine doses of 5mg and 10mg were rapidly effective in reducing PANSS-EC scores even after 10 minutes (both $p < 0.001$), the earliest assessment time in this trial. In the subsequent phase III trial, inhaled loxapine (5 mg and 10 mg) significantly reduced PANNS-EC scores in agitated participants with bipolar disorder compared with placebo after 10 minutes (secondary outcome; $p < 0.0001$ for both doses), and after 120 minutes (primary outcome; $p < 0.0001$ for both doses; $n = 314$) (Kwentus et al., 2012). The use of inhaled loxapine presumes a degree of patient collaboration. This may be true for most cases of mild-to-moderate agitation, but perhaps not for more severe acute disturbance (de Berardis et al., 2017).

Concerns have been raised due to respiratory effects after loxapine inhalation and its use is contraindicated in patients with acute respiratory distress or with active airways disease such as asthma or chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (Nordstrom and Allen, 2013; Popovic et al., 2015). A brief respiratory assessment and close-proximity availability of short-acting β -agonist bronchodilator is recommended (de Berardis et al., 2017; Gross et al., 2014). The most common adverse effects in the three trials were dysgeusia (metallic taste), throat irritation and sedation (Allen et al., 2011; Kwentus et al., 2012; Lesem et al., 2011) and the reported severe adverse effects included two acute dystonic reactions (Allen et al., 2011; Lesem et al., 2011), two episodes of severe sedation (Kwentus et al., 2012; Lesem et al., 2011) and one episode of moderate akathisia (Kwentus et al., 2012).

Levomepromazine

Levomepromazine, also known as methotrimeprazine, is an antipsychotic with pharmacology similar to the phenothiazine chlorpromazine and its antihistamine derivative promethazine. Levomepromazine is more sedating than chlorpromazine and, additionally, it has antiemetic, antihistamine and anti-adrenaline activity. It is available as oral tablets and as a solution for IM and IV injection and subcutaneous infusion (Sanofi, 2017; Wockhardt UK Ltd, 2017). T_{max} is 1–3 hours for the oral route (bioavailability 50–60%) and 30–90 minutes for the IM route. Its common side-effects include QT prolongation and hypotension (Wockhardt UK Ltd, 2017).

The oral formulation is licensed as an alternative to chlorpromazine in the treatment of schizophrenia (Sanofi, 2017), although a Cochrane review, which included four RCTs, was not able to confidently comment on the effectiveness of levomepromazine for schizophrenia (Sivaraman et al., 2010). However, it is commonly used parenterally in the management of terminal illness for its profound sedative and antiemetic properties; it is frequently administered in combination with other central nervous system agents or analgesics (e.g. opiates) via a syringe driver.

Published studies for its use in the management of acute disturbance are sparse, with no published evidence for the efficacy of oral levomepromazine monotherapy in the management of acute disturbance pre-RT. A small randomised open trial ($n = 19$) comparing oral haloperidol versus oral haloperidol plus oral levomepromazine found no clear difference between groups (Higashima et al., 2004). Bucci and Saunders (1964) studied the effect of IM levomepromazine (dose range 25–100 mg) in 35 female patients over timeframes that are not relevant to RT (days or weeks). Of concern, 14 of the 35 patients demonstrated apathy and psychomotor depression further into the study.

More recently, a Japanese open-label, flexible-dose, naturalistic observational study (Suzuki et al., 2014) for the treatment of acute disturbance in inpatients ($n = 122$) with schizophrenia, compared the efficacy and safety of IM olanzapine, IM haloperidol and IM levomepromazine ($n = 37$). Notably, the participants in this study were receiving concomitant additional antipsychotic treatment. Clinical symptoms and safety were assessed using standard scales at 1 hour after IM medication. The results display a varied picture in that mean changes from baseline for PANSS-EC, ACES, Barnes Akathisia Rating Scale (BARS; Barnes, 1989), Abnormal Involuntary Movement Scale (Guy, 1976a), and Drug-Induced Extrapyramidal Symptoms Scale (DIEPSS; Inada, 1996) were significantly better for IM levomepromazine and IM olanzapine, as compared with IM haloperidol. Within these, the mean changes from baseline for BARS and DIEPSS were significantly better for IM olanzapine versus IM levomepromazine. Furthermore, the mean change from baseline for the PANSS positive subscale was much better for IM olanzapine and IM haloperidol, as compared with IM levomepromazine. They concluded that the effects of IM olanzapine and IM levomepromazine on acute disturbance are more rapid than those of IM haloperidol, but also suggest that compared with IM levomepromazine, IM olanzapine is safer and affords greater improvement in symptoms.

Although the published evidence is lacking, the potential safety concerns referred to by these two studies (Higashima et al., 2004, Suzuki et al., 2014) are also highlighted in the recent Cochrane review on levomepromazine, which was for the different clinical setting of palliative care. This review commented that the higher doses used to achieve antipsychotic activity are more likely than lower doses to cause significant sedation or postural hypotension (Cox et al., 2015).

Zuclopenthixol acetate

Zuclopenthixol acetate (ZA) is an FGA and is best known by its trade name Clopixol Acuphase®. Zuclopenthixol is a thioxanthine dopamine antagonist first introduced in the early 1960s. Its elimination half-life is around 20 hours. IM injection of

zuclopenthixol base results in rapid absorption and a duration of action of 12–24 hours. By slow absorption after IM injection, the effective half-life (and so duration of action) becomes dependent on the rate of release from the IM reservoir. This can be achieved by esterification of the zuclopenthixol molecule; the rate of release being broadly proportion to the length of the ester carbon chain. Thus, zuclopenthixol decanoate is slow to act but very long-acting as a result of retarded release after IM injection. Alternatively, ZA is administered intramuscularly and it provides relatively prompt release but with an intermediate duration of action.

The initial pharmacokinetic study of ZA included 19 participants 'in whom calming effect by parenteral neuroleptic was considered necessary' (Amdisen et al., 1986). Zuclopenthixol was detectable in the plasma after 1–2 hours but did not reach peak concentrations until around 36 hours after dosing. At 72 hours, plasma concentrations were around a third of those at 36 hours. The clinical effect of ZA was not rapid as 10 of 17 participants exhibited minimal or no change in psychotic symptoms at 4 hours. Sedation was evident at 4 hours but it had effectively abated by 72 hours.

A follow-up study by the same research group examined more closely the clinical effects of ZA in 83 participants (Amdisen et al., 1987). The authors concluded that ZA produced 'pronounced and rapid reduction in psychotic symptoms'. In fact, psychotic symptoms were first assessed only after 24 hours and so a claim of rapid effect is not reasonably supported. Sedative effects were measured (0 = no sign of sedation; 1 = slightly sedated; 2 = moderately sedated) after 2 hours when a statistically significant effect was observed. Mean sedation scores were 0.0 at baseline, 0.6 at 2 hours, 2.2 at 8 hours and 1.1 at 72 hours. Dystonia and rigidity were the most commonly reported adverse effects.

Two independently conducted open studies produced similar results with a slow onset of effect peaking at 24 hours and still being evident at 72 hours (Balant et al., 1989; Lowert et al., 1989). Thereafter, the first UK study reported that a significant reduction in psychosis score was first evident at 8 hours and scores continued to fall until the last measurement at 72 hours; of 25 participants assessed only four showed signs of tranquillisation at 1 hour, 19 participants at 2 hours and 22 participants at 24 hours (Chakravarti et al., 1990).

The first comparative trial of ZA examined its effects and those of IM/oral haloperidol and IM/oral zuclopenthixol in multiple doses over 6 days (Baastrup et al., 1993). The two non-ester, IM/oral preparations produced a greater degree of sedation at 2 hours than did ZA, but the effect of ZA and zuclopenthixol was more sustained than with haloperidol over 144 hours (although participants received more zuclopenthixol doses). No clear differences between treatments were detected, with the exception of the slow onset of effect of ZA. The number of doses given varied substantially: ZA 1–4; haloperidol 1–26 and zuclopenthixol 1–22. The key, and perhaps unique, advantage of ZA is that it reduces the need for repeat doses in acute psychosis. Indeed, this was the principal finding of the first double-blind study of ZA (Chin et al., 1998). Participants were given either ZA or IM haloperidol and assessed over three days. Changes in BPRS and Clinical Global Impression (CGI) (Guy, 1976b) scores were near identical on each daily assessment. However, only 1 of 23 ZA participants required a second injection whereas 7 of 21 required a repeat dose of

haloperidol. Rapidity of onset was not examined. Similar findings were reported by Thai researchers comparing the same treatments (Taymeeyapradit and Kuasirikul, 2002) and in three other studies of moderate size (Al-Haddad et al., 1996: $n = 49$; Brook et al., 1998: $n = 44$; Chouinard et al., 1994: $n = 40$). In each study, the timing of assessments was such that time to onset of effect could not be determined.

A Cochrane review by Jayakody et al. (2012) included all of the above comparative studies as well as three further studies (Uys and Berk, 1996; Liu et al., 1997; Ropert et al., 1988) for which we were unable to obtain full details. The authors concluded that all studies were methodically flawed and poorly reported and that ZA did not appear to have a 'rapid onset of action'. They noted that ZA was probably no less effective than other treatments and that its use might 'result in less numerous coercive injections'.

Overall, the utility of ZA in RT is limited by a somewhat delayed onset of both sedative and antipsychotic actions. Sedation may be apparent in a minority of patients after 2–4 hours, but antipsychotic action is evident only after 8 hours. If ZA is given to a restrained patient, their behaviour on release from restraint is likely to be unchanged and will remain as such for several hours. ZA has a role in reducing the number of restraints for IM injection but it has no role in RT. Further, as new indications are considered such as agitation due to novel psychoactive substances (NPS), there is as yet no evidence to support the use of ZA in RT, even when BNF dose limits have been exhausted for other more commonly used drugs in RT. An ECG is advised (Joint Formulary Committee, 2018).

Dexmedetomidine

IV dexmedetomidine is a highly selective α_2 -adrenergic receptor agonist that is used in general hospitals, particularly so in medical and surgical intensive care units (Maze et al., 2001). In a meta-analysis of 14 RCTs including a total of 3029 participants in an intensive care unit setting, IV dexmedetomidine appeared to be superior to all other agents, including midazolam and placebo, showing a significant reduction in the incidence of agitation, confusion and delirium (Pasin et al., 2014). Calver and Isbister (2012) investigated the effectiveness and safety of IV dexmedetomidine in difficult-to-sedate patients (i.e. when two attempts at parenteral sedation failed) and reported that it was successful in achieving sedation in all but one patient, although the effect was short lasting and adverse events were frequent, mostly hypotension. The authors concluded that safe administration of dexmedetomidine is beyond the monitoring capability of most emergency departments. Although dexmedetomidine is an established option in the medical intensive care unit, there is scant evidence for its use in the emergency department.

Barbiturates

Until around 20 years ago, barbiturates such as IM amylobarbitone were sometimes used in RT (Pilowsky et al., 1992). Barbiturate use was unsupported by any formal trials or publications. Moreover, as potent respiratory depressants for which no reversing agent is available, barbiturates are exceptionally dangerous drugs when given parenterally and facilities for mechanical ventilation should be available (Kerr and Taylor, 1997; Taylor

et al., 1999). Today, only barbiturates used in anaesthesia remain licensed and readily available. Amylobarbitone is available on a 'named-patient' basis but it cannot be recommended for RT given the dangers associated with its use and the near absence of experience of its use amongst clinicians working in acute psychiatry in the context of RT.

Valproate

Sodium valproate was originally introduced as an antiepileptic agent in the 1960s and, soon after, there were reports of its use in bipolar disorder. There have been suggestions that it is of use in acute disturbance, in the context of varying diagnoses, since 1988 (Haddad et al., 2009). It is not generally included in RT protocols but has an acknowledged role in the optimisation of management in patients who are experiencing mania (Bowden et al., 1994; Freeman et al., 1992; Goodwin et al., 2016). In the absence of affective symptoms, there is limited evidence and a lack of RCT evidence to support the role that valproate may have in the management of aggression (Lindenmayer and Kotsaftis, 2000).

In schizophrenia, some uncontrolled studies have suggested that there may be promise for oral valproate as an anti-aggressive agent (Chong et al., 1998; Citrome et al., 2004) but this has not been established in later controlled studies (Volavka and Citrome, 2008). In a Cochrane review, its use as adjunct treatment in the management of schizophrenia in the absence of aggressive symptoms was concluded to have a limited evidence base (Wang et al., 2016).

The best evidence regarding oral valproate is in managing mania which, arguably, could reduce the requirement for RT. In placebo-controlled trials, valproate was found to be effective and comparable to lithium (Bowden, 2003; Pope et al., 1991). However, there is evidence to suggest that the combination of an SGA with sodium valproate is more effective (Goodwin et al., 2016; Ogawa et al., 2014). It should be stressed that these would be treatment choices to stabilise manic symptoms over a period of days rather than in clinical situations where RT is to be considered. Although Keck and McElroy described a rapid clinical response after using 'loading' doses of valproate for a small number of patients (Keck et al., 1993; McElroy et al., 1993, 1996), larger trials are needed.

The limited evidence for the use of valproate in aggression should be considered in the context of the potential side effects although weight gain, which is the most problematic, would not necessarily be considered in the acute situation. However, all prescribers must be aware that it should not be prescribed to women of child-bearing age due to the risk of teratogenicity (NICE, 2016a).

Ketamine

Ketamine is an NMDA receptor antagonist that is used as an anaesthetic agent, particularly in emergency situations. In recent years there has been a large amount of research into the use of IV ketamine infusions (most commonly at a dose of 0.5 mg/kg) as a rapidly acting antidepressant treatment (Berman et al., 2000; Zarate et al., 2006). There have been reports that in addition to being an antidepressant, ketamine has a specific acute anti-suicidal effect (Wilkinson et al., 2017). Such effects may be of relevance to the management of the mental disorder underlying the acute disturbance. However, the use of IV ketamine is

complicated. In a psychiatric context, it is usually recommended for use administered by an anaesthetist in an electroconvulsive therapy (ECT) suite, which ensures full resuscitation equipment is to hand (Diamond et al., 2014).

In terms of the specific use of ketamine for the management of acute disturbance, this has mostly been investigated in emergency departments where there is extensive evidence regarding its use for procedural sedation (Bellolio et al., 2016) and the management of pain (Motov et al., 2017). It is argued to be an ideal medication to sedate patients, with a rapid onset of action and minimal effects on airway control, breathing, heart rate, or blood pressure (Scaggs et al., 2016). Data from emergency departments are sparse but include a small retrospective review of 27 patients treated with IM ketamine. This found few major adverse effects on vital signs (mean systolic blood pressure increase of 17 ± 25 mmHg and increased heart rate of 8 ± 17 beats/min), even in a population with alcohol or drug intoxication in 40.6% (Hopper et al., 2015). However, 62.5% of patients required additional pharmacologic treatment for agitation. A subgroup analysis of a blinded RCT that compared IM droperidol, IM midazolam and their combination (Calver et al., 2015b; Isbister et al., 2010) considered a group of 49 patients for whom droperidol failed to induce adequate sedation and who were subsequently administered IM ketamine of varying doses (4–6 mg/kg) (Isbister et al., 2016). With no serious adverse events reported, ketamine was found to be effective when administered in doses > 200 mg.

A more recent prospective observational non-randomised study compared ketamine (IM 4–6 mg/kg or IV 1–2 mg/kg) with IM haloperidol, IM/IV midazolam, IM/IV lorazepam, and the combination of an IM/IV benzodiazepine plus IM haloperidol for acute disturbance in around 100 participants (Riddell et al., 2017). Ketamine led to significantly less agitation at 5, 10 and 15 minutes compared with the other treatments and there was no difference in the need for re-dosing or adverse effects between treatments, but the treatment group sizes were small ($n = 10$ –33).

There have also been several reports of the use of ketamine in ‘pre-hospital’ settings by paramedics and emergency medical staff; its rapid onset of action being its main advantage (Burnett et al., 2015). For example, a retrospective case series of seven young patients (mean age 24 years) with ‘excited delirium’ were reported to have been successfully and safely treated with IM ketamine (mean dose 4.4 mg/kg) (Scaggs et al., 2016). A larger retrospective study of 52 patients treated with IM ketamine 4 mg/kg also found a high rate of rapid sedation (in 50/52 patients) (Scheppke et al., 2014). In this study, 26 patients were also given IM/IV midazolam to prevent emergence reactions with ketamine. Of these, three patients experienced significant respiratory depression with two needing intubation. Higher rates of intubation (23%) were also reported in another retrospective review of 36 patients treated with IM or IV ketamine (Keseg et al., 2015). A prospective open-label study of IM ketamine (5 mg/kg) versus IM haloperidol (10 mg) in 146 subjects found the median time to ‘adequate sedation’ was significantly shorter with IM ketamine (5 vs 17 mins) (Cole et al., 2016). However, complications occurred in 49% of patients treated with IM ketamine (hypersalivation, vomiting, laryngospasm) versus 5% treated with haloperidol and, again, significantly more patients treated with ketamine required intubation (39% vs 4% of those treated with

haloperidol). Use of ketamine is supported by the Royal College of Emergency Medicine, but without comment on the strength of evidence (Gillings et al., 2016).

Intranasal esketamine, the active stereoisomer of ketamine, is being investigated by the pharmaceutical industry as a potential treatment for depression, and intranasal administration of ketamine has been proposed for the treatment of patients with severe acute disturbance in the emergency department (Normandin et al., 2016). This may be a safer and easier method of administration. However, more research is required to examine this approach. Pending this, IM or IV ketamine is likely to be relatively rarely used for RT. Importantly, it should be recognised that it leads to sedation rather than tranquillisation and availability of resuscitation equipment is required.

Electroconvulsive therapy (ECT)

Royal College of Psychiatrists (2013) guidance states that ECT is not a desirable measure to treat the risk of violence and NICE (2015b) guidelines on managing acute disturbance do not mention ECT. That being said, ECT may be a consideration for cases with prolonged and severe behavioural disturbance associated with certain psychiatric disorders. In such scenarios it is not inconceivable that RT may have been repeatedly utilised as a management strategy.

ECT reduces disturbed behaviour in mania by treating the manic episode. Although NICE guidelines on the management of bipolar disorder do not mention ECT for mania (NICE, 2016b), NICE guidelines on the use of ECT recommends it for prolonged or severe manic episodes but only to achieve rapid and short-term improvement after other treatments have failed or when the condition is life threatening (NICE, 2009). WFSBP guidelines for the treatment of bipolar disorder recommend ECT for acute manic episodes that are resistant to pharmacotherapy (Grunze et al., 2010), whereas BAP guidelines reserve ECT for patients with mania who are severely ill, whose mania is treatment resistant (including mixed states) and who express a preference for ECT (Goodwin et al., 2016). Others suggest that ECT may be considered at any point in the treatment of acute mania if the patient has a history of positive response or is intolerant of medications (Mohammad and Osseir, 2014).

Reviews attest to the efficacy of ECT in treating mania (Mukherjee et al., 1994), with some also citing the speed of treatment effect. ECT may reduce catatonia, aggression and excitement (Fink, 2001). In a review of the use of ECT in patients with catatonia, Luchini et al. (2015) highlighted that ECT is 80–100% effective in all forms of catatonia, including delirious mania or severe catatonic excitement, even after pharmacotherapy has failed.

ECT has also been found to be effective in augmenting antipsychotic treatment in treatment-resistant schizophrenia (Lally et al., 2016; Petrides et al., 2015). In a review of 31 articles on the indications for ECT in schizophrenia, Pompili et al. (2013) concluded that ECT in combination with pharmacotherapy is recommended for patients with schizophrenia presenting with catatonia, aggression or suicidal behaviour, when rapid global improvement and reduction of acute symptomatology are required. In a retrospective study of 20 hospitalised patients with schizophrenia or schizoaffective disorder who had received ECT treatment, aggression was found to be significantly reduced (Iancu et al., 2015). Kristensen

et al. (2012) reviewed the medical records of eight forensic inpatients with schizophrenia, whose psychotic symptoms were accompanied by seriously assaultive behaviour and were unresponsive to medication; all but one had an excellent or good symptomatic and behavioural response to ECT.

From evidence to practice

Recommended. Although no studies have evaluated the use of oral or IM formulations of promethazine as monotherapy, there is good evidence supporting its IM use in combination with haloperidol and so promethazine may also be effective as monotherapy. Oral-inhaled loxapine has trial evidence of efficacy supporting its use although a brief respiratory assessment is required beforehand, as it is contraindicated in patients with asthma or chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, and a short-acting beta-agonist bronchodilator (e.g. salbutamol) should be available.

Not recommended. Oral levomepromazine, valproate and barbiturates have a lack of evidence for use in RT. Although IM levomepromazine has some evidence of effectiveness, this has to be weighed against the risk of cardiovascular adverse effects, especially hypotension. IM ketamine has some evidence of effectiveness, but it carries an important risk of respiratory depression and does not have a reversing agent. IV dexmedetomidine has good evidence of effectiveness but is not safe for use in settings other than possibly in medical intensive care units.

For consideration for non-response. Zuclopenthixol acetate is not recommended for use as RT as the evidence does not support it, particularly as its onset of action takes several hours. However, after other strategies have failed to achieve a required response, its use may be considered as this may result in less numerous injections. A baseline ECG is advised before use due to the risk of QTc prolongation.

ECT may also be considered when other strategies have failed to achieve a required response, and particularly if the underlying disorder has an evidence base for the use of ECT (e.g. mania) or if there is a history of good response for the individual patient.

Modifiers, special settings and circumstances

Pregnancy

Women with pre-existing mental illness are at risk of relapse during pregnancy (NICE, 2014c) and may require hospitalisation, which in turn may include the management of acute disturbance. Commonly, medicines would be avoided during pregnancy; however, this is not always possible, in which case many treatment guidelines recommend treating the mother as per usual clinical algorithms (NICE, 2014c, 2015b).

Pharmacological and pharmacokinetic changes in pregnancy affect drug handling, including: variations in clearance between trimesters; increased glomerular filtration rate; and expansion of plasma volume, which subsequently return to pre-pregnancy states soon after delivery (Wesseloo et al., 2017). Avoiding drugs that may accumulate in both maternal and foetal tissues is an

advisable precautionary measure, as is selecting medication with a short half-life (McAllister-Williams et al., 2017).

There are risks to the foetus associated with the use of medicines during pregnancy, but there are also risks to the foetus or neonate if the mother's mental illness were to relapse as a consequence of no treatment. The main concern when prescribing medication for pregnant mothers is whether the medication may increase the baseline risk of malformations in the embryo, affect foetal development or lead to complications at birth. Exposure to a teratogen in the first trimester is more likely to cause structural malformations, whereas later exposure is more likely to cause growth defects (McElhatton, 2010). The risk of teratogenicity may be increased if the number of concomitant drugs is increased (UKMi, 2014). Teratogenic risk can differ among individuals and not every foetus will be affected (McElhatton, 2010). During the second and third trimesters, organs such as the cerebral cortex and the renal glomeruli continue to develop and remain particularly susceptible to damage. Teratogenic effects are usually dose dependent and the dose response curve is steep, in that a small increment in dose can result in a large increase in foetal toxicity (McElhatton, 2010). Due to late-stage pregnancy in utero exposure, benzodiazepines can lead to floppy baby syndrome and antipsychotics are associated with EPS in the neonate.

In a retrospective case series ($n = 80$), 39% of pregnant women received oral or IM medication for acute disturbance in a US emergency department; the authors did not make any active recommendations as to what to use (Ladavac et al., 2007). Existing RT guidelines give only general advice about the principles of management during pregnancy and do not provide a bespoke RT algorithm for use in pregnancy (McAllister-Williams et al., 2017; NICE, 2014c, 2015b). This is presumably due to the lack of RCTs conducted in pregnancy resulting from both feasibility and ethical concerns, and because the numbers involved in many studies are too small to allow for specific evidence-based recommendations. Consequently, we highlight here the importance of reporting the outcomes of pregnancies exposed to medication to the UK Teratology Information Service (UKTIS; <http://www.uktis.org/>).

The Maudsley Prescribing Guidelines (Taylor et al., 2015) highlight the lack of published information on the use of RT in pregnant women, and state that acute use of short-acting benzodiazepines such as lorazepam and of the sedative antihistamine promethazine is unlikely to be harmful; there is a caveat presumption that the use of either would be problematic immediately before birth. Recent WFSBP guidelines (Garriga et al., 2016) echo the lack of evidence in management of acute disturbance in pregnancy and suggest that verbal interventions should be employed whenever possible; followed by the minimally effective dose of medication, if necessary. NICE guidelines on the general treatment of psychiatric disorders in pregnancy (NICE, 2014c), recommends that benzodiazepines are not offered to pregnant women, except for the short-term treatment of anxiety and agitation, and that antipsychotic choice considers that there is limited data on safety in pregnancy. It also states that when choosing RT medication, an antipsychotic or benzodiazepine with a short half-life should be considered; it does not specify a particular drug. The BAP Consensus Guidelines (McAllister-Williams et al., 2017) endorse this point and add that, in RT, the minimum effective dose should be used for antipsychotics due to the risk of EPS and that for benzodiazepines, the risks of floppy baby syndrome should be taken into account.

UKTIS collects pregnancy outcome data from women who have been exposed to drugs and chemicals in pregnancy. It does not currently have any specific information in relation to lorazepam or any other benzodiazepine. In relation to haloperidol, UKTIS states that the published data do not demonstrate any increased risk of congenital malformations or spontaneous abortion following haloperidol exposure in pregnancy (UKTIS, 2014). For promethazine, UKTIS states that two small studies on foetal exposure to promethazine by maternal overdose do not suggest an association between in utero promethazine exposure and increased risks of congenital malformation, pre-term delivery, low birth weight or adverse neurodevelopmental outcome; risk of spontaneous abortion has not been studied. In the UK, manufacturers of promethazine state that, due to the risk of neonatal irritability and excitement, use should be avoided in the last two weeks of pregnancy (UKTIS, 2014). Recent meta-analyses (Magee et al., 2002), Cochrane reviews (Boelig et al., 2016; Matthews et al., 2015) and guidelines (NICE, 2008; Royal College of Obstetricians and Gynaecologists, 2016) have concluded that promethazine is safe to use in pregnancy in the ongoing management of nausea and hyperemesis gravidarum and recommend it; although this does not confirm its efficacy for RT in pregnancy, it does provide a degree of evidence regarding its safety.

Due to the lack of an evidence base for pregnant women, RT decisions are potentially more challenging when non-parenteral options (pre-RT) have been exhausted. For IM promethazine (Sanofi, 2016), IM lorazepam (Pfizer, 2014) and IM haloperidol (Concordia, 2017) there is no contraindication in pregnancy stipulated by the European licence for each drug respectively.

The relative risks of using one medicine over another in pregnancy versus leaving the patient untreated are difficult to assess due to a paucity of evidence and due to confounders such as concurrent medication, lifestyle and the illness itself. However, such concerns may be more relevant in relation to ongoing use of medication, not single doses as administered for RT. The direct effects of RT on the embryo or foetus are likely to be minimal, but the risks associated with use of restraint and ongoing regular medicines are likely to be more significant to the embryo or foetus; these should inform prescribers' plans for short-term management such as RT. Further considerations such as restraint positions (not prone or supine but semi-seated), techniques and equipment (e.g. use of beanbags) and suitable injection sites (gluteal or lateral thigh) are beyond the scope of this review but are addressed elsewhere (McAllister et al., 2017; NICE, 2015b).

Intoxication and withdrawal

There is little specific evidence about management of acute disturbance requiring RT where substance use is implicated. Clinical experience constitutes the available evidence. The use of drugs and alcohol and their relationship to mental disorders is outside the scope of this guideline; for their management, please see BAP guidelines on addiction (Lingford-Hughes et al., 2012). NG10 recognises that there are 'major problems' in managing substance-related violence with some patients inappropriately transferred to police cells (NICE, 2015b). In general, studies do not stipulate which substances are implicated, although alcohol, syn-

thetic cannabinoids, gammahydroxybutrate (GHB) and stimulants are most likely to be associated with acute disturbance.

One of the TREC trials examined the impact of substance misuse and found that IM midazolam or IM haloperidol plus IM promethazine were both effective and 'reasonably safe' (see Box 1 and Table 4) (TREC Collaborative Group, 2003). In other clinical guidelines, benzodiazepines are generally recommended due to their limited side-effect profile and propensity for drug interactions, the ability to titrate and to reverse their effects with flumazenil, particularly in an acutely disturbed patient where there is uncertainty about diagnosis and other drugs taken (Lingford-Hughes et al., 2012; NICE, 2015b). It is less clear what the best alternative is for those who may be benzodiazepine tolerant or dependent, alcohol dependent or have taken other respiratory depressants, although benzodiazepines are still likely to be the best approach with monitoring. Concerning antipsychotics, the risk of lowering seizure threshold and impact on cardiovascular rhythm means they should be used with caution and monitoring. In addition, the use of antipsychotics may complicate diagnosis of a psychotic presentation regarding whether it is 'drug induced' on a background of a psychotic illness. Once the acute presentation has resolved, a 'brief intervention' about the link between drug use and consequences should be delivered, as well as consideration given to referral to addiction services for more support and specialised treatment.

Management of alcohol withdrawal and its complications are covered in two NICE guidelines: CG100 (NICE, 2010) and CG115 (NICE, 2011). Benzodiazepines are generally preferred and for delirium tremens, parenteral lorazepam or haloperidol is recommended. Wernicke's encephalopathy and risk of thiamine deficiency should be considered and treated with parenteral thiamine (Lingford-Hughes et al., 2012; NICE, 2010, 2011).

For many of the novel psychoactive substances (NPS), rapid urine or field tests are not available, so assessment is critical for the diagnosis to be made. Clinicians should know signs and symptoms of intoxication and withdrawal of such substances, which broadly fall into the following groups: stimulants, depressants and hallucinogens. The Novel Psychoactive Treatment UK Network guidelines and website (<http://neptune-clinical-guidance.co.uk/>) are excellent resources regarding NPS and the associated clinical presentations and management of acute harms, including acute disturbance (Abdulrahim et al., 2015). Advice on acute clinical management is also available from the National Poisons Information Service (<https://www.toxbase.org/>). Cases of suspected harm from illicit substances, including NPS, can be reported to Public Health England (<https://report-illicit-drug-reaction.phe.gov.uk/>).

Gammahydroxybutrate (GHB) withdrawal can be associated with acute disturbance and is a potentially life-threatening condition that should therefore be considered as a medical emergency (Abdulrahim et al., 2015). Substantial doses of diazepam and/or admission to the medical intensive care unit with intubation to manage the acute disturbance have been described. GABA-B receptors are a target for GHB and addition of baclofen 10 mg three times a day to benzodiazepines has been reported to improve symptom control and reduce the need for large benzodiazepine doses (Lingford-Hughes et al., 2012).

Rapid tranquillisation in the general hospital

The emergency department of a general hospital is a clinical environment that affords the safe administration of a wider range of interventions and formulations than is possible in a psychiatric inpatient setting. With ready access to resuscitation equipment and ventilation apparatus, the risk versus benefit considerations can be different; this is especially pertinent when standard options and preparations fail. IV medications can be used, but these should be considered in line with the evidence outlined above.

As a general hospital has different clinical settings, there is a variety of scope for advanced medical risk management. For example, the emergency department is different to the medical intensive care unit in the general hospital; the latter being outside the scope of our guideline. In addition to the inpatient psychiatric setting, our guideline is also relevant to the standard general hospital acute setting with its ready access to resuscitation equipment and ventilation apparatus.

Psychiatric intensive care units and inpatient forensic psychiatric settings

PICUs are for patients who are in an acutely disturbed phase of a serious mental disorder (NAPICU, 2014). There is an associated loss of capacity for self-control, with a corresponding increase in risk, which does not allow for their safe, therapeutic management and treatment in a less secure ward. PICUs utilise a range of restrictive interventions including seclusion. Forensic psychiatric settings may also use highly restrictive interventions such as segregation or mechanical restraint. These are specialist interventions that require an enhanced understanding of how restrictive interventions can be safely and effectively used individually and in combination.

Inpatient forensic psychiatric settings are for patients who suffer from a mental disorder and who have carried out, or are at increased risk of, serious violence to others and may have been in contact with the Criminal Justice System. They provide acute treatment and rehabilitation within relevant levels of security, with an emphasis on interventions to reduce the risk of recidivism and violence associated with mental disorder.

In principle, the interventions used to manage acute disturbance in such patients should not differ from those described in this guideline. That said, the harmful effect of inadequately managed acute disturbance in PICU and inpatient forensic settings is likely to be more severe in both nature and degree than that seen in general acute wards. The patient population in these settings often has a history of past trauma (Briere et al., 2016), which can lead to the triggering of extreme responses to restrictive interventions, such as parenteral medication and physical restraint. Trauma-informed care management is recommended (Muskett, 2014). Polypharmacy and high-dose antipsychotic prescribing is more common in forensic settings and hence the additional prescribing of RT requires due caution and attention to the risk of adverse effects (Stone-Brown et al., 2016).

Seclusion

The efficacy of seclusion as an intervention used to manage acute disturbance in its own right is outside the scope of this guideline. Here we will briefly consider the relationship between RT and the act of seclusion. A patient in seclusion should have access to a range of interventions to manage acute disturbance.

In the case of RT and seclusion, one may precede the other, or they may be used concurrently. Data are largely unavailable regarding concurrent use. A survey of a medium secure forensic service found that 10% of patients were concurrently secluded and given RT (Haw et al., 2013) and in a general psychiatric sample this was found to be the case for 40% (Talukdar and Lekka, 2013). It is important to note that although these percentages are probably not generalisable, they are not small. In an RCT where participants were randomly allocated to seclusion or RT as first intervention, more than a third of participants eventually experienced both interventions (Georgieva et al., 2012).

Patients receiving RT who are subsequently secluded, or patients in seclusion who receive RT, can present some challenges around psychiatric monitoring. The Mental Health Act Code of Practice (Department of Health, 2015) specifies that secluded patients should be under continuous psychiatric observation with regular nursing (two-hourly) and medical (four-hourly) seclusion reviews (Bhavsar et al., 2014). The schedule and nature of seclusion reviews is not the same as the intensity of physical monitoring observations recommended for RT.

Physical health monitoring and RT

The rationale for physical health monitoring is based on the risk of adverse effects of RT medication, including EPS, sedation, respiratory depression, tachycardia, QTc prolongation with associated risk of arrhythmia, postural hypotension, increased seizure potential and NMS (Innes and Curtis, 2015; Innes and Iyeye, 2012; Innes and Sethi, 2013; Loynes et al., 2012; Macpherson et al., 2005). Pre-existing physical health comorbidities, pregnancy, drug or alcohol intoxication or withdrawal and potential medication interactions confer additional risks (Loynes et al., 2012). Non-medication risks are also a factor and may include the process of restraint (Innes and Curtis, 2015; Loynes et al., 2012). Furthermore, there are the practical challenges of delivering an IM injection into the correct muscle at the correct depth (Abdelmawla and Mitchell, 2006; Blofeld et al., 2003). Consequently, post-RT physical monitoring and documentation is required (Innes and Curtis, 2015; NHS Litigation Authority, 2013; NICE, 2017).

Most mental health organisations include some policy or protocol guidance for the monitoring of physical health post-RT, and yet these are far from uniform (Innes and Sethi, 2013; Loynes et al., 2012). Such variations reflect inconsistency between recommendations from national and international guidelines. Indeed, in national surveys, 97% of RT documents ($n = 44$) specified monitoring parameters but there was considerable variation with a range of 14 different parameters listed (Innes and Iyeye, 2012; Loynes et al., 2012).

Table 6 summarises the key points from guidelines that make pertinent recommendations; the following guidelines make no additional recommendations and are not included: American Association for Emergency Psychiatry (Wilson et al., 2012b); British Association for Psychopharmacology (Barnes et al., 2011); and Austrian Society for Neuropsychopharmacology and Biological Psychiatry (Frey et al., 2015).

In general, the recommended physical health parameters include all those that are monitored by the National Early Warning Score (NEWS) namely, temperature, pulse, systolic blood pressure, respiratory rate, oxygen saturation, level of

Table 6. Summary of key guidelines on post-RT monitoring.

Guideline	Post-RT parameters	Post-RT monitoring	Additional recommendations
Maudsley Prescribing Guidelines 12th edition (Taylor et al., 2015)	Temperature; pulse; blood pressure; respiratory rate	Every 10 minutes for 1 hour, then half-hourly till patient ambulatory	Poor engagement: observe for pyrexia, hypotension, over-sedation, and general physical well-being. Asleep/unconscious: continuous pulse oximetry desirable with nurse presence.
NG10 (NICE, 2015b)	Temperature; pulse; blood pressure; respiratory rate; hydration level; consciousness level; side effects	At least hourly until no further concerns or every 15 minutes (in certain circumstances)	Higher frequency if BNF maximum dose exceeded in prescribing; patient asleep or sedated; associated drugs and alcohol; pre-existing physical health concerns; experienced harm due to restrictive intervention.
NICE Quality Standard QS154 (NICE, 2017)	Vital signs; hydration level; consciousness level; side effects;	At least hourly until no further concerns	If RT is used while the person is in seclusion, additional measures may be needed to ensure safety.
Assessment and management of agitation in psychiatry: expert consensus (Garriga et al., 2016)	Vital signs	Every 15 minutes for 1 hour then every 30 minutes for 4 hours or until awake	Vigilant documented monitoring should be mandatory when physical restraint is used.

RT: rapid tranquillisation; BNF: British National Formulary.

consciousness or new confusion, as these are evidenced as good predictors of patient mortality and deteriorating health (Gao et al., 2007; Royal College of Physicians, 2017). Additionally, ECGs, hydration status and blood tests have been recommended post-RT (Macpherson et al., 2005).

There is an absence of evidence to stipulate the frequency and duration of monitoring post-RT. Most, if not all, of the evidence is based on expert committee and consensus recommendations. The most prescriptive guidance recommends physical health monitoring every 5–10 minutes for the first hour, then every 30–60 minutes until the patient is ambulatory (Macpherson et al., 2005). A singular approach is not possible due to differing monitoring needs for a higher-risk scenario. The monitoring guidance for individual medications found in their SmPC can also direct longer durations of monitoring. For example, the SmPC recommends monitoring for at least 8 hours after parenteral lorazepam (Pfizer, 2014), and for a minimum of 4 hours post-IM olanzapine (Eli Lilly, 2017b). In general, a phased approach to monitoring is widely reported in current clinical practice, with monitoring every 15 minutes post-RT with IM medication for up to an hour, followed by a lower intensity monitoring phase (hourly up to 4 hours); the latter is subject to whether a patient is ambulatory (Innes and Iyke, 2012).

Ultimately, physical health monitoring essentially requires direct ‘hands-on contact’ but also needs to be practically feasible and safe. There will be times when direct contact physical observations are associated with increased risks to staff and/or the patient and may even have the counterproductive effect of re-escalating a situation. Examples may involve a secluded patient or one whose degree of acute disturbance is associated with poor engagement with clinicians. For this difficult-to-monitor patient group, there is no evidence base or guidance as to what may constitute non-contact physical monitoring. Respiratory rate, level of consciousness and clinical observational signs (pallor, signs of pyrexia, evidence of dystonia or akathisia and signs of dehydration) have been suggested as practical for such scenarios until direct contact physical monitoring can be established (Innes and Iyke, 2012; Loynes et al., 2012; Macpherson et al., 2005). As

technology continues to develop, the use of non-contact electronic monitoring may be considered. The use of photoplethysmogram technology in seclusion closed-circuit television or patients wearing wrist heart rate and movement monitors are likely to contribute to future innovation in this area (Davis et al., 2014; Kamshilin et al., 2015; Tully et al., 2015).

The relationship between physical health monitoring and psychiatric observation can be a potential source of confusion. Psychiatric observation of behaviour is often enhanced in scenarios where RT is used, with some scenarios requiring one-to-one continuous psychiatric observations. A number of levels of psychiatric observations are commonly used in psychiatric practice including: continuous arm’s length, continuous line of sight and intermittent (high or low level, ranging from every 15 minutes to every 60 minutes) (NICE, 2015b). It is recommended that psychiatric observations are carried out in a sensitive manner, minimising the patient’s feeling of being under surveillance (Macpherson et al., 2005). Although clearly linked, these two clinical monitoring methods (physical health and psychiatric) are not synonymous. The recommendations presented in Table 7 are for physical health monitoring (with suggested minimum psychiatric monitoring) following the use of medications pre-RT and RT and, given the dearth of evidence available, are based on the consensus of experts.

An algorithm for the management of acute disturbance

Model and components

Algorithms for the management of acute disturbance exist in the literature in the form of RT protocols and, in general, are based on one of two models; neither is ideal. In the first type, interventions are stratified across a number of branches depending on the clinical characteristics of the acute disturbance scenario. Although these can include most clinical sub-groups, such protocols can be too unwieldy to use in an acute emergency and

Table 7. Direct contact monitoring levels.

Level	Criteria	Physical monitoring schedule	Suggested minimum psychiatric observations
Low	All patients following pre-RT medications	NEWS or equivalent every hour for minimum 1 hour	Standard psychiatric observations every hour
Medium	All patients post IM RT, who do not require high/critical level monitoring	NEWS or equivalent every 15 minutes for minimum 1 hour	Intermittent psychiatric observations every 15 minutes
High	All patients post IM RT, who are over-sedated, asleep, or significantly physically unwell	NEWS or equivalent every 15 minutes for minimum 1 hour and include pulse oximetry until patient is ambulatory	Continuous (within line of sight)
Critical	All patients post IV RT as well as patients who are unconscious (not rousable) or severely physically unwell	Continuous monitoring and resuscitation facilities are essential	Continuous (within arm's length)

IM: intramuscular; IV: intravenous; NEWS (National Early Warning Score): temperature, pulse, systolic blood pressure, respiratory rate, oxygen saturation, level of consciousness; RT: rapid tranquillisation.

there is a dearth of evidence supporting stratification of patients to different interventions on the basis of their clinical presentation. Alternatively, in the second type of model, interventions are considered stepwise with a linear flow, with some reference to additional complexities related to certain clinical subgroups. However, interventions are not easily placed in a linear flow as they can be used at different points of a clinical scenario and can be used individually or often in combination.

Our algorithm includes both overarching fundamental principles and interventions (pre-RT, RT and considerations for non-response). We chose to place the interventions in a linear model with stepwise flow. This is in keeping with the general notion that there is an increased likelihood of requiring a later-stage interventional category, if earlier and generally less restrictive interventions have been tried and not had the desired outcome, the clinical state is worsening, the risks are increasing, or patient engagement is challenging.

Principles

The consensus group confirmed the seven fundamental principles as outlined below.

1. **Multidisciplinary approach:** as the aetiology of acute disturbance is complex and heterogeneous, its management warrants a multidisciplinary approach including psychopharmacological, psychological, environmental and social interventions.
2. **Effective interventions:** interventions should have an evidence base confirming they increase positive outcomes and/or reduce negative outcomes (harm) of acute disturbance in the immediate to short term (from minutes to hours). Strategies should be used to minimise the risk of adverse effects of these interventions such as seeking to prescribe the minimum effective dose and checking for increased risk of side effects.
3. **Proportionality of intervention:** an intervention has an associated imposed level of restriction on the patient and this restriction should be proportionate (i.e. not excessive) to the acute severity of the clinical risk posed by the acute disturbance. Further, the least restrictive options available should always be considered in the first instance and so RT should

generally be used as a last resort only if non-pharmacological and oral pharmacological options have been exhausted.

4. **Treatment individualisation/choice:** steps should be taken, wherever possible, to ensure that interventions are selected with patient-specific factors (clinical, risk and choice related) as part of the decision-making process. This will include clinical consideration of previous response to specific medication as well as adverse responses and allergies.
5. **Treatment optimisation of underlying disorder:** interventions should be set in a context of the overarching goal of optimising the treatment of the underlying disorder as this may be partially or wholly causing the acute disturbance.
6. **Continuous monitoring/review of: (i) mental/physical health; (ii) risk to self/others; (iii) treatment effectiveness/harm; (iv) patient engagement level.** The clinical scenario and associated risks to self/others change with time. Thus, selection of interventions to reduce risk in the immediate or short term needs to reflect this so that the right intervention is used for the right scenario at the right time. Physical health is also important as both acute disturbance and the interventions are associated with physical health consequences. Further, it should be noted that when prescribing in combination some side effects are additive. As a patient-centred approach is at risk of being compromised, the assessment of the patient's level of engagement in seeking positive solutions to reduce harm and improve clinical outcomes should be kept under review.
7. **Consideration of modifiers:** certain clinical sub-populations merit specific consideration as they may require a modified approach to pre-RT and RT. These include: pregnancy, drugs and alcohol, medically frailty or physically compromised (e.g. dehydrated), psychotropic naivety, patients already prescribed regular psychotropics, learning disability and (extremes of) age.

We also note the importance of an immediate debrief and a post-incident review to consider the learning points. This should also include a review of regular medication with the aim of reducing further episodes requiring RT.

Recommendations for interventions

The efficacy and key safety concerns of the putative interventions in the management of acute disturbance are summarised here, together with the categories of evidence (I–IV) and strength of recommendation (A–D, S), see also Table 1 and Figure 1.

Pre-RT: De-escalation. The following de-escalation components are effective: continual risk assessment, management of environment, passive intervention and watchful waiting, reassurance, respect and avoidance of shame, appropriate use of humour, identification of patient needs, distraction, reframing events for patient, non-confrontational limit setting (III; C).

The following de-escalation components may be effective: self-control techniques, avoidance of provocation, respect patient space, empathy, negotiation (IV; D).

Pre-RT: Oral, oral-inhaled and buccal. Oral-inhaled loxapine is effective although a brief respiratory assessment is required beforehand, as it is contraindicated in patients with asthma or chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, and a short-acting beta-agonist bronchodilator (e.g. salbutamol) should be available (Ib; A).

Buccal midazolam is effective (III; C).

Oral lorazepam may be effective (IV; D).

Oral promethazine may be effective (S).

Oral formulations of aripiprazole, olanzapine and risperidone are effective (Ib; A).

Oral haloperidol is effective and a baseline ECG is advised before use due to the risk of QTc prolongation (III; C).

Oral quetiapine is effective (III; C).

Oral formulations of clonazepam and diazepam are not recommended due to lack of evidence for use in RT together with the risk of accumulation with repeated dosing and the resultant risk of cumulative adverse effects (S).

Oral levomepromazine is not recommended due to lack of evidence for use in RT (S).

Pre-RT pharmacological strategies should be considered before RT (S).

RT: IM monotherapy. IM lorazepam is effective (Ib; A).

Parenteral benzodiazepines have safety concerns due the risk of respiratory depression. Thus, wherever they are used, flumazenil must be immediately available (S).

IM promethazine may be effective (extrapolated Ia; D)

IM aripiprazole is effective (Ia; A).

IM droperidol is effective and a baseline ECG is advised before use due to the risk of QTc prolongation (Ib; A).

IM olanzapine is effective, but it should only be administered by itself and not concurrently with IM benzodiazepines due to risk of hypotension; thus, there should be an interval of at least 1 hour between the two (Ia; A).

IM clonazepam is not recommended due to a relative lack of supporting evidence for use in RT (S).

IM diazepam is not recommended due to lack of evidence for use in RT (S).

IM midazolam is not recommended due to the risk of respiratory depression (Ia; A).

IM haloperidol is not recommended as monotherapy even though it has evidence of effectiveness, and a baseline ECG is

advised, as measures need to be in place to offset its adverse effects and especially for the risk of acute dystonia (Ia; A).

IM levomepromazine is not recommended, even though it has some evidence of effectiveness, as there is potential evidence for a risk of cardiovascular adverse effects, especially hypotension (III; C).

RT IM monotherapy should be considered before RT IM combinations (S).

RT: IM combinations. IM promethazine plus IM haloperidol is effective and a baseline ECG is advised before haloperidol use due to the risk of QTc prolongation (Ia; A).

IM lorazepam plus IM haloperidol is effective and a baseline ECG is advised before haloperidol use due to the risk of QTc prolongation (Ia; A).

Parenteral benzodiazepines have safety concerns due the risk of respiratory depression. Thus, wherever they are used, flumazenil must be immediately available (S).

IM lorazepam plus IM promethazine is not recommended due to lack of evidence for efficacy for this combination (S).

RT: IV monotherapy (resuscitation settings only). Due to the potential risk of respiratory depression and cardiac adverse effects, RT IV options must only be used in settings where resuscitation equipment and trained clinicians are available to manage medical emergencies (S).

Both IV lorazepam and IV midazolam are effective (Ib; A).

As flumazenil can reverse respiratory depression caused by an IV benzodiazepine, its immediate availability must be confirmed before an IV benzodiazepine is administered (S).

IV droperidol is effective and a baseline ECG is advised before use due to the risk of QTc prolongation (Ib; A).

IV olanzapine has evidence of effectiveness but caution is advised due to the risk of respiratory depression and the lack of a reversing agent (III; C).

IV diazepam is not recommended due to lack of evidence for use in RT (S).

IV haloperidol is not recommended due to a lack of evidence for its use in RT (S).

IV dexmedetomidine has evidence of effectiveness but is not recommended as it is not safe for use in settings other than possibly in medical intensive care units (Ia; A).

Non-response to pre-RT and RT interventions. Seeking senior advice, conducting a comprehensive case review and a reviewing the appropriateness of the clinical setting should all be considered (S).

Zuclopenthixol acetate is not recommended for use as RT as the evidence does not support it, particularly as its onset of action takes several hours. However, after other strategies have failed to achieve a required response, its use may be considered. A baseline ECG is advised before use due to the risk of QTc prolongation (III; C).

ECT may also be considered when other strategies have failed to achieve a required response, and particularly if the underlying disorder has an evidence base for the use of ECT (e.g. mania) or if there is a history of good response for the individual patient (IV; D).

IM ketamine is effective but it is not recommended due to risk of respiratory depression (III; C).

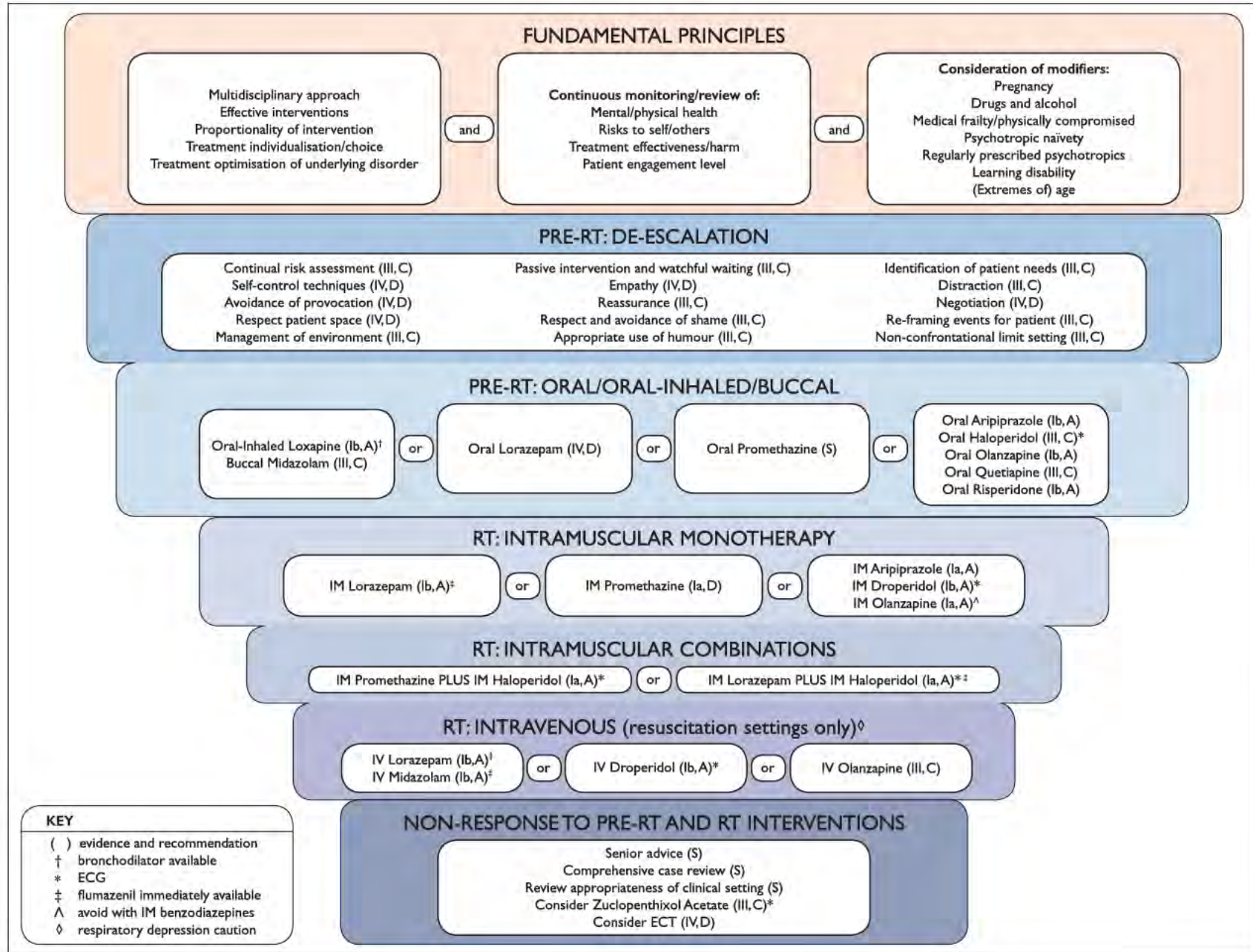


Figure 1. An algorithm for the management of acute disturbance.

Barbiturates and valproate are not recommended due to lack of evidence for use in RT (S).

Physical monitoring. All patients who have received pre-RT medication should be monitored at a minimum of Low Level (S) (see table 7).

All patients who have received IM RT should be monitored at a minimum of Medium Level (IV; D).

All patients who have received IM RT and are over-sedated, asleep or significantly physically unwell, should be monitored at a minimum of High Level (S).

All patients who have received IV RT and/or are unconscious or severely physically unwell, should be monitored at Critical Level (S).

For those patients for whom direct contact physical monitoring is not safe or feasible, non-contact physical monitoring (comprising respiratory rate, level of consciousness, pallor, signs of pyrexia, evidence of dystonia/akathisia and signs of dehydration) should be conducted until direct contact physical monitoring can be established (S).

Due to the potential risk of respiratory depression and cardiac adverse effects, staff should be trained in immediate life support and resuscitation equipment use, and trained clinicians should be available to manage medical emergencies (IV; D).

Discussion

Overview

The management of acute disturbance in the context of an underlying mental or physical disorder presents some of the most challenging clinical scenarios in acute healthcare. The evidence base for interventions in this field remains problematic with some interventions lacking an evidence base or being only supported by evidence of lower quality and thus consensus methods were also required. This guideline specifically focussed on the use of de-escalation methods, and non-parenteral medication used as pre-RT interventions as well as parenteral medications used in RT. We consolidated our recommendations within a clinical algorithm that included seven overarching fundamental principles that promote high-quality patient care. De-escalation was described as comprising numerous active components, each of which were considered individually with regard to the supporting evidence base. To our knowledge this guideline is the first to represent de-escalation in this way.

Historically, non-parenteral medications were included in RT, but more recently these have been relatively excluded from larger reviews and guidelines such as NG10 (NICE, 2015b). In our guideline, we have reviewed oral, oral-inhaled and buccal options and made recommendations accordingly. Parenteral medication used in RT was described across three levels: IM monotherapy, IM combinations and IV medications. Some RT medications were not recommended due to safety considerations, whereas others were recommended with specific safety advice. For IM monotherapy, IM haloperidol alone was not recommended due to risk of adverse effects including dystonia, whereas IM droperidol was recommended if the risk of QTc prolongation is taken into account by performing baseline ECG. Further, we focussed our review of the evidence for IV monotherapy in resuscitation-resourced settings such as emergency departments, acute medical and acute surgical inpatient wards in the general medical hospital.

It is important to note that several medications recommended for use in pre-RT (e.g. oral promethazine) or RT (e.g. IV droperidol) would be outside the terms of their licence (off-label) if used for the management of acute disturbance; this may be especially true for pregnant women. Thus, prescribers are advised to consult more authoritative guidance on the use of licensed medication in unlicensed situations (GMC, 2013; MHRA, 2009; Royal College of Psychiatrists, 2007, 2017).

This guideline also makes specific recommendations for monitoring of physical healthcare and psychiatric observations following pre-RT and RT medication and these include the use of non-contact physical observations where direct contact is not possible.

For scenarios where pre-RT and RT interventions have not been effective in managing acute disturbance, it is likely that the clinical picture progresses towards non-acute or prolonged disturbance. In these circumstances, we recommend seeking senior multidisciplinary advice, conducting a comprehensive case review, and reviewing the appropriateness of the clinical setting for the patient and their treatment. Zuclopenthixol acetate or ECT may also be considered, if clinically appropriate.

Key uncertainties and research recommendations

One of our principles for the management of acute disturbance highlights the importance of patient-specific factors as RT medication choices should not be uniform regardless of diagnosis or clinical presentation. However, how best to individualise clinical decision making largely lacks an evidence base. Patient sub-populations should be considered, including but not limited to those who have misused substances such as NPS and pregnant women. The scope of these guidelines specifically excluded the management of acute disturbance relating to children and young people, those with learning disability or traumatic brain injury, or older adults with or without dementia. Over time, it is hoped that the evidence base for RT in these patient populations will be enhanced, allowing us to include their consideration in due course. As patient choice remains a key focus for clinical care in the UK, we also advocate further research on the perspective of patients.

We did not conduct a critical evaluation of the numerous clinical rating scales, including those used as outcome measures. We note that most focus on moderate to severe symptoms such as hostility, uncooperativeness and poor impulse control, thereby ignoring that acute disturbance is a continuum that starts with less severe symptoms such as nervousness, which progress to agitation and may or may not manifest as aggression or violent behaviour. Further consideration is warranted to identify which are the most appropriate scales to use to measure degree or frequency of acute disturbance and the outcomes of management approaches and to consider at what time points these should be evaluated. Similarly, monitoring protocols and methods, including use of technology for non-contact physical monitoring, require enhanced empirical examination.

For de-escalation, the distinct paucity of high-quality research evidence needs to be addressed to confirm the effectiveness of de-escalation as an intervention, together with exploration of the potential reasons as to why de-escalation sometimes fails. Given that failure to successfully de-escalate a situation increases the likelihood of progression to restrictive interventions and markedly

increased risk for the patient and staff; any refinement of the process, active components and skills of de-escalation is important. Further, NG10 identifies the following research question as a priority: 'Which medication is effective in promoting de-escalation in people who are identified as likely to demonstrate significant violence?' (NICE, 2015b). Not only does this place due emphasis on the importance of identifying patients at risk of becoming acutely disturbed, but also notes the potential role of pre-RT medication and whether this may strengthen the use of verbal/psychotherapeutic de-escalation strategies. The interplay of oral, oral-inhaled and buccal pharmacological interventions with de-escalation is yet to be clarified. Moreover, the difference between non-parenteral regularly prescribed or PRN medication in the management of acute disturbance warrants further investigation. Oral promethazine is commonly used as PRN medication and yet the maximum daily dose also remains subject to debate.

In our review of the evidence for RT we identified a key need for a head-to-head trial to ascertain whether there is a difference in efficacy between the combinations IM haloperidol plus IM promethazine versus IM haloperidol plus IM lorazepam. Additionally, IM promethazine may be combined with IM lorazepam and sometimes with IM aripiprazole and yet there is minimal evidence to evaluate the efficacy or harm of these combinations over their respective sole drugs alone. Also, further research on the range of IV medications is required for RT in non-psychiatric medical or surgical settings with a particular focus for medical intensive care settings and the drugs that are more familiar to clinicians working there. We also note that RCTs of RT, including the TREC studies, and naturalistic data (POMH-UK, 2017) show that a significant minority of patients do not respond to an initial attempt at RT. Thus, we ask what measures are taken by clinicians to resolve the acute disturbance for those patients? In turn, this can shape further empirical questions to be addressed by future clinical trials.

Although we found some putative interventions should not be considered as options for RT, others such as ECT treat the underlying disorder and thereby predominantly appear to have an indirect role in the management of acute disturbance. Thus, we highlight the need for further empirical research as to whether its use leads to a reduction in the risk of subsequent episodes of acute disturbance requiring RT.

Conclusions

The management of acute disturbance is a complex process. We have presented the recommended interventions within a structured algorithm for the clinician to consider the various options according to their route of administration and category of evidence. Fundamental overarching principles are included and highlight the importance of treating the underlying disorder. Due emphasis has been placed on the phase pre-RT that includes the use of non-parenteral medication. The interplay of both pharmacological and non-pharmacological interventions, including de-escalation, is important and yet also warrants further empirical investigation. Moreover, it is noted that some medications have been somewhat disregarded for a number of years and now ought to be re-established in light of a new evidence base to support their use.

We conclude that the variety of options available for the management of acute disturbance goes beyond the standard choices of

lorazepam, haloperidol and promethazine. Ultimately, we advocate that the clinician can determine the optimal evidence-based interventions centred within a multi-faceted and multidisciplinary approach, which also includes an individualised patient perspective.

Acknowledgements

Grateful thanks are extended to Council members of the BAP and the Executive Committee of the NAPICU. Special thanks are due to Susan Chandler (BAP) who organised the first consensus meeting, Lauren Mulligan (NAPICU) who organised the second meeting and Sally Thomas for editorial support services. We would also like to thank Dr Abu Shafi, Camden and Islington NHS Foundation Trust, for his comments on NPS. All authors contributed text for the guidelines. MXP and FS planned the meetings and edited the manuscript. All authors approved the final draft.

Declaration of conflicting interest

Declarations of potential conflicts of interest with respect to the research, authorship and/or publication of this article for all authors are available here: <https://www.bap.org.uk/RTdeclarations>

There has been no involvement of pharmaceutical companies at any stage of the development of these guidelines, from conception to publication.

Funding

The author(s) disclosed receipt of the following financial support for the research, authorship, and/or publication of this article: The costs of the expert group meetings and any miscellaneous expenses were met from the funds of the BAP and NAPICU.

References

- Abdelmawla N and Mitchell AJ (2006) Sudden cardiac death and antipsychotics. Part 2: Monitoring and prevention. *Adv Psychiatric Treat* 12: 100–109.
- Abdulrahim D, Bowden-Jones O, Bell J, et al. (2015) *Guidance on the Clinical Management of Acute and Chronic Harms of Club Drugs and Novel Psychoactive Substances*. London: Novel Psychoactive Treatment UK Network.
- Alexander J, Tharyan P, Adams C, et al. (2004) Rapid tranquillisation of violent or agitated patients in a psychiatric emergency setting. Pragmatic randomised trial of intramuscular lorazepam v. haloperidol plus promethazine. *Br J Psychiatry* 185: 63–69.
- Al-Haddad MK, Kamel C, Sequeria RP, et al. (1996) Zuclopenthixol versus haloperidol in the initial treatment of schizophrenic psychoses, affective psychoses and paranoid states: A controlled clinical trial. *Arab J Psychiatry* 7: 44–54.
- Allen MH, Carpenter D and Sheets JL (2003) What do consumers say they want and need during a psychiatric emergency? *J Psychiatry Pract* 9: 39–58.
- Allen MH, Currier GW, Carpenter D, et al. (2005) The expert consensus guideline series. Treatment of behavioral emergencies 2005. *J Psychiatric Practice* 11(Suppl 1): 5–112.
- Allen MH, Currier GW, Hughes DH, et al. (2001) The expert consensus guideline series. Treatment of behavioral emergencies. *Postgrad Med* 1–90.
- Allen MH, Feifel D, Lesem MD, et al. (2011) Efficacy and safety of loxapine for inhalation in the treatment of agitation in patients with schizophrenia: A randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. *J Clin Psychiatry* 72: 1313–1321.
- Amdisen A, Aaes-Jorgensen T, Thomsen NJ, et al. (1986) Serum concentrations and clinical effect of zuclopenthixol in acutely disturbed, psychotic patients treated with zuclopenthixol acetate in Viscolear. *Psychopharmacology (Berl)* 90: 412–416.

- Amdisen A, Nielsen MS, Dencker SJ, et al. (1987) Zuclopenthixol acetate in Viscoleo - a new drug formulation. An open Nordic multicentre study of zuclopenthixol acetate in Viscoleo in patients with acute psychoses including mania and exacerbation of chronic psychoses. *Acta Psychiatr Scand* 75: 99–107.
- Austen JD (2005) Adapting de-escalation techniques with deaf service users. *Nursing Standard* 19: 41–47.
- Baastrup PC, Alhfors UG, Bjerkenstedt L, et al. (1993) A controlled Nordic multicentre study of zuclopenthixol acetate in oil solution, haloperidol and zuclopenthixol in the treatment of acute psychosis. *Acta Psychiatr Scand* 87: 48–58.
- Babe KS Jr and Serafin WE (1996) Histamine, bradykinin, and their antagonists. In: Hardman JG, Limbird LE, Molinoff PB, et al. (eds) *Goodman & Gilman's The Pharmacological Basis of Therapeutics*. 9th ed. New York: McGraw-Hill, pp. 581–600.
- Balant LP, Balant-Gorgia AE, Eisele R, et al. (1989) Clinical and pharmacokinetic evaluation of zuclopenthixol acetate in Viscoleo. *Pharmacopsychiatry* 22: 250–254.
- Baldaçara L, Sanches M, Cordeiro DC, et al. (2011) Rapid tranquilization for agitated patients in emergency psychiatric rooms: A randomized trial of olanzapine, ziprasidone, haloperidol plus promethazine, haloperidol plus midazolam and haloperidol alone. *Rev Bras Psiquiatr* 33: 30–39.
- Baldwin D, Aitchison K, Bateson A, et al. (2013) Benzodiazepines: Risks and benefits. A reconsideration. *J Psychopharmacology* 27: 967–971.
- Barbee J, Mancuso DM, Freed CR, et al. (1992) Alprazolam as a neuroleptic adjunct in the emergency treatment of schizophrenia. Randomized controlled trial. *Am J Psychiatry* 149: 506–510.
- Barnes TRE (1989) A rating scale for drug-induced akathisia. *Br J Psychiatry* 154: 672–676.
- Barnes TRE and Paton C (2011) Improving prescribing practice in psychiatry. *Int Rev Psychiatry* 23: 328–335.
- Barnes TR and Schizophrenia Consensus Group of British Association for Psychopharmacology (2011) Evidence-based guidelines for the pharmacological treatment of schizophrenia: Recommendations from the British Association for Psychopharmacology. *J Psychopharmacol* 25: 567–620.
- Beach SR, Celano CM, Sugrue AM, et al. (2017) QT Prolongation, torsades de pointes, and psychotropic medications: A 5-year update. *Psychosomatics* 59: 105–122.
- Bellolio MF, Gilani WI, Barrionuevo P, et al. (2016) Incidence of adverse events in adults undergoing procedural sedation in the emergency department: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *Acad Emerg Med* 23: 119–134.
- Berman RM, Cappiello A, Anand A, et al. (2000) Antidepressant effects of ketamine in depressed patients. *Biol Psychiatry* 47: 351–354.
- Berring LL, Pedersen L and Buus N (2016) Coping with violence in mental health care settings: Patient and staff member perspectives on de-escalation practices. *Arch Psychiatric Nursing* 30: 499–507.
- Bhavsar V, Sethi F and Hillier B (2014) Medical guidelines for PICU seclusion reviews. *J Psychiatric Intensive Care* 10: 40–50.
- Blofeld J, Sallah D, Sashidharan SP, et al. (2003) *Independent Inquiry into the Death of David Bennett*. Cambridge: Norfolk, Suffolk and Cambridgeshire Strategic Health Authority.
- Boelig RC, Barton SJ, Saccone G, et al. (2016) Interventions for treating hyperemesis gravidarum (Review). *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 5: CD010607.
- Bowden CL (2003) Valproate. *Bipolar Disord* 5: 189–202.
- Bowden CL, Brugger AM, Swann AC, et al. (1994) Efficacy of divalproex vs lithium and placebo in the treatment of mania. The Depakote Mania Study Group. *JAMA* 271: 918–924.
- Bowers L (2014) A model of de-escalation. *Mental Health Practice* 17: 36–37.
- Bowers L, James K, Quirk A, et al. (2015) Reducing conflict and containment rates on acute psychiatric wards: The Safewards cluster randomised controlled trial. *Int J Nurs Stud* 52: 1412–1422.
- Bowers L, Nijman H, Allan T, et al. (2006) Prevention and management of aggression training and violent incidents on UK acute psychiatric wards. *Psychiatr Serv* 57: 1022–1026.
- Briere J, Agee E and Dietrich A (2016) Cumulative trauma and current posttraumatic stress disorder status in general population and inmate samples. *Psychol Trauma* 8: 439–446.
- Brook S, Berk M, Selemani S, et al. (1998) A randomized controlled double-blind study of zuclopenthixol acetate compared to haloperidol in acute psychosis. *Hum Psychopharmacol Clin Exp* 13: 17–20.
- Bucci L and Saunders JC (1964) Methotrimeprazine for control of the acutely disturbed. *Am J Psychiatry* 120: 905–906.
- Buckley PF (1999) The role of typical and atypical antipsychotic medications in the management of agitation and aggression. *J Clin Psychiatry* 60 (Suppl 10): 52–60.
- Burnett AM, Peterson BK, Stellpflug SJ, et al. (2015) The association between ketamine given for prehospital chemical restraint with intubation and hospital admission. *Am J Emerg Med* 33: 76–79.
- Burst JCM (1996) *Neurotoxic Side Effects of Prescription Drugs*. Boston: Butterworth-Heinemann.
- Calver LA, Downes MA, Page CB, et al. (2010) The impact of a standardised intramuscular sedation protocol for acute behavioural disturbance in the emergency department. *BMC Emerg Med* 10: 14.
- Calver L, Drinkwater V, Gupta R, et al. (2015b) Droperidol v haloperidol for sedation of aggressive behaviour in acute mental health: Randomized controlled trial. *Br J Psychiatry* 206: 223–228.
- Calver L, Drinkwater V and Isbister GK (2013) A prospective study of high dose sedation for rapid tranquillisation of acute behavioural disturbance in an acute mental health unit. *BMC Psychiatry* 13: 225.
- Calver L and Isbister GK (2012) Dexmedetomidine in the emergency department: Assessing safety and effectiveness in difficult-to-sedate acute behavioural disturbance. *Emerg Med J* 29: 915–918.
- Calver L, Page CB, Downes MA, et al. (2015a) The safety and effectiveness of droperidol for sedation of acute behavioural disturbance in the emergency department. *Ann Emerg Med* 66: 230–238.
- Canadian Agency for Drugs and Technologies in Health (2015) *Use of Antipsychotics and/or Benzodiazepines as Rapid Tranquilization in Inpatients of Mental Facilities and Emergency Departments: A Review of the Clinical Effectiveness and Guidelines*. Canadian Agency for Drugs and Technologies in Health Rapid Response Reports. Ottawa, ON: Canadian Agency for Drugs and Technologies in Health.
- Care Quality Commission (2014) *Monitoring the Mental Health Act in 2012/13*. Newcastle upon Tyne: Care Quality Commission.
- Chakrabarti A, Bagnall A, Chue P, et al. (2007) Loxapine for schizophrenia. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 17: CD001943.
- Chakravarti SK, Muthu A, Muthu PK, et al. (1990) Zuclopenthixol acetate (5% in 'Viscoleo'): Single-dose treatment for acutely disturbed psychotic patients. *Curr Med Res Opin* 12: 58–65.
- Champagne T and Stromberg N (2004) Sensory approaches in inpatient psychiatric settings: Innovative alternatives to seclusion and restraint. *J Psychosoc Nurs Ment Health Serv* 42: 34–44.
- Chan EW, Taylor DM, Knott JC, et al. (2013) Intravenous droperidol or olanzapine as an adjunct to midazolam for the acutely agitated patient: A multicenter, randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled clinical trial. *Ann Emerg Med* 61: 72–81.
- Chan-Tack KM (1999) Neuroleptic malignant syndrome due to promethazine. *South Med J* 92: 1017–1028.
- Chengappa KN, Goldstein JM, Greenwood M, et al. (2003) A post hoc analysis of the impact on hostility and agitation of quetiapine and haloperidol among patients with schizophrenia. *Clin Ther* 25: 530–541.
- Chin CN, Hamid AR, Philip G, et al. (1998) A double-blind comparison of zuclopenthixol acetate with haloperidol in the management of acutely disturbed schizophrenics. *Med J Malaysia* 53: 365–371.
- Chong S-A, Tan C-H, Lee E-L, et al. (1998) Augmentation of risperidone with valproic acid. *J Clin Psychiatry* 59: 430.
- Chouinard G, Annable L, Turnier L, et al. (1993) A double-blind randomised clinical trial of rapid tranquillisation with IM clonazepam and IM haloperidol in agitated psychotic patients with manic symptoms. *Can J Psychiatry* 38 (Suppl 4): S114–121.
- Chouinard G, Safadi G and Beauclair L (1994) A double-blind controlled study of intramuscular zuclopenthixol acetate and liquid oral halo-

- peridol in the treatment of schizophrenic patients with acute exacerbation. *J Clin Psychopharmacol* 14: 377–384.
- Citrome L (2007) Comparison of intramuscular ziprasidone, olanzapine, or aripiprazole for agitation: A quantitative review of efficacy and safety. *J Clin Psychiatry* 68: 1876–1885.
- Citrome L, Casey DE, Daniel DG, et al. (2004) Adjunctive divalproex and hostility among patients with schizophrenia receiving olanzapine or risperidone. *Psychiatr Serv* 55: 290–294.
- Clinton JE, Sterner S, Stelmachers Z, et al. (1987) Haloperidol for sedation of disruptive emergency patients. *Ann Emerg Med* 16: 319–322.
- Cohen-Mansfield J and Billing N (1986) Agitated behaviors in the elderly: A conceptual review. *J Am Geriatr Soc* 34: 711–721.
- Cole JB, Moore JC, Dolan BJ, et al. (2017) A prospective observational study of patients receiving intravenous and intramuscular olanzapine in the emergency department. *Ann Emerg Med* 69: 327–336.
- Cole JB, Moore JC, Nystrom PC, et al. (2016) A prospective study of ketamine versus haloperidol for severe prehospital agitation. *Clin Toxicol (Phila)* 54: 556–562.
- Concordia International (2017) *Summary of Product Characteristics – Haloperidol 5 mg/ml Solution for Injection*. London: Concordia International Rx (UK) Limited. Available at: <https://www.medicines.org.uk/emc/product/514> (accessed 27 March 2018).
- Cox L, Darvill E and Dorman S (2015) Levomepromazine for nausea and vomiting in palliative care. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 11: CD009420.
- Cummings J, Mintzer J, Brodaty H, et al. (2015) Agitation in cognitive disorders: International Psychogeriatric Association provisional consensus clinical and research definition. *Int Psychogeriatr* 27: 7–17.
- Currier G, Chou J, Feifel D, et al. (2004) Acute treatment of psychotic agitation: A randomised comparison of oral treatment with risperidone and lorazepam versus intramuscular treatment with haloperidol and lorazepam. *J Clin Psychiatry* 65: 386–394.
- Currier GW and Medori R (2006) Orally versus intramuscularly administered antipsychotic drugs in psychiatric emergencies. *J Psychiatr Pract* 12: 30–40.
- Curtis J and Capp K (2003) Administration of ‘as needed’ psychotropic medication: A retrospective study. *Int J Ment Health Nurs* 12: 229–234.
- Davis S, Watkinson P, Guazzi A, et al. (2014) Continuous non-contact vital sign monitoring in neonatal intensive care unit. *Healthcare Technology Letters* 1: 87–91.
- de Berardis D, Fornaro M, Orsolini L, et al. (2017) The role of inhaled loxapine in the treatment of acute agitation in patients with psychiatric disorders: A clinical review. *Int J Mol Sci* 18: E349.
- Department of Health (2014) *Positive and Proactive Care: Reducing the Need for Restrictive Interventions*. London: Department of Health.
- Department of Health (2015) *Mental Health Act 1983: Code of Practice*. London: The Stationery Office.
- Diamond PR, Farmery AD, Atkinson S, et al. (2014) Ketamine infusions for treatment resistant depression: A series of 28 patients treated weekly or twice weekly in an ECT clinic. *J Psychopharmacol* 28: 536–544.
- Dix R and Page MJ (2008) De-escalation. In: Beer MD, Pereira SM and Paton C (eds) *Psychiatric Intensive Care*. 2nd ed. Cambridge, New York: Cambridge University Press.
- Dorevitch A, Katz N, Zemishlany Z, et al. (1999) Intramuscular flunitrazepam versus intramuscular haloperidol in the emergency treatment of aggressive psychotic behavior. *Am J Psychiatry* 156: 142–144.
- Douglas-Hall P and Whicher EV (2015) ‘As required’ medication regimens for seriously mentally ill people in hospital. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 12: CD003441.
- Duperouzel H (2008) ‘It’s OK for people to feel angry’: The exemplary management of imminent aggression. *J Intellect Disabil* 12: 295–307.
- Eli Lilly (2017a) *Summary of Product Characteristics – Zyprexa Velotab orodispersible tablets (olanzapine)*. Indianapolis, IN: Eli Lilly Product and Medical Information. Available at: <https://www.medicines.org.uk/emc/product/7901> (accessed 28 March 2018).
- Eli Lilly (2017b) *Summary of Product Characteristics – Zyprexa 10 mg Powder for Injection (olanzapine)*. Indianapolis, IN: Eli Lilly Product and Medical Information. Available via www.lillymedical.co.uk (accessed 13 June 2017).
- Fink M (2001) ECT has much to offer our patients: It should not be ignored. *World J Biol Psychiatry* 2: 1–8.
- Foster S, Kessel J, Berman ME, et al. (1997) Efficacy of lorazepam and haloperidol for rapid tranquilization in a psychiatric emergency room setting. *Int Clin Psychopharmacol* 12: 175–180.
- Freeman TW, Clothier JL, Pazzaglia P, et al. (1992) A double-blind comparison of valproate and lithium in the treatment of acute mania. *Am J Psychiatry* 149: 108–111.
- Frey R, Spies M, Fugger G, et al. (2015) Agitation in schizophrenia and mania: Consensus statement by the Austrian Society for Neuropsychopharmacology and Biological Psychiatry (OGPB). *Eur Psychiatry* 30 (Suppl 1): 1021.
- Fruensgaard K, Korsgaard S, Jorgensen H, et al. (1977) Loxapine versus haloperidol parenterally in acute psychosis with agitation. A double-blind study. *Acta Psychiatrica Scandinavica* 56: 256–264.
- Galen Ltd (2018) *Summary of Product Characteristics – Adasuve (loxapine)*. Craigavon: Galen Ltd. Available at: <https://www.medicines.org.uk/emc/product/7332> (revised January 2018) (accessed 27 March 2018).
- Ganesan S, Levy M, Bilsker D, et al. (2005) Effectiveness of quetiapine for the management of aggressive psychosis in the emergency psychiatric setting: A naturalistic uncontrolled trial. *Int J Psychiatry Clin Prac* 9: 199–203.
- Gao H, McDonnell A, Harrison DA, et al. (2007) Systematic review and evaluation of physiological track and trigger warning systems for identifying at-risk patients on the ward. *Intensive Care Med* 33: 667–679.
- Garriga M, Pacchiarotti I, Kasper S, et al. (2016) Assessment and management of agitation in psychiatry: Expert consensus. *World J Biol Psychiatry* 17: 86–128.
- Gaskin CJ, Elsom SJ and Happell B (2007) Interventions for reducing the use of seclusion in psychiatric facilities. Review of the literature. *Br J Psychiatry* 191: 298–303.
- Gaynes BN, Brown C, Lux LJ, et al. (2016) *Strategies to De-escalate Aggressive Behavior in Psychiatric Patients. AHRQ Comparative Effectiveness Reviews*. Report no. 16-EHC032-EF. Rockville, MD: Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality.
- General Medical Council (2013) *Prescribing Guidance: Prescribing Unlicensed Medicines*. London: General Medical Council. Available at: https://www.gmc-uk.org/guidance/ethical_guidance/14327.asp (accessed 22 March 2018).
- Georgieva I, Mulder CL and Wierdsma A (2012) Patients’ preference and experiences of forced medication and seclusion. *Psychiatr Q* 83: 1–13.
- Gillings M, Grundlingh J and Aw-Yong M (2016) *Guidelines for the Management of Excited Delirium/Acute Behavioural Disturbance (ABD)*. London: The Royal College of Emergency Medicine, Best Practice Guidance, 2016.
- Glassman AH and Bigger JT Jr (2001) Antipsychotic drugs: Prolonged QTc interval, torsade de pointes, and sudden death. *Am J Psychiatry* 158: 1774–1782.
- Glazer WM (1999) Does loxapine have ‘atypical’ properties? Clinical evidence. *J Clin Psychiatry* 60 (Suppl 10): 42–46.
- Goodwin GM, Haddad PM, Ferrier IN, et al. (2016) Evidence-based guidelines for treating bipolar disorder: Revised third edition recommendations from the British Association for Psychopharmacology. *J Psychopharmacology* 30: 495–553.
- Gross N, Greos LS, Meltzer EO, et al. (2014) Safety and tolerability of inhaled loxapine in subjects with asthma and chronic obstructive pulmonary disease: Two randomized controlled trials. *J Aerosol Med Pulm Drug Deliv* 27: 478–487.

- Grunze H, Vieta E, Goodwin GM, et al. (2010) The World Federation of Societies of Biological Psychiatry (WFSBP) guidelines for the biological treatment of bipolar disorders: Update 2010 on the treatment of acute bipolar depression. *World J Biol Psychiatry* 11: 81–109.
- Guy WA (1976a) Abnormal Involuntary Movement Scale (AIMS). In: Guy WA (ed.) *ECDEU Assessment Manual for Psychopharmacology*. Rockville, MD: US Department of Health Education and Welfare, pp. 534–537.
- Guy WA (1976b) Clinical Global Impressions. In: Guy WA (ed.) *ECDEU Assessment Manual for Psychopharmacology*. Rockville, MD: US Department of Health Education and Welfare, pp. 217–222.
- Haddad PM and Anderson IM (2002) Antipsychotic-related QTc prolongation, torsade de pointes and sudden death. *Drugs* 62: 1649–1671.
- Haddad PM, Das A, Ashfaq M, et al. (2009) A review of valproate in psychiatric practice. *Expert Opin Drug Metab Toxicol* 5: 539–551.
- Hallett N and Dickens GL (2015) De-escalation: A survey of clinical staff in a secure mental health inpatient service. *Int J Ment Health Nurs* 24: 324–333.
- Hallett N and Dickens GL (2017) De-escalation of aggressive behaviour in healthcare settings: Concept analysis. *Int J Nurs Stud* 75: 10–20.
- Hamilton B, Fletcher J, Sands N, et al. (2016) *Safewards Victorian Trial Final Evaluation Report*. Melbourne: Centre for Psychiatric Nursing.
- Hardy S, Bennet L, Rosen P, et al. (2017) The feasibility of using body-worn cameras in an inpatient mental health setting. *Ment Health Fam Med* 13: 393–400.
- Hasan A, Falkai P, Wobrock T, et al. (2012) World Federation of Societies of Biological Psychiatry (WFSBP) Guidelines for biological treatment of schizophrenia, part 1: Update 2012 on the acute treatment of schizophrenia and the management of treatment resistance. *World J Biol Psychiatry* 13: 318–378.
- Hatta K, Kawabata T, Yoshida K, et al. (2008) Olanzapine orally disintegrating tablet vs. risperidone oral solution in the treatment of acutely agitated psychotic patients. *Gen Hosp Psychiatry* 30: 367–371.
- Haw C, Stubbs J and Gibbon S (2013) A survey of the use of emergency parental medication at a secure psychiatric hospital. *J Psychiatric Intensive Care* 9: 77–84.
- Higashima M, Takeda T, Nagasawa T, et al. (2004) Combined therapy with low potency neuroleptic levomepromazine as an adjunct to haloperidol for agitated patients with acute exacerbation of schizophrenia. *Eur Psychiatry* 19: 380–381.
- Holloman GH and Zeller SL (2012) Overview of Project BETA: Best practices in evaluation and treatment of agitation. *West J Emerg Med* 13: 1–2.
- Hopper AB, Vilke GM, Castillo EM, et al. (2015) Ketamine use for acute agitation in the emergency department. *J Emerg Med* 48: 712–719.
- Hsu WY, Huang SS, Lee BS, et al. (2010) Comparison of intramuscular olanzapine, orally disintegrating olanzapine tablets, oral risperidone solution, and intramuscular haloperidol in the management of acute agitation in an acute care psychiatric ward in Taiwan. *J Clin Psychopharmacol* 30: 230–234.
- Huf G, Alexander J, Allen MH, et al. (2009) Haloperidol plus promethazine for psychosis-induced aggression. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 3: CD005146.
- Huf G, Alexander J, Gandhi P, et al. (2016) Haloperidol plus promethazine for psychosis-induced aggression. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 11: CD005146.
- Huf G, Coutinho ESF, Adams CE, et al. (2007) Rapid tranquillisation in psychiatric emergency settings in Brazil: Pragmatic randomized controlled trial of intramuscular haloperidol versus intramuscular haloperidol plus promethazine. *BMJ* 335: 869.
- Inada T (1996) Evaluation and diagnosis of drug-induced extrapyramidal symptoms. In: Yagi G (ed) *Commentary on the DIEPSS and Guide to its Usage*. Tokyo: Seiwa Publishers, pp. 11–60.
- Innes J and Curtis D (2015) Medication patient safety incidents linked to rapid tranquillisation: One year's data from the National Reporting and Learning System. *J Psychiatric Intensive Care* 11: 13–17.
- Innes J and Iyeki L (2012) A review of the practice and position of monitoring in today's rapid tranquillisation protocols. *J Psychiatric Intensive Care* 8: 15–24.
- Innes J and Sethi F (2013) Current rapid tranquillisation documents in the UK: A review of the drugs recommended, their routes of administration and clinical parameters influencing their use. *J Psychiatric Intensive Care* 9: 110–118.
- Isbister G, Calver L, Page C, et al. (2010) Randomized controlled trial of intramuscular droperidol versus midazolam for violence and acute behavioral disturbance: The DORM study. *Ann Emerg Med* 56: 392–401.
- Isbister GK, Calver LA, Downes MA, et al. (2016) Ketamine as rescue treatment for difficult-to-sedate severe acute behavioral disturbance in the emergency department. *Ann Emerg Med* 67: 581–587.
- Iancu I, Pick N, Seener-Lorsh O, et al. (2015) Patients with schizophrenia or schizoaffective disorder who receive multiple electroconvulsive therapy sessions: Characteristics, indications, and results. *Neuropsychiatr Dis Treat* 11: 853–862.
- Janssen-Cilag (2017) *Summary of Product Characteristics – Risperdal Quicklet Oro-dispersible tablets (risperidone)*. High Wycombe: Janssen-Cilag Ltd. Available at <https://www.medicines.org.uk/emc/product/6862> (revised September 2017) (accessed 28 March 2018).
- Jayakody K, Gibson RC, Kumar A, et al. (2012) Zuclophentixol acetate for acute schizophrenia and similar serious mental illnesses. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 4: CD000525.
- Joint Formulary Committee (2017) *British National Formulary*. BNF 72, September 2016–March 2017. London: Pharmaceutical Press.
- Joint Formulary Committee (2018) Flumazenil. In: *British National Formulary* (online). London: BMJ Group and Pharmaceutical Press. Available at: <http://www.medicinescomplete.com> (accessed 22 March 2018).
- Kamshilini AA, Nippolainen E, Sidorov IS, et al. (2015) A new look at the essence of the imaging photoplethysmography. *Scientific Reports* 5: 10494.
- Kasper S, Baranyi A, Eisenburger P, et al. (2013) Die Behandlung der Agitation beim psychiatrischen Notfall. Konsensus-Statement – State of the art 2013. *Clini Cum Neuropsy Sonderausgabe*. http://medizin-akademie.at/wp-content/uploads/2014/06/low_Kons_Agitation_psychNotfall_psy0513_jh2.pdf
- Kay SR, Fiszbein A and Opler LA (1987) The positive and negative syndrome scale (PANSS) for schizophrenia. *Schizophr Bull* 13: 261–276.
- Kay SR and Sevy S (1990) Pyramidal model of schizophrenia. *Schizophr Bull* 16: 537–545.
- Kay SR, Wolkenfeld F and Murrill LM (1988) Profiles of aggression among psychiatric patients: II. Covariates and predictors. *J Nerv Ment Dis* 176: 547–557.
- Keck PE Jr, McElroy SL, Tugrul KC, et al. (1993) Valproate oral loading in the treatment of acute mania. *J Clin Psychiatry* 54: 305–308.
- Kerr I and Taylor D (1997) Acute disturbed or violent behaviour: Principles of treatment. *J Psychopharmacol* 11: 271–277.
- Keseg D, Cortez E, Rund D, et al. (2015) The use of prehospital ketamine for control of agitation in a metropolitan firefighter-based EMS system. *Prehosp Emerg Care* 19: 110–115.
- Khokhar MA and Rathbone J (2016) Droperidol for psychosis-induced aggression or agitation (review). *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 12: CD002830.
- Kinon BJ, Stauffer VL, Kollack-Walker S, et al. (2008) Olanzapine versus aripiprazole for the treatment of agitation in acutely ill patients with schizophrenia. *J Clin Psychopharmacol* 28: 601–607.

- Kishi T, Matsunaga S and Iwata N (2015) Intramuscular olanzapine for agitated patients: A systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. *J Psychiatr Res* 68: 198–209.
- Knott JC, Taylor DM and Castle DJ (2006) Randomized clinical trial comparing intravenous midazolam and droperidol for sedation of the acutely agitated patient in the emergency department. *Ann Emerg Med* 47: 61–67.
- Kristensen D, Brandt-Christensen M, Ockelmann HH, et al. (2012) The use of electroconvulsive therapy in a cohort of forensic psychiatric patients with schizophrenia. *Crim Behav Ment Health* 22: 148–156.
- Kuivalainen S, Vehviläinen-Julkunen K, Louheranta O, et al. (2017) De-escalation techniques used, and reasons for seclusion and restraint, in a forensic psychiatric hospital. *Int J Ment Health Nurs* 26: 513–524.
- Kwentus J, Riesenberg RA, Marandi M, et al. (2012) Rapid acute treatment of agitation in patients with bipolar I disorder: A multicenter, randomized, placebo-controlled clinical trial with inhaled loxapine. *Bipol Disord* 14: 31–40.
- Ladavac AS, Dubin WR, Ning A, et al. (2007) Emergency management of agitation in pregnancy. *Gen Hosp Psychiatry* 29: 39–41.
- Lally J, Tully J, Robertson D, et al. (2016) Augmentation of clozapine with electroconvulsive therapy in treatment resistant schizophrenia: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *Schizophr Res* 171: 215–224.
- Lavelle M, Stewart D, James K, et al. (2016) Predictors of effective de-escalation in acute inpatient psychiatric settings. *J Clin Nurs* 25: 2180–2188.
- Lejeune J, Larmo I, Chrzanowski W, et al. (2004) Oral risperidone plus oral lorazepam versus standard care with intramuscular conventional neuroleptics in the initial phase of treating individuals with acute psychosis. *Int Clin Psychopharmacol* 19: 259–269.
- Lerner U, Lwow E, Levitin A, et al. (1979) Acute high-dose parenteral haloperidol treatment of psychosis. *Am J Psychiatry* 136: 1061–1064.
- Lesem MD, Tran-Johnson TK, Riesenberg RA, et al. (2011) Rapid acute treatment of agitation in individuals with schizophrenia: Multicentre, randomised, placebo-controlled study of inhaled loxapine. *Br J Psychiatry* 198: 51–58.
- Lim HK, Kim JJ, Pae CU, et al. (2010) Comparison of risperidone orally dispersible tablet and intramuscular haloperidol in the treatment of acute psychotic agitation: A randomized open, prospective study. *Neuropsychobiology* 62: 81–86.
- Lindenmayer JP and Kotsaftis A (2000) Use of sodium valproate in violent and aggressive behaviors: A critical review. *J Clin Psychiatry* 61: 123–128.
- Lingford-Hughes AR, Welch S, Peters L, et al. (2012) BAP updated guidelines: Evidence-based guidelines for the pharmacological management of substance abuse, harmful use, addiction and comorbidity: Recommendations from BAP. *J Psychopharmacol* 26: 899–952.
- Liu P, Bian H and Chen H (1997) Observation of clinical effect of clopixol acuphase injection for acute psychosis. *Chinese Journal of Pharmacoepidemiology* 6: 202–204.
- Lowert AC, Rasmussen EM, Holm R, et al. (1989) Acute psychotic disorders treated with 5% zuclopenthixol acetate in 'Viscoleo' ('Cisordinol-Acutard'), a global assessment of the clinical effect: An open multi-centre study. *Pharmatherapeutica* 5: 380–386.
- Lowry M, Lingard G and Neal M (2016) Deescalating anger: A new model for practice. *Nurs Times* 112: 4–7.
- Loynes B, Innes J and Dye S (2012) Assessment of physical monitoring following rapid tranquillisation: A national survey. *J Psychiatric Intensive Care* 9: 85–90.
- Luchini F, Medda P, Mariani MG, et al. (2015) Electroconvulsive therapy in catatonic patients: Efficacy and predictors of response. *World J Psychiatry* 22: 182–192.
- Lukens TW, Wolf SJ, Edlow JA, et al. (2006) Clinical policy: Critical issues in the diagnosis and management of the adult psychiatric patient in the emergency department. *Ann Emerg Med* 47: 79–99.
- Macpherson R, Dix R and Morgan S (2005) A growing evidence base for management guidelines. Revisiting. Guidelines for the management of acutely disturbed psychiatric patients. *Adv Psychiatric Treat* 11: 404–415.
- Magee LA, Mazzotta P and Koren G (2002) Evidence-based view of safety and effectiveness of pharmacologic therapy for nausea and vomiting of pregnancy (NVP). *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 186: S256–S261.
- Mantovani C, Labate CM, Sponholze AJ, et al. (2013) Are low doses of antipsychotics effective in the management of psychomotor agitation? A randomized, rated-blind trial of 4 intramuscular interventions. *J Clin Psychopharmacol* 33: 306–312.
- Martel M, Sterzinger A, Miner J, et al. (2005) Management of acute undifferentiated agitation in the emergency department: A randomized double-blind trial of droperidol, ziprasidone, and midazolam. *Acad Emerg Med* 12: 1167–1172.
- Martel ML, Klein LR, Rivard RL, et al. (2016) A large retrospective cohort of patients receiving intravenous olanzapine in the emergency department. *Acad Emerg Med* 23: 29–35.
- Matthews A, Haas DM, O'Mathúna, et al. (2015) Interventions for nausea and vomiting in early pregnancy. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 9: CD007575.
- Mavandadi V, Bieling P and Madsen V (2016) Effective ingredients of verbal de-escalation: Validating an English modified version of the 'De-Escalating Aggressive Behaviour Scale'. *J Psychiatr Ment Health Nurs* 23: 357–368.
- Maze M, Scarfina C and Cavaliere F (2001) New agents for sedation in the intensive care unit. *Crit Care Clin* 17: 881–897.
- McAllister-Williams RH, Baldwin DS, Cantwell R, et al. (2017) British Association for Psychopharmacology consensus guidance on the use of psychotropic medication preconception, in pregnancy and postpartum 2017. *J Psychopharmacol* 31: 519–552.
- McElhatton PR (2010) General principles of drug use in pregnancy. *Pharm J* 270: 232–272.
- McElroy SL, Keck PE, Stanton SP, et al. (1996) A randomized comparison of divalproex oral loading versus haloperidol in the initial treatment of acute psychotic mania. *J Clin Psychiatry* 57: 142–146.
- McElroy SL, Keck PE, Tugrul KC, et al. (1993) Valproate as a loading treatment in acute mania. *Neuropsychobiology* 27: 146–149.
- McKenna KJ and Paterson B (2006) Locating training within a strategic organizational response to aggression and violence. In: Richter D and Whittington R (eds) *Violence in Mental Health Settings*. New York, NY: Springer.
- Medicines and Healthcare products Regulatory Agency (2009) Off-label or unlicensed use of medicines: prescribers' responsibilities. Drug Safety Update April 2009, 2: 6.
- Meehan K, Zhang F, David S, et al. (2001) A double-blind, randomized comparison of the efficacy and safety of intramuscular injections of olanzapine, lorazepam, or placebo in treating acutely agitated patients diagnosed with bipolar mania. *J Clin Psychopharmacol* 21: 389–397.
- Meehan KM, Wang H, David SR, et al. (2002) Comparison of rapidly acting intramuscular olanzapine, lorazepam and placebo: A double-blind, randomized study in acutely agitated patients with dementia. *Neuropsychopharmacology* 26: 494–504.
- Mental Health Network (2014) *Positive and Proactive Care: Reducing the Need for Restrictive Intervention*. London: Mental Health Network, NHS Confederation, Briefing; September 2014, Issue 277. <http://www.nhsconfed.org/-/media/Confederation/Files/Publications/Documents/Positive-and-proactive-care.pdf?dl=1>
- Meyer RJ (2003) FDA "black box" labelling. *Ann Emerg Med* 41: 559–560.
- Mohammad O and Osser DN (2014) The psychopharmacology algorithm project at the Harvard South Shore Program: An algorithm for acute mania. *Harv Rev Psychiatry* 22: 274–294.
- Motov S, Mai M, Pushkar I, et al. (2017) A prospective randomized, double-dummy trial comparing IV push low-dose ketamine to short

- infusion of low-dose ketamine for treatment of pain in the ED. *Am J Emerg Med* 35: 1095–1100.
- Moyano CZ (1975) A double-blind comparison of loxitane–loxapine succinate and trifluoperazine hydrochloride in chronic schizophrenic patients. *Dis Nerv Syst* 36: 301–304.
- Mukherjee S, Sackeim HA and Schnur DB (1994) Electroconvulsive therapy of acute manic episodes: A review of 50 years' experience. *Am J Psychiatry* 15: 169–176.
- Mullinax S, Shokraneh F, Wilson MP, et al. (2017) Oral medication for agitation of psychiatric origin: A scoping review of randomized controlled trials. *J Emerg Med* 53: 524–529.
- Muskett C (2014) Trauma-informed care in inpatient mental health settings: A review of the literature. *Int J Ment Health Nurs* 23: 51–59.
- National Association of Psychiatric Intensive Care and Low Secure Units (2014) *National Minimum Standards for Psychiatric Intensive Care in General Adult Services*. East Kilbride: National Association of Psychiatric Intensive Care and Low Secure Units.
- National Association of Psychiatric Intensive Care and Low Secure Units (2016) *NAPICU Position on the Monitoring, Regulation and Recording of the Extra Care Area, Seclusion and Long-term Segregation Use in the Context of the Mental Health Act 1983: Code of Practice (2015)*. East Kilbride: National Association of Psychiatric Intensive Care and Low Secure Units.
- National Institute for Health and Care Excellence (2005) *Violence: The Short-Term Management of Disturbed and Violent Behaviour in Inpatient Psychiatric Settings and Emergency Departments*. NICE, Clinical Guideline 25. London: National Institute for Health and Care Excellence.
- National Institute for Health and Care Excellence (2006) *Dementia: Supporting People with Dementia and Their Carers in Health and Social Care*. NICE Clinical Guideline CG42. London: National Institute for Health and Care Excellence.
- National Institute for Health and Care Excellence (2008) *Antenatal Care: Routine Care for the Healthy Pregnant Woman*. NICE Clinical Guideline 62. London: Royal College of Obstetricians and Gynaecologists.
- National Institute for Health and Care Excellence (2009) *Guidance on the Use of Electroconvulsive Therapy*. Technology Appraisal Guidance TA59. London: National Institute for Health and Care Excellence.
- National Institute for Health and Care Excellence (2010) *Alcohol-use Disorders: Diagnosis and Management of Physical Complications*. NICE Clinical Guideline CG100. London: National Institute for Health and Care Excellence.
- National Institute for Health and Care Excellence (2011) *Alcohol Dependence and Harmful Alcohol Use*. NICE Clinical Guideline CG115. London: National Institute for Health and Care Excellence.
- National Institute for Health and Care Excellence (2012) *Patient Experience in Adult NHS Services: Improving the Experience of Care for People Using Adult NHS Services*. NICE Clinical Guideline CG138. London: National Institute for Health and Care Excellence.
- National Institute for Health and Care Excellence (2013) *Loxapine Inhalation for Treating Acute Agitation and Disturbed Behaviours Associated with Schizophrenia and Bipolar Disorder (Terminated Appraisal)*. NICE Technology Appraisal TA286. London: National Institute for Health and Care Excellence.
- National Institute for Health and Care Excellence (2014a) *Psychosis and Schizophrenia in Adults: Prevention and Management*. NICE Clinical Guideline CG178. London: National Institute for Health and Care Excellence.
- National Institute for Health and Care Excellence (2014b) *Bipolar Disorder: Assessment and Management*. NICE Clinical Guideline CG185. London: National Institute for Health and Care Excellence.
- National Institute for Health and Care Excellence (2014c) *Antenatal and Postnatal Mental Health: Clinical Management and Service Guidance*. NICE Clinical Guideline CG192. London: National Institute for Health and Care Excellence.
- National Institute for Health and Care Excellence (2014d) *Rapid Tranquillisation in Mental Health Settings: Promethazine Hydrochloride*. NICE Evidence Summary ESUOM28. London: National Institute for Health and Care Excellence.
- National Institute for Health and Care Excellence (2015a) *Management of Aggression, Agitation and Behavioural Disturbances in Dementia: Valproate Preparations*. NICE Evidence Summary ESUOM41. London: National Institute for Health and Care Excellence.
- National Institute for Health and Care Excellence (2015b) *Violence and Aggression: Short-term Management in Mental Health, Health and Community Settings*. NICE Guideline NG10. London: National Institute for Health and Care Excellence.
- National Institute for Health and Care Excellence (2015c) *Challenging Behaviour and Learning Disabilities: Prevention and Interventions for People with Learning Disabilities Whose Behaviour Challenges*. NICE Guideline NG11. London: National Institute for Health and Care Excellence.
- National Institute for Health and Care Excellence (2016a) *Antenatal and Postnatal Mental Health*. NICE Quality standard QS115. London: National Institute for Health and Care Excellence.
- National Institute for Health and Care Excellence (2016b) *Bipolar Disorder: Assessment and Management*. NICE Clinical Guideline CG185. London: National Institute for Health and Care Excellence.
- National Institute for Health and Care Excellence (2017) *Violent and Aggressive Behaviours in People with Mental Health Problems*. NICE Quality Standard QS154. London: National Institute for Health and Care Excellence.
- National Library of Medicine Toxnet (2018) *Hazardous Substances Data Bank (HSDB): Promethazine*. CASRN: 60-87-7/ 58-33-3. Bethesda: US National Library of Medicine. Available at: <https://toxnet.nlm.nih.gov> (accessed 27 March 2018).
- National Patient Safety Agency (2007) *Patient Safety Alert 20: Promoting Safer Use of Injectable Medicines*. London: National Patient Safety Agency. Available at: <http://www.nrls.npsa.nhs.uk/resources/?entryid45=59812>
- National Patient Safety Agency (2008a) *Reducing Risk of Overdose with Midazolam Injection in Adults*. Rapid Response Report NPSA/2008/RRR011. London: National Patient Safety Agency. Available at: <http://www.nrls.npsa.nhs.uk/resources/?EntryId45=59896> (accessed 24 March 2018).
- National Patient Safety Agency (2008b) *Reducing Risk of Overdose with Midazolam Injection in Adults: Supporting Information*. Rapid Response Report NPSA/2008/RRR011. London: National Patient Safety Agency. Available at: <http://www.nrls.npsa.nhs.uk/resources/?EntryId45=59896> (accessed 24 March 2018).
- Nau J, Dassen T, Needham I, et al. (2009) The development and testing of a training course in aggression for nursing students: A pre- and post-test study. *Nurse Educ Today* 29: 196–207.
- NHS Litigation Authority (2013) *NHS LA Risk Management Standards 2013-14*. NHS Litigation Authority. Available at: <http://www.nhs.uk/Pages/Publications.aspx?library=safety%7cstandards> (accessed 24 March 2018).
- Nobay F, Simon B, Levitt A, et al. (2004) A prospective, double-blind, randomized trial of midazolam versus haloperidol versus lorazepam in the chemical restraint of violent and severely agitated patients. *Acad Emerg Med* 11: 744–749.
- Nordstrom K and Allen MH (2013) Alternative delivery systems for agents to treat acute agitation: Progress to date. *Drugs* 73: 1783–1792.
- Normandin PA, Khorey SJ, Donahue MA, et al. (2016) Use of intranasal ketamine for the severely agitated or violent ED patient. *J Emerg Nurs* 42: 61–63.
- Ogawa Y, Tajika A, Takeshima N, et al. (2014) Mood stabilizers and antipsychotics for acute mania: A systematic review and meta-analysis.

- ysis of combination/augmentation therapy versus monotherapy. *CNS Drugs* 28: 989–1003.
- Ostinelli EG, Brooke-Powney MJ, Li X, et al. (2017) Haloperidol for psychosis-induced aggression or agitation (rapid tranquillisation). *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 7: CD009377.
- Ostinelli EG, Jajawi S, Spyridi S, et al. (2018) Aripiprazole (intramuscular) for psychosis-induced aggression or agitation (rapid tranquillisation). *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 1: CD 008074.
- Overall JE and Gorham DR (1962) The brief psychiatric rating scale. *Psychol Rep* 10: 799–812.
- Page CB, Dufull SB, Whyte IM, et al. (2009) Promethazine overdose: Clinical effects, predicting delirium and the effect of charcoal. *QJM* 102: 123–131.
- Paprocki J and Versiani M (1977) A double-blind comparison between loxapine and haloperidol by parenteral route in acute schizophrenia. *Curr Ther Res Clin Exp* 21: 80–100.
- Pasin L, Landoni G, Nardelli P, et al. (2014) Dexmedetomidine reduces the risk of delirium, agitation and confusion in critically ill patients: A meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth* 28: 1459–1466.
- Paton C (2002) Benzodiazepines and disinhibition: A review. *Psychiatric Bull* 26: 460–462.
- Paton C, Barnes TRE, Cavanagh MR, et al. (2008) High-dose and combination antipsychotic prescribing in acute adult wards in the UK: The challenges posed by p.r.n. prescribing. *Br J Psychiatry* 192: 435–439.
- Paterson B and Leadbetter D (1999) De-escalation in the management of aggression and violence: towards evidence-based practice. In: Turnbull J and Paterson B (eds) *Aggression and Violence: Approaches to effective management*. London: Macmillan.
- Paterson B, Leadbetter D and McComish A (1997) De-escalation in the short-term management of violence: A process-based approach. *Nurs Times* 93: 58–61.
- Petrides G, Malur C, Braga RJ, et al. (2015) Electroconvulsive therapy augmentation in clozapine-resistant schizophrenia: A prospective, randomized study. *Am J Psychiatry* 172: 52–58.
- Pfizer Ltd (2014) *Summary of Product Characteristics – Ativan Injection (lorazepam)*. Available at: <https://www.medicines.org.uk/emc/product/5473> (accessed 27 March 2018).
- Pilowsky LS, Ring H, Shine PJ, et al. (1992) Rapid tranquillisation. A survey of emergency prescribing in a general psychiatric hospital. *Br J Psychiatry* 160: 831–835.
- POMH-UK (2017) *Topic 16a. Rapid Tranquillisation in the Context of the Pharmacological Management of Acutely-disturbed Behaviour*. CCQI 1263. London: Royal College of Psychiatrists.
- Pompili M, Lester D, Dominici G, et al. (2013) Indications for electroconvulsive therapy treatment in schizophrenia: A systematic review. *Schizophr Res* 146: 1–9.
- Pope HG, McElroy SL, Keck PE, et al. (1991) Valproate in the treatment of acute mania. A placebo-controlled study. *Arch Gen Psychiatry* 48: 62–68.
- Popovic D, Nuss P and Vieta E (2015) Revisiting loxapine: A systematic review. *Ann Gen Psychiatry* 14: 15.
- Price O and Baker J (2012) Key components of de-escalation techniques: A thematic synthesis. *Int J Ment Health Nurs* 21: 310–319.
- Price O, Baker J, Bee P, et al. (2015) Learning and performance outcomes of mental health staff training in de-escalation techniques for the management of violence and aggression. *Br J Psychiatry* 206: 447–455.
- Price O, Baker J, Bee P, et al. (2018) The support-control continuum: An investigation of staff perspectives on factors influencing the success or failure of de-escalation techniques for the management of violence and aggression in mental health settings. *Int J Nurs Stud* 77: 197–206.
- Putkonen A, Kuivalainen S, Louheranta O, et al. (2013) Cluster-randomized controlled trial of reducing seclusion and restraint in secured care of men with schizophrenia. *Psychiatr Serv* 64: 850–855.
- Raveendran NS, Tharyan P, Alexander J, et al. (2007) Rapid tranquillisation in psychiatric emergency settings in India: Pragmatic randomized controlled trial of intramuscular olanzapine versus intramuscular haloperidol plus promethazine. *BMJ* 335: 865.
- Reilly JG, Ayis SY, Ferrier IN, et al. (2000) QTc-interval abnormalities and psychotropic drug therapy in psychiatric patients. *Lancet* 355: 1048–1052.
- Richards JR, Derlet RW and Duncan DR (1998) Chemical restraint for the agitated patient in the emergency department: Lorazepam versus droperidol. *J Emerg Med* 16: 567–573.
- Richmond JS, Berlin JS, Fishkind AB, et al. (2012) Verbal de-escalation of the agitated patient: Consensus statement of the American Association for Emergency Psychiatry Project BETA De-escalation Workgroup. *West J Emerg Med* 13: 17–25.
- Richter D (2006) Nonphysical conflict management and de-escalation. In: Richter D and Whittington R (eds) *Violence in Mental Health Settings: Causes, Consequences, Management*. New York, NY: Springer, pp. 125–143.
- Riddell J, Tran A, Bengiamin R, et al. (2017) Ketamine as a first-line treatment for severely agitated emergency department patients. *Am J Emerg Med* 35: 1000–1004.
- Roport R, Hoepfner Petersen HE, et al. (1988) Where zuclopenthixol acetate stands amid the ‘modified release’ neuroleptics. In: *Congress de Psychiatrie et de Neurologie de Langue Francaise, LXXXVth Session*, Chambery, France, 13–17 June 1988.
- Roth BL, Tandra S, Burgess LH, et al. (1995) D4 dopamine receptor binding affinity does not distinguish between typical and atypical antipsychotic drugs. *Psychopharmacology (Berl)* 120: 365–368.
- Royal College of Nursing (2016) *Positive and Proactive Care: Reducing the Need for Restrictive Interventions*. London: Royal College of Nursing. Available at: <https://www.rcn.org.uk/professional-development/publications/pub-005459> (accessed 24 March 2018).
- Royal College of Obstetricians and Gynaecologists (2016) *The Management of Nausea and Vomiting of Pregnancy and Hyperemesis Gravidarum*. Green-top Guideline 69. London: Royal College of Obstetricians and Gynaecologists.
- Royal College of Physicians (2017) *National Early Warning Score (NEWS) 2*. London: Royal College of Physicians. Available at: <https://www.rcplondon.ac.uk/projects/outputs/national-early-warning-score-news-2> (accessed 4 January 2018).
- Royal College of Psychiatrists (2007) *Use of Licensed Medicines for Unlicensed Applications in Psychiatric Practice*. College Report CR142. London: Royal College of Psychiatrists.
- Royal College of Psychiatrists (2013) *Prevention and Management of Violence: Guidance for Mental Healthcare Professionals*. College Report CR177. London: Royal College of Psychiatrists.
- Royal College of Psychiatrists (2014) *Consensus Statement on High-dose Antipsychotic Medication*. College Report CR190. London: Royal College of Psychiatrists. Available at: <http://www.rcpsych.ac.uk/files/pdfversion/CR190.pdf> (accessed 24 March 2018).
- Royal College of Psychiatrists Psychopharmacology Committee (2017) *Use of Licensed Medicines for Unlicensed Applications in Psychiatric Practice*. 2nd ed. College Report CR 210. London: Royal College of Psychiatrists.
- Sanofi (2016) *Summary of Product Characteristics – Phenergan 25 mg/ml Solution for Injection (promethazine hydrochloride)*. Available at: <https://www.medicines.org.uk/emc/medicine/1669> (accessed 27 March 2018).
- Sanofi (2017) *Summary of Product Characteristics – Nozinan 25 mg Tablets (levomepromazine maleate)*. Available at: <https://www.medicines.org.uk/emc/product/1429> (accessed 27 March 2018).
- Satterthwaite TM, Wolf DH, Rosenheck RA, et al. (2008) A meta-analysis of the risk of acute extrapyramidal symptoms with intramuscular antipsychotics for the treatment of agitation. *J Clin Psychiatry* 69: 1869–1879.

- Scaggs TR, Glass DM, Hutchcraft MG, et al. (2016) Prehospital ketamine is a safe and effective treatment for excited delirium in a community hospital-based EMS system. *Prehosp Disaster Med* 31: 563–569.
- Schepke KA, Braghirioli J, Shalaby M, et al. (2014) Prehospital use of IM ketamine for sedation of violent and agitated patients. *West J Emerg Med* 15: 736–741.
- Seitz DP, Adunuri N, Gill SS, et al. (2011) Antidepressants for agitation and psychosis in dementia. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2: CD008191.
- Selman FB, McClure RF and Helwig H (1976) Loxapine succinate: A double-blind comparison with haloperidol and placebo in acute schizophrenics. *Curr Ther Res Clin Exp* 19: 645–652.
- Shekelle PG, Woolf SH, Eccles M, et al. (1999) Developing guidelines. *BMJ* 318: 593–596.
- Simpson JR, Thompson CR and Beckson M (2006) Impact of orally disintegrating olanzapine on use of intramuscular antipsychotics, seclusion and restraint in an acute inpatient psychiatric setting. *J Clin Psychopharmacol* 26: 333–335.
- Sivaraman P, Rattahalli RD and Jayaram MB (2010) Levomepromazine for schizophrenia. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 10: CD007779.
- Stahl SM (1999) Selecting an atypical antipsychotic by combining clinical experience with guidelines from clinical trials. *J Clin Psychiatry* 60 (Suppl 10): 31–41.
- Stahl SM (2013) *Stahl's Essential Psychopharmacology*. 4th ed. New York, NY: Cambridge University Press, 628 pp.
- Stone-Brown K, Naji M, Francioni A, et al. (2016) Psychotropic prescribing in seriously violent men with schizophrenia or personality disorder in a UK high-security hospital. *CNS Spectrums* 21: 60–69.
- Su Y-P, Change C-K, Hayes RD, et al. (2014) Retrospective chart review on exposure to psychotropic medications associated with neuroleptic malignant syndrome. *Acta Psychiatr Scand* 130: 52–60.
- Suzuki H, Gen K and Takahashi Y (2014) A naturalistic comparison study of the efficacy and safety of intramuscular olanzapine, intramuscular haloperidol, and intramuscular levomepromazine in acute agitated patients with schizophrenia. *Hum Psychopharmacol* 29: 83–88.
- Swift RH, Harrigan EP, Cappelleri JC, et al. (2002) Validation of the behavioural activity rating scale (BARS): A novel measure of activity in agitated patients. *J Psychiatr Res* 36: 87–95.
- Talukdar R and Lekka NP (2013) Rapid tranquillisation for agitation and aggression: Characteristics and monitoring of intramuscular use in a general adult acute inpatient population. *Eur Psychiatry* 28 (Suppl 1): 1.
- Taylor D, McConnell D, McConnell H, et al. (1999) *The Bethlem and Maudsley NHS Trust Prescribing Guidelines 1999*. 5th ed. London: Martin Dunitz.
- Taylor D, Okocha C, Paton C, et al. (2008) Buccal midazolam for agitation on psychiatric intensive care wards. *Int J Psychiatry in Clin Prac* 12: 309–311.
- Taylor D, Paton C and Kapur S (2015) *The Maudsley Prescribing Guidelines*. 12th ed. West Sussex: Wiley Blackwell.
- Taylor DM (2003) Antipsychotics and QT prolongation. *Acta Psychiatr Scand* 107: 85–95.
- Taylor DM, Yap CY, Knott JC, et al. (2017) Midazolam-droperidol, droperidol, or olanzapine for acute agitation: A randomized clinical trial. *Ann Emerg Med* 69: 318–326.
- Taymeeyapradit U and Kuasirikul S (2002) Comparative study of the effectiveness of zuclopenthixol acetate and haloperidol in acutely disturbed psychotic patients. *J Med Assoc Thai* 85: 1301–1308.
- The Joint Commission (2000) *Joint Commission on Accreditation of Healthcare Organizations: Getting a Handle on Restraint: New Behavioural Health Care Standards Spell Out Specifics of Training*. Oakbrook Terrace: Joint Commission Resources.
- Tran-Johnson TK, Sack DA, Marcus R, et al. (2007) Efficacy and safety of intramuscular aripiprazole in patients with acute agitation: A randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. *J Clin Psychiatry* 68: 111–119.
- TREC Collaborative Group (2003) Rapid tranquillisation for agitated patients in psychiatric rooms: A randomised trial of midazolam versus haloperidol plus promethazine. *BMJ* 327: 708–713.
- Tsay ME, Procopio G, Anderson BD, et al. (2015) Abuse and intentional misuse of promethazine reported to US Poison Centers: 2002 to 2012. *J Addict Med* 9: 233–237.
- Tuason VB (1986) A comparison of parenteral loxapine and haloperidol in hostile and aggressive acutely schizophrenic patients. *J Clin Psychiatry* 47: 126–129.
- Tully J, Larkin F and Fahy T (2015) New technologies in the management of risk and violence in forensic settings. *CNS Spectrums* 20(3): 287–294.
- Turnbull J, Aitken I, Black L, et al. (1990) Turn it around: Short-term management for aggression and anger. *J Psychosocial Nurs Ment Health Serv* 28: 6–10.
- UK Medicines Information (2014) *What should you Think About When Prescribing to Pregnant Women?* London: UK Medicines Information. Available at: https://www.sps.nhs.uk/wp-content/uploads/2014/12/QA34_6_PregnancyPrescribing.doc
- UK Teratology Information Service (2014) *Use of Haloperidol in Pregnancy*. London: UK Teratology Information Service. Available at: <http://www.medicinesinpregnancy.org/bumps/monographs/USE-OF-HALOPERIDOL-IN-PREGNANCY/>
- Uys H and Berk M (1996) A controlled double blind study of zuclopenthixol acetate compared with clothiapine in acute psychosis including mania and exacerbation of chronic psychosis. Proceedings of XXth Collegium Internationale Neuro-psychopharmacologicum, 23-27 June 1996, Melbourne, Australia.
- Veser FH, Veser BD, McMullan JT, et al. (2006) Risperidone versus haloperidol, in combination with lorazepam, in the treatment of acute agitation and psychosis: A pilot, randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. *J Psychiatr Pract* 12: 103–108.
- Villari V, Rocca P, Fonzo V, et al. (2008) Oral risperidone, olanzapine and quetiapine versus haloperidol in psychotic agitation. *Prog Neuropsychopharmacol Biol Psychiatry* 32: 405–413.
- Volavka J and Citrome L (2008) Heterogeneity of violence in schizophrenia and implications for long-term treatment. *Int J Clin Pract* 62: 1237–1245.
- Volavka J, Czobor P, Derks EM, et al. (2011) Efficacy of antipsychotic drugs against hostility in the European First-Episode Schizophrenia Trial (EUFEST). *J Clin Psychiatry* 72: 955–961.
- Wang Y, Xia J, Helfer H, et al. (2016) Valproate for schizophrenia. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 11: CD004028.
- Wesseloo R, Wiersma A, Kamp I, et al. (2017) Lithium dosing strategies during pregnancy and the postpartum period. *Br J Psychiatry* 211: 31–36.
- Wilhelm S, Schacht A and Wagner T (2008) Use of antipsychotics and benzodiazepines in patients with psychiatric emergencies: Results of an observational trial. *BMC Psychiatry* 8: 61.
- Wilkinson ST, Ballard ED, Bloch MH, et al. (2017) The effect of a single dose of intravenous ketamine on suicidal ideation: A systematic review and individual participant data meta-analysis. *Am J Psychiatry* 175: 150–158.
- Wilson MP, MacDonald K, Vilke GM, et al. (2012a) A comparison of the safety of olanzapine and haloperidol in combination with benzodiazepines in emergency department patients with acute agitation. *J Emerg Med* 43: 790–797.
- Wilson MP, Pepper D, Currier GW, et al. (2012b) The psychopharmacology of agitation: Consensus statement of the American Association for Emergency Psychiatry Project Beta psychopharmacology workgroup. *West J Emerg Med* 13: 26–34.
- Wockhardt UK Ltd (2017) *Summary of Product Characteristics – Levomepromazine hydrochloride 25mg/ml Solution for Injection*. Available at: <https://www.medicines.org.uk/emc/product/3014> (accessed 27 March 2018).
- World Health Organization (2014) *Global Status Report on Violence Prevention 2014*. Geneva: World Health Organization.
- Yap CY, Taylor DM, Knott JC, et al. (2017) Intravenous midazolam-droperidol combination, droperidol or olanzapine monotherapy for

- methamphetamine-related acute agitation: Subgroup analysis of a randomized controlled trial. *Addiction* 112: 1262–1269.
- Yudofsky SC, Silver JM, Jackson W, et al. (1986) The Overt Aggression Scale for the objective rating of verbal and physical aggression. *Am J Psychiatry* 143: 35–39.
- Zacher LH and Roche-Desilets J (2005) Hypotension secondary to the combination of intramuscular olanzapine and intramuscular lorazepam. *J Clin Psychiatry* 66: 1614–1615.
- Zaman H, Sampson SJ, Beck ALS, et al. (2017) Benzodiazepines for psychosis-induced aggression or agitation. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 12: CD003079.
- Zarate CA Jr, Singh JB, Carlson PJ, et al. (2006) A randomized trial of an N-methyl-D-aspartate antagonist in treatment-resistant major depression. *Arch Gen Psychiatry* 63: 856–864.
- Zimbhoff DL, Marcus RN, Manos G, et al. (2007) Management of acute agitation in patients with bipolar disorder: Efficacy and safety of intramuscular aripiprazole. *J Clin Psychopharmacol* 27: 171–176.

As required medication

Check allergies/medicine sensitivities and patient identity.
Check regular medicines

Write in CAPITAL LETTERS or use addressograph

Surname: PATIENT
First names: EXAMPLE
Health and Care no: 123 456 7891
DOB: _____

Medicine LORAZEPAM			Start date 04/02/20	Date
Dose 1-2mg	Route PO	Frequency 4-6*	Stop date	Time 24hr clock
Special instructions/indication 1st LINE AGITATION * SEE ALSO IM PRN *		Max dose in 24hrs 4mg	Signature	Dose
Medicines Reconciliation (circle)			Supply	Route
Pre-admission dose	Increased dose	Decreased dose	<input checked="" type="radio"/> New	Pharmacist
Signature <i>A. Dea</i>	Prof No A-DOCTOR	Given by		
Print A. Dea	Specialist	Sleep		
Medicine LORAZEPAM			Start date 04/02/20	Date
Dose 1-2mg	Route IM	Frequency 4-6*	Stop date	Time 24hr clock
Special instructions/indication 1st LINE RT * SEE ALSO PO PRN *		Max dose in 24hrs 4mg	Signature	Dose
Medicines Reconciliation (circle)			Supply	Route
Pre-admission dose	Increased dose	Decreased dose	<input checked="" type="radio"/> New	Pharmacist
Signature <i>A. Dea</i>	Prof No A-DOCTOR	Given by		
Print A. Dea	Specialist	Sleep		
Medicine HALOPERIDOL			Start date 04/02/20	Date
Dose 3-5mg	Route PO	Frequency 4-6*	Stop date	Time 24hr clock
Special instructions/indication 2nd LINE AGITATION * SEE ALSO IM PRN *		Max dose in 24hrs 20mg	Signature	Dose
Medicines Reconciliation (circle)			Supply	Route
Pre-admission dose	Increased dose	Decreased dose	<input checked="" type="radio"/> New	Pharmacist
Signature <i>A. Dea</i>	Prof No A-DOCTOR	Given by		
Print A. Dea	Specialist	Sleep		
Medicine HALOPERIDOL			Start date 04/02/20	Date
Dose 5mg	Route IM	Frequency 4-6*	Stop date	Time 24hr clock
Special instructions/indication 2nd LINE RT * SEE ALSO PO PRN *		Max dose in 24hrs 20mg	Signature	Dose
Medicines Reconciliation (circle)			Supply	Route
Pre-admission dose	Increased dose	Decreased dose	<input checked="" type="radio"/> New	Pharmacist
Signature <i>A. Dea</i>	Prof No A-DOCTOR	Given by		
Print A. Dea	Specialist	Sleep		
Medicine PROMETHAZINE			Start date 04/02/20	Date
Dose 25-50mg	Route IM	Frequency 4-6*	Stop date	Time 24hr clock
Special instructions/indication WITH IM HALOPERIDOL 100mg		Max dose in 24hrs	Signature	Dose
Medicines Reconciliation (circle)			Supply	Route
Pre-admission dose	Increased dose	Decreased dose	<input checked="" type="radio"/> New	Pharmacist
Signature <i>A. Dea</i>	Prof No A-DOCTOR	Given by		
Print A. Dea	Specialist	Sleep		

This is an example of how to write up Rapid Tranquillisation (RT).

This example would be appropriate for a new admission. Variable doses and 1st and 2nd line choices should be reviewed by the patients own team.

NOTE:
RT is NOT required for all patients, only those who are at high risk of acutely disturbed behaviour.
Many patients may only need oral medication for agitation.

Title:	Non-Medical Prescribing (NMP) of Medicines Policy		
Policy Author(s)	Eimear McCusker, Head of Pharmacy & Medicines Management Tel: 028 95043357 eimear.mccusker@belfasttrust.hscni.net Karen Devenney, Senior Manager Central Nursing Tel: 028 950 49907 karen.devenney@belfasttrust.hscni.net Paula Cahalan, Allied Health Professional Lead Tel: 028 950 44684 paula.cahalan@belfasttrust.hscni.net Katie Graham, Optometrist Tel: 028 950 49277 Katie.Graham@belfasttrust.hscni.net		
Responsible Director:	Caroline Leonard, Director of Surgery and Specialist Services		
Policy Type: (tick as appropriate)	*Directorate Specific <input type="checkbox"/>	Clinical Trust Wide <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Non Clinical Trust Wide <input type="checkbox"/>
If policy type is confirmed as *Directorate Specific please list the name and date of the local Committee/Group that policy was approved			
Approval process:	Drugs and Therapeutics Committee Standards and Guidelines Committee Executive Team Meeting	Approval date:	05/03/2021 13/04/2021 07/06/2021
Operational Date:	June 2021	Review Date:	June 2026
Version No.	4	Supersedes	V3 – August 2020 – August 2025
Key Words:	Non Medical Prescribers, NMP, Medicines		
Links to other policies	BHSCT Dealing with discrepancies or concerns involving controlled drugs (2019) SG 18/11 BHSCT Community Medicines Code (2020) SG 06/13 BHSCT Medicines Code Policy (2020) SG 09/11 BHSCT Clinical monitoring of patients prescribed controlled drugs (2016) SG 64/14 BHSCT Controlled Drug Acute and Community Policies		

Date	Version	Policy Author	Comments
21/10/2008	1.0	V Hall	Initial draft
21/09/2009	1.1	V Hall	Revised following consultation
19/12/2017	2.0	E McCusker	Updated with Pharmacy and AHP comments
10/10/2019	3.0	E McCusker	Updated with legislation changes and governance arrangements
01/03/2021	3.1	E McCusker	Annual renewal process updated
June 2021	4		Final version

1.0 **INTRODUCTION/SUMMARY OF POLICY**

This policy sets out a framework for the development and implementation of non-medical prescribing (NMP) of medicines within the Belfast Health and Social Care Trust (BHSCT) and thus establishes a consistent approach for NMP. This policy applies to all registered nurses, midwives, specialist community public health nurses, pharmacists, optometrists, and other allied health professionals registered with the Trust as non-medical prescribers of medicines in accordance with their job descriptions and KSF outlines.

(Where the term 'nurse' is used throughout the remainder of this document it includes midwives and specialist community public health nurses).

1.1 **Background**

This policy is required to establish a framework for the development and implementation of NMP of medicines within the Belfast Health and Social Care Trust (BHSCT).

1.2 **Purpose**

- Ensure professional and statutory obligations are met.
- Contribute to the provision of holistic care.
- Provide robust standards for non-medical prescribing of medicines.
- Clarify accountability and responsibility.
- Provide a framework under which potential applicants could determine eligibility undertake an approved prescribing programme.
- To maintain a live register of NMPs in BHSCT with an agreed annual renewal process.

2.0 **SCOPE OF THE POLICY**

- 2.1 This policy will apply throughout the Belfast Health and Social Care Trust for all NMPs.

3.0 **ROLES AND RESPONSIBILITIES**

3.1 **NMPs**

NMPs are individually responsible and accountable for their prescribing practice and must adhere to trust policies. NMPs are also responsible for:

- Ensuring that they provide appropriate, evidence based, safe, and cost effective prescribing to service users
- Adhering to their professional codes of conduct (see below) and only practice within their own level of competence and parameters of prescribing.
- Completion of an annual declaration of continued competence.
- Participating in timely annual audit of prescribing practice.

- 3.2** Line Managers and Professional Leads are responsible for the monitoring of the daily prescribing activities of NMPs in relation to their job description. They are also responsible for ensuring that systems are in place to facilitate prescribing practice to include:
- Ensuring the duties of the NMP are included in job description
 - Ensuring that NMPs are supported to attend CPD within the Trust to maintaining their competencies in line with their job description.
 - Informing the Trust Professional lead if an NMP leaves the Trust or there is concern about the prescribing practice of the NMP.
 - Ensuring NMPs are compliant with any audit requirements.

4.0 CONSULTATION

Executive Director/Co-Directors of Nursing. Associate Directors of Nursing. Head of Pharmacy and Medicines Management. Non Medical Prescribers. Prescribing advisors HSCB, Standards and Guidelines Committee. Drugs and therapeutics committee.

5.0 POLICY STATEMENT/IMPLEMENTATION

5.1 Definitions

Definition of Independent Prescribing – The working definition of independent prescribing is prescribing by a practitioner (e.g. doctor, dentist, nurse, pharmacist, optometrist, or AHP) responsible and accountable for the assessment of patients with undiagnosed or diagnosed conditions and for decisions about the clinical management required, included prescribing of medicines. Within medicines legislation the term used is “appropriate prescriber”.

Definition of Supplementary prescribing – A voluntary partnership between an independent prescriber (a doctor or dentist), who has made the initial assessment and diagnosis, and a supplementary prescriber who may prescribe any medicine, in accordance with the agreed patient-specific clinical management plan with the patient’s consent.

Prescribing from the Nurse Prescribers Formulary – Community Practitioner Nurse Prescribers (CPNPs) V100 – formerly District Nurse/Health Visitor prescribers must only prescribe items listed within the Nurse Prescribers Formulary for Community Practitioners as outlined in the Northern Ireland Drug Tariff.

5.2 Key Policy Statements

5.2.1 Categories of individuals who can prescribe medicines as independent/ supplementary prescribers

Non-Medical staff who have successfully completed a recognised prescribing course, have registered with the appropriate professional body as a prescriber of medicines and have been approved and registered as a NMP on the BHSCT NMP register can prescribe as either independent or supplementary

prescribers (As appropriate). *Qualified staff transferring from other Trusts must apply to register as a NMP in BHSCT.*

5.2.2 The categories of nurses who can prescribe medicines:

- Nurse Independent Prescribers can prescribe any medicine for any medical condition within their competence including some controlled drugs.
- Nurse Supplementary Prescribers can prescribe any medicine, including some controlled drugs under a Clinical Management Plan in partnership with an independent prescriber (doctor or dentist).
- CPNPs must only prescribe items listed within the Nurse Prescriber's Formulary for Community Practitioners as outlined in the Northern Ireland Drug Tariff. More detailed information is provided in the British National Formulary (BNF).

5.2.3 The categories of pharmacists who can prescribe medicines:

- Pharmacist Independent prescribers can prescribe any medicine for any medical condition within their competence including some controlled drugs.
- Pharmacist Supplementary prescribers can prescribe any medicine, including some controlled drugs under a Clinical Management Plan in partnership with an independent prescriber (doctor or dentist).

5.2.4 The categories of Allied Health Professionals who may prescribe medicines:

- Physiotherapy, Therapy Radiography, Paramedics and Podiatry Independent Prescribers can prescribe any medicine for any medical condition within their competence including some controlled drugs (Confirm for each profession)
- Physiotherapy, Podiatry, Paramedics, Radiography and Dietetics prescribers can prescribe under a Clinical Management Plan in partnership with an independent prescriber (doctor or dentist). AHPs can only prescribe controlled drugs as supplementary prescribers when the drugs are clearly defined within the clinical management plan.

5.2.5 The categories of Optometrists who may prescribe medicines:

- Optometrist independent prescribers can prescribe any licensed medicine for ocular conditions, affecting the eye and adnexa, within their recognised area of expertise and competence of the optometrist. Optometrist Independent Optometrists cannot prescribe controlled drugs.

5.2.6 Application process for Independent/Supplementary Prescribing Programme

All entrants must be selected according to the criteria set by the individual prescribing programme and the respective professional body for each of the professional groups. Applicants must have a named medical officer within the clinical area who will act as a mentor and have the approval of BHSCT to complete the training course. Applicants must have the support of their line manager. The prescriber must have the opportunity to prescribe within their post following completion of training. The therapeutic areas for prescribing must be identified.

5.2.7 Application and Admission to Nurse Independent/Supplementary Prescribing Programme

The Nurse Independent/Supplementary Prescribing course is delivered by Queen's University, Belfast and the University of Ulster, Jordanstown over one academic year. Part time employees must have worked for a sufficient period to be deemed competent by their line manager.

The aim in selection of students to undertake the programme is to identify those who will successfully complete the course and be able to carry out the role of nurse prescriber within their speciality/area of expertise.

Commissioning for nurse independent/supplementary prescribing should be undertaken in line with the framework for the management of nursing and midwifery post registration education commissioning for the BHSCT. Any nurse wishing to undertake the course may apply, having first discussed with and gained approval from their line manager /Divisional Nurse Lead. The NMC circular 29/2007 requires that all nurses have an up-to-date criminal records bureau check i.e. within the last 3 years, before they commence the course. Appendix 1 details the admission criteria checklist.

5.2.8 Admission criteria to Community Practitioner Nurse Prescribing Programme

At present the nurse prescribing programme is integrated into the BSc (Hons)/PG Diploma Community and Public Health Nursing.

5.2.9 Admission criteria to Pharmacist Independent Prescribing Course

The course is over a six month period leading to a Post Grad Certificate in Independent/Supplementary Prescribing for pharmacists. The course is provided jointly by Queens University, Belfast and NICPLD (Northern Ireland Centre for Pharmacy Learning and Development). Part time employees must have worked for a sufficient period to be deemed competent by their line manager/Professional Lead. Candidates may also complete the Pharmacist Independent Prescribing Course as part of the MSc in Advanced Clinical Pharmacy Practice

Applicants must be registered with the Pharmaceutical Society of Northern Ireland (PSNI) (or eligible to register), have 2 years post-registration experience and have experience in the clinical area in which they wish to practice as a pharmacist independent prescriber.

Pharmacists must have approval from the Pharmacy Post-graduate Application Working Group. All applications must be forwarded by 31st January to the Pharmacy Services Manager for consideration. Appendix 2 outlines the admission criteria checklist.

5.2.10 Admission criteria to AHP Independent/Supplementary Prescribing Programme

The AHP Independent/Supplementary Prescribing Course is delivered by the Ulster University. The applicant must be registered with at least one year's experience immediately preceding the application in the clinical area in which they intend to prescribe. Part time employees must have worked for a

sufficient period to be deemed competent by their line manager/ Professional Lead, as appropriate.

Allied Health Professionals

The course will be available through the AHP commissioning process. Any AHP within the Trust who wishes to apply must have approval from their Trust Professional Lead. Appendix 3 outlines the admission criteria checklist.

5.2.11 Admission criteria to Optometrist Independent Prescribing Programme

The Optometrist Independent Prescribing Course is delivered by a number of institutions across the UK. The Optometrist must have been practising as a qualified Optometrist for at least 2 years in order to commence this course. Approval by line manager or Professional Lead is required prior to commencing if funding is available from the BHSCT, or if study leave is being applied for. Optometrists preparing to become independent prescribers will undertake a specific General Optical Council (GOC) approved programme of training, and must successfully complete the Common Final Assessment of Competence

Optometrists require prior approval from their line manager or Professional Lead in order to commence an Independent Prescribing course, if funding is available from BHSCT or if study leave is required. These are provided by a number of University Optometry departments in the UK, and the Optometrist may be required to self-fund their training and Independent Prescriber qualification.

5.3 BHSCT and Regional Registration Process

5.3.1 Application for inclusion on the BHSCT NMP Register

- A central live register of all non-medical prescribers of medicines within BHSCT can be located at:
<http://intranet.belfasttrust.local/directorates/css/MedicinesManagement/Pages/NMPC.aspx>
- The NMP must complete the application form for inclusion on the BHSCT NMP Register. (Appendix 4).
- The Head of Pharmacy and Medicines Management will review the application and if approved issue a letter to the NMP to authorise that he/she can prescribe as part of their role.
- The Divisional Nurse/ AHP Professional Lead/ Optometry Professional Lead will add the name to the locally held database and ensures the individual's job description details the applicant will work as a non-medical prescriber in BHSCT.

5.3.2 Annual Renewal on the BHSCT NMP Register

- The Line Manager must review and verify by the 30th April each year that the non-medical prescriber is working within their authorised parameters of prescribing.
- In order to do this the annual renewal form (Appendix 5) should be completed and returned via e-mail before the 30th April each year. PharmacyCentralAdmin@belfasttrust.hscni.net

- The NMP register on the intranet will then be updated to indicate the registrant has renewed for the current financial year e.g. 21/22, 22/23 etc. (Rather than the previous process which indicated the month the registrant joined the register)
- New Registrants who join part way through the year must complete the annual renewal for the following year in line with the above.
- Failure to comply with this requirement within the time-frame will result in the practitioner being removed from the BHSCT register and a suspension of prescribing rights within BHSCT.
- The Head of Pharmacy and Medicines Management will forward a list of registrants removed from the register to the professional representative on the trust NMP group by 31st May each year.
- Any practitioner wishing to 'rejoin' the BHSCT register will be required to re-submit a full application as set out in Appendix 4.

5.3.3 Parameters of prescribing and expanding parameters of prescribing

Initially the parameters of prescribing are agreed with the line manager/professional lead as part of the BHSCT registration process as outlined above. The parameters of prescribing will be reviewed as part of the annual appraisal process. It is the Department of Health's policy in Northern Ireland to extend prescribing responsibilities to a range of non-medical professions. Further information is available at:

<https://www.health-ni.gov.uk/articles/pharmaceutical-non-medical-prescribing>

Professional Leads who approve application forms and parameters of prescribing should ensure applications are in line with this policy and DOH guidance at the link above.

Any changes in prescribing practice must be notified to the Head of Pharmacy and Medicines Management by forwarding a new appendix 4.

5.3.4 Maternity Leave and annual registration

It is the responsibility of the individual NMP to advise the Head of Pharmacy before commencing maternity leave – Upon receipt of this information the Head of Pharmacy will annotate "*Maternity leave*" besides the registrant name for a period of 15 months on the trust register. An annual renewal form must be completed within the 15 months to remain on the register.

It is the responsibility of the line manager to advise the Head of Pharmacy when a prescriber has left the trust or is no longer practicing.

5.3.5 Application for inclusion on the regional Web Based Registration for prescribing in primary care

The Business Services Organisation (BSO) Regional Web Based Registration system maintains a register of non- medical prescribers who wish to obtain their own HS21 prescription pad in line with DoH guidance. All primary care/community non medical prescribers must register with BSO using this system in order to obtain a cipher number. Before commencing the online registration process, please refer to the 'Northern Ireland Non-Medical Prescriber Registration Manual' which is available at the link below:

<http://intranet.belfasttrust.local/directorates/css/MedicinesManagement/Docu>

[ments/Non-Medical%20Prescriber%20Registration%20Manual%20-%20Jun%202013.pdf](#)

5.4 Guidance on Prescribing

5.4.1 Patient assessment

Before writing a prescription the non-medical prescriber should have assessed the patient and have knowledge of:

- Patient's full medication (this should include all prescribed and non-prescribed medication including over the counter and alternative remedies).
- Past medical history.
- Allergy status.
- Patient's current health status.
- A thorough knowledge of the item to be prescribed, i.e. dosage, therapeutic action, side effects, and interactions, frequency of use.
- The current British National Formulary (BNF) or Nurse Prescribers Formulary (NPF) for reference, including guidance on prescription writing.

All non-medical prescribers should prescribe according to the Trust's generic prescribing policy except where this would not be clinically appropriate or where there is no approved generic name. The N.Ireland Formulary should be adhered to as well as Trust approved policies e.g. BHSCT Medicines Code Non medical prescribers should clearly annotate that they are a supplementary or independent prescriber.

<http://niformulary.hscni.net/Pages/default.aspx>

Prescriptions should be regularly reviewed and only re-issued to meet clinical need. Suitable provision for monitoring each patient/client's condition should be in place for ensuring that patient/client's who need a further examination or assessment do not receive further prescriptions without being seen by an appropriate prescriber.

Non-medical prescribers may discontinue medication if they have assessed a patient and in their clinical judgement think this is the best course of action for the patient. Non-medical prescribers should always consider themselves part of the team and not undertake actions without considering the prescribing actions of others.

5.4.2 Patient information

The non-medical prescriber must inform the patient that they are acting as a non-medical prescriber. The non-medical prescriber will explain the following to the patient:

- Indication for the medication.
- The dosage, frequency and method of administration.
- The common side effects.
- Any precautions they should take.
- What to do if they have any concerns or adverse reactions.
- How to store medicines safely.
- What to do with any leftover medicines at the end of treatment.
- Plan for review if indicated.

- And test their understanding of the information provided

5.4.3 Prescribing and administration/supply/dispensing

Wherever possible, the actions of prescribing, dispensing/supply and administration are performed by separate healthcare professionals. Exceptionally, where clinical circumstances make it necessary and in the interests of the patient, the same healthcare professional can be responsible for the prescribing and supply/administration of medicines. Where this occurs, an audit trail, documents and processes are in place to limit errors.

<https://www.rpharms.com/Portals/0/RPS%20document%20library/Open%20access/Professional%20standards/SSHM%20and%20Admin/Admin%20of%20Meds%20prof%20guidance.pdf?ver=2019-01-23-145026-567>

5.4.4 Prescribing for Self/Family/Friends

Non-medical prescribers must **not** prescribe any medicine for themselves or for anyone with whom they have a close personal or emotional relationship other than in exceptional circumstances.

5.5 **Prescribing controlled drugs**

5.5.1 Nurses

Amendments to the Misuse of Drugs Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2002 were introduced on 10 May 2012 to allow a nurse independent prescriber and a pharmacist independent prescriber to prescribe controlled drugs (CDs) as described in the Department circular DH1/12/112169 (Appendix 7).

Formerly nurse independent prescribers could only prescribe controlled drugs from a limited formulary for specific conditions or by using supplementary prescribing.

Nurse independent prescribers can prescribe any controlled drug listed in schedules 2-5 for any medical condition within their competence except diamorphine, cocaine and dipipanone for the treatment of addiction (nurse independent prescribers are able to prescribe other controlled drugs for the treatment of addiction).

Nurse independent prescribers are able to requisition controlled drugs and are authorised to possess, supply, offer to supply and administer the drugs they are able to prescribe. Persons acting in accordance with the directions of a nurse independent prescriber are authorised to administer any schedule 2-5 drugs that the nurse can prescribe,

Detailed advice on writing a prescription for Controlled Drugs is contained in the BNF.

All nurse prescribers wishing to undertake prescription of CDs under this legislation will be required to:

- gain approval from their professional line manager

- provide parameters of prescribing practice for inclusion on the BSO/Trust Central Register provide evidence of successful completion of controlled drugs training
- provide evidence of safe prescribing practice and CPD at annual appraisal
- adhere to BHSCT Controlled Drug policy
- adhere to BHSCT Dealing with discrepancies and concerns about Controlled Drugs

Non-medical prescribers who need to prescribe controlled drugs as part of their role must specify them individually on the parameters of prescribing section of the application form (Appendix 5) and forward to Head of Pharmacy and Medicines Management with evidence of successful completion of CD training.

Schedules are highlighted in the BNF. A comprehensive list of schedules is available from the Home Office and all non-medical prescribers should obtain a copy of this document available from the Home Office Website www.homeoffice.gov.uk/drugs/licensing. A list of schedules is also available in the BHSCT CD policy.

5.5.2 Pharmacists

Pharmacists can prescribe controlled drugs as supplementary prescribers when the drugs are clearly defined within the clinical management plan (Appendix 8).

Pharmacist independent prescribers can prescribe any controlled drug listed in schedules 2-5 for any medical condition within their competence except diamorphine, cocaine and dipipanone for the treatment of addiction (pharmacist independent prescribers are able to prescribe other controlled drugs for the treatment of addiction). Pharmacist independent prescribers are able to requisition controlled drugs and are authorised to supply or administer the drugs they are able to prescribe. Persons acting in accordance with the directions of a pharmacist independent prescriber are authorised to administer any schedule 2-5 drug that the pharmacist can prescribe, Detailed advice on writing a prescription for Controlled Drugs is contained in the BNF. Non-medical prescribers who need to prescribe controlled drugs a part of their role must specify them individually on the parameters of prescribing section of the application form (Appendix 5).

BHSCT pharmacy independent prescribers must:

- Adhere to BHSCT Controlled Drug policies
- Adhere to BHSCT Dealing with discrepancies and concerns about Controlled Drugs

Schedules are highlighted in the BNF. A comprehensive list of schedules is available from the Home Office and all non-medical prescribers should obtain a copy of this document available from the Home Office Website www.homeoffice.gov.uk/drugs/licensing. A list of schedules is also available in the BHSCT CD policy.

5.5.3 Allied Health Professionals

Physiotherapist Independent Prescribers and Podiatrist Independent Prescribers have the authority to prescribe a limited range of controlled drugs. AHPs can only prescribe controlled drugs as supplementary prescribers when drugs are clearly defined within the clinical management plan (Appendix 8).

The clinical management plan should clearly indicate:

- The dates all parties [IP, AHPISP, and patient] agree the Clinical Management Plan
- Name of prescriber and the category of prescriber
- Name of item prescribed, quantity, dose, frequency, and treatment duration.

In primary/community care the non-medical prescriber should agree the process for accessing medical records and recording prescriptions with the GP. If the non-medical prescriber is using computerised records he/she must ensure that they receive adequate and relevant training. Prescribers wishing to produce computer-generated scripts should contact the Professional Lead in the first instance.

Where there is no direct access to the GP records, the prescriber will ensure:

- Written documentation of prescription is sent to the practice manager or an agreed designated member of staff at the GP practice at time of writing (in exceptional circumstances this may be extended to 48 hours). The duplicate copy pad may be used to facilitate this process. These are available from the Professional Lead.
- This designated member of staff at the GP practice will be responsible for ensuring details of the prescription are entered on the prescribing section of the patient's electronic record.

5.5.4 Optometrists

Optometrist Independent Prescribers cannot prescribe controlled drugs.

5.6 CPD and Governance Arrangements**5.6.1 Professional Bodies**

Non-medical prescribers are individually accountable to their professional body for this aspect of their practice, as for any other, and must act at all times in accordance with the same. Non-medical prescribers are advised to ensure that they have sufficient professional indemnity, for instance by means of membership of a professional organisation or trade union which provides this cover. NMPs must always prescribe within their parameters of prescribing and feel comfortable with the prescribing decision they have made

5.6.2 Continuing professional development (CPD)

Non-medical prescribers are responsible for ensuring continuous professional development (which should address their prescribing role) and keeping up to date with evidence and best practice in management of conditions for which they prescribe, and in the use of relevant medicines and legislative changes.

5.6.3 Annual Renewal for BHSCT Register - A Competency Framework for all Prescribers July 2016 (RPS)

To support all prescribers to prescribe effectively a single prescribing competency framework was published by the National Prescribing Centre/ National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence (NICE) in 2012. Based on earlier profession specific prescribing competency frameworks this framework was developed because it became clear a common set of competencies should underpin prescribing regardless of professional background.

The 2012 framework is now in wide use across the UK and was due for review in 2014. NICE and Health Education England approached the Royal Pharmaceutical Society (RPS) to manage the update of the framework on behalf of all the prescribing professions in the UK. The RPS agreed to update the competency framework in collaboration with patients and the other prescribing professions many of whose professional bodies have endorsed this updated framework.

The Royal Pharmaceutical Society has produced a competency framework for all prescribers -RPS competency framework for all prescribers 2016 - which should be used as a tool to reflect on practice and identify CPD needs.

<https://www.rpharms.com/Portals/0/RPS%20document%20library/Open%20access/Professional%20standards/Prescribing%20competency%20framework/prescribing-competency-framework.pdf>

The key points to note about the scope of the prescribing framework are that:

- It is a generic framework for any prescriber (independent or supplementary) regardless of professional background. It therefore does not contain statements that relate only to specialist areas of prescribing.
- It must be contextualised to reflect different areas of practice and levels of expertise.
- It reflects the key competencies needed by all prescribers; it should not be viewed as a curriculum but rather the basis on which one can be built.
- It applies equally to independent prescribers and to supplementary prescribers but the latter should contextualise the framework to reflect the structures imposed by entering into a supplementary prescribing relationship

Non-medical prescribers will be expected to ensure continuous professional development and to keep up to date with evidence and best practice in the management of the conditions for which they prescribe, and in the use of relevant medicines and any legislative changes.

The non-medical prescriber must discuss learning needs and provide evidence of learning and development as a prescriber, as part of the annual declaration of continued competence.

Evidence of learning and development should also include any compliments or negative feed-back.

As for any professional it is critical NMPs audit their own work as a means of improving the quality of care they provide their patients and provide evidence of learning as part of the annual declaration of continued competence.

5.7 Dissemination

Non – Medical prescribers, Managers of Non-Medical Prescribers. Professional Leads of Non-medical Prescribers. Services which have or wish to develop the NMP role.

Update to current policy- for immediate implementation

Notify Head of Pharmacy and Medicines e. if there are significant barriers and timescales not being met.

5.8 Resources

All line managers and Professional Leads must be familiar with this policy

All non-medical prescribers must be familiar with this policy

5.9 Exceptions

All non-medical prescribers must comply with this policy

All line managers and Professional Leads of non-medical prescribers must comply with this policy.

Services which have or wish to develop the NMP role must comply with this policy

6.0 MONITORING AND REVIEW

The number of NMPs from each profession will be monitored by the trust NMP committee

7.0 EVIDENCE BASE/REFERENCES

Medicines Code and CD polices .DOH guidance for NMPs

8.0 APPENDICES

Appendix 1 Admission to Nurse NMP Programme

Appendix 2 Admission to Pharmacist NMP Programme

Appendix 3 Admission to AHP NMP Programme

Appendix 4 Application for inclusion on the BHSCT Register of Non-Medical Prescribers

Appendix 5 Annual declaration of continued competence for BHSCT NMP Register

Appendix 6 Clinical Management Plan

9.0 **NURSING AND MIDWIFERY STUDENTS**

Nursing and/or Midwifery students on pre-registration education programmes, approved under relevant 2018/2019 NMC education standards, must be given the opportunity to have experience of and become proficient in the **Non-Medical Prescribing (NMP) of Medicines**, where required by the student's programme. This experience must be under the appropriate supervision of a registered nurse, registered midwife or registered health and social care professional who is adequately experienced in this skill and who will be accountable for determining the required level of direct or indirect supervision and responsible for signing/countersigning documentation.

Direct and indirect supervision

- Direct supervision means that the supervising registered nurse, registered midwife or registered health and social care professional is actually present and works alongside the student when they are undertaking a delegated role or activity.
- Indirect supervision occurs when the registered nurse, registered midwife or registered health and social care professional does not directly observe the student undertaking a delegated role or activity. (NIPEC, 2020)

This policy has been developed in accordance with the above statement.

Wording within this section must not be removed.

10.0 **EQUALITY IMPACT ASSESSMENT**

The Trust has legal responsibilities in terms of equality (Section 75 of the Northern Ireland Act 1998), disability discrimination and human rights to undertake a screening exercise to ascertain if the policy has potential impact and if it must be subject to a full impact assessment. The process is the responsibility of the Policy Author. The template to be complete by the Policy Author and guidance are available on the Trust Intranet or via this [link](#).

All policies (apart from those regionally adopted) must complete the template and submit with a copy of the policy to the Equality & Planning Team via the generic email address equalityscreenings@belfasttrust.hscni.net

The outcome of the equality screening for the policy is:

Major impact	<input type="checkbox"/>
Minor impact	<input type="checkbox"/>
No impact	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

Wording within this section must not be removed

11.0 DATA PROTECTION IMPACT ASSESSMENT

New activities involving collecting and using personal data can result in privacy risks. In line with requirements of the General Data Protection Regulation and the Data Protection Act 2018 the Trust considers the impact on the privacy of individuals and ways to mitigate against any risks. A screening exercise must be carried out by the Policy Author to ascertain if the policy must be subject to a full assessment. Guidance is available on the Trust Intranet or via this [link](#).

If a full impact assessment is required, the Policy Author must carry out the process. They can contact colleagues in the Information Governance Department for advice on Tel: 028 950 46576

Completed Data Protection Impact Assessment forms must be returned to the Equality & Planning Team via the generic email address equalityscreenings@belfasttrust.hscni.net

The outcome of the Data Protection Impact Assessment screening for the policy is:

- Not necessary – no personal data involved**
- A full data protection impact assessment is required**
- A full data protection impact assessment is not required**

Wording within this section must not be removed.

12.0 RURAL NEEDS IMPACT ASSESSMENT

The Trust has a legal responsibility to have due regard to rural needs when developing, adopting, implementing or revising policies, and when designing and delivering public services. A screening exercise should be carried out by the Policy Author to ascertain if the policy must be subject to a full assessment. Guidance is available on the Trust Intranet or via this [link](#).

If a full assessment is required the Policy Author must complete the shortened rural needs assessment template on the Trust Intranet. Each Directorate has a Rural Needs Champion who can provide support/assistance.

Completed Rural Impact Assessment forms must be returned to the Equality & Planning Team via the generic email address equalityscreenings@belfasttrust.hscni.net

Wording within this section must not be removed.

13.0 REASONABLE ADJUSTMENT ASSESSMENT

Under the Disability Discrimination Act 1995 (as amended) (DDA), all staff/ service providers have a duty to make Reasonable Adjustments to any barrier

a person with a disability faces when accessing or using goods, facilities and services, in order to remove or reduce such barriers. E.g. physical access, communicating with people who have a disability, producing information such as leaflets or letters in accessible alternative formats. E.g. easy read, braille, or audio or being flexible regarding appointments. This is a non-delegable duty.

The policy has been developed in accordance with the Trust's legal duty to consider the need to make reasonable adjustments under the DDA.

Wording within this section must not be removed.

SIGNATORIES

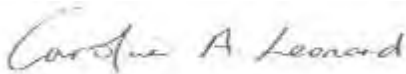
(Policy – Guidance should be signed off by the author of the policy and the identified responsible director).



05/03/2021

Date: _____

Policy Author



07/06/2021

Date: _____

Director

**Appendix 1 ADMISSION TO THE NURSE INDEPENDENT SUPPLEMENTARY
PRESCRIBING PROGRAMME (criteria checklist)**

Applicant's details.....

Admission criteria checklist Ref: NMC Standards	Criteria met Y/N
Registered first level nurse, midwife and/or specialist community public health nurse	
At least three years post registration experience. The year immediately preceding application must have been in the clinical field in which the applicant intends to prescribe	
The nurse has been identified through individual Performance Review Appraisal, the suitability to prescribe before they apply for a training place	
The applicant is in a role that enables them to prescribe following completion of training and which has clear benefits for patients clients	
The applicant must have had a Pocva completed within 3 years of starting the course	
The prospective candidate must either be deemed competent in Health Assessment by his/her professional lead and has successfully undertaken a relevant module in Health Assessment*	
Demonstrated ability to study at degree level through: 1. Undergraduate level (60 credits) Successful completion of three modules (60 credits) of study at level 2 with a mark of at least 50%. This will include evidence of the skills necessary for the implementation of evidence based practice OR 2. Postgraduate level <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Pre-registration degree in Nursing or Midwifery • Post-registration degree in Nursing, Midwifery or Health Studies/Sciences • Degree in any other relevant subject area 	
In addition written confirmation will be required from 1. The Professional Lead/Line Manager of their support for the nurse to undertake the preparation programme and facilitate ongoing CPD and supervision to support the prescribing role 2. A designated medical practitioner who meets eligibility criteria for medical supervision of nurse prescribers, and who has agreed to provide the required term of supervised practice. (A guide to help doctors prepare for and carry out the role of designated medical practitioner. Feb 2005. Available at www.npc.co.uk	

*The Health Assessment module for prescribing will be offered concurrently with the NISP programme for approximately the first two years of the new programme (commencing autumn 2007). After that students will be expected to have evidence of successful completion of the relevant Health Assessment module in advance of the programme.

Checklist confirmed by.....(Line Manager) Date.....

Applicant..... Date.....

Divisional Nurse Lead..... Date.....

**Appendix 2 ADMISSION TO THE PHARMACIST INDEPENDENT /
SUPPLEMENTARY PRESCRIBING PROGRAMME (criteria
Checklist)**

Applicant’s details.....

Admission Criteria Checklist	Criteria met Y/N
Registered pharmacist with PSNI	
At least two years experience practicing as a pharmacist in a clinical environment in a hospital setting, following their pre-registration year.	
NMP has been identified through Staff Development Appraisal as appropriate in this role	
The applicant is in a role that enables them to prescribe following training and which has clear benefits for patients/clients or has been identified as a potential role	
In addition written confirmation will be required from: 1. The Pharmacy Services Manager of their support for the pharmacist to undertake the preparation programme and facilitate ongoing CPD and supervision to support their prescribing role 2. A designated medical practitioner who meets eligibility criteria for medical supervision of pharmacist prescribers, and who has agreed to provide the required term of supervised practice	

Criteria confirmed: (Line Manager).....
Date.....

Applicant signature..... **Date**.....

Head of Pharmacy..... **Date**.....

**Appendix 3 ADMISSION TO THE ALLIED HEALTH PROFESSIONAL
INDEPENDENT SUPPLEMENTARY PRESCRIBING
PROGRAMME**

Applicant's details.....

Admission Criteria Checklist	Criteria met Y/N
HPCPC registered radiographer, physiotherapist, paramedic, podiatrist, or dietitian	
At least three years post registration experience. The year immediately preceding application must have been in the clinical field in which the applicant intends to prescribe	
Before applying for a training place the radiographer, physiotherapist, paramedic, podiatrist, optometrist or dietitian's suitability to become a prescriber has been identified through performance review/appraisal	
The applicant is in a role that enables them to prescribe following completion of training and which has clear benefits for patients/clients	
The applicant must have had an Access NI assessment which has been completed within the previous 3 years (NB in order to prescribe a registrant is required to have an up to date Access NI Assessment)	
In addition written confirmation will be required from: 1. The Line Manager/Professional Lead confirming their support for the radiographer/physiotherapist/paramedic/podiatrist/optometrist/dietitian to undertake the preparation programme and facilitate ongoing CPD and supervision to support the prescribing role 2. A designated medical practitioner who meets eligibility criteria for medical supervision of radiographer/podiatrist/physiotherapist/paramedic/optometrist/dietitian prescribers, and who has agreed to provide the required term of supervised practice. (A guide to help doctors prepare for and carry out the role of designated medical practitioner. Feb 2005. Available at www.npc.co.uk .	

Criteria confirmed by (Professional Lead)

Date.....

Applicant.....

Date.....

Signature of Designated Professional Head of Service or Trust AHP Lead

..... Date.....

Appendix 4

Application for inclusion on the BHSCT NMP REGISTER
(Details as per professional register)

(Application forms must be typed)

First Names	Surname
Hospital / Base	Job Title

New application/ Updated Parameters of Prescribing (Please delete above as necessary)	<p><u>Registration Details</u></p> <p>NMC Pin No. / Pharm Soc Reg No /AHP HCPC/ GOC no :</p> <hr/> <p>Type of prescriber: (Please circle)</p> <p>Nurse Independent / supplementary V300 • Pharmacist Independent/Supplementary prescriber • AHP Supplementary Prescriber • AHP Independent Prescriber • Optometrist Independent Prescriber •</p>
---	--

Location (please delete as appropriate)
Hospital in-patients Yes / No Primary Care / Community Yes / No Hospital out-patient / interface Yes / No <p>Prescription Pad:</p> <p>Only non-medical prescribers prescribing in the community will be able to prescribe from the non-medical prescribing budget and therefore require a prescription pad from BSO</p> <p>Prescription pad required Yes / No</p> <p>If Yes please refer to the section on obtaining prescription pads – process for registration of Non-medical Prescribers with Central Services Agency (BSO)</p>

Parameters of Prescribing (Must be completed in this section)

Therapeutic area	Groups of drugs to be prescribed	Evidence based prescribing – state local / national guidelines e.g. .NI formulary, NICE	Please demonstrate how competency was gained in this area
Controlled drugs schedules 2,3 and 4, 5 must be listed individually			

Prescriber (As per professional register)	I confirm I will work as a NMP within my agreed parameters of prescribing and in line with trust policy. I have developed and attained competencies specific to my role.	Name (Block Capitals)	Address:
	Date:	Signature	
Professional Lead AHP / Divisional Lead Nurse/ Pharmacy Team Lead (8B and above)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The Trust is in agreement that the above named professional will prescribe in an Independent and Supplementary capacity as part of their employed role for the parameters detailed above. • I am satisfied that the professional is appropriately qualified to undertake this role. • I will ensure that the professional conforms to the standards of proficiency for their professional body in relation to prescribing in his/her area of competence. <p style="text-align: center;">Verification of prescribing status</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Copy of NMC "Statement of Entry" attached 2. Copy of PSNI registration with annotation for prescribing 3. Copy of HCPC registration with annotation for prescribing 4. Copy of GOC Optometrist Independent Prescriber qualification 		
	Name Block Capitals		Date:
	Signature		

Original to be kept by Professional Lead/Line Manager.

Please send completed form by e-mail to the Head of Pharmacy and Medicines Management (Eimear.mccusker@belfasttrust.hsncl.net) :

Pharmacy Section:

<i>BHSCT NMP Register Updated</i>	<i>Signature :</i>	<i>Date:</i>
-----------------------------------	--------------------	--------------

Appendix 5 Annual Declaration of Competence BHSCT NMP Register

Non-medical prescribers are required by the Trust to confirm on a yearly basis that they are competent to remain on the trust NMP register.

Year e.g. 21/22 22/23	
Name	
Hospital or Base	
Job title	
NMC pin/AHP HCPC no./ Pharmaceutical Society registration number / GOC no.	

Non-medical prescribers will be expected to ensure continuous professional development and to keep up to date with evidence and best practice in the management of the conditions for which they prescribe, and in the use of relevant medicines and any legislative changes.

The non-medical prescriber must discuss learning needs and provide evidence of learning and development as a prescriber, as part of the annual Annual Declaration of Competence process. The Royal Pharmaceutical Society has produced a competency framework for all prescribers -RPS competency framework for all prescribers 2016 - which should be used as a tool to reflect on practice and identify CPD needs

The NMP is compliant with the requirements of Section 7 in the policy and the line manager has verified this.	Signature and Date
NMP	
Professional Manager (usually line manager)	

**Please send completed form by e-mail to:
PharmacyCentralAdmin@belfasttrust.hscni.net**

Pharmacy Section:

<i>BHSCT NMP Register Updated</i>	<i>Signature :</i>	<i>Date:</i>
-----------------------------------	--------------------	--------------

Appendix 6 **CLINICAL MANAGEMENT PLAN (CMP)**

The Clinical Management Plan is the foundation stone of supplementary prescribing – it must be formally agreed by the Independent Prescriber (Doctor) before prescribing occurs. It is essential that there is an agreed CMP in place (written or electronic) relating to a named patient and to that patient's specific condition to be managed by the supplementary prescriber. This must be included in the patient's record.

The CMP must include the following:

- A reference to the medicines (by individual medicine or class of medicines) that may be prescribed for the named patient by the supplementary prescriber.
- The CMP may include references to published national or local guidelines. However they must clearly identify the range of relevant medicinal products to be used in the treatment of the patient and the CMP should draw attention to the relevant part of the guideline. The guidelines must also be accessible.
- The circumstances in which the supplementary prescriber can vary the dosage, frequency and formulation of the specific medicines.
- The circumstances in which the supplementary prescriber should refer back to the independent prescriber.
- Relevant warning about any known sensitivities of the patient to particular medicines and arrangements for the notification of any adverse drug reactions.
- The date on which the supplementary prescribing arrangements commence and the date by which it should be reviewed.
- The formal agreement to the CMP of the independent and supplementary prescribers and of the patient.





Appendix 6: TEMPLATE CMP 1 (Blank): for teams that have full co-terminus access to patient records

Name of Patient:		Patient medication sensitivities/allergies:		
Patient identification e.g. ID number, date of birth:				
Independent Prescriber(s):		Supplementary Prescriber(s)		
Condition(s) to be treated		Aim of treatment		
Medicines that may be prescribed by SP:				
Preparation	Indication	Dose schedule	Specific indications for referral back to the IP	
Guidelines or protocols supporting Clinical Management Plan:				
Frequency of review and monitoring by:				
Supplementary prescriber		Supplementary prescriber and Independent prescriber		
Process for reporting ADRs:				
Shared record to be used by IP and SP:				
Agreed by independent prescriber(s)	Date	Agreed by supplementary prescriber(s)	Date	Date agreed with patient/carer


TEMPLATE CMP 2 (Blank): for teams where the SP does not have co-terminus access to the medical record

Name of Patient:		Patient medication sensitivities/allergies:		
Patient identification e.g. ID number, date of birth:				
Current medication:		Medical history:		
Independent Prescriber(s)		Supplementary prescriber(s):		
Contact details: (tel/email/address)		Contact details: (tel/email/address)		
Conditions(s) to be treated:		Aim of treatment:		
Medicines that may be prescribed by SP:				
Preparation	Indication	Dose schedule	Specific indications for referral back to the IP	
Guidelines or protocols supporting Clinical Management Plan:				
Frequency of review and monitoring by:				
Supplementary prescriber		Supplementary prescriber and Independent prescriber		
Process for reporting ADRs:				
Shared record to be used by IP and SP:				
Agreed by independent prescriber(s);	Date	Agreed by supplementary prescribers(s):	Date	Date agreed with patient/carer

TERMS OF REFERENCE

NAME	Non- Medical Prescribing Group
PURPOSE	<p><i>Our Current Trust Vision</i></p> <p><i>“To be one of the safest, most effective and compassionate health and social care organisations”</i></p> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; align-items: center;"> <div style="text-align: center;">  Working together </div> <div style="text-align: center;">  Excellence </div> <div style="text-align: center;">  Openness & Honesty </div> <div style="text-align: center;">  Compassion </div> </div> <p>This group has been constituted by the Medicines Optimisation Committee to ensure trust policies and processes are in place <i>for non-medical prescribing and patient group directions</i>.</p>
DUTIES	<p>This group aims to address legislative and best practice requirements in the development of BHSCT PGDs and NMP and ensure:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. A framework is established for the development and implementation of patient group directions (PGDs) within the Belfast Health and Social Care Trust through the development of a trust PGD policy and approval process for individual PGDs by directorates. 2. A framework is established for the development and implementation of NMP of medicines within the Belfast Health and Social Care Trust through the development of a trust NMP policy, professional approval process and maintenance of a live Trust NMP register.
REPORTING	Reports to Medicines Optimisation Committee
MEMBERSHIP	<p>Chair: Head of Pharmacy and Medicines Management</p> <p>Membership: Clinical Lead Pharmacist RMPIS Lead Clinical Pharmacist NMP Optometrist Representative Allied Health Professional Lead Senior Nurse Manager (Central)</p>
MEETINGS	<p>Frequency of Meetings Three times per year</p> <p>Formal minutes to include the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - The names of all present at the meeting - Decisions made - Details on any issues to be escalated. - Declarations of interest of members and participants
REVIEW	<p>Terms of Reference must be reviewed on an annual basis</p> <p>Reviewed 31/10/20</p>
OUTPUT	Report to MOC.

TERMS OF REFERENCE

<p>NAME</p>	<p>Medicines Optimisation Committee</p>
<p>PURPOSE</p>	<p>Our Current Trust Vision</p> <p>“To be one of the safest, most effective and compassionate health and social care organisations’</p> <div style="text-align: center;">  <p>Working together Excellence Openness & Honesty Compassion</p> </div> <p>As a Committee within the Integrated Governance and Assurance Framework (known as the Framework) the purpose of the Medicines Optimisation Committee is to provide assurance to Safety and Quality Improvement Steering Group around the effectiveness of the work of its Groups, as referenced within the Framework.</p> <p>This Committee has been constituted by the Assurance Committee. It is linked to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Achieving Trust corporate objectives through effective medicines optimisation • Advising the Safety and Quality Improvement Steering Group and Trust Executive Team on Medicines optimisation issues. <p>The Medicines Optimisation Committee will report directly to the Safety and Quality Improvement Steering Group.</p> <p>The Groups reporting into the Medicines Optimisation Committee include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Drug and Therapeutics Group • Immunoglobulins Group • Non Medical Prescribing Group • Medical Gas Group • Medicines Risk and Safety Assurance Group • Biosimilar Group

<p>DUTIES</p>	<p>The Medicines Optimisation Committee, when providing assurance to the Safety and Quality Improvement Steering Group, will ensure the effectiveness of their Groups by:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ensuring that the work of the Groups meet their responsibilities as outlined in their Terms of Reference. • Supporting the identification, review, and escalation of risks associated with the Groups' purpose. • The provision of regular assurance updates to Safety and Quality Improvement Steering Group as per the Framework and their individual Terms of Reference to allow scrutiny of ongoing Trust Assurance arrangements. • Identification of assurance sources to be utilised. The Medicines Optimisation Committee as a Line 2 Assurance group, will seek Line 1 assurance from Medicines Optimisation Committee dashboard inputs including Controlled Drug audit compliance; Line 2 assurance from the Committee Groups and Controls Assurance Standards for Medicines Management and Line 3 assurance from Audit Committee, Internal Audit, external regulators eg RQIA, HSENI etc • Review the adequacy of relevant Key Policies and ensuring their timely update. • Establish and maintain a Trust strategy for Medicines Optimisation and manage associated work plans. • Lead implementation of NI Medicines Optimisation Efficiency Programme on behalf of BHSCCT through joint Pharmacy/Finance partnership • Support delivery of Medicines Optimisation standards of Trust Quality Improvement Plan • Monitor and audit Trust compliance with the Controls Assurance Standards for Medicines Management and co-ordinate actions as required. • Ensure the handling, storage and use of medicines is safe, clinically effective and economical. • Support the BHSCCT Encompass lead in the planning and implementation of Encompass. • Ensure the safe and effective management of Controlled Drugs and audit compliance against Controlled Drug policies and procedures. • Investigate and support new techniques and methodologies for medicines management, in particular, to oversee and support the implementation of electronic prescribing. • Ensure Trust implementation of regional and national guidance including national alerts relating to medicines. • To review and approve work plans from Medicines Optimisation Committee Groups including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Drug and Therapeutics Group ○ Immunoglobulins Group ○ Non Medical Prescribing Group
----------------------	---

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Medical Gas Group ○ Medicines Risk and Safety Assurance Group ○ Biosimilar group <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Each Group must submit a quarterly report using the agreed template to PharmacyCentralAdmin@belfasttrust.hscni.net three weeks before each Medicines Optimisation Committee meeting. <p>The Chair of the Committee is responsible for maintaining a tracker of submission of reports for all Groups that report to the Committee.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Medicines Optimisation Committee will escalate any concerns to the Safety and Quality Improvement Steering Group or otherwise as appropriate. ● The Medicines Optimisation Committee will provide assurance as per Assurance Framework to allow scrutiny of ongoing Trust Assurance arrangements
<p>AUTHORITY</p>	<p>This Committee is authorised by the Assurance Committee to investigate or have investigated any activity within its Terms of Reference. In doing so, the Committee shall have the right to inspect records or documents of the Trust, relevant to the Committee’s remit, ensuring patient/client and staff confidentiality, as appropriate. It may seek relevant information from any:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Employee (and all employees are directed to co-operate with any reasonable request made by the Committee); ● Other Committees, subcommittees or group established within the Assurance Framework to assist in the delivery of its functions. ● As appropriate, support Groups to obtain outside independent professional or legal advice as well securing attendance of individuals outside BHSCT with relevant experience and expertise. <p>The Groups that feed into this Committee are as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Drug and Therapeutics Group ● Immunoglobulins Group ● Non Medical Prescribing Group ● Medical Gas Group ● Medicines Risk and Safety Assurance Group ● Biosimilar group
<p>REPORTING</p>	<p>The Medicines Optimisation Committee is directly accountable to the Safety and Quality Improvement Steering Group for its performance in exercising the functions set out in these Terms of Reference.</p> <p>The Committee, through its Chairs and members, shall work closely with the other Committees and Groups, to provide advice and assurance to the Safety and Quality Improvement Steering Group through the:</p>

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Joint planning and co-ordination of the Integrated Governance and Assurance Framework business • Sharing of information <p>In doing so, the Committee shall contribute to the integration of good governance across the organisation, ensuring that all sources of assurance are incorporated into the Framework.</p> <p>The Committee chair should:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Report formally, regularly and on a timely basis to the Safety and Quality Improvement Steering Group on the Committee's activities. • Bring to Safety and Quality Improvement Steering Group's specific attention any significant matter under consideration of the Committee. • Ensure appropriate escalation arrangements are in place to alert the Executive Team or Chairs of other relevant Committees or Steering Groups of any risks/urgent/critical matters that may compromise patient/client care and affect the operation and/or reputation of the Trust.
<p>LEAD RESPONSIBILITY</p>	<p>Medical Director</p>
<p>MEMBERSHIP</p>	<p>Chair:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Deputy Medical Director, Risk and Governance • Head of Pharmacy and Medicines Management <p>Membership:</p> <p>Deputy Heads of Pharmacy</p> <p>Central Nursing representative</p> <p>Lead Medication Safety Pharmacist</p> <p>Co-director finance</p> <p>Drug and Therapeutics Group chair/representative</p> <p>Immunoglobulins Group chair/representative</p> <p>Non-medical prescribing Group chair/representative</p> <p>Medicines Risk and Safety Assurance Group chair/representative</p> <p>New Drugs Group chair/representative</p> <p>Biologics group chair/representative</p>

Medicines Optimisation Committee Terms of Reference

	<p>In attendance: The Committee may also co-opt additional 'external' members from outside the organisation to provide specialist skills. Any Director or Senior Manager of the Trust may, where appropriate, be invited to attend.</p> <p>Professional Secretary: Lead Medication Safety Pharmacist</p>
<p>MEETINGS</p>	<p>Quorum The quorum for the meeting will be no less than 60% of the membership and must include as a minimum at least one doctor, one nurse and one pharmacist.</p> <p>In the event where a quorum is not achieved at a meeting, an additional meeting will be scheduled to meet its delegated responsibilities.</p> <p>Frequency of Meetings Quarterly</p> <p>Secretarial Support Formal minutes of this group will be taken. The minutes will include the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The names of all present at the meeting (this should include a table of attendance to support the ongoing monitoring, month on month/quarter by quarter of attendance) • A record of the decisions made and any dissent • Details of how the group was assured and the evidence on which this was based • Risks discussed and a record of decisions regarding management/escalation • Details on any issues to be escalated (this will include details of who/Committee this has been escalated) • Declarations of interest of members and participants; • Draft minutes will be issued within 2 weeks following each meeting. • Maintenance of an action log. <p>Papers The agenda and papers will be disseminated to Committee members 5 working days before the date of the meeting electronically. These will include Group assurance update reports.</p> <p>Additional papers may also include, but are not restricted to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Medicines Optimisation Committee dashboard • Review of Risks

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Review of compliance against agreed standards • External Reports • Correspondence received from external bodies • New Guidance • Findings from Audits (External & Internal) <p>Withdrawal of individuals in attendance The Committee may ask any or all of those who normally attend but who are not members to withdraw to facilitate open and frank discussion of a particular matter. This will be reflected in the minutes of the meeting.</p>
<p>CONFLICT/ DECLARATION OF INTEREST</p>	<p>The Chairs shall seek and record any conflict of interest for items on the agenda from members prior to every meeting.</p>
<p>REVIEW</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Terms of Reference must be reviewed on at least an annual basis. • Membership to be reviewed on at least an annual basis. • Updated Terms of reference and updated membership of Committee to be submitted to the relevant Steering Group for approval on an annual basis. • Assurance that an annual review of the Terms of Reference of all Groups that report directly into this Committee has been completed.
<p>OUTPUT</p>	<p>The Medicines Optimisation Committee will provide the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Assurance Summary report <p>The professional secretary on behalf of the Chairs of the Committee, shall oversee the submission of the following to the Risk and Governance Department. This is to ensure effective archiving for all groups within the Framework.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Terms of Reference (annually) • Agendas (after each meeting) • Minutes (on approval) <p>The Chairs will oversee the tracking of this submission and take action re non-submission where required.</p>

Standards and Guidelines Committee

TITLE	Policy for measuring and recording physiological observations.
--------------	---

Summary	To set out processes to ensure the correct measurement and recording of patient's physiological observations.
Purpose	To provide clear guidance for BHSCT nursing and midwifery staff in the measurement and recording of patient's physiological observations. - in accordance with the NICE clinical guideline CG50 - <i>Acutely ill patients in hospital - Recognition of and response to acute illness in adults in hospital. (July 2007).</i>
Operational date	June 2010
Review date	June 2011
Version Number	V1
Supersedes previous	
Director Responsible	Brenda Creaney, Director of Nursing
Lead Author	Joanna McCormick
Lead Author, Position	Critical Care Nurse Consultant
Additional Author(s)	
Department / Service Group	Acute Services
Contact details	joanna.mccormick@belfasttrust.hscni.net 2 nd Floor West Wing, RVH. 02890 635755

Reference Number	SG 07/09
Supercedes	Legacy Trust Policies

Date	Version	Author	Comments
July 2008	V1.0	Joanna McCormick	First draft
Nov 2008	V2.0	Joanna McCormick	Revised policy
31/03/2009	V0.3	JR Johnston	Amendments; Formatting
25/05/2010	V0.4	JMcC & JRJ	Final changes
3 June 2010	V0.5	JMcC & JRJ	Scope and pdf file
June 2010	1		Final version

Policy Record

		Date	Version
Author (s)			
Director Responsible			

Approval Process – Trust Policies

Policy Committee	Approval		
Executive Team	Authorise		
Chief Executive	Sign Off		

Approval Process – Clinical Standards and Guidelines

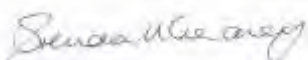
Standards and Guidelines Committee	Approval	30/06/2010	V0.5
Policy Committee	Approval	16/08/2010	V0.5
Executive Team	Authorise	18/08/2010	V0.5
Appropriate Director	Sign Off	20/08/2010	V0.5

Full Description

Reference No:	SG 07/09
1	Policy for measuring and recording physiological observations
2	<p>Introduction Physiological abnormality is associated with adverse patient outcome. Track and trigger scoring systems have been designed to identify and monitor ward patients who are, or who may become unwell.</p> <p>Physiological 'track and trigger' systems rely on periodic observation of selected basic physiological signs ('tracking') with predetermined calling or response criteria ('trigger') for requesting the attendance of staff who have specific competencies in the management of acute illness and/or critical care.</p> <p>If track and trigger systems are to alter outcome the following are required;</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Measurement of the defined physiological parameters must be accurate. • The measurement must be frequent enough to identify trends and changes in physiology. • The calculation of the track and trigger score with each set of observations must be accurate. • The response to an abnormal score must be prompt.
3	<p>Purpose: To ensure the safety of patients in accordance with the NICE clinical guideline CG50 - <i>Acutely ill patients in hospital - Recognition of and response to acute illness in adults in hospital. (July 2007).</i></p>
4	<p>The scope: This policy will apply to all BHSCT nursing / midwifery staff working with adult patients in the acute hospital setting.</p> <p>It does not address care that should be provided to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • children, • patients in critical care areas directly under the care of critical care consultants • outpatients • certain areas where the chart might be used to record observations but the escalation algorithm may not be applicable e.g. dying patients receiving palliative care or patients being cared for in a recovery ward.
5	<p>Objectives: This policy outlines the steps to be taken in regard to the measuring and recording of patient's physiological observations.</p>
6	<p>Roles and Responsibilities: It is the responsibility of all BHSCT nursing / midwifery employees to adhere to this policy.</p>

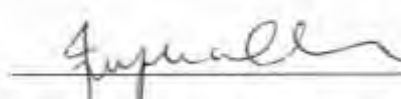
7	<p>The definition and background of the policy:</p> <p>Patients on general adult wards and emergency departments who are at risk of deteriorating may be identified before a serious adverse event by changes in physiological observations recorded by healthcare staff.</p> <p>The interpretation of these changes, and timely institution of appropriate clinical management once physiological deterioration is identified, is of crucial importance to minimise the likelihood of serious adverse events, including cardiac arrest and death. Deterioration which necessitates an admission to a critical care area may also have a significant impact on patient outcome.</p> <p>BHSCT nursing / midwifery staff are key to the accurate measuring and recording of physiological observations. Evidence suggests that this is an area which requires improvement. The effectiveness of track and trigger systems depends on physiological data which is collected accurately and with sufficient frequency.</p>
8	<p>Policy statements:</p> <p><u>Measuring and recording vital signs</u></p>
8.1	<p>Adult patients in acute hospital settings, including patients in the emergency department for whom a clinical decision to admit has been made, should have physiological observations measured and recorded at the time of their admission.</p>
8.2	<p>A physiological track and trigger system should be used to document vital signs for all adult patients in acute hospital settings. The following parameters should be recorded</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Respiratory rate • Heart rate • Systolic (and diastolic) blood pressure • Level of consciousness • Oxygen saturation • Temperature
8.3	<p>Physiological observations must be recorded at least 12 hourly unless a decision has been made to decrease this frequency and the rationale documented in the patient's notes / care plan.</p>
8.4	<p>The frequency of monitoring should increase if abnormal physiology is detected in line with the track and trigger response algorithm.</p> <p>There should be a clear written monitoring plan that specifies which physiological observations should be recorded and how often.</p>
8.5	<p>Physiological observations should be measured, documented and acted upon by staff with competencies in monitoring, measurement and interpretation.</p>
8.6	<p>Prompt response must be made to abnormal physiology in accordance with the track and trigger response algorithm</p>
8.7	<p>Where the responsibility for undertaking and recording observations is delegated to non-registered nurses / midwives, it is the registered nurse / midwife who is accountable for ensuring that observations are recorded accurately and communicated promptly if abnormal (NMC guidelines for records and record keeping 2002).</p>

9.	Source(s) / Evidence Base:	
	NICE clinical guideline 50 – acutely ill patients in hospital (2007) NMC guidelines for records and record keeping (2002) Royal Marsden Hospital Manual of Clinical Nursing Procedures 6 th Ed	
10.	References, including relevant external guidelines: 1. NICE clinical guideline CG50 - <i>Acutely ill patients in hospital - Recognition of and response to acute illness in adults in hospital. (July 2007).</i> http://www.nice.org.uk/nicemedia/pdf/CG50FullGuidance.pdf 2. Guidelines for records and record keeping: April 2002 http://www.nmc-uk.org/aDisplayDocument.aspx?documentID=4008 3. Royal Marsden Hospital Manual of Clinical Nursing Procedures 6 th Ed	
11.	Consultation Process: Trust Service Group Directors, Staff Side & Standards and Guidelines Committee	
12.	Equality and Human Rights screening carried out: In line with duties under the equality legislation (Section 75 of the Northern Ireland Act 1998), Targeting Social Need Initiative, Disability discrimination and the Human Rights Act 1998, the Belfast Trust has carried out an initial screening exercise to ascertain if this policy should be subject to a full impact assessment.	
	√ Screening completed No action required.	<input type="checkbox"/> Full impact assessment to be carried out.
13.	Procedure Standard Observation Chart	



Director Brenda Creaney

Date: June 2010



Author Joanna McCormick

Date: June 2010

Early Warning Score (EWS) Algorithm

Total EWS score	Action	Variance
0-1	Continue with current management	
2-3	Inform nurse in charge Hourly observations	Document rationale if action not taken
> 4 or 3 for any parameter	Inform nurse in charge Half hourly observations Contact Doctor - to attend within 30 minutes	Document rationale if action not taken

Pain score		
Visual analogue	Numerical	Verbal descriptor
A = None	0	0
B = Mild	1	1-3
C = Moderate	2	4-6
D = Severe	3	7-10

Nausea score
0 = No nausea
1 = Mild nausea
2 = Severe nausea
3 = Vomiting

Standards and Guidelines Committee

Policy for measuring and recording physiological observations.	
Summary	To set out processes to ensure the correct measurement and recording of patient's physiological observations.
Purpose	To provide clear guidance for BHSCT nursing and midwifery staff in the measurement and recording of patient's physiological observations. - in accordance with the NICE clinical guideline CG50 - <i>Acutely ill patients in hospital - Recognition of and response to acute illness in adults in hospital. (July 2007).</i>
Operational date	June 2010
Review date	August 2013
Version Number	V2
Director Responsible	Brenda Creaney, Director of Nursing
Lead Author	Joanna McCormick
Lead Author, Position	Critical Care Nurse Consultant
Additional Author(s)	
Department / Service Group	Acute Services
Contact details	joanna.mccormick@belfasttrust.hscni.net 2 nd Floor West Wing, RVH. 02890 635755

Reference Number	SG 07/09
Supersedes	V1

Date	Version	Author	Comments
July 2008	V1.0	Joanna McCormick	First draft
Nov 2008	V2.0	Joanna McCormick	Revised policy
31/03/2009	V0.3	JR Johnston	Amendments; Formatting
25/05/2010	V0.4	JMcC & JRJ	Final changes
3 June 2010	V0.5	JMcC & JRJ	Scope and pdf file
June 2010	1		Final version
July 2011	V1.1	JMcC	Review – date change only
July 2011	2		Final version

Policy Record

		Date	Version
Author (s)			
Director Responsible			

Approval Process – Trust Policies

Policy Committee	Approval		
Executive Team	Authorise		
Chief Executive	Sign Off		

Approval Process – Clinical Standards and Guidelines

Standards and Guidelines Committee	Approval	28/07/2011	V0.6
Policy Committee	Approval	15/08/2011	V0.6
Executive Team	Authorise	17/08/2011	V0.6
Appropriate Director	Sign Off	17/08/2011	V0.6

Full Description**Reference No:** SG 07/09**1 Policy for measuring and recording physiological observations****2 Introduction**

Physiological abnormality is associated with adverse patient outcome. Track and trigger scoring systems have been designed to identify and monitor ward patients who are, or who may become unwell.

Physiological 'track and trigger' systems rely on periodic observation of selected basic physiological signs ('tracking') with predetermined calling or response criteria ('trigger') for requesting the attendance of staff who have specific competencies in the management of acute illness and/or critical care.

If track and trigger systems are to alter outcome the following are required;

- Measurement of the defined physiological parameters must be accurate.
- The measurement must be frequent enough to identify trends and changes in physiology.
- The calculation of the track and trigger score with each set of observations must be accurate.
- The response to an abnormal score must be prompt.

3 Purpose:

To ensure the safety of patients in accordance with the NICE clinical guideline CG50 - *Acutely ill patients in hospital - Recognition of and response to acute illness in adults in hospital. (July 2007).*

4 The scope:

This policy will apply to all BHSCT nursing / midwifery staff working with adult patients in the acute hospital setting.

It does not address care that should be provided to:

- children,
- patients in critical care areas directly under the care of critical care consultants
- outpatients
- certain areas where the chart might be used to record observations but the escalation algorithm may not be applicable e.g. dying patients receiving palliative care or patients being cared for in a recovery ward.

5 Objectives:

This policy outlines the steps to be taken in regard to the measuring and recording of patient's physiological observations.

6 Roles and Responsibilities:

It is the responsibility of all BHSCT nursing / midwifery employees to adhere to this policy.

7 The definition and background of the policy:

Patients on general adult wards and emergency departments who are at risk of deteriorating may be identified before a serious adverse event by changes in

physiological observations recorded by healthcare staff.

The interpretation of these changes, and timely institution of appropriate clinical management once physiological deterioration is identified, is of crucial importance to minimise the likelihood of serious adverse events, including cardiac arrest and death. Deterioration which necessitates an admission to a critical care area may also have a significant impact on patient outcome.

BHSCT nursing / midwifery staff are key to the accurate measuring and recording of physiological observations. Evidence suggests that this is an area which requires improvement. The effectiveness of track and trigger systems depends on physiological data which is collected accurately and with sufficient frequency.

8 Policy statements:

Measuring and recording vital signs

- 8.1 Adult patients in acute hospital settings, including patients in the emergency department for whom a clinical decision to admit has been made, should have physiological observations measured and recorded at the time of their admission.
- 8.2 A physiological track and trigger system should be used to document vital signs for all adult patients in acute hospital settings. The following parameters should be recorded
- Respiratory rate
 - Heart rate
 - Systolic (and diastolic) blood pressure
 - Level of consciousness
 - Oxygen saturation
 - Temperature
- 8.3 Physiological observations must be recorded at least 12 hourly unless a decision has been made to decrease this frequency and the rationale documented in the patient's notes / care plan.
- 8.4 The frequency of monitoring should increase if abnormal physiology is detected in line with the track and trigger response algorithm.
- There should be a clear written monitoring plan that specifies which physiological observations should be recorded and how often.
- 8.5 Physiological observations should be measured, documented and acted upon by staff with competencies in monitoring, measurement and interpretation.
- 8.6 Prompt response must be made to abnormal physiology in accordance with the track and trigger response algorithm
- 8.7 Where the responsibility for undertaking and recording observations is delegated to non-registered nurses / midwives, it is the registered nurse / midwife who is accountable for ensuring that observations are recorded accurately and communicated promptly if abnormal (NMC guidelines for records and record keeping 2002).

9. Source(s) / Evidence Base:

NICE clinical guideline 50 – acutely ill patients in hospital (2007)
NMC guidelines for records and record keeping (2002)

Royal Marsden Hospital Manual of Clinical Nursing Procedures 6th Ed

10. References, including relevant external guidelines:

1. NICE clinical guideline CG50 - *Acutely ill patients in hospital - Recognition of and response to acute illness in adults in hospital. (July 2007).*
<http://www.nice.org.uk/nicemedia/pdf/CG50FullGuidance.pdf>
2. Guidelines for records and record keeping: April 2002
<http://www.nmc-uk.org/aDisplayDocument.aspx?documentID=4008>
3. Royal Marsden Hospital Manual of Clinical Nursing Procedures 6th Ed

11. Consultation Process:

Trust Service Group Directors, Staff Side & Standards and Guidelines Committee

12. Equality and Human Rights screening carried out:

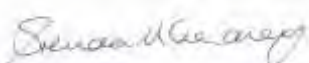
In line with duties under the equality legislation (Section 75 of the Northern Ireland Act 1998), Targeting Social Need Initiative, Disability discrimination and the Human Rights Act 1998, the Belfast Trust has carried out an initial screening exercise to ascertain if this policy should be subject to a full impact assessment.

√ Screening completed
No action required.

Full impact assessment to be carried out.

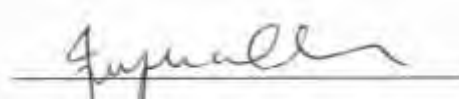
13. Procedure

Standard Observation Chart



Director: Brenda Creaney

Date: August 2011



Author: Joanna McCormick

Date: August 2011

Early Warning Score (EWS) Algorithm

Total EWS score	Action	Variance
0-1	Continue with current management	
2-3	Inform nurse in charge Hourly observations	Document rationale if action not taken
> 4 or 3 for any parameter	Inform nurse in charge Half hourly observations Contact Doctor - to attend within 30 minutes	Document rationale if action not taken

Pain score		
Visual analogue	Numerical	Verbal descriptor
A = None	0	0
B = Mild	1	1-3
C = Moderate	2	4-6
D = Severe	3	7-10

Nausea score
0 = No nausea
1 = Mild nausea
2 = Severe nausea
3 = Vomiting

Standards and Guidelines Committee

Policy for measuring and recording physiological observations.	
Summary	To set out processes to ensure the correct measurement and recording of patient's physiological observations.
Purpose	To provide clear guidance for BHSCT nursing and midwifery staff in the measurement and recording of patient's physiological observations. - in accordance with the NICE clinical guideline CG50 - <i>Acutely ill patients in hospital - Recognition of and response to acute illness in adults in hospital. (July 2007).</i>
Operational date	June 2010
Review date	August 2013- June 2020
Version Number	V2.1
Director Responsible	Brenda Creaney, Director of Nursing
Lead Author	Joanna McCormick
Lead Author, Position	Critical Care Nurse Consultant
Additional Author(s)	
Department / Service Group	Acute Services
Contact details	joanna.mccormick@belfasttrust.hscni.net 2 nd Floor West Wing, RVH. 02890 635755

Reference Number	SG 07/09
Supersedes	V1

Date	Version	Author	Comments
July 2008	V1.0	Joanna McCormick	First draft
Nov 2008	V2.0	Joanna McCormick	Revised policy
31/03/2009	V0.3	JR Johnston	Amendments; Formatting
25/05/2010	V0.4	JMcC & JRJ	Final changes
3 June 2010	V0.5	JMcC & JRJ	Scope and pdf file
June 2010	1		Final version
July 2011	V1.1	JMcC	Review – date change only
July 2011	2		Final version
06/06/2019	2.1		Awaiting Input – review extended 1 year

Policy Record

	Date	Version
Author (s)		
Director Responsible		

Approval Process – Trust Policies

Policy Committee	Approval		
Executive Team	Authorise		
Chief Executive	Sign Off		

Approval Process – Clinical Standards and Guidelines

Standards and Guidelines Committee	Approval	28/07/2011	V0.6
Policy Committee	Approval	15/08/2011	V0.6
Executive Team	Authorise	17/08/2011	V0.6
Appropriate Director	Sign Off	17/08/2011	V0.6

Full Description

Reference No: SG 07/09

1 Policy for measuring and recording physiological observations**2 Introduction**

Physiological abnormality is associated with adverse patient outcome. Track and trigger scoring systems have been designed to identify and monitor ward patients who are, or who may become unwell.

Physiological 'track and trigger' systems rely on periodic observation of selected basic physiological signs ('tracking') with predetermined calling or response criteria ('trigger') for requesting the attendance of staff who have specific competencies in the management of acute illness and/or critical care.

If track and trigger systems are to alter outcome the following are required;

- Measurement of the defined physiological parameters must be accurate.
- The measurement must be frequent enough to identify trends and changes in physiology.
- The calculation of the track and trigger score with each set of observations must be accurate.
- The response to an abnormal score must be prompt.

3 Purpose:

To ensure the safety of patients in accordance with the NICE clinical guideline CG50 - *Acutely ill patients in hospital - Recognition of and response to acute illness in adults in hospital. (July 2007).*

4 The scope:

This policy will apply to all BHSCT nursing / midwifery staff working with adult patients in the acute hospital setting.

It does not address care that should be provided to:

- children,
- patients in critical care areas directly under the care of critical care consultants
- outpatients
- certain areas where the chart might be used to record observations but the escalation algorithm may not be applicable e.g. dying patients receiving palliative care or patients being cared for in a recovery ward.

5 Objectives:

This policy outlines the steps to be taken in regard to the measuring and recording of patient's physiological observations.

6 Roles and Responsibilities:

It is the responsibility of all BHSCT nursing / midwifery employees to adhere to this policy.

7 The definition and background of the policy:

Patients on general adult wards and emergency departments who are at risk of deteriorating may be identified before a serious adverse event by changes in

physiological observations recorded by healthcare staff.

The interpretation of these changes, and timely institution of appropriate clinical management once physiological deterioration is identified, is of crucial importance to minimise the likelihood of serious adverse events, including cardiac arrest and death. Deterioration which necessitates an admission to a critical care area may also have a significant impact on patient outcome.

BHSCT nursing / midwifery staff are key to the accurate measuring and recording of physiological observations. Evidence suggests that this is an area which requires improvement. The effectiveness of track and trigger systems depends on physiological data which is collected accurately and with sufficient frequency.

8 Policy statements:

Measuring and recording vital signs

- 8.1 Adult patients in acute hospital settings, including patients in the emergency department for whom a clinical decision to admit has been made, should have physiological observations measured and recorded at the time of their admission.
- 8.2 A physiological track and trigger system should be used to document vital signs for all adult patients in acute hospital settings. The following parameters should be recorded
- Respiratory rate
 - Heart rate
 - Systolic (and diastolic) blood pressure
 - Level of consciousness
 - Oxygen saturation
 - Temperature
- 8.3 Physiological observations must be recorded at least 12 hourly unless a decision has been made to decrease this frequency and the rationale documented in the patient's notes / care plan.
- 8.4 The frequency of monitoring should increase if abnormal physiology is detected in line with the track and trigger response algorithm.

There should be a clear written monitoring plan that specifies which physiological observations should be recorded and how often.

- 8.5 Physiological observations should be measured, documented and acted upon by staff with competencies in monitoring, measurement and interpretation.
- 8.6 Prompt response must be made to abnormal physiology in accordance with the track and trigger response algorithm
- 8.7 Where the responsibility for undertaking and recording observations is delegated to non-registered nurses / midwives, it is the registered nurse / midwife who is accountable for ensuring that observations are recorded accurately and communicated promptly if abnormal (NMC guidelines for records and record keeping 2002).

9. Source(s) / Evidence Base:

NICE clinical guideline 50 – acutely ill patients in hospital (2007)
NMC guidelines for records and record keeping (2002)

Royal Marsden Hospital Manual of Clinical Nursing Procedures 6th Ed

10. References, including relevant external guidelines:

1. NICE clinical guideline CG50 - *Acutely ill patients in hospital - Recognition of and response to acute illness in adults in hospital. (July 2007).*
<http://www.nice.org.uk/nicemedia/pdf/CG50FullGuidance.pdf>
2. Guidelines for records and record keeping: April 2002
<http://www.nmc-uk.org/aDisplayDocument.aspx?documentID=4008>
3. Royal Marsden Hospital Manual of Clinical Nursing Procedures 6th Ed

11. Consultation Process:

Trust Service Group Directors, Staff Side & Standards and Guidelines Committee

12. Equality and Human Rights screening carried out:

In line with duties under the equality legislation (Section 75 of the Northern Ireland Act 1998), Targeting Social Need Initiative, Disability discrimination and the Human Rights Act 1998, the Belfast Trust has carried out an initial screening exercise to ascertain if this policy should be subject to a full impact assessment.

√ Screening completed
No action required.

Full impact assessment to be carried out.

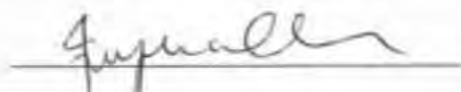
13. Procedure

Standard Observation Chart



Director: Brenda Creaney

Date: August 2011



Author: Joanna McCormick

Date: August 2011

Use addressograph—otherwise write in capitals

Surname: _____
 First names: _____
 Consultant: _____ Ward: _____
 Hospital no: _____
 DOB: _____



Standard Observation Chart

Ward _____ Month _____ Year _____

Score key

0
1
2
3

Observation frequency	Date	Time	Frequency	Date	Time
Resp. Rate (Drain number)	0-20	21-30	31-35	36-40	41-45
SaO₂ (Drain number)	96-100	95-99	94-98	93-97	92-96
Inspired O₂ %	100	100	100	100	100
Pulse/Heart Rate (Pul #)	100	100	100	100	100
Blood Pressure Record systolic and diastolic pressure Some systolic BP only	120	120	120	120	120
Temperature °C (Pul #)	37	37	37	37	37
Level of consciousness (Pul #)	Alert A	Voice V	Pain P	Unresponsive U	Unresponsive U
EWS SCORE (Total score at observation)	0	1	2	3	4
Initials					
Pain score					
Wound score					
Wound					
Wound					
Drain					
Drain					
Blood glucose					
Weight					

Early Warning Score (EWS) Algorithm

Total EWS score	Action	Variance
0-1	Continue with current management	
2-3	Inform nurse in charge Hourly observations	Document rationale if action not taken
> 4 or 3 for any parameter	Inform nurse in charge Half hourly observations Contact Doctor - to attend within 30 minutes	Document rationale if action not taken

Pain score			Nausea score
Visual analogue	Numerical	Verbal descriptor	0 = No nausea
A = None	0	0	1 = Mild nausea
B = Mild	1	1-3	2 = Severe nausea
C = Moderate	2	4-6	3 = Vomiting
D = Severe	3	7-10	

AWAITING

Standards and Guidelines Committee

Policy for measuring and recording physiological observations.	
Summary	To set out processes to ensure the correct measurement and recording of patient's physiological observations.
Purpose	To provide clear guidance for BHSCT nursing and midwifery staff in the measurement and recording of patient's physiological observations. - in accordance with the NICE clinical guideline CG50 - <i>Acutely ill patients in hospital - Recognition of and response to acute illness in adults in hospital. (July 2007).</i>
Operational date	June 2010
Review date	August 2013 – June 2020 October 2021
Version Number	V2.2
Director Responsible	Brenda Creaney, Director of Nursing
Lead Author	Joanna McCormick
Lead Author, Position	Critical Care Nurse Consultant
Additional Author(s)	
Department / Service Group	Acute Services
Contact details	joanna.mccormick@belfasttrust.hscni.net 2 nd Floor West Wing, RVH. 02890 635755

Reference Number	SG 07/09
Supersedes	V1

Date	Version	Author	Comments
July 2008	V1.0	Joanna McCormick	First draft
Nov 2008	V2.0	Joanna McCormick	Revised policy
31/03/2009	V0.3	JR Johnston	Amendments; Formatting
25/05/2010	V0.4	JMcC & JRJ	Final changes
3 June 2010	V0.5	JMcC & JRJ	Scope and pdf file
June 2010	1		Final version
July 2011	V1.1	JMcC	Review – date change only
July 2011	2		Final version
06/06/2019	2.1		Awaiting Input – review extended 1 year
28/10/2020	2.2		Awaiting Input – review extended 1 year

Policy Record

	Date	Version
Author (s)		
Director Responsible		

Approval Process – Trust Policies

Policy Committee	Approval		
Executive Team	Authorise		
Chief Executive	Sign Off		

Approval Process – Clinical Standards and Guidelines

Standards and Guidelines Committee	Approval	28/07/2011	V0.6
Policy Committee	Approval	15/08/2011	V0.6
Executive Team	Authorise	17/08/2011	V0.6
Appropriate Director	Sign Off	17/08/2011	V0.6

Full Description**Reference No:** SG 07/09**1 Policy for measuring and recording physiological observations****2 Introduction**

Physiological abnormality is associated with adverse patient outcome. Track and trigger scoring systems have been designed to identify and monitor ward patients who are, or who may become unwell.

Physiological 'track and trigger' systems rely on periodic observation of selected basic physiological signs ('tracking') with predetermined calling or response criteria ('trigger') for requesting the attendance of staff who have specific competencies in the management of acute illness and/or critical care.

If track and trigger systems are to alter outcome the following are required;

- Measurement of the defined physiological parameters must be accurate.
- The measurement must be frequent enough to identify trends and changes in physiology.
- The calculation of the track and trigger score with each set of observations must be accurate.
- The response to an abnormal score must be prompt.

3 Purpose:

To ensure the safety of patients in accordance with the NICE clinical guideline CG50 - *Acutely ill patients in hospital - Recognition of and response to acute illness in adults in hospital. (July 2007).*

4 The scope:

This policy will apply to all BHSCT nursing / midwifery staff working with adult patients in the acute hospital setting.

It does not address care that should be provided to:

- children,
- patients in critical care areas directly under the care of critical care consultants
- outpatients
- certain areas where the chart might be used to record observations but the escalation algorithm may not be applicable e.g. dying patients receiving palliative care or patients being cared for in a recovery ward.

5 Objectives:

This policy outlines the steps to be taken in regard to the measuring and recording of patient's physiological observations.

6 Roles and Responsibilities:

It is the responsibility of all BHSCT nursing / midwifery employees to adhere to this policy.

7 The definition and background of the policy:

Patients on general adult wards and emergency departments who are at risk of deteriorating may be identified before a serious adverse event by changes in

physiological observations recorded by healthcare staff.

The interpretation of these changes, and timely institution of appropriate clinical management once physiological deterioration is identified, is of crucial importance to minimise the likelihood of serious adverse events, including cardiac arrest and death. Deterioration which necessitates an admission to a critical care area may also have a significant impact on patient outcome.

BHSCT nursing / midwifery staff are key to the accurate measuring and recording of physiological observations. Evidence suggests that this is an area which requires improvement. The effectiveness of track and trigger systems depends on physiological data which is collected accurately and with sufficient frequency.

8 Policy statements:

Measuring and recording vital signs

- 8.1 Adult patients in acute hospital settings, including patients in the emergency department for whom a clinical decision to admit has been made, should have physiological observations measured and recorded at the time of their admission.
- 8.2 A physiological track and trigger system should be used to document vital signs for all adult patients in acute hospital settings. The following parameters should be recorded
- Respiratory rate
 - Heart rate
 - Systolic (and diastolic) blood pressure
 - Level of consciousness
 - Oxygen saturation
 - Temperature
- 8.3 Physiological observations must be recorded at least 12 hourly unless a decision has been made to decrease this frequency and the rationale documented in the patient's notes / care plan.
- 8.4 The frequency of monitoring should increase if abnormal physiology is detected in line with the track and trigger response algorithm.

There should be a clear written monitoring plan that specifies which physiological observations should be recorded and how often.

- 8.5 Physiological observations should be measured, documented and acted upon by staff with competencies in monitoring, measurement and interpretation.
- 8.6 Prompt response must be made to abnormal physiology in accordance with the track and trigger response algorithm
- 8.7 Where the responsibility for undertaking and recording observations is delegated to non-registered nurses / midwives, it is the registered nurse / midwife who is accountable for ensuring that observations are recorded accurately and communicated promptly if abnormal (NMC guidelines for records and record keeping 2002).

9. Source(s) / Evidence Base:

NICE clinical guideline 50 – acutely ill patients in hospital (2007)
NMC guidelines for records and record keeping (2002)

Royal Marsden Hospital Manual of Clinical Nursing Procedures 6th Ed

10. References, including relevant external guidelines:

1. NICE clinical guideline CG50 - *Acutely ill patients in hospital - Recognition of and response to acute illness in adults in hospital. (July 2007).*
<http://www.nice.org.uk/nicemedia/pdf/CG50FullGuidance.pdf>
2. Guidelines for records and record keeping: April 2002
<http://www.nmc-uk.org/aDisplayDocument.aspx?documentID=4008>
3. Royal Marsden Hospital Manual of Clinical Nursing Procedures 6th Ed

11. Consultation Process:

Trust Service Group Directors, Staff Side & Standards and Guidelines Committee

12. Equality and Human Rights screening carried out:

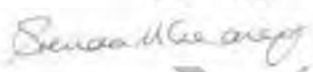
In line with duties under the equality legislation (Section 75 of the Northern Ireland Act 1998), Targeting Social Need Initiative, Disability discrimination and the Human Rights Act 1998, the Belfast Trust has carried out an initial screening exercise to ascertain if this policy should be subject to a full impact assessment.

√ Screening completed
No action required.

Full impact assessment to be carried out.

13. Procedure

Standard Observation Chart



Director: Brenda Creaney

Date: August 2011



Author: Joanna McCormick

Date: August 2011

Use addressograph—otherwise write in capitals

Surname: _____
 First names: _____
 Consultant: _____ Ward: _____
 Hospital no: _____
 DOB: _____



Standard Observation Chart

Ward _____ Month _____ Year _____

Score key

0
1
2
3

Observation frequency	Date	Time	Frequency	Date	Time
Resp. Rate (Drain number)	0-20	21-30	31-35	36-40	41-45
SaO₂ (Drain number)	96-100	95-99	93-94	91-92	90-94
Inspired O₂ %	100	100	100	100	100
Pulse/Heart Rate (Pul #)	100	100	100	100	100
Blood Pressure Record systolic and diastolic pressure Some systolic BP only	120	120	120	120	120
Temperature °C (Pul #)	37	37	37	37	37
Level of consciousness (Pul #)	Alert A	Voice V	Pain P	Unresponsive U	Unresponsive U
EWS SCORE (Total score at observation)	0	1	2	3	4
Initials					
Pain score					
Wound score					
Wound					
Wound					
Drain					
Drain					
Blood glucose					
Weight					

Early Warning Score (EWS) Algorithm

Total EWS score	Action	Variance
0-1	Continue with current management	
2-3	Inform nurse in charge Hourly observations	Document rationale if action not taken
> 4 or 3 for any parameter	Inform nurse in charge Half hourly observations Contact Doctor - to attend within 30 minutes	Document rationale if action not taken

Pain score			Nausea score
Visual analogue	Numerical	Verbal descriptor	0 = No nausea
A = None	0	0	1 = Mild nausea
B = Mild	1	1-3	2 = Severe nausea
C = Moderate	2	4-6	3 = Vomiting
D = Severe	3	7-10	

AWAITING

Psychiatry Induction

Prescribing and Medication in Psychiatry



Rapid Tranquillisation

Regional RT Policy incorporating NICE NG 10
– Violence and Aggression



Aim of Presentation

- To raise awareness of the Regional Rapid Tranquillisation (RT) guideline

Objectives

At the end of this presentation you should be able to:

- Describe what is and what isn't RT
- Describe the main pharmacological options for RT based on NICE Violence Guideline, NG10
- Describe where Regional Policy Deviates from NG10
- Describe key safety issues with haloperidol and promethazine
- Describe the monitoring required after RT

NG10 Key recommendations

- Principles for managing violence and aggression
- Anticipating and reducing the risk of violence and aggression
- Preventing violence and aggression
- Using restrictive interventions in inpatient psychiatric settings
- Managing violence and aggression in emergency departments
- Managing violence and aggression in community and primary care settings

Rapid Tranq - definition

- NG 10 defines RT as

“Use of medication by the parenteral route (usually intramuscular or, exceptionally, intravenous) if oral medication is not possible or appropriate and urgent sedation with medication is needed.”

NG 10 – Oral medication - PRN

- Oral PRN not included in NICE NG 10
 - Oral is not considered to be RT
- However,
 - Oral PRN may be part of de-escalation plan
 - Oral PRN on its own is not de-escalation

NG 10 – Oral medication – PRN

MAHI - STM - 122 - 701

- To guide staff, Regional Policy offers oral PRN options as part of a de-escalation strategy
- There should be
 - Clarity about indication for oral PRN
 - Clarity about 1st and 2nd line choices
- Tailor PRN to individual circumstances – involve patient in discussion
- Avoid doses over BNF max dose

Rapid Tranquillisation

- Part of the Restrictive Intervention Policy
- Policy on Trust Intranet (search “Rapid”) – read as part of training
- Significant risks are associated with RT
- Risks with RT may be additive to those with physical restraint
- Post RT observation and documentation are essential

Options with disturbed patient

- De-escalation techniques – talking down
- Seclusion
- Regular medication – review effectiveness
- Oral PRN – as part of a de-escalation strategy
- Rapid Tranquillisation – use of IM medication

The risk of harm increases going down the list – use the option consistent with the level of risk

Things to Consider

- Patient age – use appropriate flow chart
- Separate Flow charts for
 - Children and Young People 6 to 17 yrs
 - Adults over 18yrs
 - Older and Frail Adults
 - People with dementia
- NOTE – RT Guide is not for Delirium or Alcohol withdrawal – use appropriate pathways

Oral versus Intramuscular

- Patients must be offered the chance to accept oral treatment unless
 - The team has agreed the risks are disproportionate
- Risks are increased with IM medication
- Oral and IM doses are not necessarily equivalent

IM injection risks

- Small risk of Inadvertent IV or IA injection
 - Might explain the small number of historic deaths during RT - a bolus dose is inadvertently given
- Needle stick injury – patient and staff
- Needle detaching from syringe
- Enhanced effect in struggling patient
 - activated sympathetic system
 - increased muscle blood flow

NICE RECOMMENDATIONS

Lorazepam - possible first line

- Compared to diazepam
 - It does not accumulate, less hangover effect
 - More consistent IM absorption
- Oral and IM dose 1mg to 2mg
- No significant difference between oral and IM dosing – very slightly faster onset for IM
- Max dose 4mg/24hrs – document reasons for higher doses

Lorazepam - Problems

- Risk of over sedation/loss of consciousness
- Risk of respiratory depression or arrest
 - Caution when used along with restraint
- Paradoxical reactions – increased agitation
- Caution with IM olanzapine
 - Increased risk of respiratory/cardiovascular collapse when given together
 - Separate doses by at least one hour

Haloperidol – possible first line

- Oral dose 5 -10mg – max dose 20mg/24hr
- IM dose 5 -10mg – max dose 20mg/24hr
- Onset within 30-45 mins
 - may be repeated after 45 minutes
- 5mg IM is equivalent to 8 -10mg orally
 - reduce dose if repeated injections are given.
- Give IM haloperidol and IM promethazine together (NICE NG10)

Haloperidol - problems

- Risk of dystonic reactions
- Risk of cardiac arrhythmias, especially QTc prolongation.
- Avoid if no recent ECG or there is evidence of cardiac disease
- Risk of over sedation

IM Promethazine - give with IM haloperidol

MAHI - STM - 122 - 712

- Sedative antihistamine & anticholinergic
 - Enhanced sedative effect
 - Reduces haloperidol induced EPSE
- IM Dose 25 - 50mg. Max dose 100mg/24hrs
- Allow 1-2 hrs for response before repeat
- Avoid if MAOIs used in last 14 days
- Avoid if suffering from CNS depression
 - e.g. alcohol intoxication

Why are common treatments omitted from NG 10

MAHI - STM - 122 - 714

- Haloperidol combined with lorazepam
 - no evidence it is more effective than lorazepam alone
- Rapid Acting Olanzapine IM
 - not marketed in UK – (unlicensed import available)
- Rapid Acting Aripiprazole IM
 - insufficient evidence for NICE to make a recommendation
- Acuphase
 - Not rapid acting
 - unfavourable Cochrane review

Antipsychotics - olanzapine

- Oral olanzapine 10mg
- IM olanzapine 5-10mg
- Needs to be reconstituted
- In RT max dose is 20mg/day by any route
- Injection may be repeated after at least 2 hrs
- Do not use with 1hr of IM lorazepam – increased risk of respiratory and circulatory collapse
- Risk of over sedation
- Reserve for Level 3 or Individual Care Plan

Antipsychotics - aripiprazole

- IM aripiprazole 9.75mg (1.3ml)
- Max dose 30mg by any route
- Injection may be repeated after at least 2 hrs
- Reserve for when haloperidol and olanzapine are unsuitable
- Risk of over sedation
- Reserve for Level 3 or Individual Care Plan

Clopixol Acuphase

- Not recommended for RT due to slow onset and prolonged duration of action
- Do not use in struggling patient (?risk of IV/IA injection)
- Do not use in the antipsychotic naïve
- Do not repeat doses within 24hrs
- No such thing as a “course”!
- May have a role in an individual care plan for patients with prolonged periods of disturbed behaviour

Its not in NG10 – can it be used?

- Yes –if they are suitable for the patient
- Should be part of an Individualised care plan
- Consider when
 - Inadequate response to Level 2 interventions
 - Contra-indications to haloperidol or lorazepam

Other Options

- Haloperidol combined with lorazepam
 - No clear evidence more effective than lorazepam on its own
 - Historically used
 - Increase risk of respiratory or circulatory collapse – careful monitoring
 - Doses as for individual drugs

Other Options

- Oral Promethazine

- Oral treatment is not considered by NICE
- BAP RT Guideline suggests oral promethazine is safe and effective in management of anxiety/agitation

ADULTS OVER 18YRS



(Not applicable to delirium, also consider using Appendix D for older adults and frail)

Pharmacological management should be part of an individualised care plan that includes appropriate nursing care and de-escalation techniques

LEVEL 1 Accepting oral meds and as part of de-escalation strategy	LEVEL 2 Actual or clear risk of violence or aggression. De-escalation including oral PRN not possible or appropriate	LEVEL 3 Situation rapidly deteriorating or failure to respond to LEVEL 2 interventions
<p>Consider combination of oral lorazepam with an oral antipsychotic if indicated by clinical circumstances. Consider moving to LEVEL 2 if oral therapy is refused or is not indicated by previous clinical response or is not a proportionate response.</p>	<p>Review all medication administered in the last 24 hours – be aware of BNF max doses. Ensure resuscitation equipment and emergency response is readily available within 3 minutes.</p>	<p>If Rapid Tranquillisation (LEVEL 2) is being used, a senior doctor must review all treatment and response every 24 hours.</p> <p>If one round of LEVEL 2 interventions have had insufficient effect a senior doctor should review treatment and consider the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The appropriateness of current placement • Age and physical presentation • Check sufficient time has been allowed for response • If there has been a partial response to a LEVEL 2 intervention, consider repeating that intervention • If a LEVEL 2 intervention has had insufficient effect consider offering the alternative LEVEL 2 intervention • Carry out a full review of treatment to date and seek a second opinion if needed.
<p>Consider lower doses in older adults or frail (Appendix A & D)</p>		
<p><u>Suggested Oral Medication</u> Lorazepam 1 or 2mg (Max 4mg/24hrs) OR Promethazine 25 or 50mg (Max 100mg/24hrs) OR Haloperidol 5mg (max 20mg/24hrs) OR Olanzapine 10mg ♦ (♦ Available as an orodispersible product) (Max 20mg/24hr)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p>Continue de-escalation strategy.</p> <p>If response is inadequate after 45 minutes, consider repeating oral therapy or moving to LEVEL 2</p> </div>	<p><u>Suggested Medication</u> Lorazepam IM (or IV)^a 1 or 2mg^{b, c} (Max 4mg/24hrs) OR Haloperidol IM 5mg (Max 20mg/24hrs) Combined with Promethazine IM 25 or 50mg (Max 100mg/24hrs)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p>If there is continued concern seek advice from a more senior doctor before proceeding further</p> <p>NOTES <i>a. IV in certain clinical settings. NOT recommended in elderly and frail and in mental health settings</i> <i>b. IM Lorazepam and IM Olanzapine must not be administered within 1 hour of each other</i> <i>c. IV flumazenil must be readily available</i></p> </div>	<p>If LEVEL 2 interventions have had insufficient effect</p> <p><u>Consider as part of an individualised care plan include:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Further repeats of LEVEL 2 interventions (do not repeat promethazine if it is < 2hrs since the last injection) • Haloperidol IM combined with Lorazepam IM • Alternative medications (see Section 10) • Zuclopenthixol acetate (Clopixol Acuphase®) (see Section 11)

When deciding which medication to use, consider: Additional Considerations

- | | |
|---|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Oral or parenteral lorazepam is preferred first line if: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> o Patient is an older adult or physically frail o There is an uncertain history o Presence of cardiovascular disease o Current illicit drug/alcohol intoxication o Antipsychotic naïve • Antipsychotics and/or promethazine preferred with: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> o Current regular benzodiazepine use | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Avoid antipsychotics, where possible, in patients with a parkinsonian syndrome (including idiopathic Parkinson's disease Parkinson's disease dementia and Dementia with Lewy Bodies) • Avoid haloperidol in cardiovascular disease or if there has been no recent ECG. • Pre-existing physical health problems (e.g. extra care in patients with eating disorders, physical frailty or comorbidity of any disorders that affect metabolism, including hypothermia, stress, extreme emotional response and post extreme physical exertion) or pregnancy. • Previous response, including adverse effects • Potential for interactions with other medicine • Possible Intoxication |
|---|--|

CHILDREN 6 TO 17YRS

Pharmacological management should be part of an overall management plan that includes appropriate nursing care and de-escalation techniques

LEVEL 1 Accepting oral meds and as part of de-escalation strategy	MAHI - STMEVEL 2122 - 724 Actual or clear risk of violence or aggression. De-escalation including oral PRN not possible or appropriate	LEVEL 3 Situation rapidly deteriorating or failure to respond to Level 2 interventions
<p>Consider combination of oral lorazepam with an oral antipsychotic if indicated by clinical circumstances.</p> <p>Consider moving to LEVEL 2 if oral therapy is refused or is not indicated by previous clinical response or is not a proportionate response.</p> <p>Suggested Oral Medication</p> <p>Children 6-12 years Lorazepam 0.5 or 1mg (Max 4mg/24hrs)</p> <p>Young People 13-17 years Lorazepam 0.5mg, 1mg or 2mg (Max 4mg/24hrs)</p> <p>OR Haloperidol 1mg up to 5 mg★ (max 10mg/24hrs)</p> <p>OR Promethazine 10mg to 25mg (max 50mg/24hrs)</p> <p>OR Risperidone◆ 20kg-45kg 0.5mg(Slowly increase to Max 2.5mg/24hrs) >45kg 0.5mg (Slowly increase to Max3mg/24 hrs)</p> <p>◆ Available as an orodispersible product.</p>	<p>Consult a senior doctor/consultant before using IM medication in a child under 12 years of age.</p> <p>Consult a senior doctor/consultant before using IM medication in a young person (13-17 years) unless IM medication is already included in the young person's care plan.</p> <p>Check if an individual care plan recommends an approach not covered in this guideline.</p> <p>Review all medication administered in the last 24 hours – be aware of BNF max doses.</p> <p>Ensure resuscitation equipment and emergency bag is available within 3 minutes.</p> <p>Suggested IM Medication</p> <p>Children 6-12 years Lorazepam IM0.5 or 1mg (Max 4mg/24hrs)</p> <p>Young People 13 -17 years Lorazepam IM0.5mg, 1mg or 2mg (Max 4mg/24hrs)</p> <p>For both age groups: If there is continued concern, seek advice from a more senior doctor/consultant before proceeding</p>	<p>If Rapid Tranquillisation (LEVEL 2) is being used, a senior doctor/consultant must review all treatment and response every 24 hours.</p> <p>If one round of LEVEL 2 interventions have had insufficient effect a senior doctor/consultant should review treatment and consider the following options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The appropriateness of current placement • Check sufficient time has been allowed for response • If there has been a partial response to lorazepam consider repeating the dose • Carry out a full review and seek a second opinion if needed. <p>If there has been insufficient response to IM lorazepam:</p> <p>Consider as part of an individualised care plan include (in no particular order)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Further repeats of IM lorazepam • ≥13yrs, Haloperidol IM 1 - 5mg★ (Max 10mg/24hrs) • ≥13yrs, Haloperidol IM combined with lorazepam IM • ≥13yrs, Promethazine IM (10 to 25mg, Max 50mg/24hrs) • ≥13yrs, Olanzapine 2.5mg, 5mg or 10mg (Max 10mg/24hrs IM). Do not combine with IM lorazepam and use with caution if IM lorazepam has been given within 1 hour

When deciding which medication to use, consider:

- Oral or parenteral lorazepam is preferred first line if:
 - There is an uncertain history
 - Presence of cardiovascular disease
 - Current illicit drug/alcohol intoxication
 - Antipsychotic naive
- Antipsychotics may be preferred with:
 - Current regular benzodiazepine use
 - History of respiratory depression

Additional Considerations

- Avoid haloperidol in cardiovascular disease or if there has been no recent ECG.
 - Pre-existing physical health problems (e.g. extra care in patients with eating disorders, physical frailty or comorbidity of any disorders that affect metabolism, including hypothermia, stress, extreme emotional response and post extreme physical exertion) or pregnancy
 - Previous response, including adverse effects
 - Potential for interactions with other medicine
 - Possible Intoxication
 - Promethazine is contraindicated in CNS depression.
- ★ Dosing for haloperidol should be a fixed dose in the range from 1mg to a max of 5mg. Please consider the available strengths of oral haloperidol 0.5mg, 1.5mg or 5mg to facilitate ease of administration; e.g. 1.5mg is easier to administer than 2mg

ALL OPTIONS SUMMARY

Appendix A - Dose information for specific populations (Not applicable to delirium)

MAHI - STM - 122 - 726

Dose ranges highlighted as a guide only: remember to avoid variable dosing on kardex.

Medication	Time to Peak Plasma concentration	Child (6-12 years)	Young person (13-17)	Adults (18+)	Older and Frail People	People with Dementia
Haloperidol oral solution and tablets If no recent ECG, consider risk/benefits as use may be unlicensed.	2 – 6 hours (Sedation usually within 30-45 mins)	Not Applicable	Consider risk of acute dystonia especially in the antipsychotic naïve PO 1mg up to 5mg Max 10mg/24hrs	PO 5mg Max 20mg/24 hours	Only use first line if there is confirmed history of previous exposure to typical antipsychotics. Start with lower doses. PO 0.5mg up to 2.5mg (Usual Max 5mg/24hrs.)	Not recommended. Use only in very exceptional circumstances and under advice of senior doctors with experience in dementia. Consider licensed oral risperidone as an alternative PO 0.5mg (Max 2mg/24hrs)
Haloperidol injection If no recent ECG, consider risk/benefits as use may be unlicensed.	IM 15 – 60 mins (Sedation usually within 30 – 45 mins) IV: 10 mins	Not Applicable	Unlicensed: Only use as part of an individualised care plan. Consider risk of acute dystonia especially in the antipsychotic naïve IM injection 1mg up to 5mg Max 10mg/24hrs	By IM/IV injection 5mg Max 20mg/24 hours	Only use first line if there is confirmed history of previous exposure to typical antipsychotics. Start with lower doses IM 0.5mg up to 2.5mg (Max 5mg/24hrs)	Not recommended. Use only in very exceptional circumstances and under advice of senior doctors with experience in dementia. Consider licensed oral risperidone as an alternative IM 0.5mg (Max 2mg/24hrs)
Lorazepam tablets and IM/IV injection	PO/IM 50-90 mins (Sedation usually within 30-45 mins) IV: 2-5mins	Unlicensed but may be justified in some cases PO or by IM injection 0.5 or 1mg Max 4mg/24hrs	PO or IM injection 0.5mg, 1mg or 2mg Max 4mg/24hrs	PO or IM/IV injection 1mg or 2mg Max 4mg/24 hours	PO or IM injection 0.5mg Max 2mg/24 hours (IV route NOT recommended)	PO or IM injection 0.5mg Max 2mg/24 hours (IV route NOT recommended)
Olanzapine tablets/ orodispersible tablets <i>(NB orodispersible tablets have no advantage in speed of onset but are harder to spit out/conceal)</i>	5 – 8 hours	Not Applicable	Not Applicable	Initially 5mg or 10mg PO Max 20mg/24 hours	Consider as a second line option. 2.5mg PO Max 10mg/24hrs.	Unlicensed but may be justified in some cases. 2.5mg PO Maximum 5mg/24hours
Promethazine oral solution, tablets & IM injection	Oral 2-3 hours IM 1-2 hours IV: NOT recommended	Not Applicable	Unlicensed: Only use as part of an individualised care plan PO or IM injection 10mg to 25mg Max 50mg/24hrs	PO 25mg or 50mg Max 100mg/24 hrs	Consider appropriateness, if confusion is a concern PO or IM injection 2.5mg. Max 50mg/24hrs	Not recommended. Use may be considered in those with compromised respiratory function or sensitive/tolerant to benzodiazepines. PO or IM injection 12.5mg or 25mg. Max 50mg/24hrs

Appendix A - Dose information for specific populations (not applicable to delirium)

Dose ranges highlighted as a guide only: remember to avoid variable dosing on kardex.

Medication	Time to Peak Plasma concentration	Child (6-12 years)	Young person (13 – 17)	Adults (18 +)	Older and Frail People	People with Dementia
Aripiprazole IM injection	1 –3 hours	Not Applicable	Not Applicable	9.75mg (1.3ml) – Consider lower dose (5.25mg) on basis of clinical status Effective range 5.25 –15mg Max dose 30mg/24hrs by any route	<i>Effectiveness in over 65's not established. Consider lower doses on basis of clinical status.</i> Consider starting dose 5.25mg Max of TWO injection in 24 hours.	Not Recommended
Olanzapine IM injection	15-45 minutes (peak levels up to 5 times that of oral doses)	Not Applicable	<i>Unlicensed but may be justified in some cases under consultant direction.</i> 2.5mg, 5mg or 10mg IM repeated after 2 hours if needed. Max of 3 injections/ 24hrs for 3 days Max IM dose is 10mg daily. Max total daily dose by all routes of 20mg not to be exceeded.	5 or 10mg IM repeated after 2 hours if needed. Max of 3 injections/24hrs for 3 days. Max combined oral/IM dose is 20mg daily NOT to be exceeded.	<i>Use may be justified in some cases under consultant direction.</i> 2.5mg IM repeated after 2 hours if needed. Max of 3 injections/24hrs for 3 days Max combined oral/IM dose is 10mg daily NOT to be exceeded.	Not recommended. <i>Use only in very exceptional circumstances and under advice of senior doctors with experience in dementia. Consider licensed oral risperidone as an alternative</i> 2.5mg IM repeated after 2 hours if needed. Max of 2 injections/24hrs for 3 days Max combined oral/IM dose is 5mg daily NOT to be exceeded.
Quetiapine Oral tablets/Solution	1-2 hours	Not Applicable	Not Applicable	<i>Unlicensed but may be justified in some cases.</i> PO 50-100mg (suggested max 200mg/24hours)	<i>Unlicensed but may be justified in some cases.</i> PO 12.5mg or 25mg (suggested Max 50mg/24hrs)	<i>Unlicensed but may be justified in some cases such as Lewy Body Dementia</i> PO 12.5mg or 25mg (suggested max 50mg/24hrs)
Risperidone tablets / orodispersible tablets/ oral solution	1-2 hours	Not Applicable	20-45kg 0.5mg, Very slow increase to Max 2.5mg >45kg 0.5mg. Very slow increase to Max 3mg	<i>Unlicensed but may be justified in some cases.</i> Suggested dose PO 1-2mg BD PRN Max 4mg/24hours	<i>Consider as a second line option. Unlicensed but may be justified in some cases.</i> Suggested dose PO 0.25mg once or twice daily PRN. Max 2mg/24hours	<i>In Alzheimer's Disease</i> Suggested dose PO 0.25mg once or twice daily PRN. Max 2mg/24 hours

Summary

- Haloperidol combined with promethazine or lorazepam on its own are possible first line treatments.
- IM Promethazine may reduce induced movement disorders
- IM Lorazepam is the safest with
 - Unknown History
 - No previous antipsychotic use

After Rapid Tranquilisation

- Consider a post incident debrief
- Review current treatment
 - Consider effectiveness of current regimen
 - Consider change of regular antipsychotic
 - Consider depot if concerned about adherence
 - Consider augmentation strategies
 - Consider non-pharmacological treatments

POST RT OBSERVATIONS

Post RT Observations

- Observations **MUST** be attempted after any IM medication has been administered
- Obs only needed after oral meds if clinically indicated.
- If obs are refused this must be recorded
- Complete and record any line of sight obs that can be done e.g. respiratory rate.

Non-Contact ABCDE Assessment Tool

Ensure that observations are repeated every 15mins for 1 hours post intramuscular injections

<p>Utilise the ABCDE guidance below to assess the patient and document in the table below</p>	<p>Use addressograph or write in CAPITAL LETTERS</p> <p>Surname:</p> <p>First names:</p> <p>H&C number:</p> <p>DOB: Check Identity</p>
<p>If any RED box statements are true the patient MUST be escalated to an doctor and a full ABCDE assessment should be undertaken.</p> <p>Medical team/999 MUST be contacted if required. DO NOT leave the patient.</p>	

Airway	Talking (not just moan and groans) Airway clear- including when asleep
Breathing	Breathing is quiet and regular Respiratory rate 12-10 breaths per minute
Circulation	Mobility normal for the patient Presenting as normal If asleep, monitor movement Warm skin, normal colour for patient Comfortable presentation
Disability	Alert Drinking and eating as normal Active
Exposure	No signs of injury, bruising, bleeding or rashes.

Airway	Airway obstructed? Silence? Coughing? Swelling? Gurgling? If awake can they speak(not just moans and groans) Risk of vomiting? Consider moving onto their side and carry out constant observations to prevent choking/aspiration if there is a risk of vomiting
Breathing	Noisy or difficult breathing even with open airway Respiratory rate less than 12 or more than 20 breaths per minute Shallow rapid breathing pattern Struggling to breath (using additional muscles and working hard) Abnormal breathing sounds? Stridor? Wheeze? Gurgling? Consider asthma, COPD, intoxication and has rapid tranquilisation been used?
Circulation	Change in ability to mobilise Flushed? Pale? Sweaty? Clammy? Mottled? (purplish discolouration to skin) Central cyanosis (blue tinge to lips, tip of nose or ear lobes) Ashen (grey discolouration to skin) Trauma/significant bleeding
Disability	Unresponsive Unexpected sleepiness, drowsiness, confusion or fitting Responsive to voice, pain or unresponsive Consider diabetes or epilepsy
Exposure	Abnormal shuffling or unsteady gait Muscle rigidity THINK NMS Signs of dehydration: dry cracked lips not passing urine. Signs of physical injury/bleeding/rash Signs of infection: THINK SEPSIS



Observation and monitoring

[Appendix F](#)

Rapid tranquillisation Monitoring

Following any IM/IV drug administered for RT, or where considered clinically necessary after oral medication, monitor and record as shown below.
Document and record on the Trust Standard Observation Chart (SOC) e.g. NEWS 2 or clinical notes as appropriate.

The Early Warning Score should be calculated from the Trust Standard Observations Chart e.g. NEWS 2 each time and further action taken if indicated

Observations	Monitoring Frequency	General Comments
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Respiratory Rate • SaO2 (if appropriate) • Pulse • Blood Pressure • Temperature • Level of Consciousness • Assess for Side effects • Monitor level of hydration 	Every 15 minutes for first hour. After one hour, continue observations at least hourly until there are no further concerns about physical health status.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Arrange medical review of the patient after administration of IM medication • Protection of the airway is paramount • Ensure adequate levels of hydration are maintained • Consider urgent transfer to an Emergency Department if not already in ED, if condition warrants • Pay particular attention to level of consciousness and blood pressure when IM antipsychotics and IM benzodiazepines are used in combination. • An ECG is recommended when antipsychotics, in particular when haloperidol or higher doses are given. • An ECG is essential after IM antipsychotics are administered to Young People.
	<p>Action when Observations are not possible</p> <p>The Non-Contact Physical Health Observations Guidance and Assessment tool (Appendix F) should be used. Record if the patient's mental state or behaviour prevents observations. Complete and record any observations possible, in Trust Standard Observational Chart e.g. NEWS 2.</p>	

Managing Side effects

Management of side effects and problems that can occur during and after rapid tranquillisation (RT) (and occasionally during and after oral pharmacological de-escalation)

Problem	Remedial Measures
Acute Dystonia (including oculogyric crises, torticollis) <i>NB: 10% prevalence, more common in young males, neuroleptic naïve, high potency drugs e.g. haloperidol</i>	Give procyclidine 5 - 10mg Orally or IM (IV in ED Departments only) NOTE Do not pre-emptively administer procyclidine when IM haloperidol is combined with IM promethazine as the risk of extrapyramidal side effects (EPSE) is significantly reduced by the promethazine. If EPSE do occur after the IM haloperidol/promethazine combination, administer additional procyclidine with caution. Monitor for increased anticholinergic side effects.
Reduced respiratory rate <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <10/minute or Oxygen saturation <92% (Note: COPD patients may have a lower baseline SPO₂) 	Give oxygen; ensure patient is not lying face down. If induced by any agent other than a benzodiazepine the patient will require transfer for mechanical ventilation If benzodiazepine induced: Give flumazenil 200microgram IV over 15 seconds. If desired level of consciousness is not obtained within 60 seconds, a further 100microgram can be injected and repeated at 60 second intervals to a maximum total dose of 1mg (1000microgram) in 24 hours (initial + 8 additional doses). Monitor respiration rate continuously until it returns to baseline level. The effect of flumazenil may wear-off & respiratory depression return – monitoring must continue beyond initial recovery of respiration. Clinicians should be familiar with the use of flumazenil or if being considered on a psychiatric ward, it should be used with input from general clinicians. Additional information is available from Medusa (see local Trust for details), on the treatment of benzodiazepine poisoning and flumazenil should be administered in this context. <i>Do not use flumazenil if the patient has a history of epilepsy; co-ingested pro-convulsants including tricyclic antidepressant; or in benzodiazepine dependent patients. These patients will require transfer for mechanical ventilation, maintain airway management until transfer.</i>
Irregular or slow pulse <50 beats/min	Refer to specialist medical care immediately.
Fall in blood pressure > 30mmHg drop in systolic BP on standing or diastolic BP <50mmHg	Lie patient flat, raise legs if possible. Monitor closely and seek further medical advice if necessary.
Increased temperature	Withhold antipsychotics –risk of NMS or perhaps arrhythmias. Monitor closely, cool the patient, maintain hydration and check muscle creatinine kinase. Refer to specialist medical care if continued or other signs of NMS present e.g. sweating, hypertension or fluctuating BP, tachycardia, incontinence (retention/obstruction), muscular rigidity (may be confined to head and neck), confusion, agitation or loss of consciousness.
Akathisia	Review antipsychotic choice, consider propranolol 30-80mg/day pm in 2-3 divided doses (caution with asthma, bradycardia hypotension) or benzodiazepines e.g. diazepam 5-15mg/day pm in divided doses

Psychiatry Induction

Prescribing and Medication in Psychiatry



Rapid Tranquillisation

Regional RT Policy incorporating NICE NG 10
– Violence and Aggression



Aim of Presentation

- To raise awareness of the Regional Rapid Tranquillisation (RT) guideline

Objectives

At the end of this presentation you should be able to:

- Describe what is and what isn't RT
- Describe the main pharmacological options for RT based on NICE NG10
- Describe where Regional Policy Deviates from NG10
- Describe key safety issues with haloperidol and promethazine
- Describe the monitoring required after RT

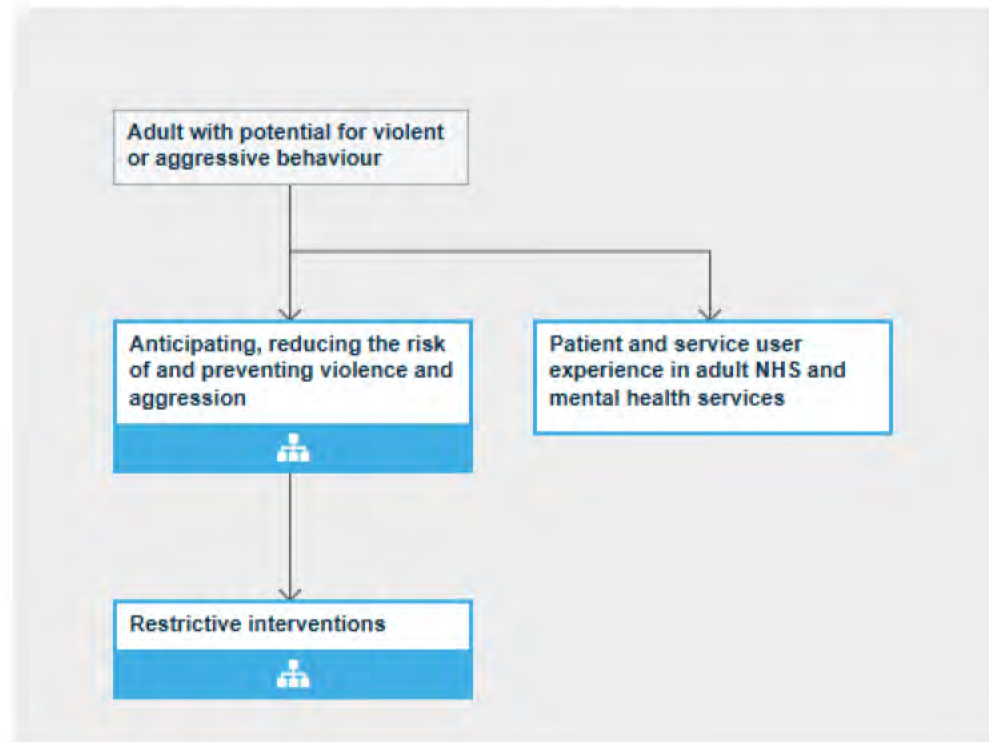
NG10 Key recommendations

- Principles for managing violence and aggression
- Anticipating and reducing the risk of violence and aggression
- Preventing violence and aggression
- Using restrictive interventions in inpatient psychiatric settings
- Managing violence and aggression in emergency departments
- Managing violence and aggression in community and primary care settings

NICE Pathway for NG10

- <https://pathways.nice.org.uk/pathways/violence-and-aggression>

Managing violence and aggression in adults



Rapid Tranq - definition

- NG 10 defines RT as

“Use of medication by the parenteral route (usually intramuscular or, exceptionally, intravenous) if oral medication is not possible or appropriate and urgent sedation with medication is needed.”

NG 10 – Oral medication - PRN

- Oral PRN not included in NICE NG 10
 - Oral is not considered to be RT
- However,
 - Oral PRN may be part of de-escalation plan
 - Oral PRN on its own is not de-escalation

NG 10 – Oral medication – PRN

MAHI – STM – 122 – 743

- To guide staff, Regional Policy offers oral PRN options as part of a de-escalation strategy
- There should be
 - Clarity about indication for oral PRN
 - Clarity about 1st and 2nd line choices
- Tailor PRN to individual circumstances – involve patient in discussion
- Avoid doses over BNF max dose

Rapid Tranquillisation

- Part of the Restrictive Intervention Policy
- Policy on Trust Intranet (search “Rapid”) – read as part of training
- Significant risks are associated with RT
- Risks with RT may be additive to those with physical restraint
- Post RT observation and documentation are essential

Options with disturbed patient

- De-escalation techniques – talking down
- Seclusion
- Regular medication – review effectiveness
- Oral PRN – as part of a de-escalation strategy
- Rapid Tranquillisation – use of IM medication

The risk of harm increases going down the list – use the option consistent with the level of risk

Things to Consider

- Patient age – use appropriate flow chart
- Separate Flow charts for
 - Children and Young People 6 to 17 yrs
 - Adults over 18yrs
 - Older and Frail Adults
 - People with dementia
- NOTE – RT Guide is not for Dementia or Alcohol withdrawal – use appropriate pathways

Oral versus Intramuscular

- Patients must be offered the chance to accept oral treatment unless
 - The team has agreed the risks are disproportionate
- Risks are increased with IM medication
- Oral and IM doses are not necessarily equivalent

IM injection risks

- Small risk of Inadvertent IV or IA injection
 - Might explain the small number of historic deaths during RT - a bolus dose is inadvertently given
- Needle stick injury – patient and staff
- Needle detaching from syringe
- Enhanced effect in struggling patient
 - activated sympathetic system
 - increased muscle blood flow

Lorazepam - Problems

- Risk of over sedation/loss of consciousness
- Risk of respiratory depression or arrest
 - Caution when used along with restraint
- Paradoxical reactions – increased agitation
- Caution with IM olanzapine
 - Increased risk of respiratory/cardiovascular collapse when given together
 - Separate doses by at least one hour

Haloperidol – possible first line

- Oral dose 5 -10mg – max dose 20mg/24hr
- IM dose 5 -10mg – max dose 20mg/24hr
- Onset within 30-45 mins
 - may be repeated after 45 minutes
- 5mg IM is equivalent to 8 -10mg orally
 - reduce dose if repeated injections are given.
- Give IM haloperidol and IM promethazine together (NICE NG10)

Haloperidol - problems

- Risk of dystonic reactions
- Risk of cardiac arrhythmias, especially QTc prolongation.
- Avoid if no recent ECG or there is evidence of cardiac disease
- Risk of over sedation

IM Promethazine - give with IM haloperidol

MAHI - STM - 122 - 754

- Sedative antihistamine & anticholinergic
 - Enhanced sedative effect
 - Reduces haloperidol induced EPSE
- IM Dose 25 - 50mg. Max dose 100mg/24hrs
- Allow 1-2 hrs for response before repeat
- Avoid if MAOIs used in last 14 days
- Avoid if suffering from CNS depression
 - e.g. alcohol intoxication

IM Promethazine – problems

- Significant anticholinergic effects
 - Enhances effects of anticholinergics drugs
- Considering omitting IM promethazine in older people or people with dementia

Why are common treatments omitted from NG 10

MAHI - STM - 122 - 756

- Haloperidol combined with lorazepam
 - no evidence it is more effective than lorazepam alone
- Rapid Acting Olanzapine IM
 - not marketed in UK – (unlicensed import available)
- Rapid Acting Aripiprazole IM
 - insufficient evidence for NICE to make a recommendation
- Acuphase
 - Not rapid acting
 - unfavourable Cochrane review

Antipsychotics - olanzapine

- Oral olanzapine 10mg
- IM olanzapine 5-10mg
- Needs to be reconstituted
- In RT max dose is 20mg/day by any route
- Injection may be repeated after at least 2 hrs
- Do not use with 1hr of IM lorazepam – increased risk of respiratory and circulatory collapse
- Risk of over sedation
- Reserve for Level 3 or Individual Care Plan

Antipsychotics - aripiprazole

- IM aripiprazole 9.75mg (1.3ml)
- Max dose 30mg by any route
- Injection may be repeated after at least 2 hrs
- Reserve for when haloperidol and olanzapine are unsuitable
- Risk of over sedation
- Reserve for Level 3 or Individual Care Plan

Clopixol Acuphase

- Not recommended for RT due to slow onset and prolonged duration of action
- Do not use in struggling patient (?risk of IV/IA injection)
- Do not use in the antipsychotic naïve
- Do not repeat doses within 24hrs
- No such thing as a “course”!
- May have a role in an individual care plan for patients with prolonged periods of disturbed behaviour

Its not in NG10 – can it be used?

- Yes –if they are suitable for the patient
- Should be part of an Individualised care plan
- Consider when
 - Inadequate response to Level 2 interventions
 - Contra-indications to haloperidol or lorazepam

Other Options

- Haloperidol combined with lorazepam
 - No clear evidence more effective than lorazepam on its own
 - Historically used
 - Increase risk of respiratory or circulatory collapse – careful monitoring
 - Doses as for individual drugs

Other Options

- Oral Promethazine

- Oral treatment is not considered by NICE
- BAP RT Guideline suggests oral promethazine is safe and effective in management of anxiety/agitation

ADULTS OVER 18YRS

(Not applicable to delirium, also consider using Appendix D for older adults and frail)

Pharmacological management should be part of an individualised care plan that includes appropriate nursing care and de-escalation techniques

LEVEL 1 Accepting oral meds and as part of de-escalation strategy	LEVEL 2 Actual or clear risk of violence or aggression. De-escalation including oral PRN not possible or appropriate	LEVEL 3 Situation rapidly deteriorating or failure to respond to LEVEL 2 interventions
<p>Consider combination of oral lorazepam with an oral antipsychotic if indicated by clinical circumstances. Consider moving to LEVEL 2 if oral therapy is refused or is not indicated by previous clinical response or is not a proportionate response.</p>	<p>Review all medication administered in the last 24 hours – be aware of BNF max doses. Ensure resuscitation equipment and emergency response is readily available within 3 minutes.</p>	<p>If Rapid Tranquillisation (LEVEL 2) is being used, a senior doctor must review all treatment and response every 24 hours.</p> <p>If one round of LEVEL 2 interventions have had insufficient effect a senior doctor should review treatment and consider the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The appropriateness of current placement • Age and physical presentation • Check sufficient time has been allowed for response • If there has been a partial response to a LEVEL 2 intervention, consider repeating that intervention • If a LEVEL 2 intervention has had insufficient effect consider offering the alternative LEVEL 2 intervention • Carry out a full review of treatment to date and seek a second opinion if needed.
<p>Consider lower doses in older adults or frail (Appendix A & D)</p>		
<p><u>Suggested Oral Medication</u> Lorazepam 1 or 2mg (Max 4mg/24hrs) OR Promethazine 25 or 50mg (Max 100mg/24hrs) OR Haloperidol 5mg (max 20mg/24hrs) OR Olanzapine 10mg ♦ (♦ Available as an orodispersible product) (Max 20mg/24hr)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p>Continue de-escalation strategy. If response is inadequate after 45 minutes, consider repeating oral therapy or moving to LEVEL 2</p> </div>	<p><u>Suggested Medication</u> Lorazepam IM (or IV)^a 1 or 2mg^{b, c} (Max 4mg/24hrs) OR Haloperidol IM 5mg (Max 20mg/24hrs) Combined with Promethazine IM 25 or 50mg (Max 100mg/24hrs)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p>If there is continued concern seek advice from a more senior doctor before proceeding further</p> <p>NOTES <i>a. IV in certain clinical settings. NOT recommended in elderly and frail and in mental health settings</i> <i>b. IM Lorazepam and IM Olanzapine must not be administered within 1 hour of each other</i> <i>c. IV flumazenil must be readily available</i></p> </div>	<p>If LEVEL 2 interventions have had insufficient effect</p> <p><u>Consider as part of an individualised care plan include:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Further repeats of LEVEL 2 interventions (do not repeat promethazine if it is < 2hrs since the last injection) • Haloperidol IM combined with Lorazepam IM • Alternative medications (see Section 10) • Zuclopenthixol acetate (Clopixol Acuphase®) (see Section 11)

When deciding which medication to use, consider: Additional Considerations

- | | |
|---|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Oral or parenteral lorazepam is preferred first line if: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> o Patient is an older adult or physically frail o There is an uncertain history o Presence of cardiovascular disease o Current illicit drug/alcohol intoxication o Antipsychotic naïve • Antipsychotics and/or promethazine preferred with: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> o Current regular benzodiazepine use | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Avoid antipsychotics, where possible, in patients with a parkinsonian syndrome (including idiopathic Parkinson's disease Parkinson's disease dementia and Dementia with Lewy Bodies) • Avoid haloperidol in cardiovascular disease or if there has been no recent ECG. • Pre-existing physical health problems (e.g. extra care in patients with eating disorders, physical frailty or comorbidity of any disorders that affect metabolism, including hypothermia, stress, extreme emotional response and post extreme physical exertion) or pregnancy. • Previous response, including adverse effects • Potential for interactions with other medicine • Possible Intoxication |
|---|--|

Pharmacological management should be part of an overall management plan that includes appropriate nursing care and de-escalation techniques

LEVEL 1 Accepting oral meds and as part of de-escalation strategy	MAHI - STMEVEL 2122 - 766 Actual or clear risk of violence or aggression. De-escalation including oral PRN not possible or appropriate	LEVEL 3 Situation rapidly deteriorating or failure to respond to Level 2 interventions
<p>Consider combination of oral lorazepam with an oral antipsychotic if indicated by clinical circumstances.</p> <p>Consider moving to LEVEL 2 if oral therapy is refused or is not indicated by previous clinical response or is not a proportionate response.</p> <p>Suggested Oral Medication</p> <p>Children 6-12 years Lorazepam 0.5 or 1mg (Max 4mg/24hrs)</p> <p>Young People 13-17 years Lorazepam 0.5mg, 1mg or 2mg (Max 4mg/24hrs)</p> <p>OR</p> <p>Haloperidol 1mg up to 5 mg★ (max 10mg/24hrs)</p> <p>OR</p> <p>Promethazine 10mg to 25mg (max 50mg/24hrs)</p> <p>OR</p> <p>Risperidone◆ 20kg-45kg 0.5mg(Slowly increase to Max 2.5mg/24hrs) >45kg 0.5mg (Slowly increase to Max3mg/24 hrs)</p> <p>◆ Available as an orodispersible product.</p>	<p>Consult a senior doctor/consultant before using IM medication in a child under 12 years of age.</p> <p>Consult a senior doctor/consultant before using IM medication in a young person (13-17 years) unless IM medication is already included in the young person's care plan.</p> <p>Check if an individual care plan recommends an approach not covered in this guideline.</p> <p>Review all medication administered in the last 24 hours – be aware of BNF max doses.</p> <p>Ensure resuscitation equipment and emergency bag is available within 3 minutes.</p> <p>Suggested IM Medication</p> <p>Children 6-12 years Lorazepam IM0.5 or 1mg (Max 4mg/24hrs)</p> <p>Young People 13 -17 years Lorazepam IM0.5mg, 1mg or 2mg (Max 4mg/24hrs)</p> <p>For both age groups: If there is continued concern, seek advice from a more senior doctor/consultant before proceeding</p>	<p>If Rapid Tranquillisation (LEVEL 2) is being used, a senior doctor/consultant must review all treatment and response every 24 hours.</p> <p>If one round of LEVEL 2 interventions have had insufficient effect a senior doctor/consultant should review treatment and consider the following options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The appropriateness of current placement • Check sufficient time has been allowed for response • If there has been a partial response to lorazepam consider repeating the dose • Carry out a full review and seek a second opinion if needed. <p>If there has been insufficient response to IM lorazepam:</p> <p>Consider as part of an individualised care plan include (in no particular order)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Further repeats of IM lorazepam • ≥13yrs, Haloperidol IM 1 - 5mg★ (Max 10mg/24hrs) • ≥13yrs, Haloperidol IM combined with lorazepam IM • ≥13yrs, Promethazine IM (10 to 25mg, Max 50mg/24hrs) • ≥13yrs, Olanzapine 2.5mg, 5mg or 10mg (Max 10mg/24hrs IM). Do not combine with IM lorazepam and use with caution if IM lorazepam has been given within 1 hour

When deciding which medication to use, consider:

- Oral or parenteral lorazepam is preferred first line if:
 - There is an uncertain history
 - Presence of cardiovascular disease
 - Current illicit drug/alcohol intoxication
 - Antipsychotic naive
- Antipsychotics may be preferred with:
 - Current regular benzodiazepine use
 - History of respiratory depression

Additional Considerations

- Avoid haloperidol in cardiovascular disease or if there has been no recent ECG.
 - Pre-existing physical health problems (e.g. extra care in patients with eating disorders, physical frailty or comorbidity of any disorders that affect metabolism, including hypothermia, stress, extreme emotional response and post extreme physical exertion) or pregnancy
 - Previous response, including adverse effects
 - Potential for interactions with other medicine
 - Possible Intoxication
 - Promethazine is contraindicated in CNS depression.
- ★ Dosing for haloperidol should be a fixed dose in the range from 1mg to a max of 5mg. Please consider the available strengths of oral haloperidol 0.5mg, 1.5mg or 5mg to facilitate ease of administration; e.g. 1.5mg is easier to administer than 2mg

ALL OPTIONS SUMMARY

Appendix A - Dose information for specific populations (Not applicable to delirium)

MAHI - STM - 122 - 768

Dose ranges highlighted as a guide only: remember to avoid variable dosing on kardex.

Medication	Time to Peak Plasma concentration	Child (6-12 years)	Young person (13-17)	Adults (18+)	Older and Frail People	People with Dementia
Haloperidol oral solution and tablets If no recent ECG, consider risk/benefits as use may be unlicensed.	2 – 6 hours (Sedation usually within 30-45 mins)	Not Applicable	Consider risk of acute dystonia especially in the antipsychotic naïve PO 1mg up to 5mg Max 10mg/24hrs	PO 5mg Max 20mg/24 hours	Only use first line if there is confirmed history of previous exposure to typical antipsychotics. Start with lower doses. PO 0.5mg up to 2.5mg (Usual Max 5mg/24hrs.)	Not recommended. Use only in very exceptional circumstances and under advice of senior doctors with experience in dementia. Consider licensed oral risperidone as an alternative PO 0.5mg (Max 2mg/24hrs)
Haloperidol injection If no recent ECG, consider risk/benefits as use may be unlicensed.	IM 15 – 60 mins (Sedation usually within 30 – 45 mins) IV: 10 mins	Not Applicable	Unlicensed: Only use as part of an individualised care plan. Consider risk of acute dystonia especially in the antipsychotic naïve IM injection 1mg up to 5mg Max 10mg/24hrs	By IM/IV injection 5mg Max 20mg/24 hours	Only use first line if there is confirmed history of previous exposure to typical antipsychotics. Start with lower doses IM 0.5mg up to 2.5mg (Max 5mg/24hrs)	Not recommended. Use only in very exceptional circumstances and under advice of senior doctors with experience in dementia. Consider licensed oral risperidone as an alternative IM 0.5mg (Max 2mg/24hrs)
Lorazepam tablets and IM/IV injection	PO/IM 50-90 mins (Sedation usually within 30-45 mins) IV: 2-5mins	Unlicensed but may be justified in some cases PO or by IM injection 0.5 or 1mg Max 4mg/24hrs	PO or IM injection 0.5mg, 1mg or 2mg Max 4mg/24hrs	PO or IM/IV injection 1mg or 2mg Max 4mg/24 hours	PO or IM injection 0.5mg Max 2mg/24 hours (IV route NOT recommended)	PO or IM injection 0.5mg Max 2mg/24 hours (IV route NOT recommended)
Olanzapine tablets/ orodispersible tablets <i>(NB orodispersible tablets have no advantage in speed of onset but are harder to spit out/conceal)</i>	5 – 8 hours	Not Applicable	Not Applicable	Initially 5mg or 10mg PO Max 20mg/24 hours	Consider as a second line option. 2.5mg PO Max 10mg/24hrs.	Unlicensed but may be justified in some cases. 2.5mg PO Maximum 5mg/24hours
Promethazine oral solution, tablets & IM injection	Oral 2-3 hours IM 1-2 hours IV: NOT recommended	Not Applicable	Unlicensed: Only use as part of an individualised care plan PO or IM injection 10mg to 25mg Max 50mg/24hrs	PO 25mg or 50mg Max 100mg/24 hrs	Consider appropriateness, if confusion is a concern PO or IM injection 2.5mg. Max 50mg/24hrs	Not recommended. Use may be considered in those with compromised respiratory function or sensitive/tolerant to benzodiazepines. PO or IM injection 12.5mg or 25mg. Max 50mg/24hrs

Appendix A - Dose information for specific populations (not applicable to delirium)

Dose ranges highlighted as a guide only: remember to avoid variable dosing on kardex.

Medication	Time to Peak Plasma concentration	Child (6-12 years)	Young person (13 – 17)	Adults (18 +)	Older and Frail People	People with Dementia
Aripiprazole IM injection	1 –3 hours	Not Applicable	Not Applicable	9.75mg (1.3ml) – Consider lower dose (5.25mg) on basis of clinical status Effective range 5.25 –15mg Max dose 30mg/24hrs by any route	<i>Effectiveness in over 65's not established. Consider lower doses on basis of clinical status.</i> Consider starting dose 5.25mg Max of TWO injection in 24 hours.	Not Recommended
Olanzapine IM injection	15-45 minutes (peak levels up to 5 times that of oral doses)	Not Applicable	<i>Unlicensed but may be justified in some cases under consultant direction.</i> 2.5mg, 5mg or 10mg IM repeated after 2 hours if needed. Max of 3 injections/ 24hrs for 3 days Max IM dose is 10mg daily. Max total daily dose by all routes of 20mg not to be exceeded.	<i>Unlicensed but may be justified in some cases.</i> 5 or 10mg IM repeated after 2 hours if needed. Max of 3 injections/24hrs for 3 days. Max combined oral/IM dose is 20mg daily NOT to be exceeded.	<i>Use may be justified in some cases under consultant direction.</i> 2.5mg IM repeated after 2 hours if needed. Max of 3 injections/24hrs for 3 days Max combined oral/IM dose is 10mg daily NOT to be exceeded.	Not recommended. <i>Use only in very exceptional circumstances and under advice of senior doctors with experience in dementia. Consider licensed oral risperidone as an alternative</i> 2.5mg IM repeated after 2 hours if needed. Max of 2 injections/24hrs for 3 days Max combined oral/IM dose is 5mg daily NOT to be exceeded.
Quetiapine Oral tablets/Solution	1-2 hours	Not Applicable	Not Applicable	<i>Unlicensed but may be justified in some cases.</i> PO 50-100mg (suggested max 200mg/24hours)	<i>Unlicensed but may be justified in some cases.</i> PO 12.5mg or 25mg (suggested Max 50mg/24hrs)	<i>Unlicensed but may be justified in some cases such as Lewy Body Dementia</i> PO 12.5mg or 25mg (suggested max 50mg/24hrs)
Risperidone tablets / orodispersible tablets/ oral solution	1-2 hours	Not Applicable	20-45kg 0.5mg, Very slow increase to Max 2.5mg >45kg 0.5mg. Very slow increase to Max 3mg	<i>Unlicensed but may be justified in some cases.</i> Suggested dose PO 1-2mg BD PRN Max 4mg/24hours	<i>Consider as a second line option. Unlicensed but may be justified in some cases.</i> Suggested dose PO 0.25mg once or twice daily PRN. Max 2mg/24hours	In Alzheimer's Disease Suggested dose PO 0.25mg once or twice daily PRN. Max 2mg/24 hours

Summary

- Haloperidol combined with promethazine or lorazepam on its own are possible first line treatments.
- IM Promethazine may reduce induced movement disorders
- IM Lorazepam is the safest with
 - Unknown History
 - No previous antipsychotic use

After Rapid Tranquilisation

- Consider a post incident debrief
- Review current treatment
 - Consider effectiveness of current regimen
 - Consider change of regular antipsychotic
 - Consider depot if concerned about adherence
 - Consider augmentation strategies
 - Consider non-pharmacological treatments

POST RT OBSERVATIONS

Post RT Observations

- Observations **MUST** be attempted after any IM medication has been administered
- Obs only needed after oral meds if clinically indicated.
- If obs are refused this must be recorded
- Complete and record any line of sight obs that can be done e.g. respiratory rate.

Non-Contact ABCDE Assessment Tool

Ensure that observations are repeated every 15mins for 1 hours post intramuscular injections

<p>Utilise the ABCDE guidance below to assess the patient and document in the table below</p>	<p>Use addressograph or write in CAPITAL LETTERS</p> <p>Surname:</p> <p>First names:</p> <p>H&C number:</p> <p>DOB: Check Identity</p>
<p>If any RED box statements are true the patient MUST be escalated to an doctor and a full ABCDE assessment should be undertaken.</p> <p>Medical team/999 MUST be contacted if required. DO NOT leave the patient.</p>	

Airway	Talking (not just moan and groans) Airway clear- including when asleep
Breathing	Breathing is quiet and regular Respiratory rate 12-10 breaths per minute
Circulation	Mobility normal for the patient Presenting as normal If asleep, monitor movement Warm skin, normal colour for patient Comfortable presentation
Disability	Alert Drinking and eating as normal Active
Exposure	No signs of injury, bruising, bleeding or rashes.

Airway	Airway obstructed? Silence? Coughing? Swelling? Gurgling? If awake can they speak(not just moans and groans) Risk of vomiting? Consider moving onto their side and carry out constant observations to prevent choking/aspiration if there is a risk of vomiting
Breathing	Noisy or difficult breathing even with open airway Respiratory rate less than 12 or more than 20 breaths per minute Shallow rapid breathing pattern Struggling to breath (using additional muscles and working hard) Abnormal breathing sounds? Stridor? Wheeze? Gurgling? Consider asthma, COPD, intoxication and has rapid tranquilisation been used?
Circulation	Change in ability to mobilise Flushed? Pale? Sweaty? Clammy? Mottled? (purplish discolouration to skin) Central cyanosis (blue tinge to lips, tip of nose or ear lobes) Ashen (grey discolouration to skin) Trauma/significant bleeding
Disability	Unresponsive Unexpected sleepiness, drowsiness, confusion or fitting Responsive to voice, pain or unresponsive Consider diabetes or epilepsy
Exposure	Abnormal shuffling or unsteady gait Muscle rigidity THINK NMS Signs of dehydration: dry cracked lips not passing urine. Signs of physical injury/bleeding/rash Signs of infection: THINK SEPSIS



Observation and monitoring

[Appendix F](#)

Rapid tranquillisation Monitoring

Following any IM/IV drug administered for RT, or where considered clinically necessary after oral medication, monitor and record as shown below.
Document and record on the Trust Standard Observation Chart (SOC) e.g. NEWS 2 or clinical notes as appropriate.

The Early Warning Score should be calculated from the Trust Standard Observations Chart e.g. NEWS 2 each time and further action taken if indicated

Observations	Monitoring Frequency	General Comments
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Respiratory Rate • SaO2 (if appropriate) • Pulse • Blood Pressure • Temperature • Level of Consciousness • Assess for Side effects • Monitor level of hydration 	<p>Every 15 minutes for first hour. After one hour, continue observations at least hourly until there are no further concerns about physical health status.</p> <hr/> <p>Action when Observations are not possible</p> <p>The Non-Contact Physical Health Observations Guidance and Assessment tool (Appendix F) should be used. Record if the patient's mental state or behaviour prevents observations. Complete and record any observations possible, in Trust Standard Observational Chart e.g. NEWS 2.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Arrange medical review of the patient after administration of IM medication • Protection of the airway is paramount • Ensure adequate levels of hydration are maintained • Consider urgent transfer to an Emergency Department if not already in ED, if condition warrants • Pay particular attention to level of consciousness and blood pressure when IM antipsychotics and IM benzodiazepines are used in combination. • An ECG is recommended when antipsychotics, in particular when haloperidol or higher doses are given. • An ECG is essential after IM antipsychotics are administered to Young People.

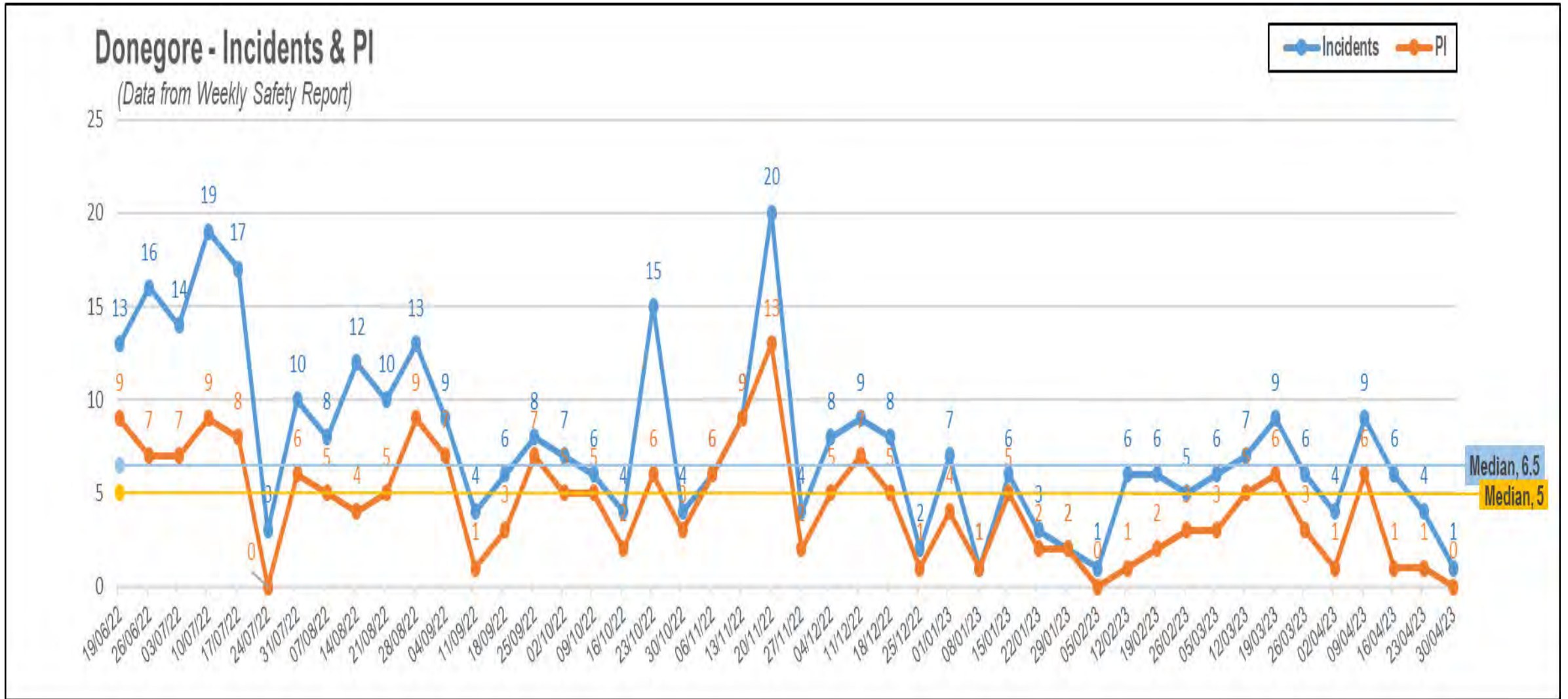
Managing Side effects

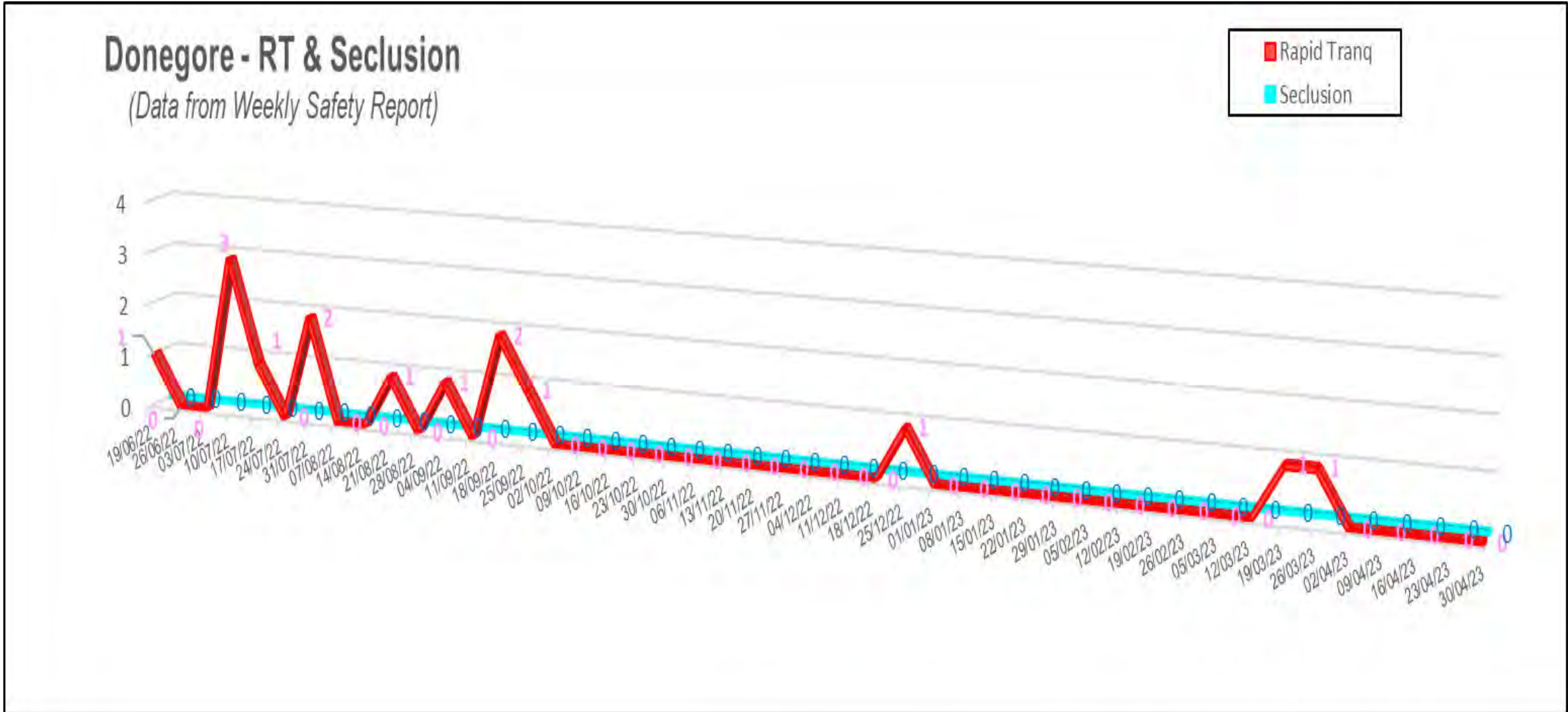
Management of side effects and problems that can occur during and after rapid tranquillisation (RT) (and occasionally during and after oral pharmacological de-escalation)

Problem	Remedial Measures
Acute Dystonia (including oculogyric crises, torticollis) <i>NB: 10% prevalence, more common in young males, neuroleptic naïve, high potency drugs e.g. haloperidol</i>	Give procyclidine 5 - 10mg Orally or IM (IV in ED Departments only) NOTE Do not pre-emptively administer procyclidine when IM haloperidol is combined with IM promethazine as the risk of extrapyramidal side effects (EPSE) is significantly reduced by the promethazine. If EPSE do occur after the IM haloperidol/promethazine combination, administer additional procyclidine with caution. Monitor for increased anticholinergic side effects.
Reduced respiratory rate <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <10/minute or Oxygen saturation <92% (Note: COPD patients may have a lower baseline SPO₂) 	Give oxygen; ensure patient is not lying face down. If induced by any agent other than a benzodiazepine the patient will require transfer for mechanical ventilation If benzodiazepine induced: Give flumazenil 200microgram IV over 15 seconds. If desired level of consciousness is not obtained within 60 seconds, a further 100microgram can be injected and repeated at 60 second intervals to a maximum total dose of 1mg (1000microgram) in 24 hours (initial + 8 additional doses). Monitor respiration rate continuously until it returns to baseline level. The effect of flumazenil may wear-off & respiratory depression return – monitoring must continue beyond initial recovery of respiration. Clinicians should be familiar with the use of flumazenil or if being considered on a psychiatric ward, it should be used with input from general clinicians. Additional information is available from Medusa (see local Trust for details), on the treatment of benzodiazepine poisoning and flumazenil should be administered in this context. <i>Do not use flumazenil if the patient has a history of epilepsy; co-ingested pro-convulsants including tricyclic antidepressant; or in benzodiazepine dependent patients. These patients will require transfer for mechanical ventilation, maintain airway management until transfer.</i>
Irregular or slow pulse <50 beats/min	Refer to specialist medical care immediately.
Fall in blood pressure > 30mmHg drop in systolic BP on standing or diastolic BP <50mmHg	Lie patient flat, raise legs if possible. Monitor closely and seek further medical advice if necessary.
Increased temperature	Withhold antipsychotics –risk of NMS or perhaps arrhythmias. Monitor closely, cool the patient, maintain hydration and check muscle creatinine kinase. Refer to specialist medical care if continued or other signs of NMS present e.g. sweating, hypertension or fluctuating BP, tachycardia, incontinence (retention/obstruction), muscular rigidity (may be confined to head and neck), confusion, agitation or loss of consciousness.
Akathisia	Review antipsychotic choice, consider propranolol 30-80mg/day pm in 2-3 divided doses (caution with asthma, bradycardia hypotension) or benzodiazepines e.g. diazepam 5-15mg/day pm in divided doses

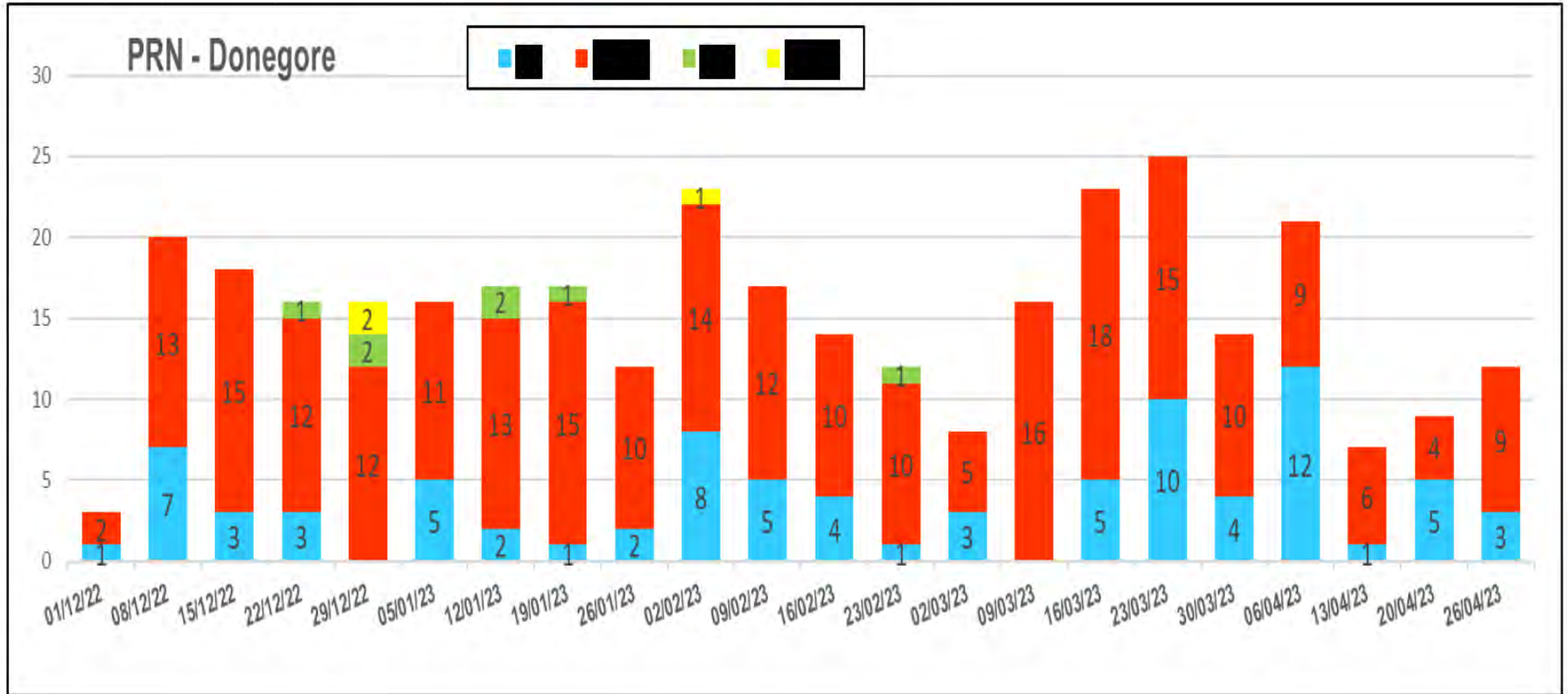
Datasets for Clinical Improvement

Donegore
@02/05/23





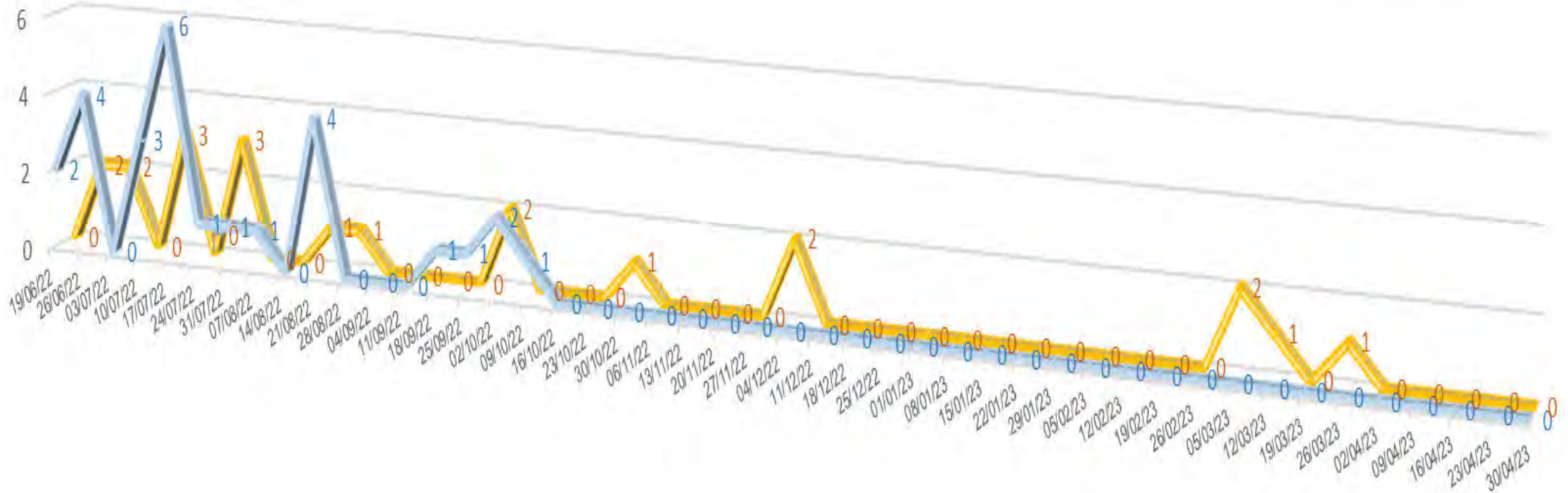
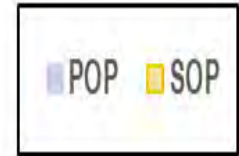
MAHI - STM - 122 - 780

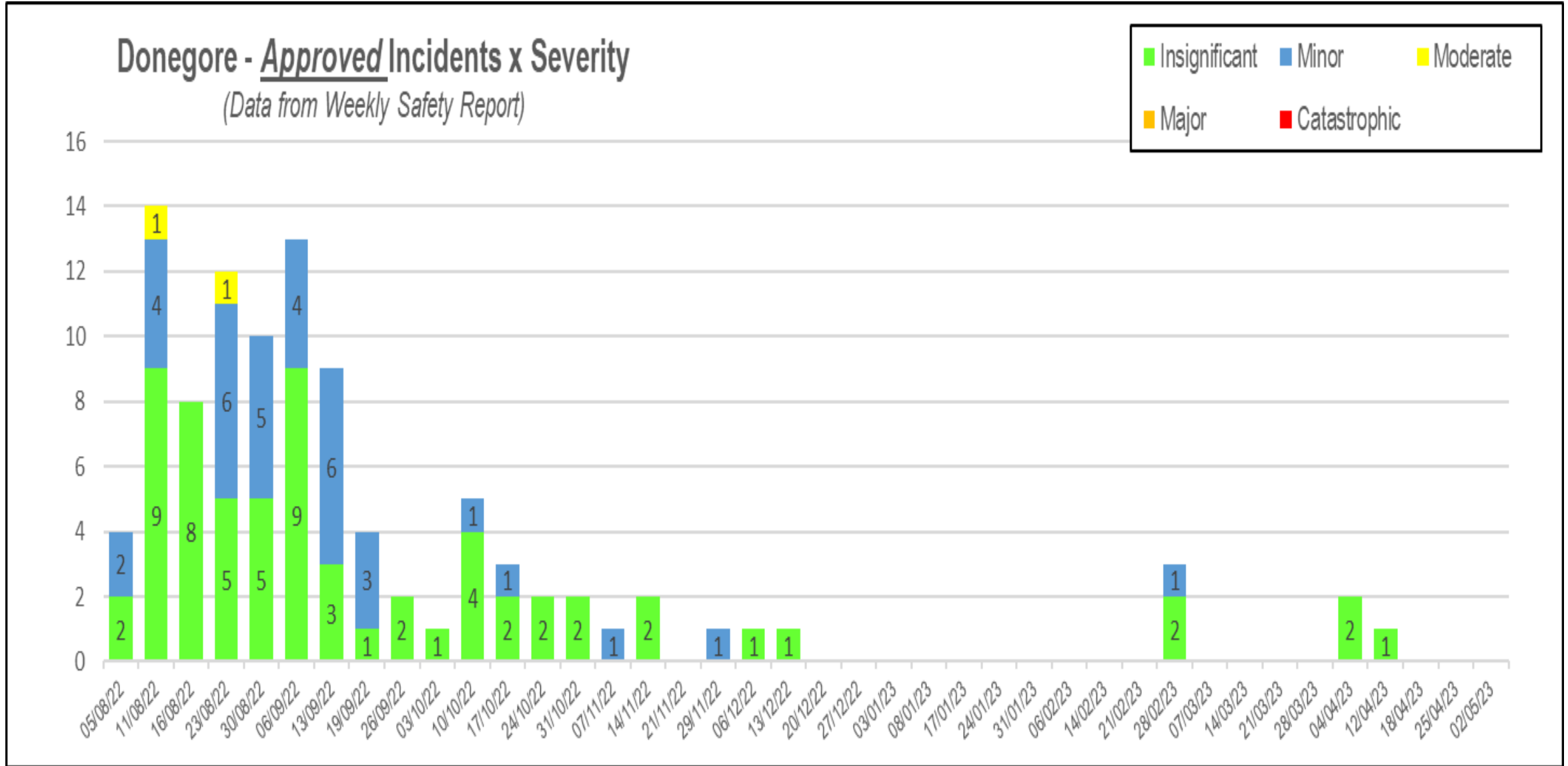


Donegore - Patient Incidents (Data from Week Safety Reports)



Donegore - ASG referrals
(Data from Weekly Safety Report)

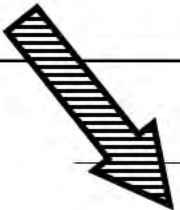
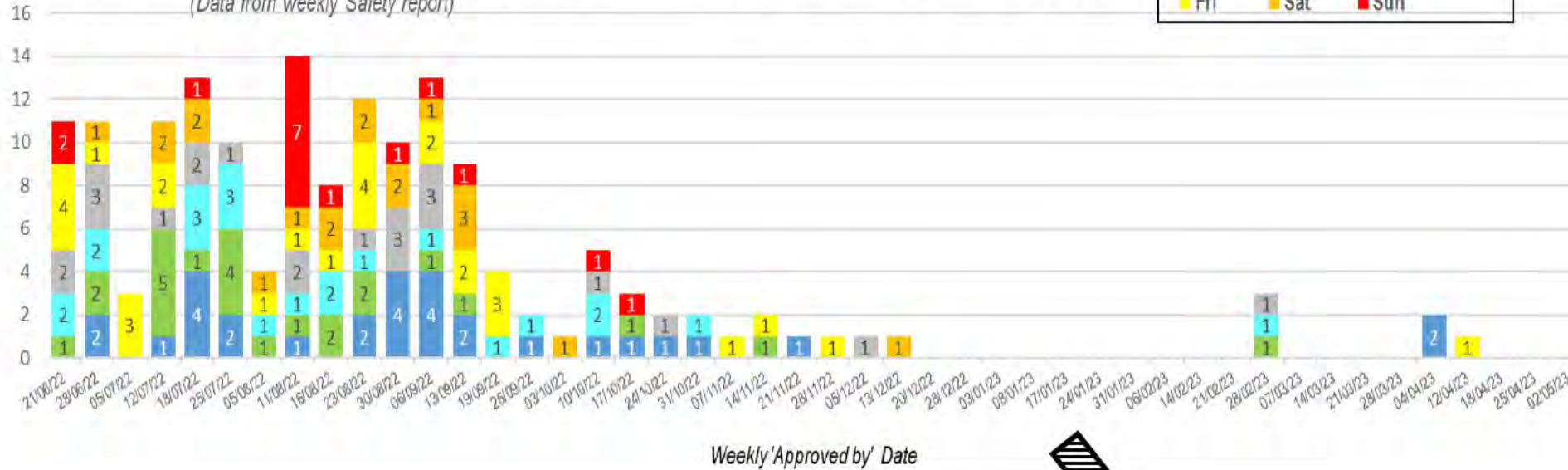
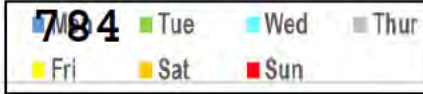




Donegore - Approved Incidents x Day of Wk

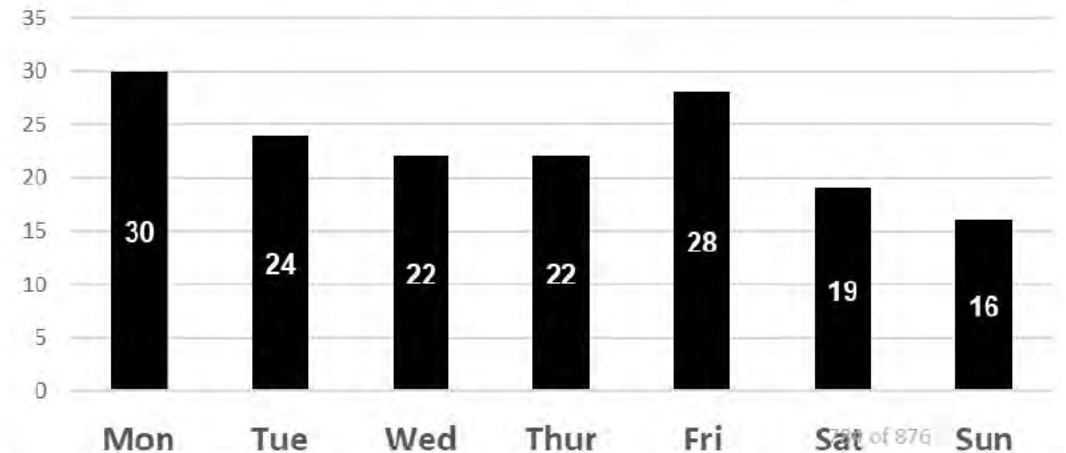
(Data from weekly Safety report)

MAHI - STM - 122 - 784

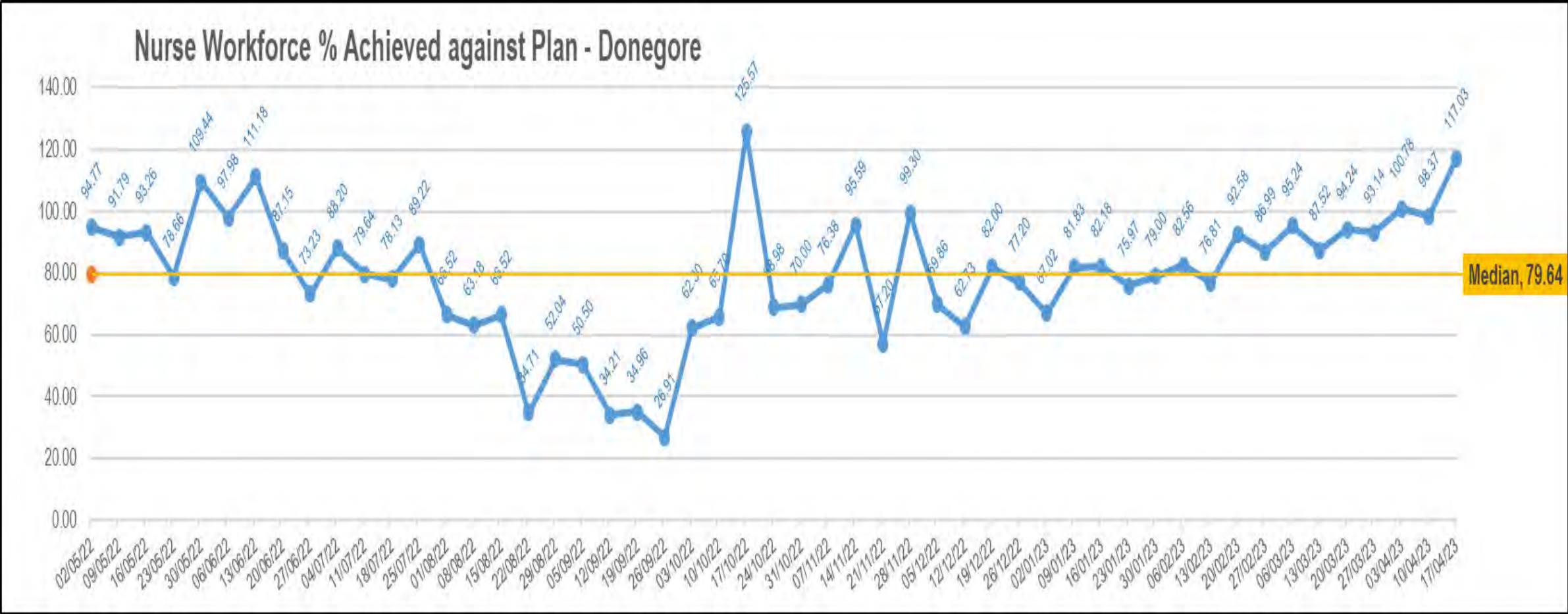


Donegore - Approved incidents x Day of Wk: 21/6/22 - 2/5/23

(Data from weekly Safety Report)



MAHI - STM - 122 - 785



Safety dashboard

Monthly report 2023

The context
led to
Meeting with
Senior team
and CNO in
August 2022
& Even better
if.....

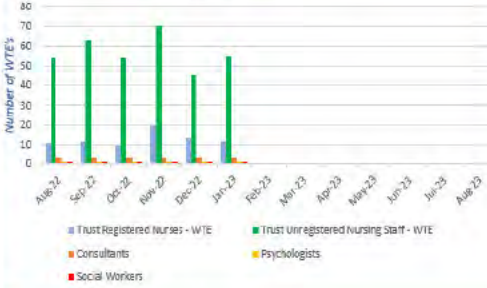
- Review of weekly safety report to inform monthly dashboard
- Demonstrating the story over time
- The report can be shared monthly with the DOH
- The report covers key areas:

Workforce, safety, education & training, leadership and patient numbers and experience

MAHI - STM - 122 - 788

Workforce

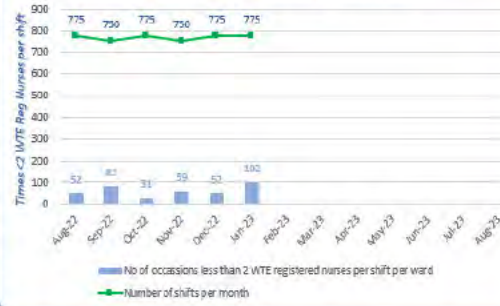
MAH - Month End Workforce
(WTE by Profession)



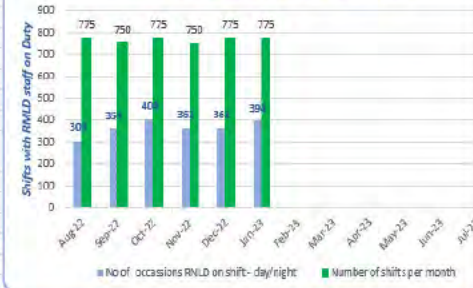
MAH - Shifts covered by > 50% Agency Staff



Occasions <2 WTE Reg Nurses per shift/ward

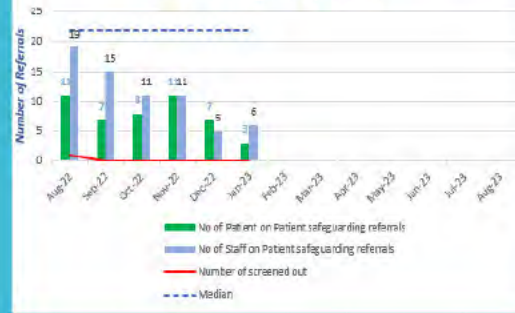


Occasions RNLD on Shift - day/night

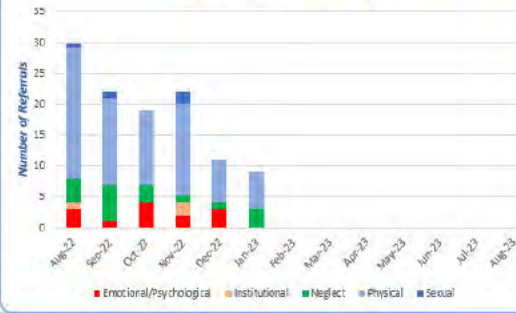


Safety

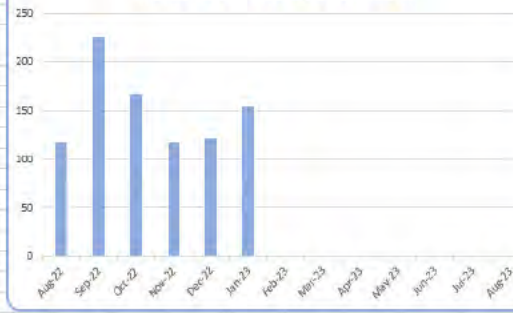
Number of Safeguarding Referrals



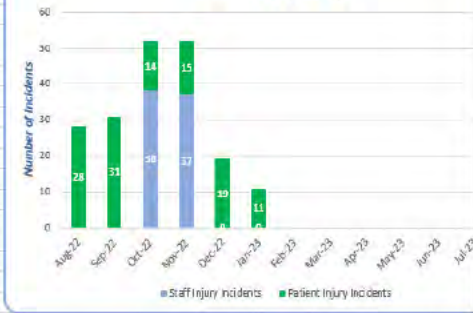
Safeguarding Referrals by Type



Number of Incidents reported on Datix



Incidents by Injury Type



Education and Training

% of staff who have completed induction to clinical area



% staff who have completed enhanced safety interventions training inc. management of escalating behaviours (stress and distress)



% Staff who have completed ASG Level 2 Training



Awaiting update from Paul McCabe

Safety
picture &
Governance
structure
“where does
the dashboard
sit?”

Daily safety huddles

Weekly live governance at ward
and site level

Weekly overview from CLT

Weekly safety report

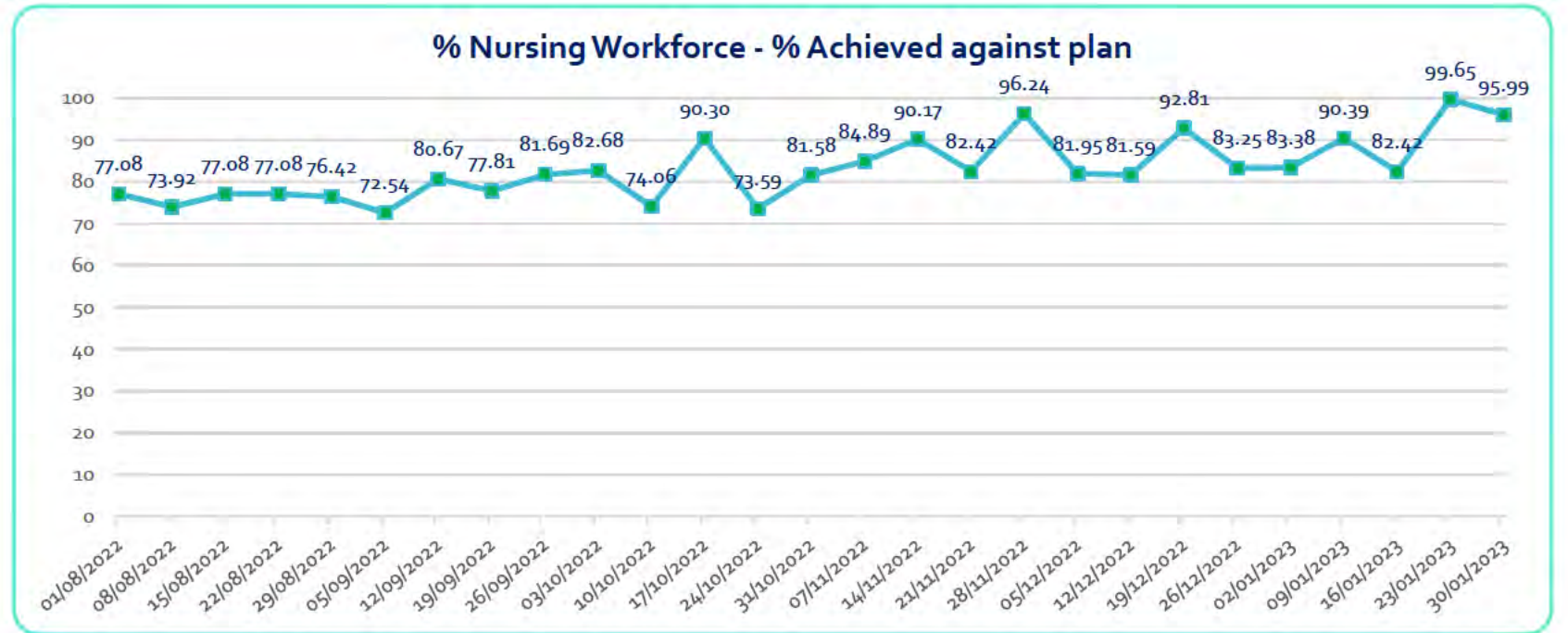
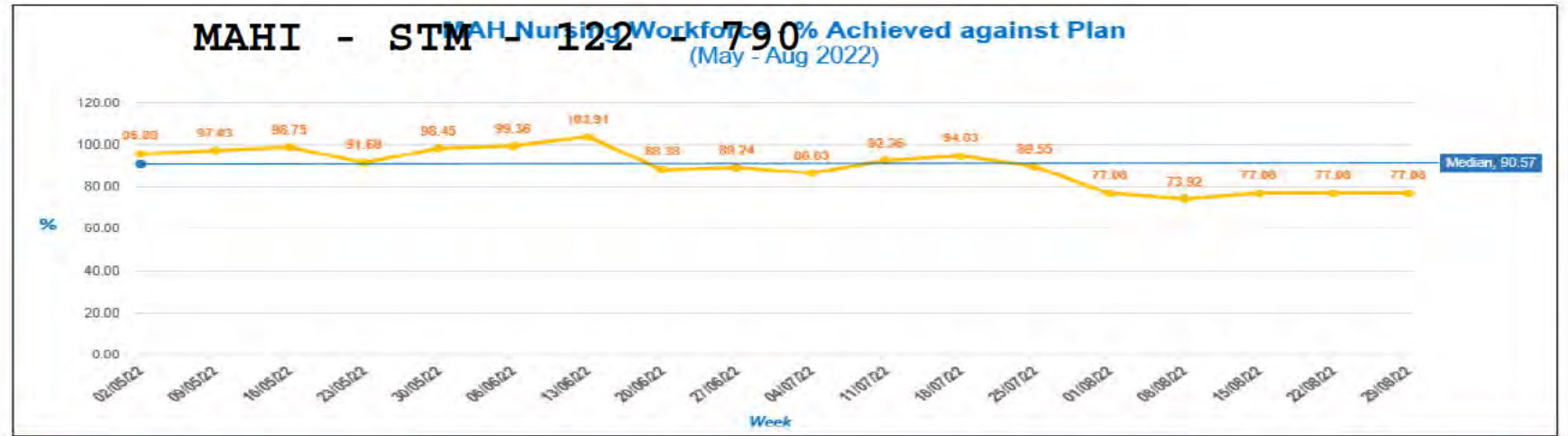
Monthly safety dashboard to report
the overall picture and issues for
escalation to the DOH

Quality Management system
quarterly to Director

&

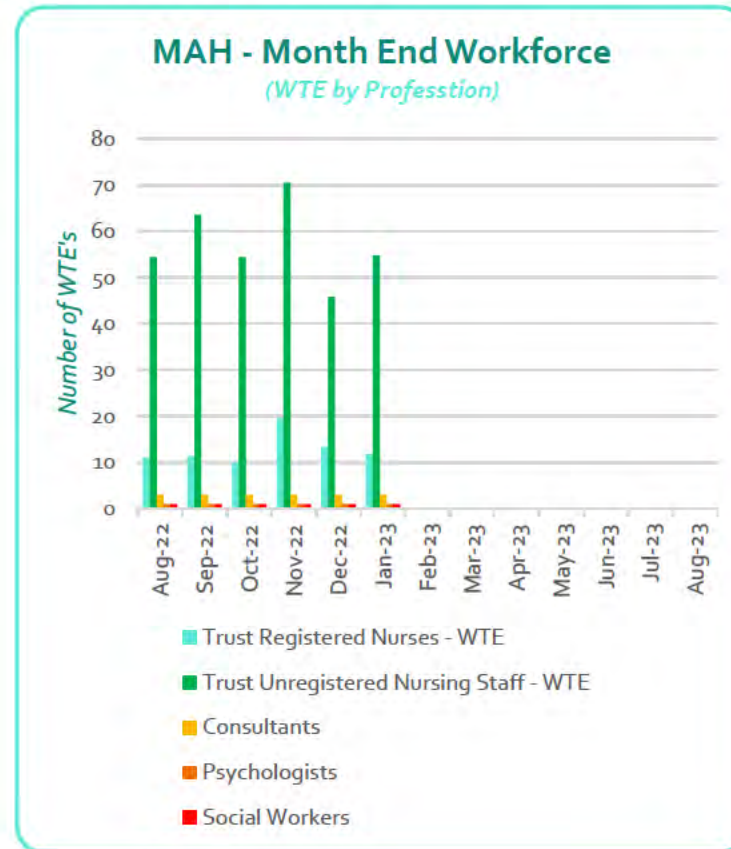
Bi annually to executive team

Staffing picture &



Workforce MDT

Current Position



- 3 occupational therapists
- 1 SLT
- 4 PBS
- 23 day care staff
- Nurse consultant
- Reduction in senior nurse assistants
- 1 pharmacist

Safety
ASG
incidents,
restrictive
practice
complaints and
compliments
and how we
learn

-
- What is this telling us
- Themes trends outcomes and changes
- Reduction from 30 per month to less than 10 last month
- environmental change reduced ASG incidents
- Environmental issues can cause incidents
- Proactive response to prevent ASG
- Safeguarding assurance process on wards, site, to CLT, safeguarding committee and Executive assurance group
- QI to reduce restrictive practice
- Use of seclusion, physical interventions and PRN is measured and presented monthly
- Further work to share learning from complaints and compliments

Education and training

- Improvements
- Safety interventions training increase 48% to 70% which includes ASG awareness and Positive behaviour support
- Upskilling of RMN staff re ID communication relational security and PBS
- Challenges
- Releasing staff of the floor for training but that is improving

Leadership

- 1 Nurse Consultant leading on therapeutic engagement and activity
- Leadership re upskilling , managing learning and development including mandatory training and skills development in learning disability, communication, positive behaviour Support and relational security
- Increase in lead and Senior nurses to enhance nurse role in safeguarding, safety interventions, accelerated resettlement and clear assurance framework for nurses on site
- Increase senior staff over 7 day
- Assurance visits
- Safety quality visits

- Safeguarding assurance group and improved Data Set
- Ongoing listening exercises, staff support/reflective practice sessions and debrief

MAHI - STM - 122 - 795

Real Time Patient Feedback Report - Muckamore

Learning Disability (Multiple Items) No. Surveyed 4
Division Month Enter date here
Muckamore Cranfield 2 Date

Domain	Domain Score
Consistency & Coordination	9.17
Respect	10.00
Involvement	8.75
Staff	8.33
Cleanliness	10.00
Pain Control	10.00
Medicines	10.00
Noise at night	10.00
Kindness & Compassion	10.00
Friends & Family	10.00
Overall domain score	9.58

Would you tell friends and family good things about the way you have been treated?

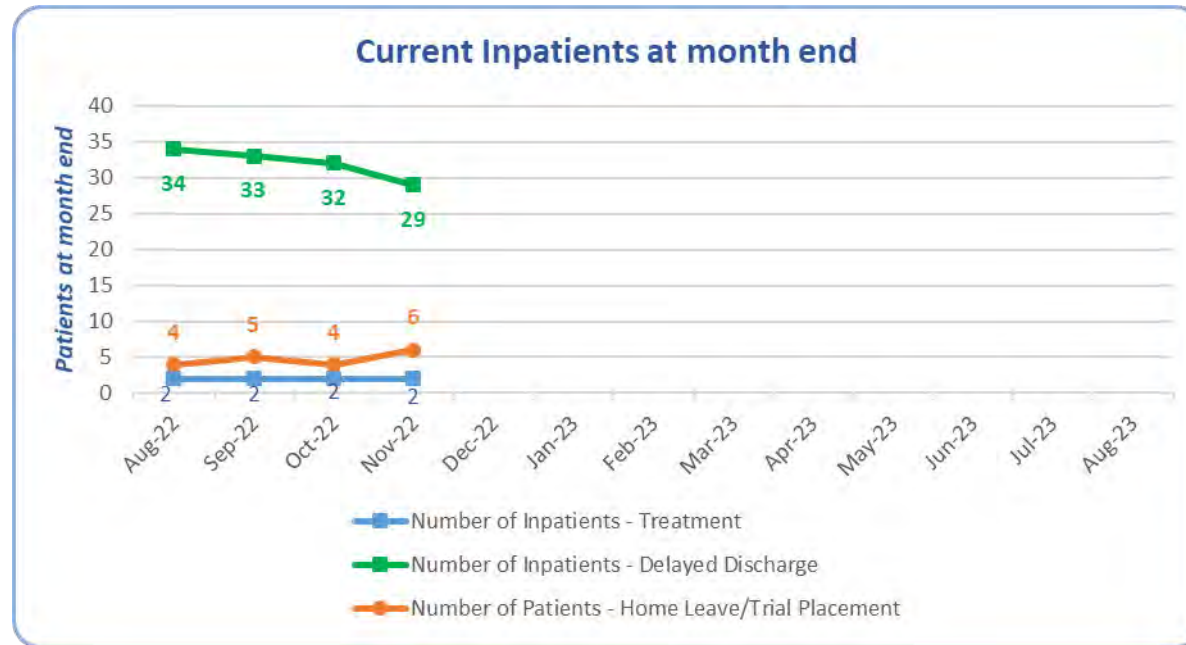


Overall Satisfaction 96%

Comments
 Muckamore Cranfield 1
 08/02/23
 I like the staff, they're my friends, I trust Eddie. I like the activities, I do art and painted a canvas. I beat Eddie at Pool. Muckamore is good.

Real Time Patient Feedback this is not yet demonstrated on the dashboard

Resettlement



ID Experience



Muckamore Abbey Hospital Update

7

Carer Forum sessions held since December 2021 – every family invited

- 1 Carer attended regularly
- Bryson House and PCC represented
- Independent facilitator and MAH management attend
- Carer Survey had 70% return rate and over 80% wanted forum to continue

"I enjoy receiving information that I can read at my own convenience and follow up with staff if needed".

50+

STAFF TRAINED
Ongoing Introduction to PP

130

CARERS

On email distribution list for LD Involvement +20 since previous report

25

Focused calls with families

Adult Safeguarding Questionnaire offered to all families following an investigation from May 2022
 3 people participated and feedback shared with Adult Safeguarding Dept to help improve practice

FUTURE PLANS

- Continued engagement with carers
- Family engagement events with CLT December 2022 and January 23 will continue bi-monthly

MAHI - STM - 122 - 798

id	name	Job title	specialty_2010	base location	audit title	date reg
3183	Arun Subramanian	SpR	Muckamore Operations & Nursing	Muckamore Abbey Hospital	Rapid Tranquilisation for Patients with Learning Disabilities	28/07/2009
3235	Dr D Hughes	Consultant Psychiatrist	Muckamore Operations & Nursing	Muckamore Abbey Hospital	Antipsychotic Monitoring	30/10/2009
3458	Chris Southwell	Dr	Acute Services	Muckamore Abbey Hospital	Dementia in People with Learning Disabilities	23/08/2010
3495	Dr Paula McLorinan	Consultant Psychiatrist	Supported Living and Day Care	Muckamore Abbey	Audit of the resettlement process (Mallow Ward)	05/10/2010
3663	Dr Damien Hughes	Doctor	Primary Care	Muckamore Abbey Hospital	Audit of admission and discharge process in Cranfield	05/04/2011
3760	Dr Ronan Kehoe	Doctor	Muckamore Operations & Nursing	Muckamore Abbey	Physical Examination Equipment Audit	22/07/2011
3893	Janet MacPherson	Consultant		Muckamore Abbey Hospital	Audit of Benzodiazepine use in kilead ward	12/01/2012
4333	Dr Lisa Montgomery	Locum appointed specialist		Muckamore	Prescribing high dose & combination antipsychotics in adult wards	08/05/2013
4532	Dr Colin Milliken	Clinical Director / Consultant		Muckamore Abbey Hospital	Use of Levels of Observation at Muckamore Abbey Hospital	22/01/2014
4602	Shelley Crawford	Lead OT	Occupational Therapy	Muckamore	An evaluation of the OT resettlement service at Muckamore- Service User feedback	20/03/2014
4605	Siobhan Keating	Consultant Forensic Psychologist	Psychological Services	Muckamore (950 46467)	Non-staff support available to Forensic patients in Muckamore Abbey / Belfast Community Forensic LD services	20/03/2014

MAHI - STM - 122 - 799

4623	Katie Carson	Occupational Therapist	Occupational Therapy, Physical Health & Disability	Muckamore	An evaluation of the OT breakfast club	07/04/2014
4703	Heather McFarlane	Clinical Lead LD OT Resettlement	Occupational Therapy	Muckamore	Service Evaluation of Occupational Therapy in Resettlement of LD Patients from Muckamore (Staff feedback)	03/07/2014
4708	Kathryn Carson	Occupational Therapist	Community Treatment & Support	Muckamore Abbey Hospital	Healthy lifestyle audit	08/07/2014
4738	Michael Creaney	Safeguarding Officer		Muckamore	Patient, Carer & Staff Understanding and Implementation of the Adult Safeguarding Process	04/09/2014
5020	Heather McFarlane	Clinical Lead OT Resettlement	Allied Health Professionals, Occupational Therapy	Muckamore Abbey	Effectiveness of a community partnership healthy living programme for those with learning disabilities	02/09/2015
5035	Katie Carson	Occupational Therapist	Community Treatment & Support	Muckamore Abbey Hospital	Sensory modulation room use audit	22/09/2015
5388	Damien Hughes	Consultant Psychiatrist		Muckamore Abbey Hospital	Audit of PRN Benzodiazepine	28/10/2016
5389	Damien Hughes	Consultant Psychiatrist		Muckamore Abbey Hospital	Kardex Audit	28/10/2016
5425	Carole Wilson	ST5		Muckamore	Implementation of Safety Briefings in Muckamore Abbey Hospital	19/12/2016
6012	Joanna Dougherty	Consultant	Psychological Services	Muckamore	Seclusion Record Audit	04/09/2019
6247	Siobhan Keating & Frances Caldwell	Consultant Forensic	Psychological Services	Muckamore Abbey Hospital	An audit of the incidence of trauma and adversity in the life experiences of inpatients with an intellectual disability and forensic history.	09/10/2020

KARDEX AUDIT

Helen Morgan

Overview

- Method of data collection and questionnaires
- Results
- Particularly poor areas
- Areas for improvement

Questionnaire

Medicine Prescription and Administration Record

HBV Code

Name of Trust _____

Record: _____ of _____

Rewritten on (date): _____

Allergies / Medicine Sensitivities

THIS SECTION MUST BE COMPLETED

Date	Medicine (generic) / allergen	Type or reaction e.g. rash	Signature

OR
 No known allergies Please tick
 Signature: _____ Date: _____

Write in CAPITAL LETTERS or use abbreviations

Surname: _____

First Name: _____

Hospital no: _____

DOB: _____

Hospital: _____

Ward: _____

Consultant: _____

Date of admission: _____

Weight (Kg)	Height (cm)	Date

Requirements for Prescribing and Administration

THIS SECTION MAY BE USED TO HIGHLIGHT KEY POINTS FROM USE AND CONTROL OF MEDICINES, APRIL 2004

Once Only Medicines and Pre-medications (includes administration under Patient Group Direction)

Prescription						Administration		
Date	Medicine	Dose	Route	How to be given (if not oral)	Signature	Given by	Time given (if hourly)	Pharmacy

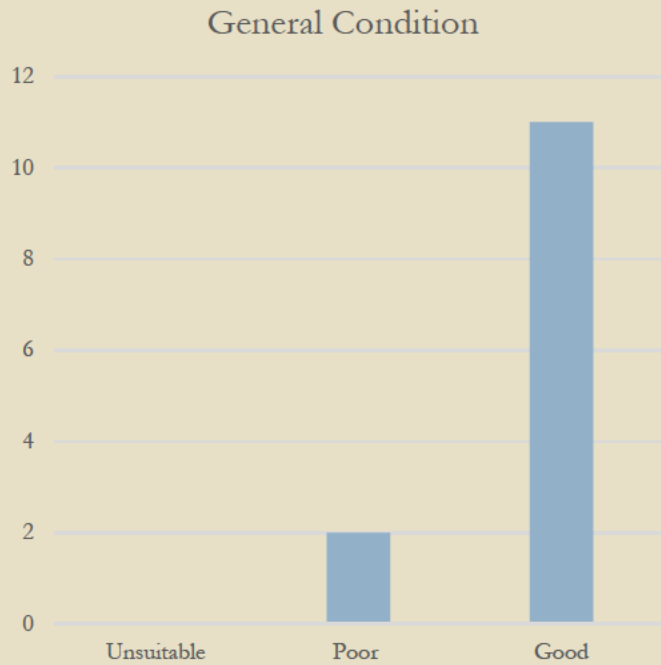
AS REQUIRED MEDICINES

Check for allergies / medicine sensitivities

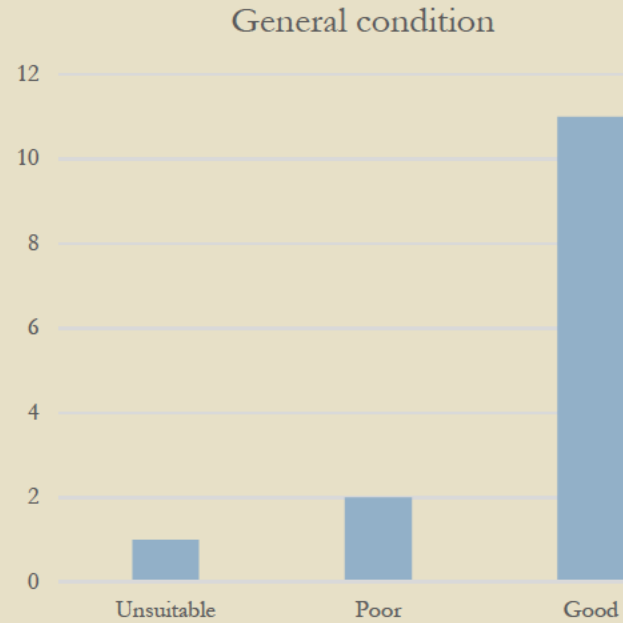
Medicine PARACETAMOL			Start Date 12.12.05	Date	12/12	12/12						
Dose 1g	Route PO	Freq. (max) 4-6 hourly	Stop Date	Time	1600	2200						
Special Instructions / Directions MAX 4g/24 HOURS			Signature	Dose	1g	1g						
Signature B Getwell Print Name B Getwell			Pharmacy	Route	PO	PO						
Bleep 2222			Given by		AW	RL						
Medicine ZOPICLONE			Start Date 12.12.05	Date	12/12	13/12						
Dose 7.5mg	Route PO	Freq. (max) NOCTE	Stop Date	Time	2200	2200						
Special Instructions / Directions HOSPITAL ONLY			Signature	Dose	7.5mg	7.5mg						
Signature B Getwell Print Name B Getwell			Pharmacy	Route	PO	PO						
Bleep 2222			Given by		RL	RL						
Medicine CYCLIZINE			Start Date 12.12.05	Date	12/12							
Dose 50mg	Route PO/IV	Freq. (max) 8 HOURLY	Stop Date	Time	1800							

General Condition

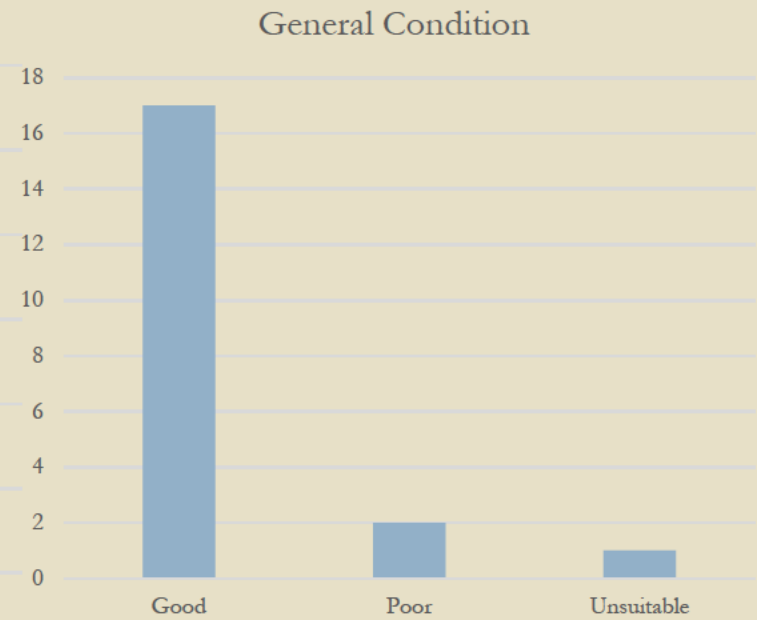
Cranfield Men



Cranfield Women

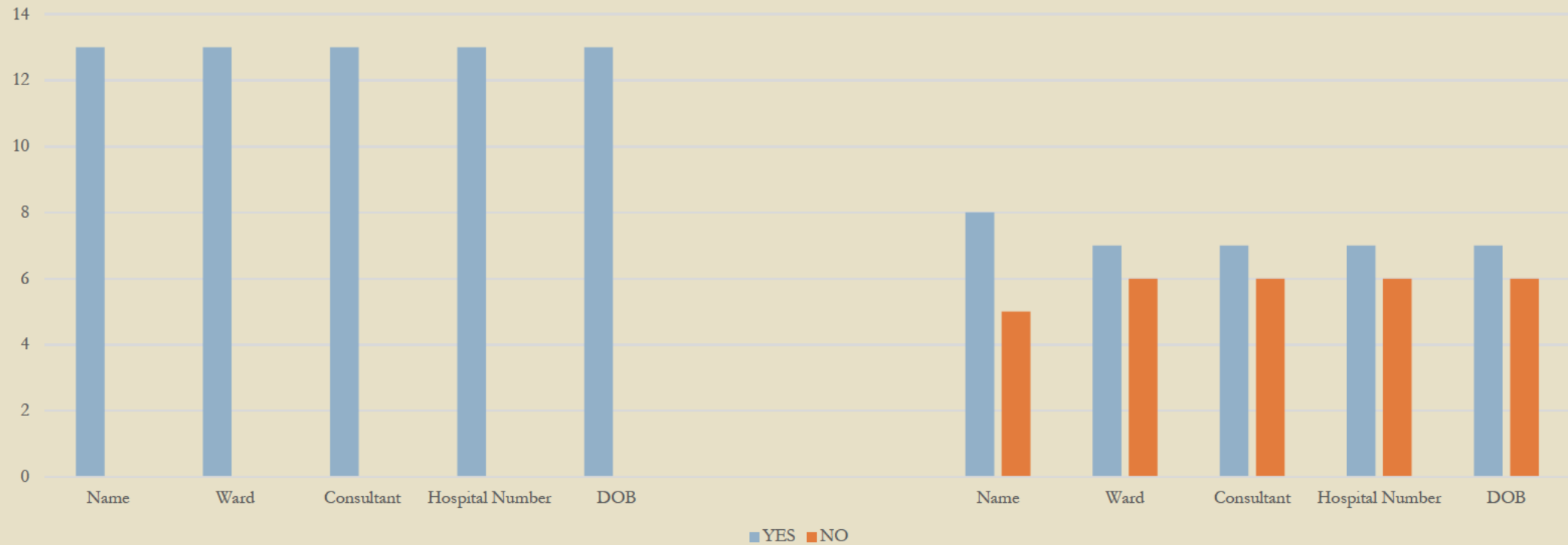


Killead



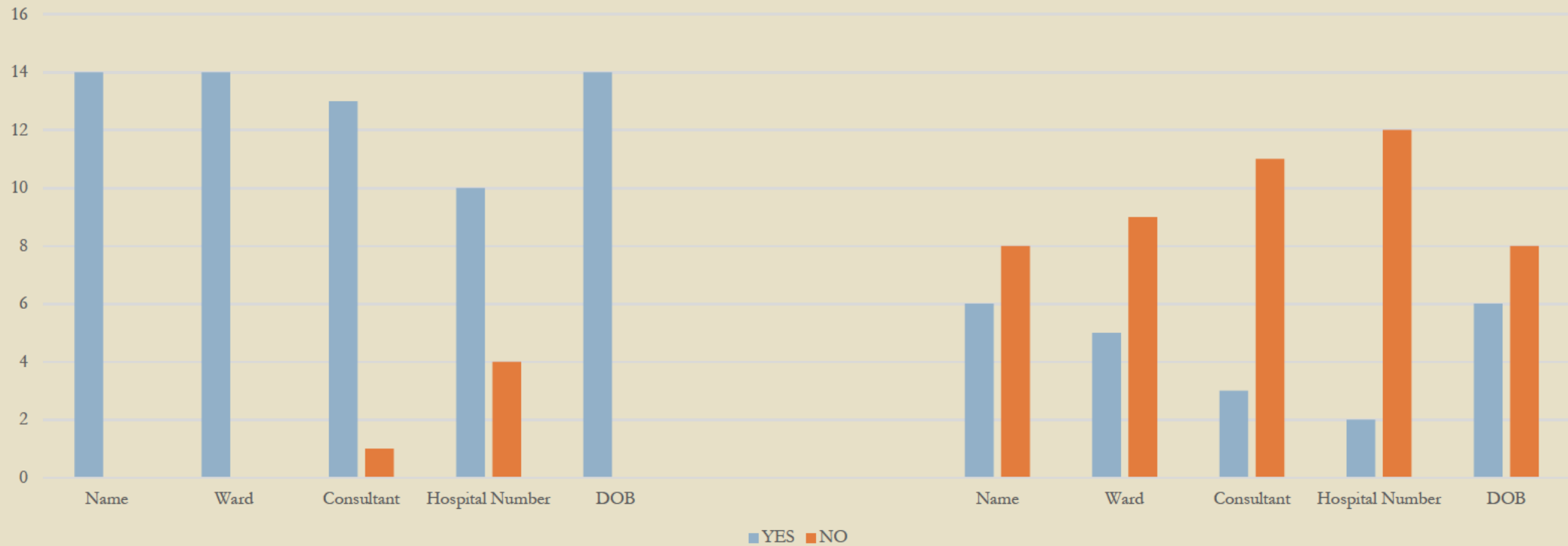
Front and Subsequent pages- Cranfield Men

First page and subsequent page details



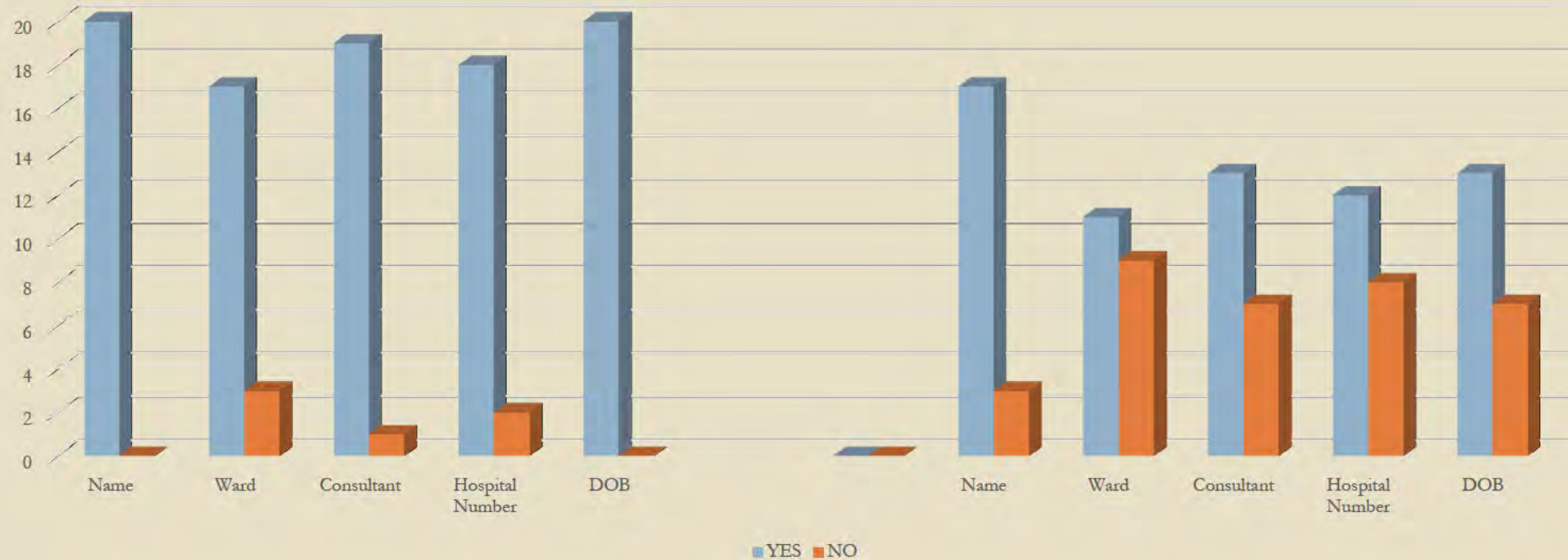
Front and Subsequent Pages- Cranfield Women

Front page and subsequent page details



Front and Subsequent Pages- Killead

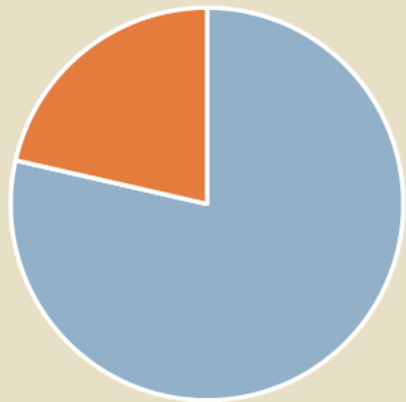
First page and subsequent page details



Allergies

o Cranfield Women

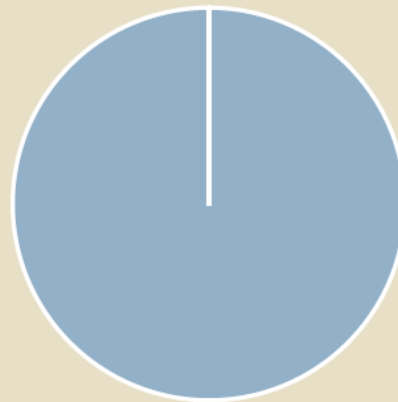
Allergies recorded correctly



■ YES ■ NO

Cranfield Men

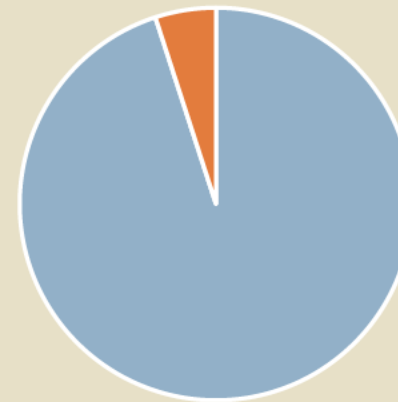
Allergies recorded correctly



■ YES ■ NO

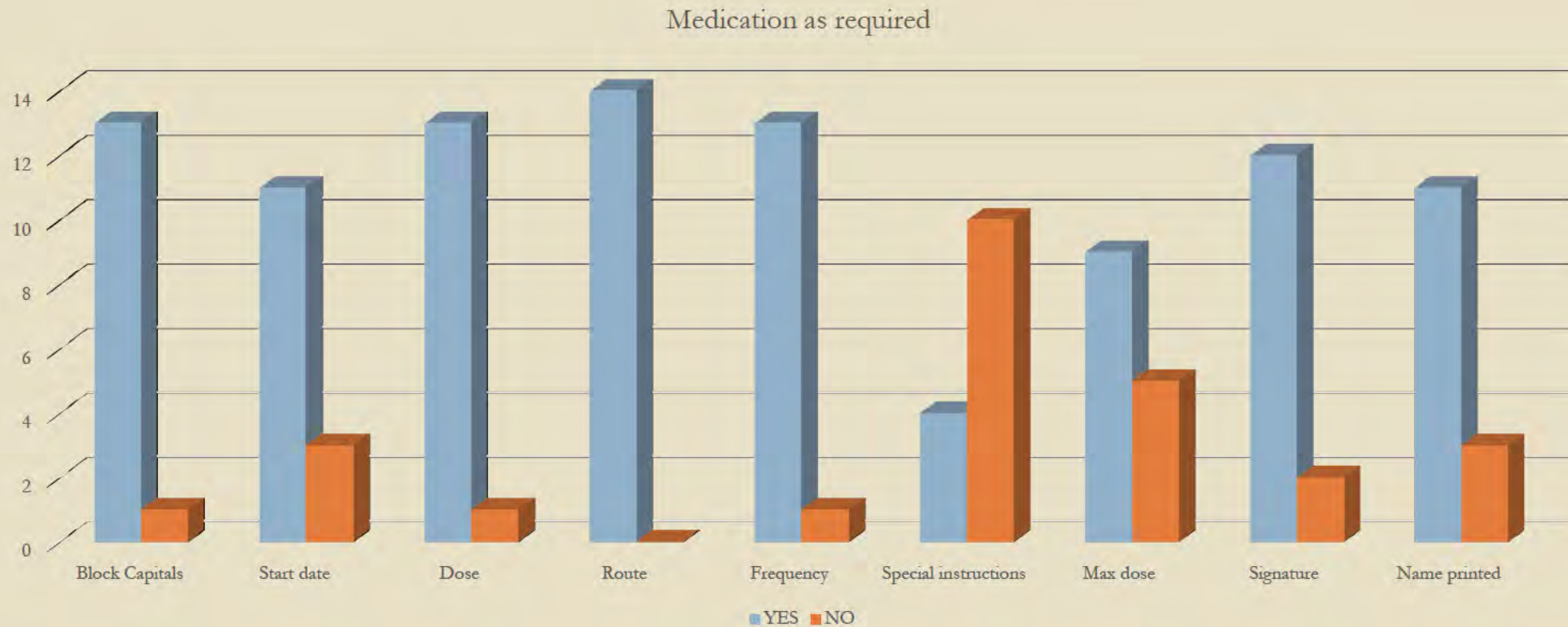
Killead

Allergies recorded correctly

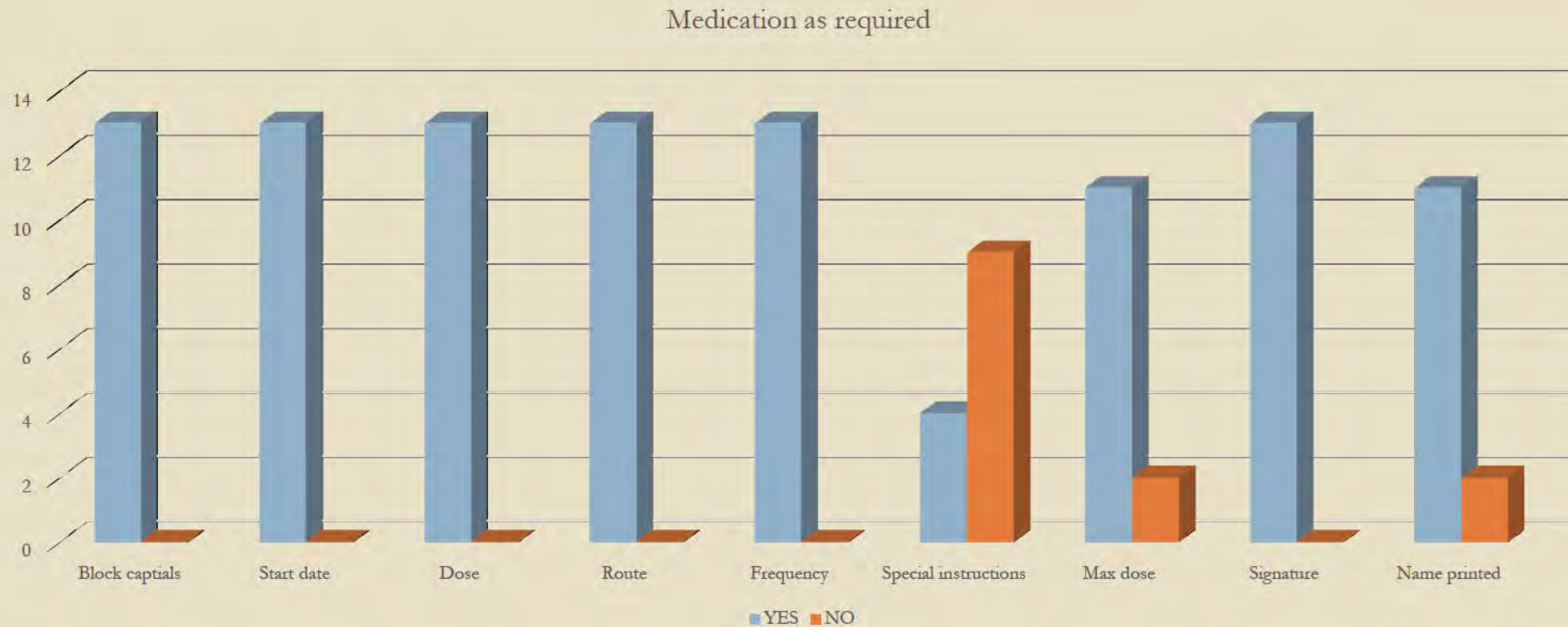


■ Yes ■ No

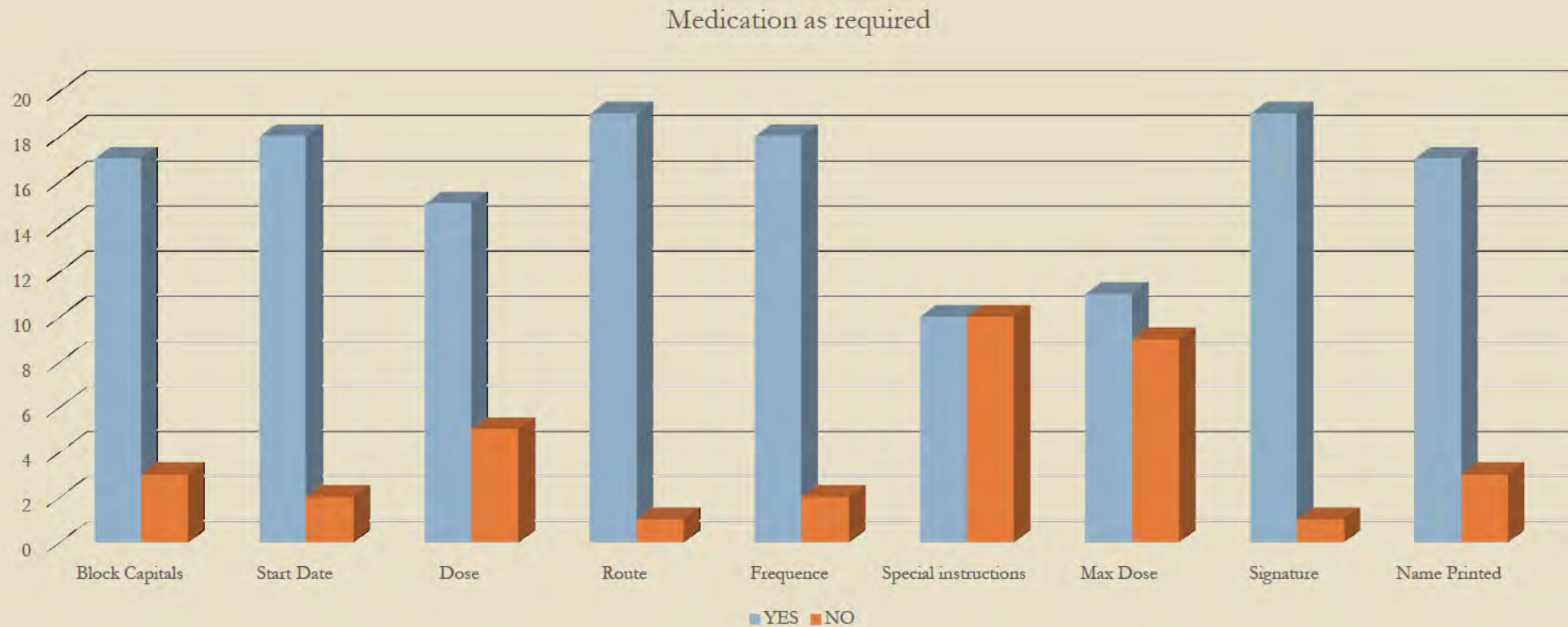
Medication as required- Cranfield Women



Medication as required- Cranfield Men



Medication as required- Killead



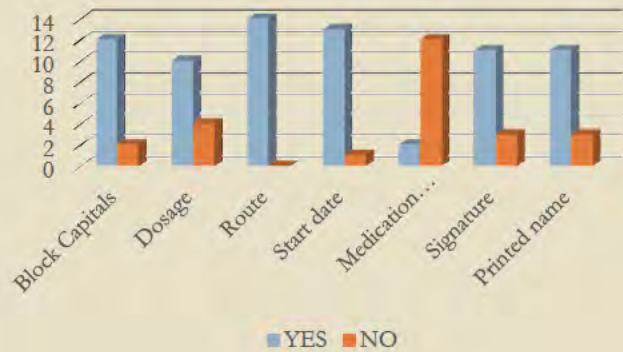
Regular Medications

o Cranfield Women

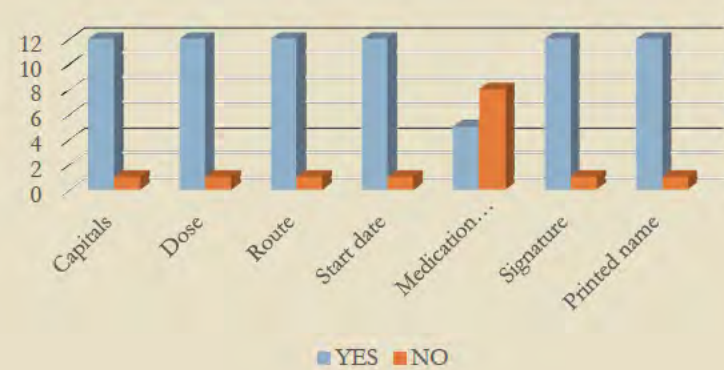
Cranfield Men

Killead

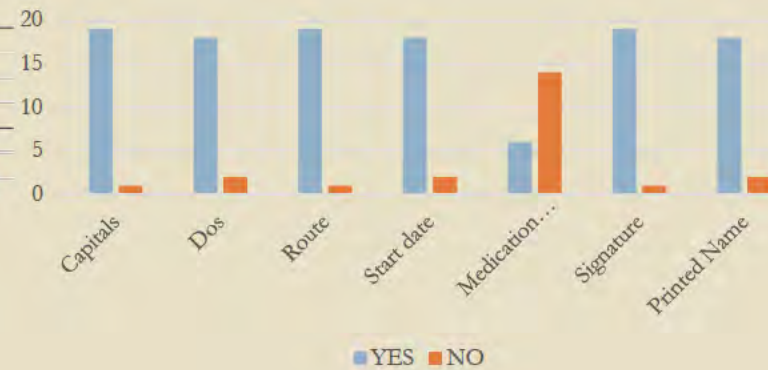
Regular Medication



Regular Medications



Regular Medication



Discontinuing Medication

REGULAR MEDICINES
 Check patient identity and allergy status

- any other - related to - related to - related to - related to - other please state (see page 10)
 - related to - related to - related to - related to - related to

Medicine	Dose	Route	Start date	Stop date	Signature	Print name	Pharmacy	Stop date
WASPAREN	100mg	PO	12.12.05					
PERINDOPRIL	4mg	PO	12.12.05					
SIMVASTATIN	40mg	PO	12.12.05					
CITALOPRAM	10mg	PO	12.12.05					
OMEPRazole	20mg	PO	12.12.05					
STUNDOLOXIME	40mg	PO	12.12.05					

Medicine: FLUVASTATIN				02 ⁰⁰					
Dose: 40mg	Route: PO	Start date: 12.12.05	Stop date: 13.12.05	06 ⁰⁰					
Special instructions / Directions				10 ⁰⁰					
Signature: <i>M Jones</i>		Print name: M Jones		Signature: R Clark		Pharmacy: LS 13.12.05		14 ⁰⁰	
Stop: 1234				16 ⁰⁰					
				18 ⁰⁰					
				20 ⁰⁰					

Areas for improvement

- Handwriting
- Special instructions, Max dose in 24 hours, Medication reconciliation
- Discontinuing medication

References

- Errors on a handwritten Cardex: Is it time for a change? A Rijal,¹ K Gautam² and AS Rijal³ Nepal Med Coll J 2011; 13(4): 267-271
- Long Stay In-patient Medicine Prescription and Administration Record ('kardex') Northern Ireland Medicines Governance team
- WHO good prescribing guide

Thank you for listening

- Any questions?

Kardex Audit

MUCKAMORE ABBEY HOSPITAL

Pauline McKenna

Third year medical student

Overview

- Method of data collection
- Results
- Comparable results
- Areas for improvement

Method of data collection

Criteria

- General condition
- Front page
- Subsequent pages
- Allergies
- Medication as required (PRN)
- Regular medication
- Discontinuing medication

Results

General condition?

- Cranfield 1 92%
 - Only one kardex was poor
- Killead 100%



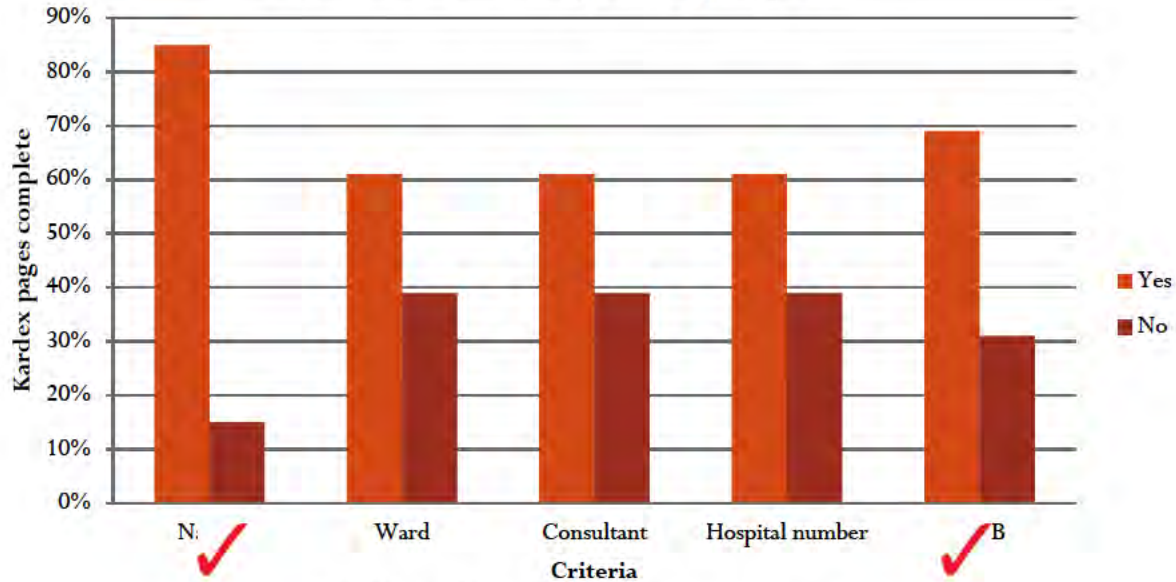
Results

Front pages?

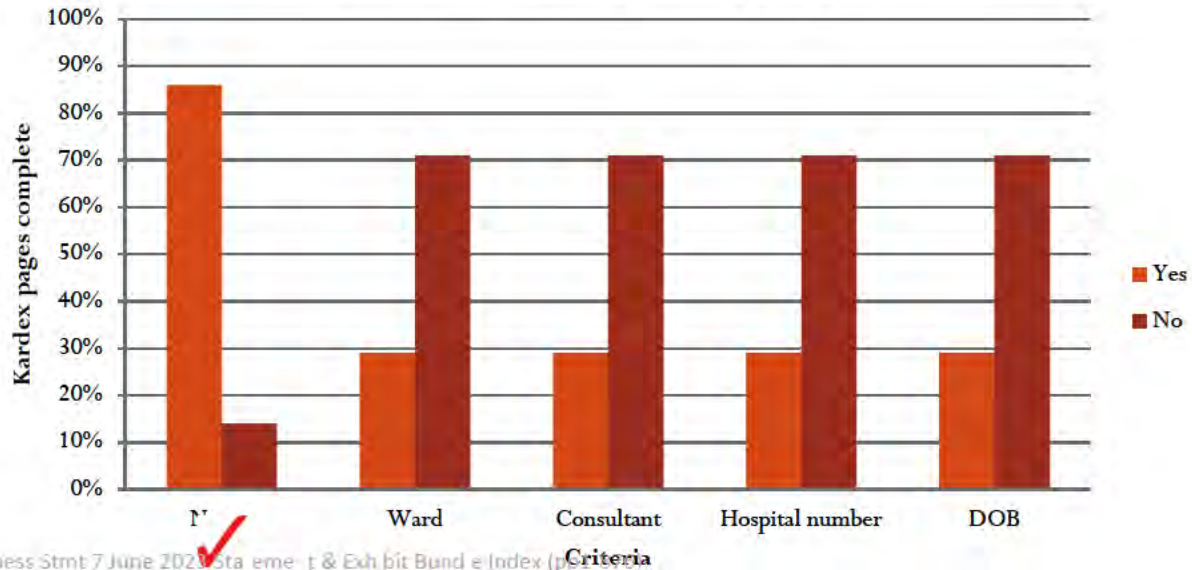
- Cranfield 1
 - 100% name, ward, DOB, consultant and hospital number
- Killead
 - 100% name, ward, DOB
 - 90.5% consultant and hospital number

HSC Medicine Prescription and Administration Record

Cranfield- subsequent pages



Killead- subsequent pages



Results

Allergies / Medicine Sensitivities			
THIS SECTION <u>MUST</u> BE COMPLETED			
Date	Medicine (generic) / Allergen	Type of Reaction	Signature
.....
.....
.....
.....

OR

No Known allergies Please tick

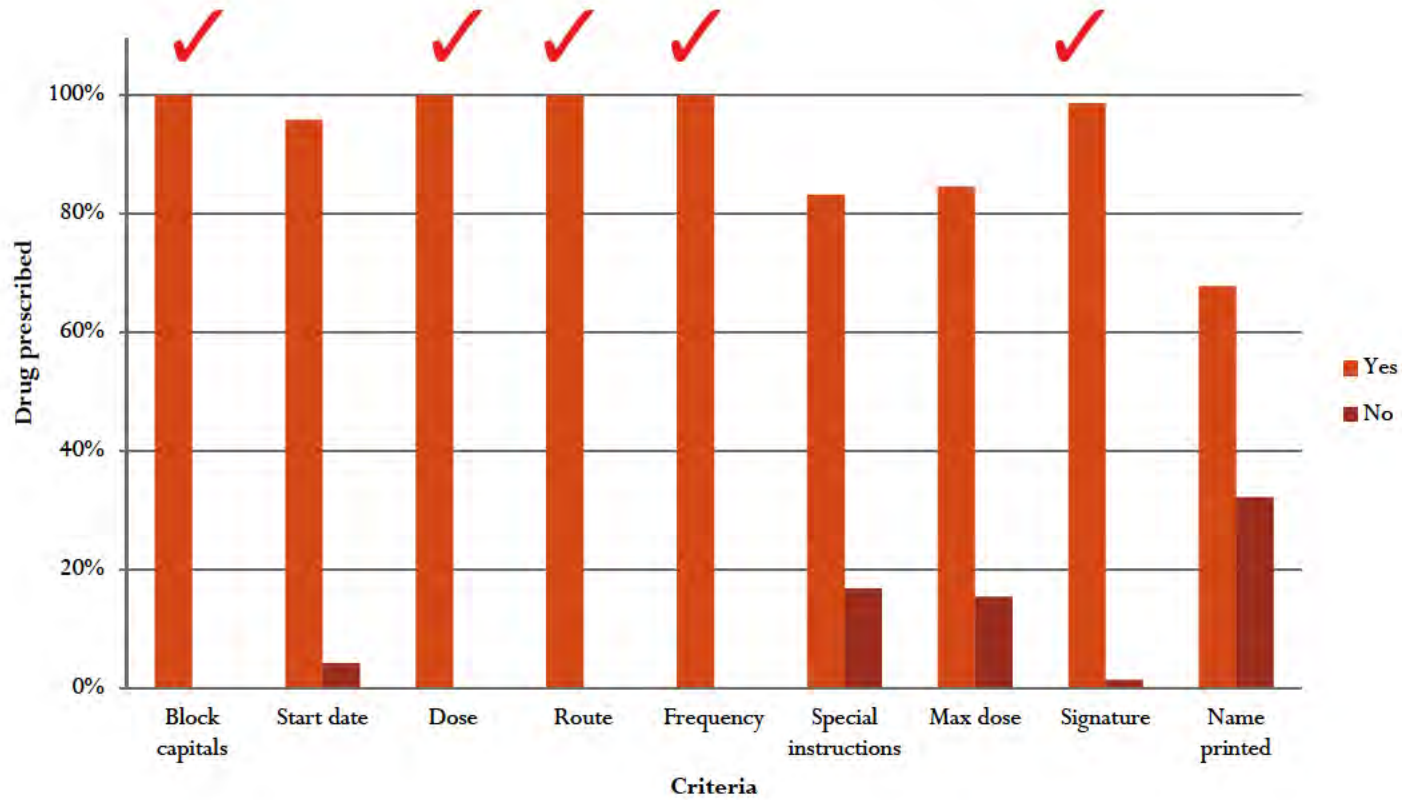
Signature: Date:

Allergies?

- Cranfield 1
 - 100% filled in and recorded correctly
 - ⚠ 13 allergies for 5 patients not on electronic notes
- Killead
 - 100% filled in but 2 patients filled incorrectly
 - ⚠ 15 allergies for 9 patients not on electronic notes

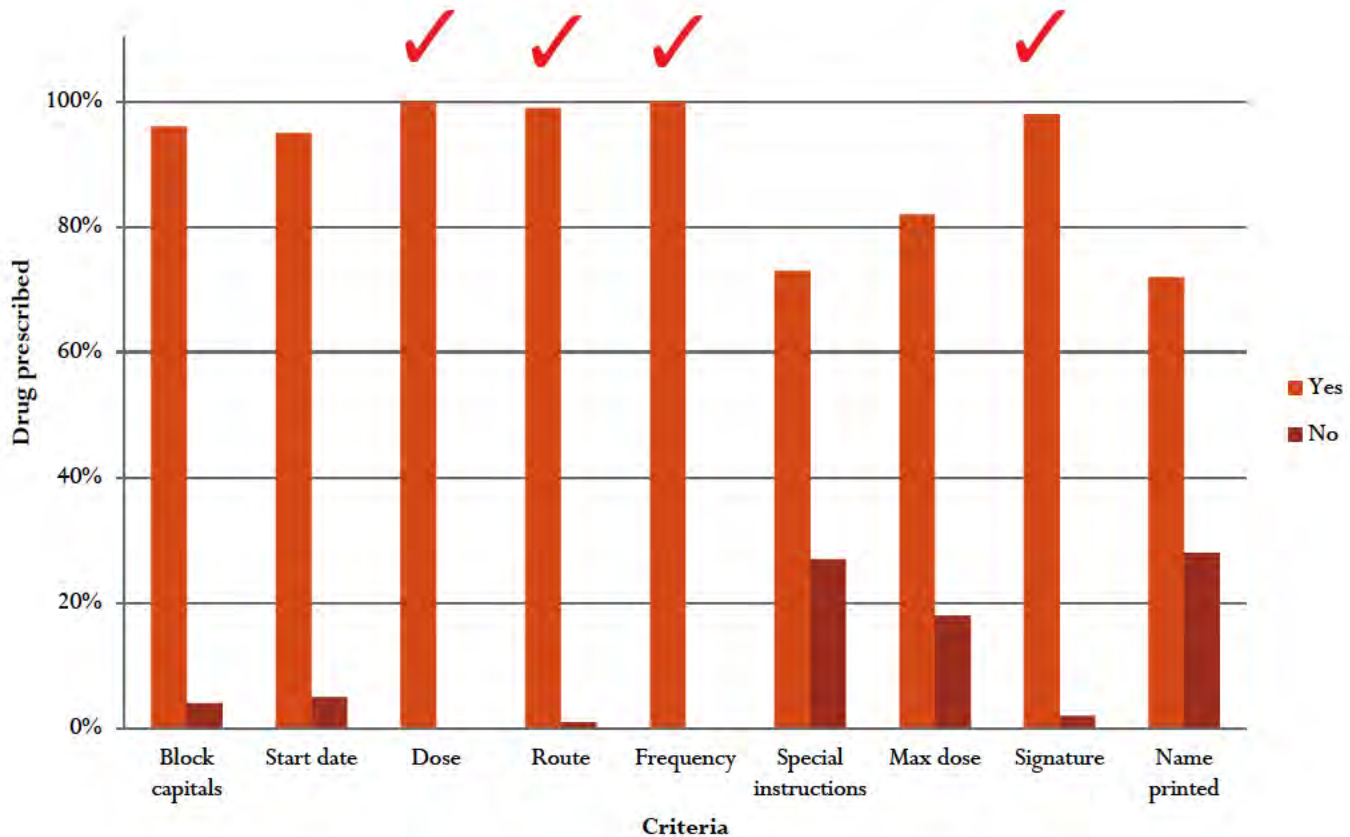
Results

Cranfield- Medication as required



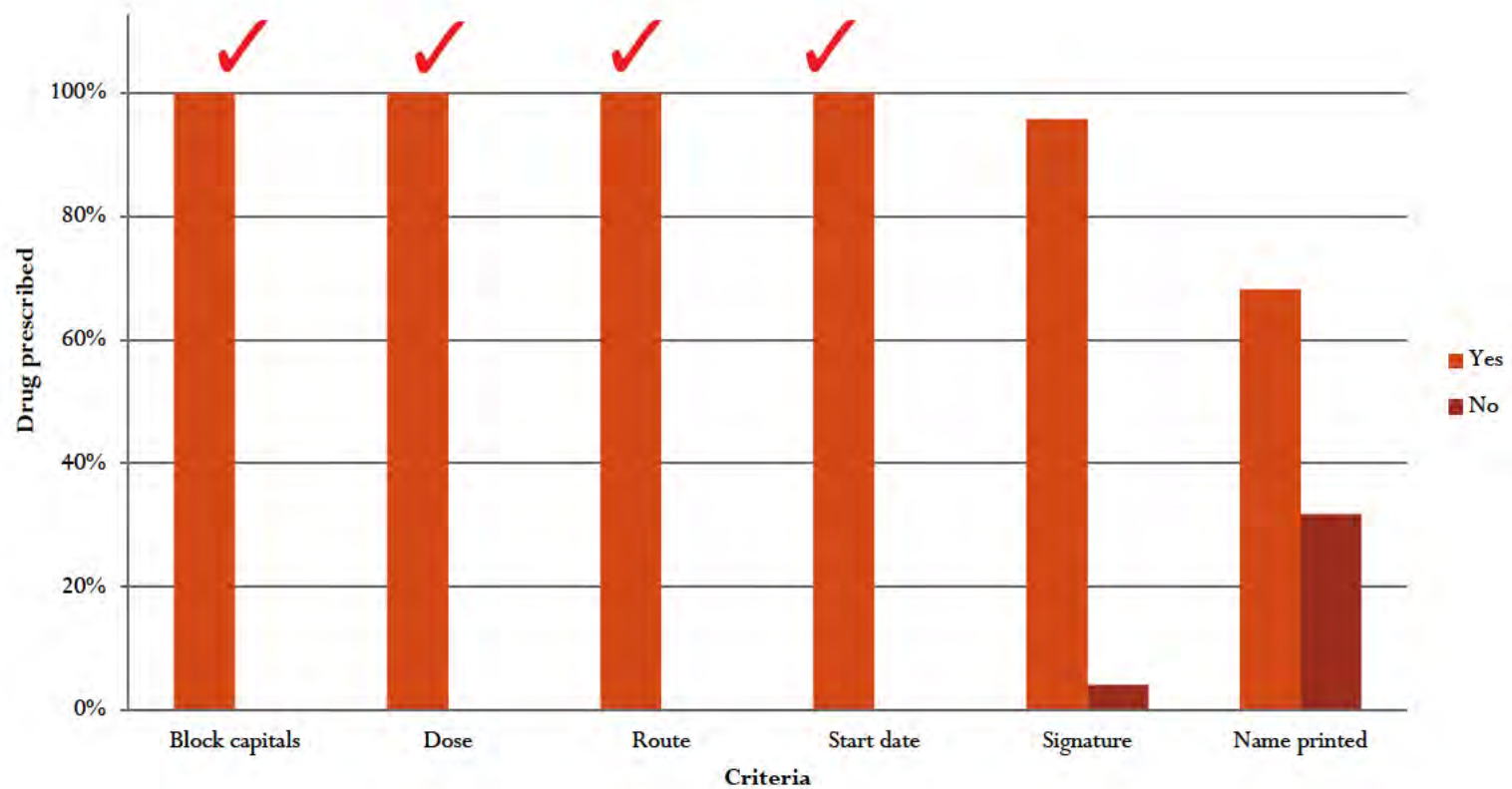
Results

Killead- Medication as required



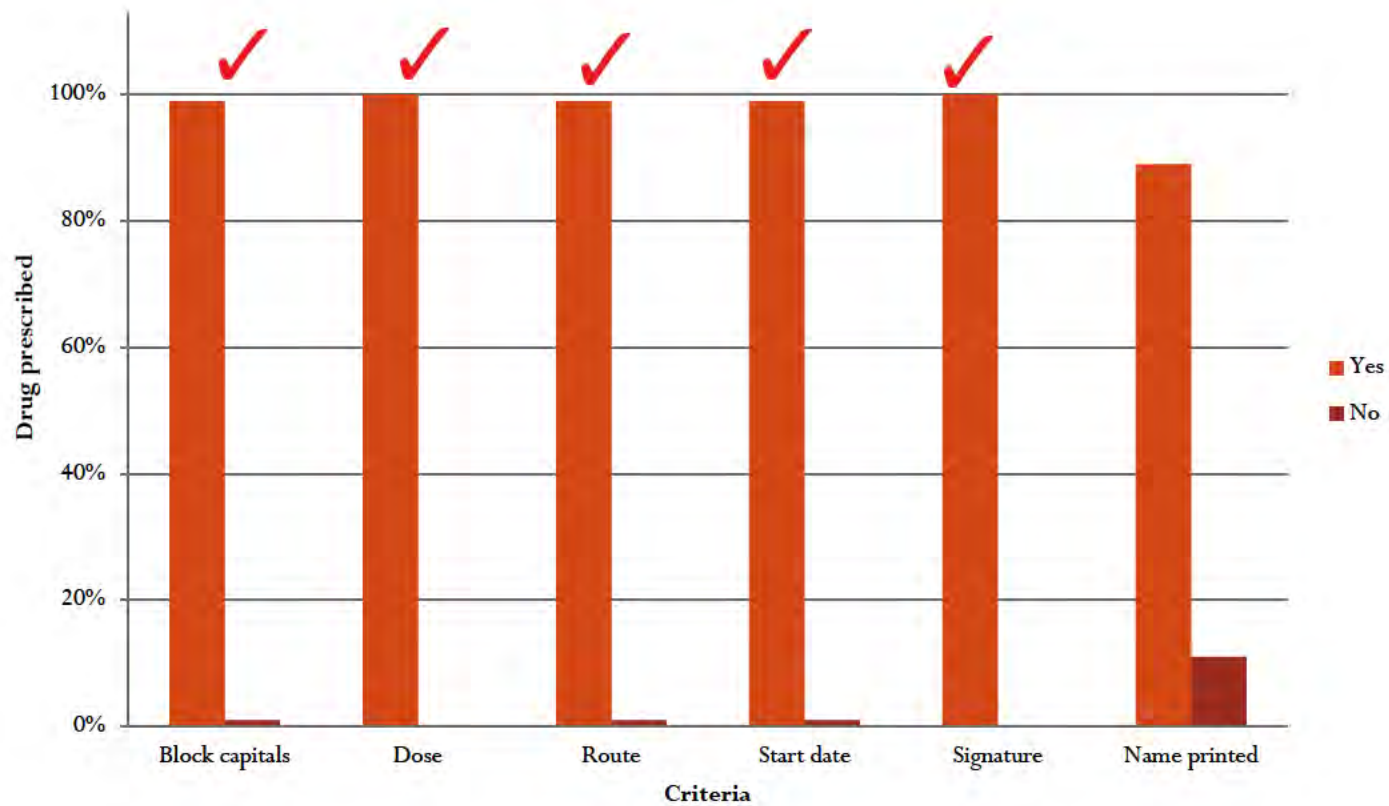
Results

Cranfield- Regular medications



Results

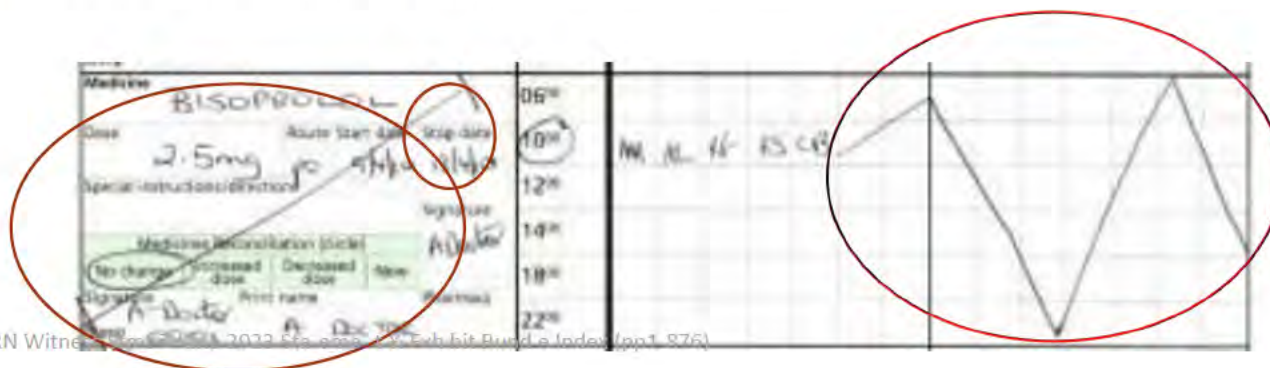
Killead- Regular medications



Results

Discontinued medications?

- Cranfield 1
 - 1 drug had no stop date
 - 1 not scored off correctly
- Killead
 - 11 no stop date
 - 5 not scored off correctly



Comparison of results in re-audit



General condition of the kardex

Front pages filled more accurately

Subsequent pages have more names on them

More allergies recorded correctly

Block capitals, dose, route and frequency.



Subsequent pages have less details

Max dose in 24hours, printed name

Areas of improvement

- Fill out all information in the **subsequent pages** of the kardex
- Update PARIS on the **allergies** of the patients
- For PRNs ensure to fill out **special instructions, max doses**
- Ensure you sign AND **block print** your name
- **Handwriting**
- Need to ensure **stop date** is recorded on kardex and is scored off appropriately

References

- Errors on a handwritten Cardex: Is it time for a change? A Rijal,1 K Gautam2 and AS Rijal3 Nepal Med Coll J 2011; 13(4):267-271
- Who good prescribing guide
- <https://www.med.qub.ac.uk/portal/year5/PatientSafetyP5/day3/prescribing/PrescribingHandbookFoundation>

Any questions?

6/6/2020



Belfast Health and Social Care Trust

Appendix 1 – Kardex audit form baseline

Kardex audit form

Name of auditor: _____ Site _____
 Service Group _____ Clinical Speciality _____ Ward Ardmore Hospital Site MAH
 Total no. of beds on ward _____

Please review all Kardexes for each ward. Include prescribing/administration entries and pharmacist endorsements in audit data collected. Use one column for each Kardex, i.e. 2 columns if a patient has two Kardexes in use. See notes regarding data collection. Example results recorded in the first column.

Data collection: Prescription (General) Q 1-7 are general questions about the kardex and are answered yes or no. Record total number of medicines on Kardex, include discontinued medicines in the review.

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	Comments – put Kardex number in brackets
Patient identification (Use sequential letters of the alphabet to identify each patient. If a patient has more than one Kardex, enter the same letter in a new column for each Kardex) (Column 1 is an example of patient A with one Kardex)	A											
Patient identification	A	A	B	C	D	D	E	F	G	H	H	
Prescription (general)	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	
1a. PL name, number and DOB on front page	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	
1b. Same on other pages where required Y/N	N	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	N	Y	Y	
1c. Is the patient <16 years Y/N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	
1d. Is the patient >60 years Y/N	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	
2. Weight documented (where relevant to medication) Y/N	N	N	Y	Y	N	N	Y	N	Y	Y	N	* No weight related meds (A)
3a. Allergy status documented. Y/N	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	
3b. Allergy status signed and dated Y/N	Y	N	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	* Not dated (B)
3c. Reaction to each allergen noted or recorded as not known Y/N	Y	N	Y	N	Y	N	Y	N	Y	N	N	* Rxn not stated (A)
3d. Medicines prescribed that patient is documented as allergic to Y/N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	
2e. Medicines administered that patient is documented as allergic to Y/N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	
2f. Have medicines been administered when the Allergy box is left blank? Y/N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	

Kardex Audit tool Longer stay Kardex V0.1 S Guy 13/11/2014

MAHI - STM - 122 - 832

BT Midst 3 RN Winrose Strnt 7 June 2023 Str vme t W. Eah bit Bund e lntaa (paj 876)

837 of 870

HSC Belfast Health and Social Care Trust

A B C D E F G H NI

4. Ward recorded	Y/N	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
5a. More than one current Kardex for the patient	Y/N	N	N	N	N	Y	N	N	N	Y	Y	Y
5b. Clearly marked more than 1 kardex	Y/N/na	na	na	na	na	Y	na	na	na	na	Y	Y
6. Year documented on at least one occasion	Y/N	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
7a. No. of supplementary charts in use		2	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
7b. No. of 'additional charts in use' box on front of Kardex ticked (if on kardex).		1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
7c. Additional Chart Medication(s) are written in main body in Kardex as appropriate. e.g. clozapine, warfarin or insulin		1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
8. Has the kardex been recorded as re-written	Y/N	Y	N	N	N	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	Y	Y
9. Is VTE risk assessment completed and signed	Y/N	N	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y

Data collection:

Prescription writing Q 8-26, record the number of medications that have the error described, eg sample Q 8a, two medicines had inappropriate abbreviations. It would be useful to state the abbreviations used in the comments section. Record number of medicines prescribed in each section of the kardex, e.g. stat doses, as required, regular medicines

Prescription writing		6	13	14	15	16	17	8	12	1
10a. Regular medicines (No. prescribed)	5	6	13	14	15	16	17	8	12	1
10b. No of medicines where medicines reconciliation indicated (i) Pre-admission dose	1	0	4	1	6	0	3	0	0	0
(ii) Increased dose	1	0	0	2	0	1	0	2	5	0
(iii) Decreased dose	0	1	0	1	3	0	1	0	1	2
(iv) New	1	3	1	3	1	7	5	0	1	0
11a. Frequency not prescribed (include both non-injectable & injectable) (number of medicines)	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
11b. Circled times do not match frequency (No. of errors)		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
12. No. of high risk medicines prescribed? (See Appendix 2)	2	1	1	0	0	3	2	1	1	0
13a. As required medicines (No. prescribed)	3	8	9	10	5	12	6	8	3	0
26b. No of medicines where medicines reconciliation indicated (i) No change/Pre-admission dose	9	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	na
(ii) Increased dose	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	na

- (E) (12) clobazam
Perampanel
Lacosamide
- (F) (12) Lamotrigine
levetiracetam
- (G) (12) Lamotrigine
- (H) (12) Tegretol

Kardex Audit tool Longer stay Kardex V0.1 S Guy 13/11/2014

HSC Belfast Health and Social Care Trust

		A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	H1
(iii) Decreased dose	2	3	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	N/A
(iv) New	1	4	0	2	1	7	0	1	0	N/A
26c. Maximum frequency not completed	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	N/A
26d. Maximum dose not completed		0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	N/A
13a. Regular Depot medicines (No. prescribed including discontinued)	8	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	N/A
9b. No of regular non-injectable medicines where medicines reconciliation indicated:	0	N/A	N/A	0	0	3	0	0	0	N/A
(i) Pre-admission dose										
25a. Stat doses (No. prescribed)	3	0	0	2	0	0	0	1	0	N/A
25b. Time to be given not specified	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	N/A

Data-collection:

Administration - Q 27 Record the number of days that do not have date AND month entered.

Count the total number of regular doses for which administration should have occurred or been documented as omitted up to the point of audit.

Q29-32 Enter the total number of doses that have the error described.

		A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	H1
Administration										
27. Date and month NOT entered	3	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
28. Number of regular doses prescribed for administration	26	10	20	26	725	378	924	891	895	33
29. Regular doses NOT signed as given or code recorded for omission, i.e. blank box	5	0	0	1	1	2	0	0	1	0
30. Stat doses NOT documented as given or omitted.	4	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	N/A

Formatted Table

(c) - peptac 1/6/2020

Kardex Audit tool Longer stay Kardex V0.1 S Guy 13/11/2014

HSC Belfast Health and Social Care Trust

31. Doses given in excess of prescribed frequency of regular medicine.	1	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	N/A
32. Doses given in excess of maximum frequency of	0	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	N/A

Any additional comments – please note Kardex and question number

[Empty box for additional comments]



Appendix 1 – Kardex audit form baseline

Kardex audit form

Name of auditor: _____ Site _____
 Service Group _____ Clinical Speciality _____ Ward Ardmore Hospital Site _____
 Total no. of beds on ward _____

Please review all Kardexes for each ward. Include prescribing/administration entries and pharmacist endorsements in audit data collected. Use one column for each Kardex, i.e. 2 columns if a patient has two Kardexes in use. See notes regarding data collection. Example results recorded in the first column.

Data collection: Prescription (General) Q 1-7 are general questions about the kardex and are answered yes or no. Record total number of medicines on Kardex, include discontinued medicines in the review.

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	Comments – put Kardex number in brackets
Patient identification (Use sequential letters of the alphabet to identify each patient. If a patient has more than one Kardex, enter the same letter in a new column for each Kardex) (Column 1 is an example of patient A with one Kardex)	A	I	J									
Patient identification	A	I	J									
Prescription (general)	Y	Y	Y									
1a. Pt. name, number and DOB on front page	Y	Y	Y									
1b. Same on other pages where required Y/N	N	Y	Y	Y								
1c. Is the patient <16 years Y/N	N	Z	Z	Z								
1d. Is the patient >60 years Y/N	Y	Z	Z	Z								
2. Weight documented (where relevant to medication) Y/N	N	Z	Z	Z								
3a. Allergy status documented. Y/N	Y	Y	Y	Y								
3b. Allergy status signed and dated Y/N	Y	Z	Y	Z								
3c. Reaction to each allergen noted or recorded as not known Y/N	Y	Y	Z	Z								
3d. Medicines prescribed that patient is documented as allergic to Y/N	N	Z	Z	Z								
2e. Medicines administered that patient is documented as allergic to Y/N	N	Z	Z	Z								
2f. Have medicines been administered when the Allergy box is left blank? Y/N	N	Z	Z	Z								

^{3b}
 (I) just signed – not dated
 (I) " " " "

HSC Belfast Health and Social Care Trust

153

4. Ward recorded	Y/N	Y	y	y	y								
5a. More than one current Kardex for the patient	Y/N	N	N	y	y								
5b. Clearly marked more than 1 kardex	Y/N/na	na	NA	y	y								
6. Year documented on at least one occasion	Y/N	Y	y	y	y								
7a. No. of supplementary charts in use		2	0	0	0								
7b. No. of 'additional charts in use' box on front of Kardex ticked (if on kardex).		1	0	0	0								
7c. Additional Chart Medicine(s) are written in main body in Kardex as appropriate. e.g. clozapine, warfarin or insulin		1	1	0	0								
8. Has the kardex been recorded as re-written	Y/N	Y	y	y	y								
9. Is VTE risk assessment completed and signed	Y/N	N	y	y	y								

① - At on clozapine but not ticked on front of kdx. - no additional chart though

Data collection:

Prescription writing Q 8-26, record the number of medications that have the error described, eg sample Q 8a, two medicines had inappropriate abbreviations. It would be useful to state the abbreviations used in the comments section. Record number of medicines prescribed in each section of the kardex, e.g. stat doses, as required, regular medicines

Prescription writing													
10a. Regular medicines (No. prescribed)	5	12	15	10									
10b. No of medicines where medicines reconciliation indicated (i) Pre-admission dose	1	0	0	0									
(ii) Increased dose	1	0	0	0									
(iii) Decreased dose	0	1	0	1									
(iv) New	1	4	1	5									
11a. Frequency not prescribed (include both non-injectable & injectable) - (number of medicines)	1	0	0	0									
11b. Circled times do not match frequency (No. of errors)		0	0	0									
12. No. of high risk medicines prescribed? (See Appendix 2)	2	2	2	1									
13a. As required medicines (No. prescribed)	3	4	6	0									
26b. No of medicines where medicines reconciliation indicated (i) No change/Pre-admission dose	9	0	0	NR									
(ii) Increased dose	1	0	0	NR									

① ~~12~~ Epilim & Clozapine
 ② 12 Bisoprolol, Epilim chrono.
 J, ② Bumetanide.
 JI - No PENS

STM - 122 - 83



Belfast Health and Social Care Trust



31. Doses given in excess of prescribed frequency of regular medicine.	4	0	0	0															
32. Doses given in excess of maximum frequency of	0	0	0	0															

Any additional comments – please note Kardex and question number



Belfast Health and Social Care Trust

Appendix 1 – Kardex audit form baseline

Kardex audit form

Name of auditor: _____ Site _____
 Service Group _____ Clinical Speciality _____ Ward IVEAGH Hospital Site _____
 Total no. of beds on ward _____

Please review all Kardexes for each ward. Include prescribing/administration entries and pharmacist endorsements in audit data collected. Use one column for each Kardex, i.e. 2 columns if a patient has two Kardexes in use. See notes regarding data collection. Example results recorded in the first column.

Data collection: Prescription (General) Q 1-7 are general questions about the kardex and are answered yes or no. Record total number of medicines on Kardex, include discontinued medicines in the review.

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	Comments – put Kardex number in brackets
Patient identification (Use sequential letters of the alphabet to identify each patient. If a patient has more than one Kardex, enter the same letter in a new column for each Kardex) (Column 1 is an example of patient A with one Kardex)	A											
Patient identification	A	A ₁	A ₂	B	C	D						
Prescription (general)	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y						
1a. Pt. name, number and DOB on front page	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y						
1b. Same on other pages where required Y/N	N	N	N	Y	N	N						
1c. Is the patient <16 years Y/N	N	N	N	N	Y	Y						
1d. Is the patient >60 years Y/N	Y	N	N	N	N	N						
2. Weight documented (where relevant to medication) Y/N	N	N	N	N	N	N						
3a. Allergy status documented. Y/N	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y						
3b. Allergy status signed and dated Y/N	Y	N	Y	Y	Y	Y						
3c. Reaction to each allergen noted or recorded as not known Y/N	Y	Y	Y	N/A	Y	N/A						
3d. Medicines prescribed that patient is documented as allergic to Y/N	N	N	N	N/A	N	N/A						
2e. Medicines administered that patient is documented as allergic to Y/N	N	N	N	N/A	N	N/A						
2f. Have medicines been administered when the Allergy box is left blank? Y/N	N	N	N	N	N	N						

Kardex Audit tool Longer stay Kardex V0.1 S Guy 13/11/2014

(A₁) 1b. nothing on pg 2-3 # 14-15.
 3b. signed - NOT dated.
 3c. says very sensitive to SSPI's do not prescribe.

(A₂) 1b. nothing on pg 2-3.

(C) 1b. nothing on pg 2-3.

(D) 1b. nothing on pg 2-3.

(A) 2 pt. on methylprednisolone (medikinet XL 20mg)

(B) 2 pt on Guanfacine weight related dose 0.05 - 0.12mg/kg for those >55.5kg. max 100g pt is >100kg according to staff.
 2. pt on medikinet XL

MAHI - STM - 100

HSC Belfast Health and Social Care Trust

4. Ward recorded	Y/N	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y							
5a. More than one current Kardex for the patient	Y/N	N	Y	Y	N	N	N						
5b. Clearly marked more than 1 kardex	Y/N/na	na	Y	Y	Y/A	Y/A	Y/A						
6. Year documented on at least one occasion	Y/N	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y						
7a. No. of supplementary charts in use		2	0	0	0	0	0						
7b. No. of 'additional charts in use' box on front of Kardex ticked (if on kardex).		1	0	0	0	0	0						
7c. Additional Chart Medicine(s) are written in main body in Kardex as appropriate, e.g. clozapine, warfarin or insulin		1	0	0	0	0	0						
8. Has the kardex been recorded as re-written	Y/N	Y	Y	Y	N	Y							
9. Is VTE risk assessment completed and signed	Y/N	N	N	N	Y	Y	Y						

Data collection:

Prescription writing Q 8-26, record the number of medications that have the error described, eg sample Q 8a, two medicines had inappropriate abbreviations. It would be useful to state the abbreviations used in the comments section. Record number of medicines prescribed in each section of the kardex, e.g. stat doses, as required, regular medicines

Prescription writing													
10a. Regular medicines (No. prescribed)	5	12	3	4	7	10							
10b. No of medicines where medicines reconciliation indicated (i) Pre-admission dose	1	0	0	0	0	0							
(ii) Increased dose	1	0	1	1	1	4							
(iii) Decreased dose	0	0	1	1	0	4							
(iv) New	1	0	0	0	1	3							
11a. Frequency not prescribed (include both non-injectable & injectable) (number of medicines)	1	0	0	0	0	0							
11b. Circled times do not match frequency (No. of errors)		0	0	0	0	1							
12. No. of high risk medicines prescribed? (See Appendix 2)	2	2	1	1	1	2							
13a. As required medicines (No. prescribed)	3	7	0	4	4	5							
26b. No of medicines where medicines reconciliation indicated (i) No change/Pre-admission dose	9	0	0	0	0	0							
(ii) Increased dose	1	0	0	0	0	0							

Kardex Audit tool Longer stay Kardex V0.1 S Guy 13/11/2014

(A1) 12 = medikinet XL 20mg
- propranolol 5mg at 8.30
2mg at 17.30

A2. 12 => Apremilast
(amber but not shared care)

(B) 12 => methylphenidate
(medikinet XL 30mg)

(C) 12 => Sodium Valproate

(D) 10b (i)(ii) Biage & then again
Sevralone & Purig

(E) 12. Sodium Valproate - 400
propranolol 5mg OD.

(D) - Risperidone 2mg OD.
but 8.30 & 21.30 circled ??
* 11b

MHIT - STM 122 841

HSC Belfast Health and Social Care Trust

(iii) Decreased dose	2	0	0	0	0	0													
(iv) New	1	1	0	0	0	1													
26c. Maximum frequency not completed	1	0	0	0	0	0													
26d. Maximum dose not completed		0	0	1	1	1													
13a. Regular Depot medicines (No. prescribed including discontinued)	8	0	0	0	0	0													
9b. No of regular non-injectable medicines where medicines reconciliation indicated:	0	0	0	0	0	0													
(i) Pre-admission dose																			
25a. Stat doses (No. prescribed)	3	1	0	0	0	0													
25b. Time to be given not specified	1	1	0	0	0	0													

A1 25b. (stat) prescribed as time - not an actual time.

Sh...
of 2000
for 100%

Data collection:

Administration Q 27 Record the number of days that do not have date AND month entered.
Count the total number of regular doses for which administration should have occurred or been documented as omitted up to the point of audit.
Q29-32 Enter the total number of doses that have the error described.

Nursing admin

Administration																			
27. Date and month NOT entered	3	0	0	0	0	0													
28. Number of regular doses prescribed for administration	28	242	24	230	36	361													
29. Regular doses NOT signed as given or code recorded for omission, i.e. blank box	5	0	0	1	0	1													
30. Stat doses NOT documented as given or omitted.	4	0	0	0	0	0													

Formatted Table

Kardex Audit tool Longer stay Kardex V0.1 S Guy 13/11/2014

no of days in use



Appendix 1 – Kardex audit form baseline

Kardex audit form

Name of auditor: _____ Site _____
 Service Group _____ Clinical Speciality _____ Ward ERNE Hospital Site _____
 Total no. of beds on ward _____

Please review all Kardexes for each ward. Include prescribing/administration entries and pharmacist endorsements in audit data collected. Use one column for each Kardex, i.e. 2 columns if a patient has two Kardexes in use. See notes regarding data collection. Example results recorded in the first column.

Data collection: Prescription (General) Q 1-7 are general questions about the kardex and are answered yes or no. Record total number of medicines on Kardex, include discontinued medicines in the review.

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	Comments – put Kardex number in brackets
Patient identification (Use sequential letters of the alphabet to identify each patient. If a patient has more than one Kardex, enter the same letter in a new column for each Kardex) (Column 1 is an example of patient A with one Kardex)	A	/										
Patient identification	A	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	G	H		
Prescription (general)	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y		
1a. Pt. name, number and DOB on front page	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y		
1b. Same on other pages where required Y/N	N	N	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y		
1c. Is the patient <16 years Y/N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N		
1d. Is the patient >60 years Y/N	Y	N	N	N	N	Y	N	N	N	N		
2. Weight documented (where relevant to medication) Y/N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N		
3a. Allergy status documented. Y/N	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y		
3b. Allergy status signed and dated Y/N	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	Y	N	N	Y		
3c. Reaction to each allergen noted or recorded as not known Y/N	Y	N	Y/A	Y/A	Y/A	Y/A	Y/A	Y	Y	Y		
3d. Medicines prescribed that patient is documented as allergic to Y/N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N		
2e. Medicines administered that patient is documented as allergic to Y/N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N		
2f. Have medicines been administered when the Allergy box is left blank? Y/N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N		

Kardex Audit tool Longer stay Kardex V0.1 S Guy 13/11/2014

*3c. N/A => No known allergies ticked.

A. ② - not on weight related meds
 B. ② - " " " " "
 C. ② - " " " " "
 D. ② - " " " " "
 3b. - Not dated.

E. ② - not on weight related meds

F. 2 - " " " " "

G. ② pt. weight should be documented on Lithium (priadel)

3b. allergies recorded - not signed or dated

G₁

H. ② Not on weight related meds

122
844

*pt. E prescribed compression stocking -> not include in this audit as it is not a medicine.

HSC Belfast Health and Social Care Trust

		A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H
4. Ward recorded	Y/N	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
5a. More than one current kardex for the patient	Y/N	N	N	N	N	N	N	Y	Y
5b. Clearly marked more than 1 kardex	Y/N/na	na	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	Y	Y
6. Year documented on at least one occasion	Y/N	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
7a. No. of supplementary charts in use		2	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
7b. No. of 'additional charts in use' box on front of Kardex ticked (if on kardex).		1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
7c. Additional Chart. Medicine(s) are written in main body in Kardex as appropriate, e.g. clozapine, warfarin or insulin		1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
8. Has the kardex been recorded as re-written	Y/N	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
9. Is VTE risk assessment completed and signed	Y/N	N	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y

Data collection:

Prescription writing Q 8-26, record the number of medications that have the error described, eg sample Q 8a, two medicines had inappropriate abbreviations. It would be useful to state the abbreviations used in the comments section. Record number of medicines prescribed in each section of the kardex, e.g. stat doses, as required, regular medicines

Prescription writing		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
10a. Regular medicines (No. prescribed)	5	12	8	16	10	11	15	16	4	10	
10b. No of medicines where medicines reconciliation indicated (i) Pre-admission dose	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	2	0	0	
(ii) Increased dose	1	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	0	
(iii) Decreased dose	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	3	0	0	
(iv) New	1	0	0	0	0	0	2	2	1	2	
11a. Frequency not prescribed (include both non-injectable & injectable) (number of medicines)	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	
11b. Circled times do not match frequency (No. of errors)		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	
12. No. of high risk medicines prescribed? (See Appendix 2)	2	1	1	2	3	1	1	1	0	0	
13a. As required medicines (No. prescribed)	3	8	4	5	6	5	5	5	0	6	
26b. No of medicines where medicines reconciliation indicated (i) No change/Pre-admission dose	9	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	N/A	0	
(ii) Increased dose	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	N/A	0	

Kardex Audit tool Longer stay Kardex V0.1 \$ Guy 13/11/2014

- A. (12) Tegretol ^{600mg 8.30} ^{700mg 21.30}
2 separate entries on kx.
- B. (12) Eplim chrono 600mg BD ^{8.30} ^{21.30}
- C. (12) Carbamazepine 500mg BD ^{8.30} ^{21.30}
^{could be} Tegretol
Lamotrigine - 125mg 8.30
^{could be} Lamictal - 150mg 21.30
- D. (12) Clonazepam 4mg BD ^{8.30} ^{21.30}
Eplim chrono 600mg BD ^{8.30} ^{21.30}
Tegretol 300mg BD ^{8.30} ^{21.30}
- E. (12) Semi-sodium valproate 1g BD ^{8.30} ^{21.30}
- F. (12) Tegretol 400mg BD ^{8.30} ^{21.30}
- G. (12) Periadel 50mg OD.
- G₁ - 13 - PRN none prescribed on second kx - as per good practice

90 long stay patients.

~~EN administration~~

HSC Belfast Health and Social Care Trust

		A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I
(iii) Decreased dose	2	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	NA	0
(iv) New	1	2	0	0	0	0	0	0	NA	0
26c. Maximum frequency not completed	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	NA	0
26d. Maximum dose not completed		0	1	1	0	1	0	1	NA	2
13a. Regular Depot medicines (No. prescribed including discontinued)	8	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0
9b. No of regular non-injectable medicines where medicines reconciliation indicated: (i) Pre-admission dose	0	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	0	0	0
25a. Stat doses (No. prescribed)	3	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
25b. Time to be given not specified	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

~~G~~ (27) 15/5 not entered pg 10

MAH - STM - 122 - 846

Data collection:

Administration Q27 Record the number of days that do not have date AND month entered.

Count the total number of regular doses for which administration should have occurred or been documented as omitted up to the point of audit.

Q29-32 Enter the total number of doses that have the error described.

Administration										
27. Date and month NOT entered	3	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	
28. Number of regular doses prescribed for administration	26	183	300	279	19	400	393	908	119	412
29. Regular doses NOT signed as given or code recorded for omission, i.e. blank box	5	7	1	2	0	0	11	14	1	2
30. Stat doses NOT documented as given or omitted.	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

A (28) 23 reg doses for 21 days

B (28) 12 reg. doses for 25 days

C (28) 31 Reg. doses for 9 days

D (28) New kardex. 11 prescribed meds for 2 days only on this kdx

E (16) Reg doses for 25 days

Formatted Table



Appendix 1 – Kardex audit form baseline

Kardex audit form

Name of auditor: _____ Site _____

Service Group _____ Clinical Speciality _____ Ward Smile Hospital Site _____

Total no. of beds on ward _____ Assessment

Please review all Kardexes for each ward. Include prescribing/administration entries and pharmacist endorsements in audit data collected. Use one column for each Kardex, i.e. 2 columns if a patient has two Kardexes in use. See notes regarding data collection. Example results recorded in the first column.

Data collection: Prescription (General) Q 1-7 are general questions about the kardex and are answered yes or no. Record total number of medicines on Kardex, include discontinued medicines in the review.

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	Comments – put Kardex number in brackets
Patient identification (Use sequential letters of the alphabet to identify each patient. If a patient has more than one Kardex, enter the same letter in a new column for each Kardex) (Column 1 is an example of patient A with one Kardex)	A											
Patient identification	A	A	B	C	D							
Prescription (general)	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y							
1a. Pt. name, number and DOB on front page	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y							
1b. Same on other pages where required Y/N	N	Y	Y	Y	Y							
1c. Is the patient <16 years Y/N	N	N	N	N	N							
1d. Is the patient >60 years Y/N	Y	N	N	N	N							
2. Weight documented (where relevant to medication) Y/N	N	N	N	N	N							
3a. Allergy status documented. Y/N	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y							
3b. Allergy status signed and dated Y/N	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y							
3c. Reaction to each allergen noted or recorded as not known Y/N	Y	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A							
3d. Medicines prescribed that patient is documented as allergic to Y/N	N	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A							
2e. Medicines administered that patient is documented as allergic to Y/N	N	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A							
2f. Have medicines been administered when the Allergy box is left blank? Y/N	N	N	N	N	N							

Kardex Audit tool Longer stay Kardex V0.1 S Guy 13/11/2014

ⓐ 2. Not on weight related meds.

ⓑ 2. " " "

HSC Belfast Health and Social Care Trust

4. Ward recorded Y/N	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y								
5a. More than one current kardex for the patient Y/N	N	N	N	N	N								
5b. Clearly marked more than 1 kardex Y/N/na	na	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A								
6. Year documented on at least one occasion Y/N	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y								
7a. No. of supplementary charts in use	2	1	0	0	0								
7b. No. of 'additional charts in use' box on front of Kardex ticked (if on kardex).	1	0	0	0	0								
7c. Additional Chart. Medicine(s) are written in main body in Kardex as appropriate. e.g. clozapine, warfarin or insulin	1	1	0	0	0								
8. Has the kardex been recorded as re-written Y/N	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y								
9. Is VTE risk assessment completed and signed Y/N	N	Y	Y	Y	Y								

Data collection:

Prescription writing Q 8-26, record the number of medications that have the error described, eg sample Q 8a, two medicines had inappropriate abbreviations. It would be useful to state the abbreviations used in the comments section. Record number of medicines prescribed in each section of the kardex, e.g. stat doses, as required, regular medicines

Prescription writing													
10a. Regular medicines (No. prescribed)	5	15	12	11	3								
10b. No of medicines where medicines reconciliation indicated (i) Pre-admission dose	1	0	0	2	2								
(ii) Increased dose	1	0	2	0	0								
(iii) Decreased dose	0	1	1	2	1								
(iv) New	1	1	5	1	0								
11a. Frequency not prescribed (include both non-injectable & injectable) - (number of medicines)	1	0	0	0	0								
11b. Circled times do not match frequency (No. of errors)		0	0	0	0								
12. No. of high risk medicines prescribed? (See Appendix 2)	2	1	2	1	1								
13a. As required medicines (No. prescribed)	3	5	11	2	8								
26b. No of medicines where medicines reconciliation indicated (i) No change/Pre-admission dose	9	0	0	0	0								
(ii) Increased dose	1	0	0	0	0								

Kardex Audit tool Longer stay Kardex V0.1 S Guy 13/11/2014

A-7b) clozapine box not ticked (ticked now by pharmacist)

MAHI - STM - 122 - 849

- Ⓐ 12 - Clozapine 300mg OD
- Ⓑ Tegretol MR - 600mg
(max 1.5g 8m 2 divided doses)
for me
- Delmasart 5mg OD
- Ⓒ 12 - Bisoprolol 2.5mg OD
- Ⓓ 12 - propranolol 30mg OD

HSC Belfast Health and Social Care Trust

31. Doses given in excess of prescribed frequency of regular medicine.	+	0	0	0	0										
32. Doses given in excess of maximum frequency of	0	0	0	0	0										

Any additional comments – please note Kardex and question number

IN ASSESSMENT

All Kardexes say Sixmile on front - not sixmile Assessment.



Appendix 1 – Kardex audit form baseline

Kardex audit form

Name of auditor: _____ Site _____
 Service Group _____ Clinical Speciality _____ Ward Sixmile Hospital Site _____
 Total no. of beds on ward _____ Treatment

Please review all Kardexes for each ward. Include prescribing/administration entries and pharmacist endorsements in audit data collected. Use one column for each Kardex, i.e. 2 columns if a patient has two Kardexes in use. See notes regarding data collection. Example results recorded in the first column.

Data collection: Prescription (General) Q 1-7 are general questions about the kardex and are answered yes or no. Record total number of medicines on Kardex, include discontinued medicines in the review.

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	Comments – put Kardex number in brackets
Patient identification (Use sequential letters of the alphabet to identify each patient. If a patient has more than one Kardex, enter the same letter in a new column for each Kardex) (Column 1 is an example of patient A with one Kardex)	A											
Patient identification	A	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H			
Prescription (general)	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y			
1a. Pt. name, number and DOB on front page	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y			
1b. Same on other pages where required Y/N	N	Y	Y	N	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y			
1c. Is the patient <16 years Y/N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N			
1d. Is the patient >60 years Y/N	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N			
2. Weight documented (where relevant to medication) Y/N	N	N	N	N	Y	N	N	N	N			
3a. Allergy status documented Y/N	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y			
3b. Allergy status signed and dated Y/N	Y	N	Y	N	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y			
3c. Reaction to each allergen noted or recorded as not known Y/N	Y	Y	Y/A	Y	Y/A	Y/A	Y/A	Y/A	Y/A			
3d. Medicines prescribed that patient is documented as allergic to Y/N	N	N	N/A	*	Y/A	Y/A	Y/A	Y/A	Y/A			
2e. Medicines administered that patient is documented as allergic to Y/N	N	N	Y/A	*	Y/A	Y/A	Y/A	Y/A	Y/A			
2f. Have medicines been administered when the Allergy box is left blank? Y/N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N			

Kardex Audit tool Longer stay Kardex V0.1 S Guy 13/11/2014

Ⓐ 3b. Penicillin (unknown)

Ⓒ 3c. No idea what it says. Need to be clear.

3d - Cannot answer
 3e - due to unclear allergy status box.

Ⓓ 2. Not on any weight related medication

Ⓔ * if no note attached pt not on any weight related dosing regime.

MAHI - STM 122

HSC Belfast Health and Social Care Trust

		A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H
4. Ward recorded	Y/N	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
5a. More than one current Kardex for the patient	Y/N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
5b. Clearly marked more than 1 kardex	Y/N/na	na	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
6. Year documented on at least one occasion	Y/N	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
7a. No. of supplementary charts in use		2	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
7b. No. of 'additional charts in use' box on front of Kardex ticked (if on kardex).		1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
7c. Additional Chart Medicine(s) are written in main body in Kardex as appropriate, e.g. clozapine, warfarin or insulin		1	0	0	0	0	1	0	0
8. Has the kardex been recorded as re-written	Y/N	Y	N	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	Y
9. Is VTE risk assessment completed and signed	Y/N	N	Y	Y	N	Y	Y	Y	Y

(A) 8. - Note left for SHO to ^{do this.} ~~record~~

(E) 7c. pt on clozapine
→ no additional chart
& not ticked on front of Kx.

Data collection:

Prescription writing Q 8-26, record the number of medications that have the error described, eg sample Q 8a, two medicines had inappropriate abbreviations. It would be useful to state the abbreviations used in the comments section. Record number of medicines prescribed in each section of the kardex, e.g. stat doses, as required, regular medicines

Prescription writing									
10a. Regular medicines (No. prescribed)	5	7	10	7	1	10	2	4	5
10b. No of medicines where medicines reconciliation indicated (i) Pre-admission dose	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
(ii) Increased dose	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
(iii) Decreased dose	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	1
(iv) New	1	3	0	0	0	0	0	1	2
11a. Frequency not prescribed (include both non-injectable & injectable) (number of medicines)	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0
11b. Circled times do not match frequency (No. of errors)		0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0
12. No. of high risk medicines prescribed? (See Appendix 2)	2	0	1	0	0	2	0	0	0
13a. As required medicines (No. prescribed)	3	0	7	6	3	5	6	2	5
26b. No of medicines where medicines reconciliation indicated (i) No change/Pre-admission dose	9	N/A	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
(ii) Increased dose	1	N/A	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

(B) 12 - Epilim 200mg
(E) 12 - Clozapine
Epilim chrono 500mg
800mg

MAHI - STM 120

PRN

HSC Belfast Health and Social Care Trust

		A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H
(iii) Decreased dose	2	N/A	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
(iv) New	1	N/A	0	0	3	0	1	0	1
26c. Maximum frequency not completed	1	N/A	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
26d. Maximum dose not completed		N/A	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
13a. Regular Depot medicines (No. prescribed including discontinued)	8	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
9b. No of regular non-injectable medicines where medicines reconciliation indicated: (i) Pre-admission dose	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
25a. Stat doses (No. prescribed)	3	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0
25b. Time to be given not specified	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Data collection:

Administration - Q 27 Record the number of days that do not have date AND month entered.

Count the total number of regular doses for which administration should have occurred or been documented as omitted up to the point of audit.

Q29-32 Enter the total number of doses that have the error described.

Administration									
27. Date and month NOT entered	3	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
28. Number of regular doses prescribed for administration	26	245	15	359	28	337	41	240	283
29. Regular doses NOT signed as given or code recorded for omission, i.e. blank box	5	8	0	3	0	0	0	0	1
30. Stat doses NOT documented as given or omitted.	4	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Formatted Table

Kardex Audit tool Longer stay Kardex V0.1 S Guy 13/11/2014



Belfast Health and Social Care Trust

Appendix 1 – Kardex audit form baseline

Kardex audit form

Name of auditor: _____ Site _____
 Service Group _____ Clinical Speciality _____ Ward Cranfield 2 Hospital Site MAH
 Total no. of beds on ward _____

Please review all Kardexes for each ward. Include prescribing/administration entries and pharmacist endorsements in audit data collected. Use one column for each Kardex, i.e. 2 columns if a patient has two Kardexes in use. See notes regarding data collection. Example results recorded in the first column.

Data collection: Prescription (General) Q 1-7 are general questions about the kardex and are answered yes or no. Record total number of medicines on Kardex, include discontinued medicines in the review.

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	Comments – put Kardex number in brackets
Patient identification (Use sequential letters of the alphabet to identify each patient. If a patient has more than one Kardex, enter the same letter in a new column for each Kardex) (Column 1 is an example of patient A with one Kardex)	A											
Patient identification	A	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H			
Prescription (general)	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y			
1a. Pt. name, number and DOB on front page	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y			
1b. Same on other pages where required Y/N	N	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	Y	Y	Y			
1c. Is the patient <16 years Y/N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N			
1d. Is the patient >60 years Y/N	Y	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N	N			
2. Weight documented (where relevant to medication) Y/N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N			
3a. Allergy status documented Y/N	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y			
3b. Allergy status signed and dated Y/N	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	Y	N	Y	Y			
3c. Reaction to each allergen noted or recorded as not known Y/N	Y	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	Y	N	N/A			
3d. Medicines prescribed that patient is documented as allergic to Y/N	N	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N	N	N/A			
2e. Medicines administered that patient is documented as allergic to Y/N	N	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N	N	N/A			
2f. Have medicines been administered when the Allergy box is left blank? Y/N	N	N	N	Y	N	N	N	N	N			

Kardex Audit tool Longer stay Kardex V0.1 S Guy 13/11/2014

3c. N/A for = NKA

2. A Not on any weight dependant medication

B in in in
 C in in in
 G on priadel weight should be recorded

3c. G Allergen noted
 → rxn not noted.

2. H on Atomoxetine weight not recorded.

HSC Belfast Health and Social Care Trust

A B C D E F G H

4. Ward recorded	Y/N	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y		
5a. More than one current Kardex for the patient	Y/N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N		
5b. Clearly marked more than 1 kardex	Y/N/na	na	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA		
6. Year documented on at least one occasion	Y/N	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y		
7a. No. of supplementary charts in use		2	0	0	0	0	0	0		
7b. No. of 'additional charts in use' box on front of Kardex ticked (if on kardex).		1	0	0	0	0	0	0		
7c. Additional Chart Medicine(s) are written in main body in Kardex as appropriate. e.g. clozapine, warfarin or insulin		1	0	0	0	0	0	0		
8. Has the kardex been recorded as re-written	Y/N	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y		
9. Is VTE risk assessment completed and signed	Y/N	N	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y		

(R) D Tegretol - 300mg 8:30
 - 400mg 29:30
 (R) (E) Tegretol - 400mg 8:30
 - 400mg 21:30
 (R) (G) Priadel 1200mg nocte.
 (R) (H) Atomoxetine 20mg @ 11 & 21:30

Data collection:

Prescription writing Q 8-26, record the number of medications that have the error described, eg sample Q 8a, two medicines had inappropriate abbreviations. It would be useful to state the abbreviations used in the comments section. Record number of medicines prescribed in each section of the kardex, e.g. stat doses, as required, regular medicines

Prescription writing										
10a. Regular medicines (No. prescribed)	5	11	4	4	12	11	9	9	10	
10b. No of medicines where medicines reconciliation indicated (i) Pre-admission dose	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	
(ii) Increased dose	1	0	1	0	0	1	1	0	0	
(iii) Decreased dose	0	1	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	
(iv) New	1	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	
11a. Frequency not prescribed (include both non-injectable & injectable) - (number of medicines)	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	
11b. Circled times do not match frequency (No. of errors)		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	
12. No. of high risk medicines prescribed? (See Appendix 2)	2	0	0	0	1	1	0	1	1	
13a. As required medicines (No. prescribed)	3	2	8	5	4	6	6	5	9	
26b. No of medicines where medicines reconciliation indicated (i) No change/Pre-admission dose	9	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	
(ii) Increased dose	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

Kardex Audit tool Longer stay Kardex V0.1 S Guy 13/11/2014



(iii) Decreased dose	2	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
(iv) New	1	0	2	0	0	0	0	0	0
26c. Maximum frequency not completed	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
26d. Maximum dose not completed		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
13a. Regular Depot medicines (No. prescribed including discontinued)	8	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
9b. No of regular non-injectable medicines where medicines reconciliation indicated:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
(i) Pre-admission dose									
25a. Stat doses (No. prescribed)	3	0	0	0	0	1	1	2	1
25b. Time to be given not specified	1	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1

Data collection:

Administration - Q 27 Record the number of days that do not have date AND month entered.

Count the total number of regular doses for which administration should have occurred or been documented as omitted up to the point of audit.

Q29-32 Enter the total number of doses that have the error described.

Administration									
27. Date and month NOT entered	3	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
28. Number of regular doses prescribed for administration	26	725	319	70	908	828	508	521	601
29. Regular doses NOT signed as given or code recorded for omission, i.e. blank box	5	7	7	0	7	7	0	5	9
30. Stat doses NOT documented as given or omitted	4	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Formatted Table

Kardex Audit tool Longer stay Kardex V0.1 S Guy 13/11/2014



Appendix 1 - Kardex audit form baseline

Kardex audit form

Name of auditor: _____ Site _____

Service Group _____ Clinical Speciality _____ Ward Cranfield 1 Hospital Site _____
 Total no. of beds on ward _____

Please review all Kardexes for each ward. Include prescribing/administration entries and pharmacist endorsements in audit data collected. Use one column for each Kardex, i.e. 2 columns if a patient has two Kardexes in use. See notes regarding data collection. Example results recorded in the first column.

Data collection: Prescription (General) Q 1-7 are general questions about the kardex and are answered yes or no. Record total number of medicines on Kardex, include discontinued medicines in the review.

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	Comments - put Kardex number in brackets
Patient identification (Use sequential letters of the alphabet to identify each patient. If a patient has more than one Kardex, enter the same letter in a new column for each Kardex) (Column 1 is an example of patient A with one Kardex)	A											
Patient identification	A	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I		
Prescription (general)	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y		
1a. Pt. name, number and DOB on front page	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y		
1b. Same on other pages where required Y/N	N	Y	N	Y	N	Y	Y	Y	Y	N		
1c. Is the patient <16 years Y/N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N		
1d. Is the patient >60 years Y/N	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N		
2. Weight documented (where relevant to medication) Y/N	N	N	N	Y	N	N	Y	N	N	N		
3a. Allergy status documented. Y/N	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y		
3b. Allergy status signed and dated Y/N	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	Y	Y		
3c. Reaction to each allergen noted or recorded as not known Y/N	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y		
3d. Medicines prescribed that patient is documented as allergic to Y/N	N	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	N	N		
2e. Medicines administered that patient is documented as allergic to Y/N	N	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N		
2f. Have medicines been administered when the Allergy box is left blank? Y/N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N		

(B) lb. no addressograph on pg 2-8
 (I) no addressographs on 8-15
 (D) lb. no 15 on pg 14.

2. A - not on wt. related meds
 B - " " " " " "
 C - " " " " " "
 D - " " " " " "
 E - " " " " " "
 F - weight is documented
 G - not on wt. related meds
 I - not on wt. related meds

MAHI - 153 - 860

HSC Belfast Health and Social Care Trust

4. Ward recorded	Y/N	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	Y	
5a. More than one current Kardex for the patient	Y/N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	
5b. Clearly marked more than 1 kardex	Y/N/na	na	Y/A	N/A	Y/A	Y/A	Y/A	N/A	Y/A	N/A	
6. Year documented on at least one occasion	Y/N	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	
7a. No. of supplementary charts in use	2	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	
7b. No. of 'additional charts' in use' box on front of Kardex ticked (if on kardex).	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	
7c. Additional Chart. Medicine(s) are written in main body in Kardex as appropriate. e.g. clozapine, warfarin or insulin	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	
8. Has the kardex been recorded as re-written	Y/N	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	
9. Is VTE risk assessment completed and signed	Y/N	N	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	

Data collection:

Prescription writing Q 8-26, record the number of medications that have the error described, eg sample Q 8a, two medicines had inappropriate abbreviations. It would be useful to state the abbreviations used in the comments section. Record number of medicines prescribed in each section of the kardex, e.g. stat doses, as required, regular medicines

Prescription writing											
10a. Regular medicines (No. prescribed)	5	8	8	7	8	6	6	2	10	14	
10b. No of medicines where medicines reconciliation indicated (i) Pre-admission dose	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	
(ii) Increased dose	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	1	0	
(iii) Decreased dose	0	0	1	0	0	3	1	0	0	0	
(iv) New	1	0	0	0	0	1	2	0	0	0	
11a. Frequency not prescribed (include both non-injectable & injectable) (number of medicines)	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	
11b. Circled times do not match frequency (No. of errors)		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	
12. No. of high risk medicines prescribed? (See Appendix 2)	2	0	0	1	0	1	0	0	1	1	
13a. As required medicines (No. prescribed)	3	5	6	7	5	8	6	7	7	7	
26b. No of medicines where medicines reconciliation indicated (i) No change/Pre-admission dose	9	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	
(ii) Increased dose	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

Kardex Audit tool Longer stay Kardex V0.1 S Guy 13/11/2014

Ⓢ 12 - priadel. 800mg OD 19.3

Ⓢ 12. Semsodium valproate
250mg 8.30 500mg 21.30

Ⓢ 12. H - Clozapine
I - Eplim $\begin{matrix} 100 \\ 500 \\ 1000 \end{matrix}$

REN

HSC Belfast Health and Social Care Trust

B E P L A G H I

(iii) Decreased dose	2	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
(iv) New	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	0
26c. Maximum frequency not completed	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
26d. Maximum dose not completed		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
13a. Regular Depot medicines (No. prescribed including discontinued)	8	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
9b. No of regular non-injectable medicines where medicines reconciliation indicated:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
(i) Pre-admission dose										
25a. Stat doses (No. prescribed)	3	0	0	1	0	2	0	0	1	1
25b. Time to be given not specified	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Data collection:

Administration Q27 Record the number of days that do not have date AND month entered.

Count the total number of regular doses for which administration should have occurred or been documented as omitted up to the point of audit.

Q29-32 Enter the total number of doses that have the error described.

Administration										
27. Date and month NOT entered	3	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	
28. Number of regular doses prescribed for administration	26	84	65	857	193	364	362	43	328	259
29. Regular doses NOT signed as given or code recorded for omission, i.e. blank box	6	0	0	2	0	0	5	0	0	1
30. Stat doses NOT documented as given or omitted.	4	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	1	0

Formatted Table

(F) - 30. 19/6 senna prescribed & not documented as not given - just blank

Kardex Audit tool Longer stay Kardex V0.1 S Guy 13/11/2014

Mr Stephen Guy
Pharmacy Department
Knockbracken Healthcare Park
Saintfield Road
Belfast
BT8 8BH

04 February 2010

Dear Stephen and colleagues

RE: Topic 9 – Use of antipsychotic medication in people with learning disabilities

We take pleasure in providing further details to enable your participation in Topic 9. We hope this guide and the enclosed documents will explain everything about the audit, but please contact us if you have any other questions.

To start the data collection process for Topic 9, please find the following documents enclosed:

- Background information for participating teams; please distribute a copy to each participating clinical team, keeping a copy for your own records.
- Topic 9 audit of clinical practice data collection tool and guidance notes; two copies are enclosed with your Trust code pre-entered. Please make copies and pre-enter each team code before sending to participating teams. Please keep a copy for your own records.
- Team codes table; please allocate each participating clinical team a code and keep a record of these in the table. Teams that have already participated in a POMH-UK Topic should keep the code they have been allocated previously. Teams that are participating for the first time should be numbered consecutively from the number given at the start of the table. **Please note that all team codes must be entered in the correct format e.g.56.36; this is your Trust code followed by a decimal point, followed by a two digit team code.** If you have allocated all two digit codes (56.01 –56.99) please begin allocating

56.101, 56.102 etc avoiding numbers which could easily be mistaken for another code e.g. 56.100.

To submit the data, go to www.rcpsych.ac.uk/pomh/data and select the Topic 9 link. The username for all your teams is **MHT056** and the password is **pomh_2i**. Data collection and entry will be taking place throughout the month of June. All data must be submitted to POMH no later than **Friday 3 July 2009**.

If you have any questions about participating in this Topic please do not hesitate to contact the POMH-UK Central Project Team by phone or email at any time.

If your Trust has decided not to participate in this audit we would be grateful if you could inform us by phone or email.

Best wishes,

The POMH-UK Central Project Team


Email: pomh-uk@cru.rcpsych.ac.uk
Tel: 0207 977 4998/4999/6641

POMHUK

Topic 9:

Use of antipsychotic medication in people with a learning disability

Background, method and findings from the baseline audit



POMHUK Background

Topic background


- Antipsychotic medications are prescribed "off label" for behavioural problems in people with a learning disability (LD).
- The use of antipsychotics to manage behavioural problems which are **not attributable to diagnosable mental illness**, in people with LD is controversial.
- A recent, influential, double-masked RCT called into question the **role of antipsychotics for aggression of non-psychotic origin**. No difference was found between the efficacy of haloperidol, risperidone or placebo (Tyrer et al, 2008).
- A major consideration in LD prescribing practice is the **capacity** of people with LD and behavioural problems to participate in decisions about their treatment.

POMHUK Background

Why this Topic was selected?

POMH-UK member Trusts indicated their interest in benchmarking their prescribing practice in this area through participation in a quality improvement programme.

LD clinicians often feel they lack the guidance and support regarding best practice prescribing that is available in other clinical settings. This audit is the first time that national prescribing practice in LD psychiatry has been reviewed and benchmarked in this way.




POMHUK Audit standards

Audit standards

Whilst there is a lack of NICE guidance in this area, the literature has been reviewed and standards set in **"Using medication to manage behaviour problems among adults with a learning disability"** (Deb et al., University of Birmingham, September 2006).

The audit standards used in this report were derived from these, and the third standard is also supported by the **NICE clinical guideline** for the management of schizophrenia CG82 (2009).



POMHUK Audit standards

Audit standards

1. The indication for treatment with antipsychotic medication should be documented in the clinical records (Deb, 2006).
2. The continuing need for antipsychotic medication should be reviewed at least once a year (Deb, 2006).
3. Side effects of antipsychotic medication should be reviewed at least once a year. This review should include assessment for the presence of extrapyramidal side effects (EPS), and screening for the 4 aspects of the metabolic syndrome: obesity, hypertension, diabetes and dyslipidaemia (NICE clinical guidelines CG82, 2009).

POMHUK Method

Sample

145 clinical teams from 39 mental health Trusts participated in the audit, submitting data for **2,319 patients**, all of whom had a **diagnosis of learning disability and were prescribed one or more antipsychotics**.

This is the largest audit of antipsychotic prescribing in people with a learning disability that has been conducted to date.

Data collected

- Age, gender, ethnicity, severity of learning disability, co-morbid psychiatric diagnoses and care setting
- Diagnosis of epilepsy
- The dose of each oral/short-acting IM and depot/long-acting antipsychotic currently prescribed
- The main indications for antipsychotic prescribing
- Other medications for mental health, behavioural problems or epilepsy
- Documented evidence of side effect monitoring
- Documented evidence of formal review of medication

POMHUK Key findings: Part 1

Key findings

- For patients in whom antipsychotic treatment was initiated less than 12 months ago (n=328), the **indication for treatment was clearly described in 93%** of the clinical records.
- The most common indications for antipsychotic prescribing in the total national sample (n=2,319) were **comorbid psychotic disorder (42%)**, followed by **anxiety and agitation (42%)**, and **overt aggression (38%)**.
- Of those patients in whom antipsychotic treatment was initiated more than 12 months ago (n=1,991), **96%** had their continuing need for antipsychotic medication reviewed in the last year.

POMHUK Key findings: Part 2

Key findings

- Oral risperidone** was the most commonly used antipsychotic, being prescribed for 40% of the total national sample. Olanzapine was prescribed for 20% of patients, and chlorpromazine, haloperidol and quetiapine for 10% each.
- Only **4%** of the total national sample were prescribed a **high dose** antipsychotic, and **15%** were prescribed a **combination** of antipsychotics.
- In addition to an antipsychotic, almost **three quarters (73%)** of patients were **prescribed at least one other drug** for the treatment of mental illness, behavioural problems or epilepsy.

POMHUK Key findings: Part 3

Key findings

- For those patients in whom antipsychotic treatment was initiated more than 12 months ago (n=1,991), **documented evidence of side effect assessment** was as follows:
 - Blood glucose: 60%** of patients (range across Trusts 11-100%)
 - Lipid profile: 57%** of patients (12-100%)
 - Weight/BMI: 56%** of patients (5-100%)
 - Extrapyramidal side effects: 41%** of patients (0-100%)
 - Blood pressure: 37%** of patients (0-100%).
- Of the side effect assessments listed above, **19%** of patients had **no documented evidence of any** of them being conducted in the last year, 14% of patients had evidence of 1 assessment, 16% had evidence of 2, and 52% had evidence of 3 or more.

POMHUK Conclusions

Conclusions

- The **indications** for prescribing antipsychotic medication were **clearly documented** in the clinical records.
- High doses and combinations of antipsychotics are **prescribed less commonly** than in adult mental health services.
- The continuing need for antipsychotic medication was **regularly reviewed and documented** in almost all patients in this sample. The high proportion of patients having medicines changed at review suggests **thoughtful and thorough practice** in this area.
- In just under **three-quarters of patients**, a general statement regarding **side effects** had been **documented** in the last year.
- Documented evidence of **systematic monitoring across a range of side effects** was far less common. Potentially remediable physical health problems may therefore not be detected.

POMHUK National findings

Indications* for antipsychotic prescribing:

Initiated within the last 12 months (n=328)

Agitation and anxiety	(n=142; 43%)
Co-morbid psychotic disorder	(138; 42%)
Overt aggression	(120; 37%)
Threatening behaviour	(87; 27%)
Obsessive behaviour	(37; 11%)

Initiated more than 12 months ago (n=1,991)

Co-morbid psychotic disorder	(833; 42%)
Agitation and anxiety	(826; 42%)
Overt aggression	(754; 38%)
Threatening behaviour	(609; 31%)
Self harm	(266; 13%)

**Note that individual patients may have been prescribed antipsychotic medication for more than one indication.*

POMHUK Prescribing practice

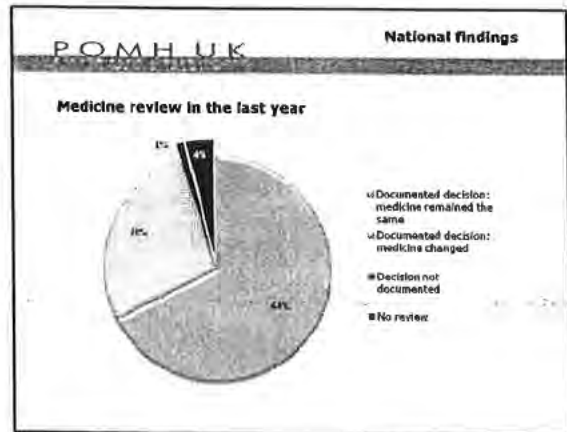
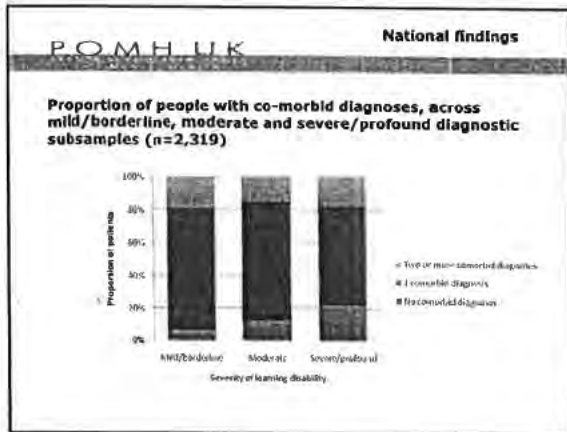
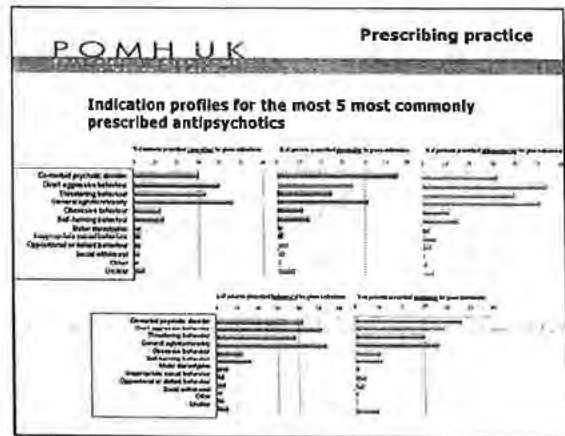
Details for the 5 most commonly prescribed antipsychotics

Drug	Use: n (%)		
	Monotherapy	Combination	PRN
Risperidone	791 (66%)	134 (14%)	86 (9%)
Olanzapine	380 (81%)	91 (19%)	65 (14%)
Chlorpromazine	143 (59%)	98 (41%)	112 (47%)
Haloperidol	117 (49%)	121 (51%)	110 (46%)
Quetiapine	183 (81%)	43 (19%)	25 (11%)

POMH UK Prescribing practice

Dosing details for the 5 most commonly prescribed antipsychotics

Drug	Dose: Median (range)			
	Oral	IM	Oral PRN	IM PRN
Risperidone	2mg (0.5-14mg)	-	1mg (0.3-8mg)	-
Olanzapine	10mg (7-10mg)	-	5mg (2.5-20mg)	10mg (2-20mg)
Chlorpromazine	100mg (7.5-1000mg)	-	100mg (15-1150mg)	125mg (75-250mg)
Haloperidol	5mg (0.5-30mg)	10mg (6-15mg)	10mg (0.5-20mg)	15mg (0.5-30mg)
Quetiapine	250mg (25-800mg)	-	100mg (25-750mg)	-



POMH UK National findings

Side effect monitoring in the last year

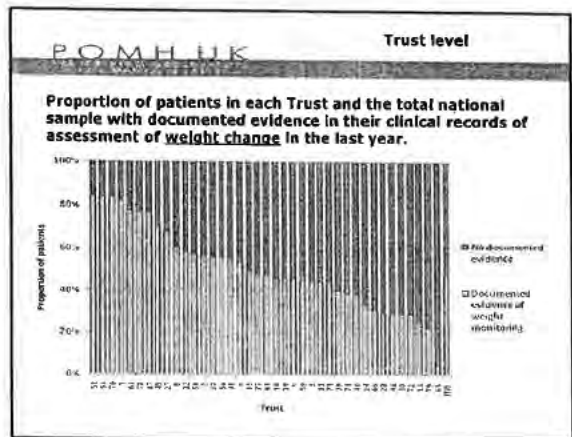
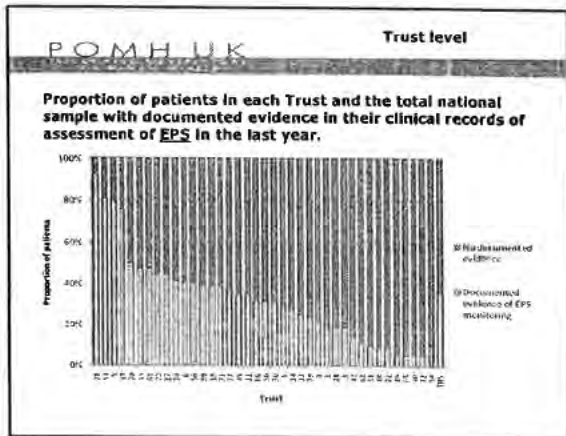
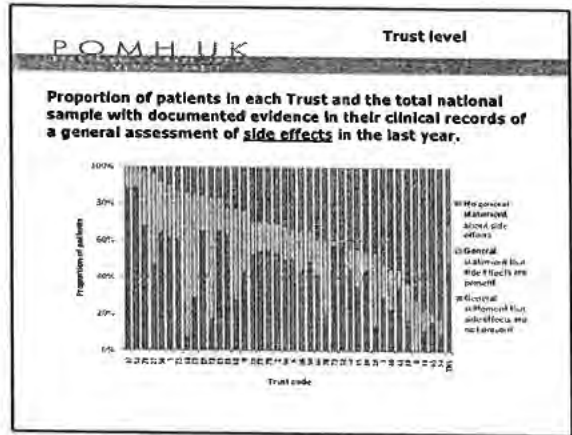
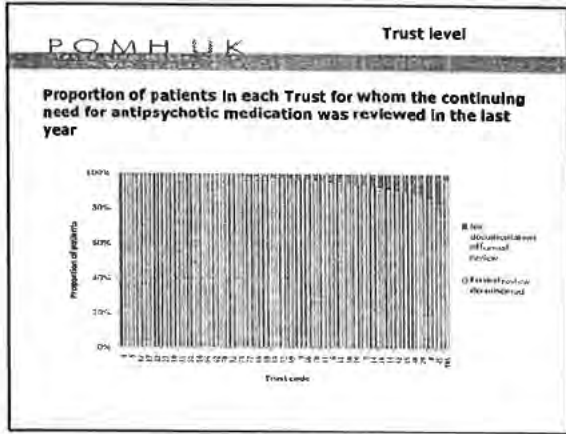
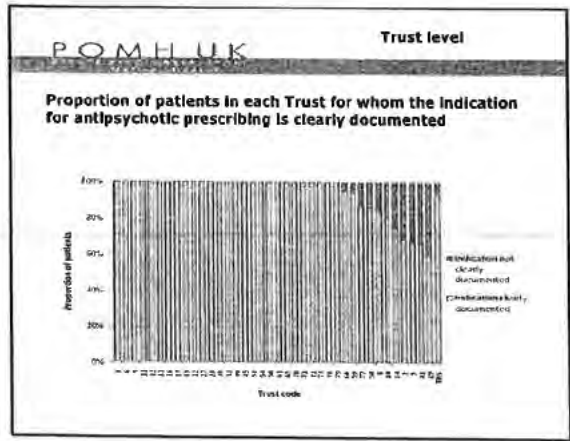
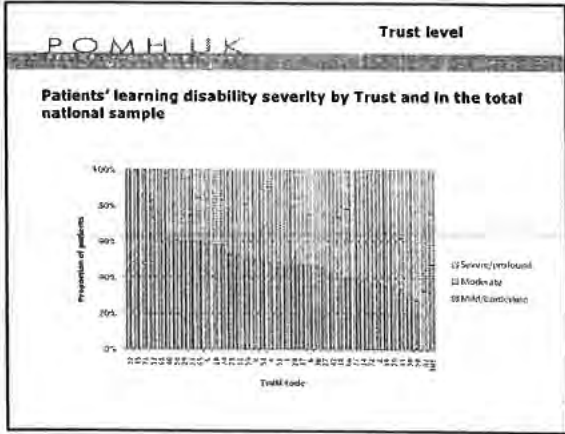
	Borderline/mild	Moderate	Severe/profound
General statement that side effects are present	223 (24%)	120 (21%)	81 (17%)
General statement that side effects are not present	442 (48%)	271 (47%)	241 (50%)
No statement about side effects	260 (28%)	186 (32%)	167 (34%)

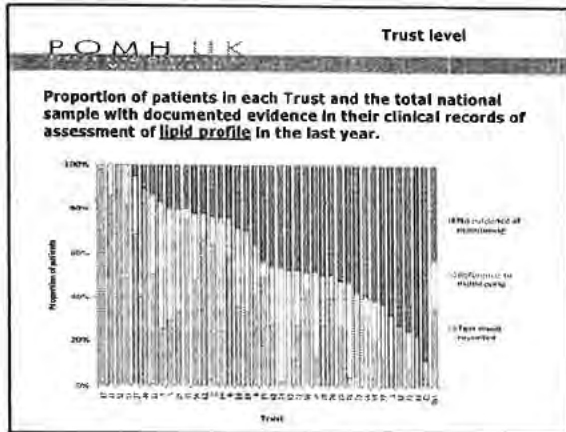
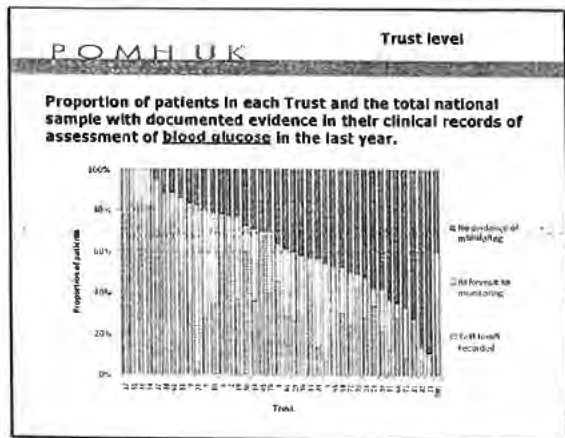
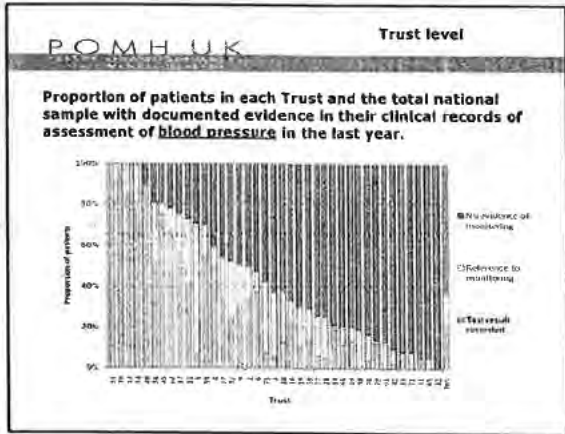
POMH UK Trust level

Analyses presented in this section were conducted for each Trust individually and for the total sample to allow benchmarking.

Data from each Trust are presented by code.

Your Trust code is 56



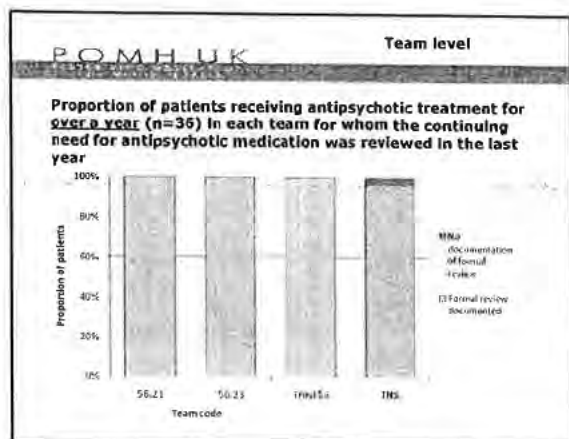
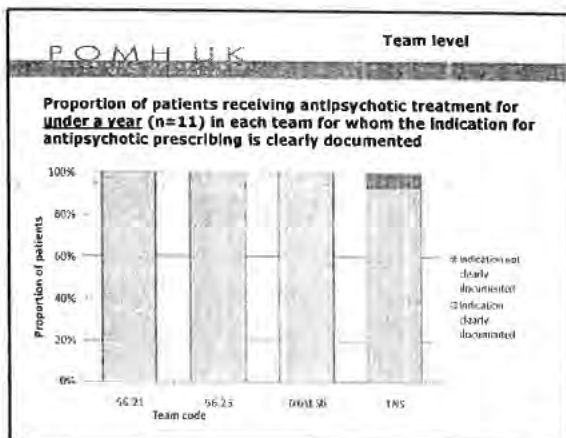


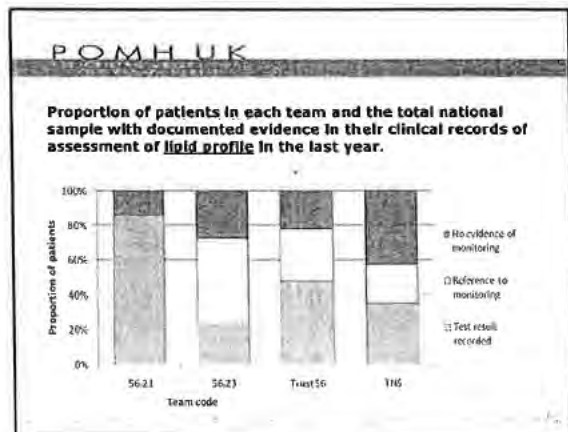
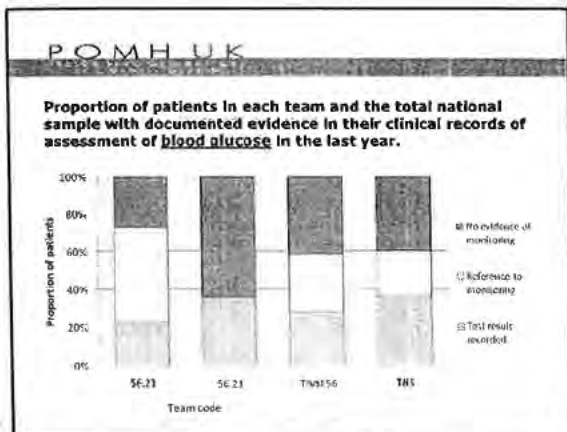
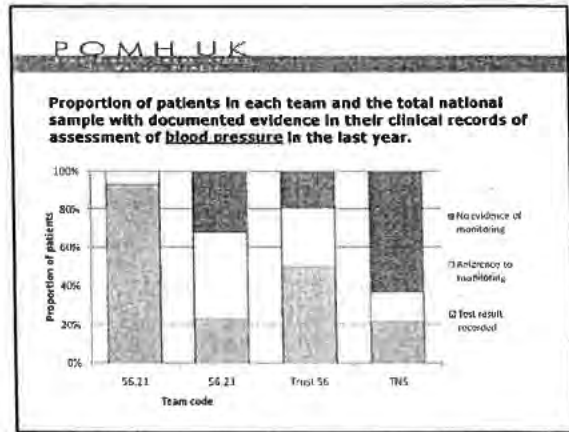
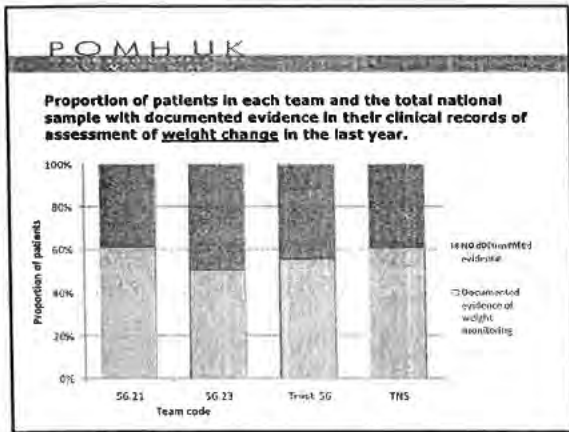
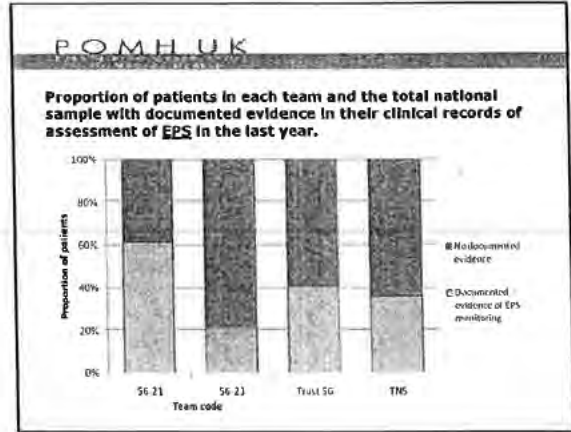
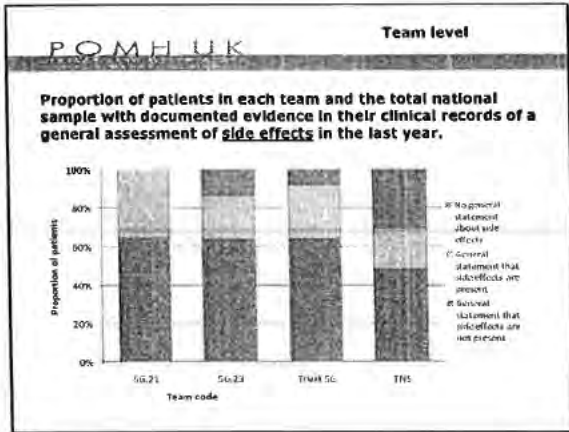
POMHUK Team level

Analyses presented in this section were conducted for each clinical team from your Trust individually, for your total Trust sample and for the total national sample to allow benchmarking.

Data from each Trust clinical team are presented by code only. The POMH-UK Central Project Team does not know the identity of individual teams.

Only the Local Project Team lead for your Trust or organisation has the key to team codes. You should contact this person if you need to identify data for your own particular team.






POMH UK

What happens next?

- Your Trust's Local Project Team Lead (LPTL) has a copy of the **full report**, please ask them for a copy to see these findings in more detail.
- POMH will consider developing bespoke change interventions to be provided to **each** participating Trust, including opportunities for sharing good practice.
- A **re-audit** will be conducted in **January 2011**.
- If you have any **questions**, please ask your LPTL or email POMH
- pomh-uk@crp.rpspsych.ac.uk



POMH UK

PRESCRIBING OBSERVATORY
FOR MENTAL HEALTH

This questionnaire relates to
POMH-UK's quality improvement programme on
Antipsychotic prescribing in people with learning disabilities (Topic 9).

Complete a separate form for each patient - ONLY include patients with a learning disability who are currently prescribed antipsychotic medication.

To help you complete this audit please use the patient's clinical notes - these include **all notes and records that are available** to you and the team, both paper and electronic.

PLEASE REFER FIRST TO THE GUIDANCE NOTES LOCATED AT THE END OF THIS QUESTIONNAIRE.

(call POMH-UK on 020 7977 4999 for further help)

* Questions marked with an asterix are mandatory for all patients

Trust and Team details

- Q1 * Trust code**
- Q2 * Team code:**
The Team code is your Trust code followed by a 2 digit team code (e.g. 44.02).
Please ensure that the first 2 digits match the Trust code entered in Q1
- Q3 Optional extra identifier**
- Q4 * Initials of data collector**

Patient details

- Q5 * Patient code**
- Q6 * Patient's year of birth**
- Q7 * Patient's gender**
 Male Female

Audit Summary Form

Paul Devine: Audit Lead

Name: Paul Devine	Service Group: Intellectual Disability
Position/Job Title: Clinical Director	Speciality: Forensic
Email: paul.devine@belfasttrust.hscni.net	Tel: 028 9504 6028

Title: Safer Prescribing: Pro Re Nata (PRN) pre Rapid Tranquilisation (RT) Audit
Muckamore Abbey Hospital

Brief summary of results:

Standards derived from:

NICE NG11 Challenging behaviour and learning disabilities: prevention and interventions for people with learning disabilities whose behaviour challenges
Published: 29 May 2015

NICE NG10 Violence and aggression: short-term management in mental health, health and community settings Published: 28 May 2015

BAP/NAPICU EB Consensus for Clinical Mx Acute Disturbance- De-escalation and Rapid Tranquilisation

RCPsych Quality Standards Inpatient Intellectual Disability

RCPsych FR/ID/09 Psychotropic drug prescribing for people with Intellectual Disability, mental health problems and/or behaviours that challenge: practice guidelines Faculty of Psychiatry of Intellectual Disability

Findings:

Mostly safe but:

Prescribing did not take into account Tmax

Choice of first line drug sometimes not in keeping with guidance- reason for variation not easily found on Paris

Risk of high dose prescribing with antipsychotics?

Kardex layout is insufficient to record indications and how to use

Areas of good practice (good results against standards):

CALM cards on each kardex with alternatives to PRN from Positive Behaviour Support plan (PBS) – Billie

“Critical conversation” between 2 registrants before use- Billie

Areas where improvement is needed (poor results against standards):

Add “At Risk” category to High dose prescribing policy- Paul to policy author

<p>Separate medication reviews weekly between medical and pharmacy? Paul and Deirdre</p> <p>Develop PRN and RT pathway kardex through QI methodology? Paul</p> <p>No PRN prescribing after one month without PBS in place? Paul</p>
<p>How and when were the results of this audit disseminated?</p> <p>Medical staff meeting</p> <p>Collective Leadership Team 29.12.2023</p> <p>Dr Mark Cross</p>
<p>Proposals for change:</p> <p>Did the audit confirm good practice? Yes</p> <p>Did the audit identify areas where there is need for improvement? Yes</p> <p>If Yes, please complete the action plan overleaf</p> <p>If an action plan has not yet been produced, please state the reason why:</p> <p>Have protocols or guideline been written as a result of this audit? No</p> <p>If yes, protocol/guideline details:</p>

ACTION PLAN


Audit Title:

	Action (i.e. How Recommendation will be implemented)	'Implement by' Date	Staff Member Responsible	Responsible Manager	Change Stage (see key)	Change Stage Key
1	Repeat induction training for all medical staff	<u>Feb 23</u>	Paul Devine	CLT	1	Actioned
2	Develop PRN and RT pathway kardex through QI methodology	<u>Aug 23</u>	Paul Devine	CLT	1	Action in progress
3	Separate medication reviews weekly between medical and pharmacy trial in Sixmile	<u>Jan 23</u>	Paul Devine and Deirdre Murray, pharmacy	CLT		Actioned
4	CALM cards on each kardex	<u>Feb 23</u>	Billie Hughes	CLT		Actioned


	with alternatives to PRN from Positive Behaviour Support plan (PBS) roll out to all wards					
5	“Critical conversation” between 2 registrants before use roll out to all wards	<u>Feb 23</u>	Billie Hughes	CLT		Actioned
6	Suggest No PRN use beyond one month without PBS or WRAP plan for policy review	<u>Aug</u>	Paul Devine	CLT		In progress

Date for Re-Audit: 12 months

Project Lead:

Signature: 	Name (printed) PAUL DEVINE	Date: 29.12.2023
---	-------------------------------	------------------

Senior Clinician/Manager: In signing this, I agree the above action plan recommendations and, if necessary, will take a lead in ensuring that changes are made in order to obtain improvements in the quality of care

Signature: 	Name (printed): Paul Devine	Date: 26.05.2023
---	--------------------------------	---------------------

Action plan can be returned to: QualityandAudit@belfasttrust.hscni.net